

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.



Frank's "Science of Chirurgie."

EDITED

FROM THE BODLEIAN ASHMOLE MS. 1396  
(ab. 1380 A.D.)

AND THE BRITISH MUSEUM ADDITIONAL MS. 12,056  
(ab. 1420 A.D.)

BY

ROBERT V. FLEISCHHACKER, DR. PHIL.

PART I.—TEXT.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,  
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

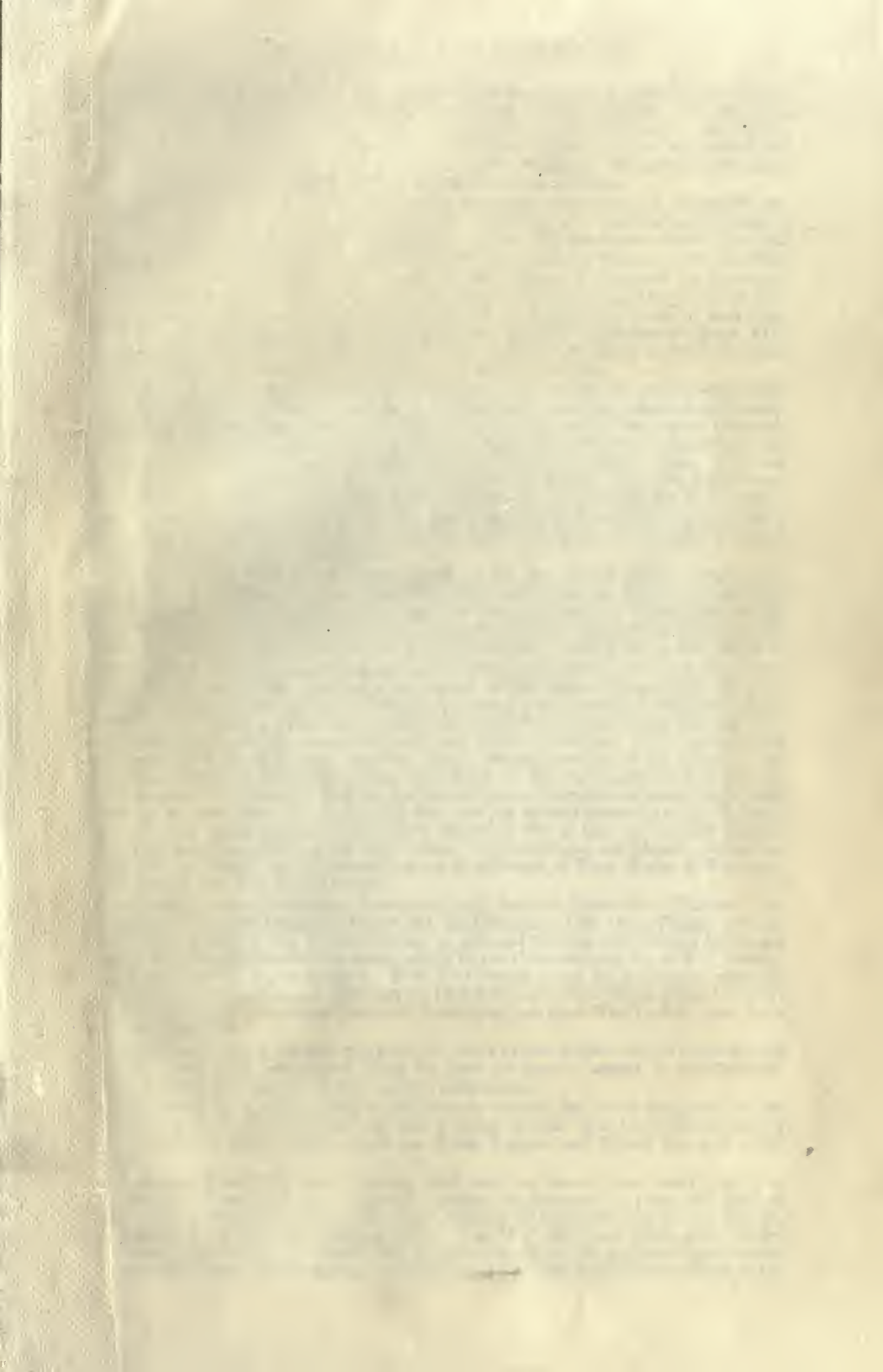
1894.

*Price Twenty Shillings.*



*This book belongs to*  
**THE LIBRARY**  
*of*  
**VICTORIA UNIVERSITY**  
Toronto 5, Canada







THE LIBRARY

UNIVERSITY OF VICTORIA

Box 1800 ST. JAMES ST. VICTORIA B.C.

June 1893. For this year the Original-Series Texts were issued in 1892, and so was one of the Extra-Series Texts; while the other went out early in 1893. The Texts of both Series for 1894 (except *The Prymer*, which is nearly ready) are now issued, with one of the Original Series for 1895 (the other is promist for July). The Extra Series Texts for 1895 are almost sure to be issued in 1893, as well as some Texts for 1896. **Members are askt to send their two- or three-years' subscriptions for both Series at once in advance.**

The Original-Series Texts for 1893 are:—No. 100, Capgrave's *Life of St. Katharine*, the text edited by Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords, side-notes, and a discussion of Chaucer's *gh* and Shakspeare's long *i*, by Dr. F. J. Furnivall; and No. 101, the *Cursor Mundi*, Part VII and last, an Essay on the MSS. of the Poem, their Dialects and Relation, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe.

The Extra-Series Texts for 1893 are—No. LXIII. Thomas à Kempis's *De Imitatione Christi*, englisht: the first three books from the MS in Trinity College Dublin, about 1440 A.D., and from Dr. Wm. Atkynson's version, printed by Wynkyn de Worde in 1502; and the fourth book by Margaret, Countess of Richmond and Derby, Mother of Henry VII; the whole edited by Prof. J. K. Ingram, LL.D.; and No. LXIV. Dr. Mary N. Colvin's edition of Caxton's *Godfrey of Bolyne*, or *Last Siege of Jerusalem*, A.D. 1481.

The Original Series Texts for 1894 are—No. 102. Part I of Dr. R. von Fleischhacker's edition of the englisht *Lanfranc's Chirurgie*, about 1400 A.D., a treatise perhaps more valuable for Dictionary purposes than any yet issued by the Society, which takes up to Chaucer's death the whole class of surgical and medical words (besides many others of common speech) which we before had only from the black-letters of Queen Elizabeth's time. (Dr. von Fleischhacker is now in England, and hopes soon to finish Part II). No. 103. *The Prymer* or *Lay Folk's Prayer-book*, edited by Mr. Henry Littlehales, and his friend Mr. A. R. Clark.

The Extra Series Texts for 1894 are No. LXV, the 3rd and last Part of *Sir Bevis of Hampton*, edited by Prof. Kölbing, Ph.D., and No. LXVI, Lydgate's and Burgh's *Secrees of Philisoffres*, edited by Robert Steele, B.A.

For 1895, the first Text of the Original Series is No. 104, Part I of Mr. Gollancz's re-edition of *The Exeter Book*, from the unique MS. The second, No. 105, will be Prof. Napier's edition of a 12th-century Homily on the *Legend of the Cross*, with an Introduction on the different Legends about it, together with an incomplete Chester *Hymn to the Virgin* of the 13th century, and a short Paper on the soft and hard *g*'s of the *Ormulum* MS., with a facsimile.

During 1892, two unexpected sources of help to the Society sprang up. First, Mr. Henry Littlehales of Bexley Heath, who had printed a MS of the English *Prymer*, ab. 1400 A.D., kindly offered to copy, and pay for the setting, not only of the Cambridge University MS of the *Prymer*, ab. 1425 A.D., but also of a series of extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, illustrating the religious condition and social life of the diocese. The *Prymer* or Lay Folk's Prayer-book is all in type, and will form a valuable portion of the Society's Pre-Reformation vernacular Liturgical Series, undertaken on the recommendation of the late Canon Simmons. The Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers are nearly half copied, and will go to press soon. Mr. Littlehales has also put himself generally at the Society's service, and has copied half of the Salisbury Cathedral MS of that very quaint treatise, *Jacob's Well*, about the middle of the 15th century. Mr. Littlehales has likewise copied, and will edit for the Society the very interesting set of Accounts of Prior Moore of Worcester, 1518-35, besides *The Pore Caitiff*, &c. &c.

The second promise of help comes, most gratifyingly, from the University of Chicago. Two Professors in the English Department there, Mr. MacClintock and Mr. Oscar Triggs—with the assent of their Principal, Dr. Harper—agreed to edit and print at the Chicago University Press, two Early English Texts to be issued jointly by the University and the E. E. T. Society, the Society paying for its electrotypes. Prof. MacClintock chose the theological collection of John Lacy of Newcastle, A.D. 1434 (see p. 10 below), and Prof. Triggs chose Lydgate's *Assembly of the Gods*. They hope that, notwithstanding their great World's Fair, these Texts will be issued in 1893.

Such relief as the E. E. T. Soc. gets from the above-named helpers will be devoted to its Reprinting Fund. The out-of-print Texts for 1866 are greatly wanted by members and collectors to complete their sets of the Society's publications.

An urgent appeal is hereby made to Members to increase the list of Subscribers to the E. E. Text Society. It is nothing less than a crying scandal that the Hellenic Society should have nearly 900 members, while the Early English Text Society has only a few over 300!

The Original-Series Texts for 1896 and 1897 will be chosen from books already at press: Richard Misyu's—he was Prior of Lincoln—englisgings in 1434 and 1435 of Richard Rolle of Hampole's *Fire of Love* and *Mending of Life*, edited by Robert Harvey, M.A., Headmaster of the Cork Grammar School; Part II of the *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall; Mr. Gollancz's re-edited *Exeter-Book*—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—Part II; Miss Pemberton's edition of the



fragments of Queen Elizabeth's englishings (in the Record Office) from Boethius, Plutarch, &c.; Dr. Furnivall's edition of the *Lichfield Gilds* is also all printed, and waits only for the Introduction, which Prof. E. C. K. Gonner has kindly undertaken to write for the book. Prof. Mead has sent to press the completion of the prose *Merlin*, for which the Society has been looking in vain from its Treasurer since 1870. Miss Mary Bateson has at press George Ashby's *Active Policy of a Prince*, &c., from the unique MS. A.D. 1463. Prof. Ingram's edition of the english *Expugnatio Hibernica* of Giraldus Cambrensis, with interesting dialectic features, is also at press. Mr. Utley is home from Roumania, and promises to finish *Lyndesay's Works* this year. Dr. G. Herzfeld's re-edition of the Anglo-Saxon *Martyrology* is all in type. Part II of Dr. Holthausen's *Vices and Virtues* needs only its Glossary.

Mr. Steele has in type two prose englishings of the *Secreta Secretorum* from MSS. at Lambeth, the second of which is very rich in new words. A version by James Yonge in 1428, made for the Earl of Ormonde, will be copied from its Rawlinson MS. at Oxford, and collated with the later Lambeth MS. All three versions differ widely in contents and words.

The Texts for the Extra Series in 1895 and 1896 will be chosen from the prose Romance of *Melusine*, edited from the unique MS. by Mr. A. K. Donald (text all printed); *The Three Kings' Sons*, edited from its unique MS. by Dr. Leon Kellner (at press); *The Towneley Plays*, re-edited from the unique MS. by Mr. George England and A. W. Pollard, M.A.; Part II of *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England (at press); the Parallel-Text of the only two MSS. of the *Owl and Nightingale*, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes (at press); Hoccleve's englishing of *De Regimine Principum*, 1411-12, edited by Dr. Furnivall; Deguillville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, three prose versions—two English, one French—edited by G. N. Currie, M.A. Some of these Texts will be ready in 1893. Members are therefore askt to send Advance Subscriptions in 1893, for 1894, 1895 and 1896, in order that the 1894-6 books may be issued to them as soon as the editions are finisht. The Society's experience has shown that Editors must be taken when they are in the humour for work. All real Students and furtherers of the Society's purpose will be ready to push on the issue of Texts. Those Members who care only a guinea a year (or can afford only that sum) for the history of our language and our nation's thought, will not be hurt by those who care more, getting their books in advance; on the contrary, they will be benefited, as each successive year's work will then be ready for issue on New Year's Day. Members are askt to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finisht all the Texts that the Society ought to print.

Mr. G. N. Currie is preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguillville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Mr. Henry Hucks Gibbs's MS., Mr. Gibbs having generously promist to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS.

Guillaume de Deguillville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse *Pelerinaige de l'Homme* in 1330-1 when he was 36.<sup>1</sup> Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it, and this is the only one that has been printed. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330-1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Univ. Coll. and Corpus Christi, Oxford<sup>2</sup>; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740. A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited by Mr. Sidney J. Hertridge for the E. E. Text Society. The Laud MS. 740 was somewhat condensat and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library:<sup>3</sup> "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his *Pilgrim's Progress*. It will be edited by Mr. Currie for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Hertridge's edition of the *Gesta Romanorum* for the Society. In February 1464,<sup>4</sup> Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguillville's first verse *Pelerinaige* into a prose *Pelerinage de la vie humaine*.<sup>5</sup> By the kindness of Mr. Hy. Hucks Gibbs, as above mentiond, Gallopes's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

<sup>1</sup> He was born about 1295. See Abbé GOUJET's *Bibliothèque française*, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.

<sup>3</sup> Another MS. is in the Pepys Library.

<sup>4</sup> According to Mr. Hy. Hucks Gibbs's MS.

<sup>5</sup> These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.



The Second Version of Deguilleville's *Pelerinage de l'Homme*, A.D. 1355 or -6, was englished in verse by Lydgate in 1426. Of Lydgate's poem, the larger part is in the Cotton MS. Vitellius C. xiii (leaves 2-308). This MS. leaves out Chaucer's englishing of Deguilleville's *ABC* or *Prayer to the Virgin*, of which the successive stanzas start with A, B, C, and run all thro' the alphabet; and it has 2 gaps, of which most of the second can be filled up from the end of the other imperfect MS. Cotton, Tiberius A vii. The rest of the stoppages must be got from the original French in Harleian 4399,<sup>1</sup> and Additional 22,937<sup>2</sup> and 25,594<sup>3</sup> in the British Museum. Lydgate's version will be edited in due course for the Society.

Besides his first *Pelerinage de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separée du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Iesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soule* (perhaps in part by Lydgate), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,<sup>4</sup> at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of additions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englisher's interesting Epilog in the Egerton MS. This prose englishing of the *Soule* will be edited for the Society after that of the *Man* is finished, and will have Gallopes's French opposite it, from Mr. Gibbs's MS., as his gift to the Society. Of the *Pilgrimage of Jesus*, no englishing is known.

As to the MS. Anglo-Saxon Psalters, Dr. Hy. Sweet has edited the oldest MS., the Vespasian, in his *Oldest English Texts* for the Society, and Mr. Harsley has edited the latest, c. 1150, Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter. Dr. Logeman then raised the question of how the other MSS. should be treated; and he was authorised to prepare a Parallel-Text edition of the first ten Psalms from all the MSS., to test whether the best way of printing them would be in one group, or in two—in each case giving parts of all the MSS. on one page—under their respective Roman and Gallican Latin originals. If collation proves that all the MSS. cannot go together on successive pages, there will be two Parallel-Texts, one of the A.Sax. MSS. following the Roman version, and the other, of those glossing the Gallican; but every effort will be made to get the whole into one Parallel-Text. This Text will be an extravagance; but as the Society has not yet committed one in Anglo-Saxon, it will indulge in one now; and every student will rejoice at having the whole Psalter material before him in the most convenient form. Dr. Logeman and Mr. Harsley will be joint editors of the Parallel-Text. The Early English Psalters are all independent versions, and will follow separately in due course.

Through the good offices of the Examiners, some of the books for the Early-English Examinations of the University of London will be chosen from the Society's publications, the Committee having undertaken to supply such books to students at a large reduction in price. The profits from these sales will be applied to the Society's Reprints. Five of its 1866 Texts, and one of its 1867, still need reproducing. Donations for this purpose will be welcome. They should be paid to the Hon. Sec., Mr. W. A. Dalziel, 67 Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Society cannot leave out any of them, even though some are dull. The Sinners would doubtless be much more interesting. But in many Saints' Lives will be found valuable incidental details of our forefathers' social state, and all are worthful for the history of our language. The Lives may be looked on as the religious romances or story-books of their period.

The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's englishing of *Bartholomeus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopædia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker will edit it. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfric's prose,<sup>5</sup> Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfric's Metrical

<sup>1</sup> 15th cent., containing only the *Vie humaine*.

<sup>2</sup> 15th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.

<sup>3</sup> 14th cent., containing the *Vie humaine* and the 2nd Pilgrimage, *de l'Ame*: both incomplete.

<sup>4</sup> Ab. 1430, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny &c.—and damned souls, fires, angels &c.

<sup>5</sup> Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfric Society, are still in stock.

Of the Vercelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.

Homilies. Prof. Kölbing has also undertaken for the Society's Extra Series a Parallel-Text of all the six MSS. of the *Ancient Riddle*, one of the most important foundation-documents of Early English. Mr. Harvey, too, means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

In case more Texts are ready at any time than can be paid for by the current year's income, they will be dated the next year, and issued in advance to such Members as will pay advance subscriptions. The 1886-7 delay in getting out Texts must not occur again, if it can possibly be avoided. The Director has in hand for future volunteer Editors copies of 2 or 3 MSS.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent under General Zupitza, Colonels Kölbing and Horstmann, volunteers Hausknecht, Einkenkel, Haenisch, Kaluza, Hupe, Adam, Holthausen, &c. &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Dr. Erdmann; Holland, Dr. H. Logeman; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser;—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi; while America is represented by Prof. Child, Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Prof. Mead, Prof. Perrin, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has cald forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

### ORIGINAL SERIES.

Half the Publications for 1866 (13, 14, 15, 22) are out of print, but will be gradually reprinted. Subscribers who desire the issue for 1866 should send their guineas at once to the Hon. Secretary, in order that other Texts for 1866 may be sent to press.

*The Publications for 1864-1894 (one guinea each year, save those for 1866 now half out of print, two guineas) are:—*

- |  |          |                  |
|--|----------|------------------|
| 1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.                          | 16s.     | 1864             |
| 2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.   | 4s.      | "                |
| 3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L.                                    | 4s.      | "                |
| 4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.                               | 10s.     | "                |
| 5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley.            | 4s.      | 1865             |
| 6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.   | 8s.      | "                |
| 7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.   | 8s.      | "                |
| 8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock.  | 7s.      | "                |
| 9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall.        | 10s.     | "                |
| 10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley.   | 2s. 6d.  | "                |
| 11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A.                                     | 3s.      | "                |
| 12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.  | 1s.      | "                |
| 13. Seinte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne: to be re-edited by Prof. Herford, M.A., Ph.D. |          | 1866             |
| 14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blanchefleur, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, B.D.                              |          | "                |
| 15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall.                                       |          | "                |
| 16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall.                                    | 1s.      | [In print.]      |
| 17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.                       | 1s.      | [In print.]      |
| 18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne.  |          | [In print.]      |
| 19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A.  | 3s. 6d.  | [In print.]      |
| 20. Hampole's English Prose Treatises, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.   | 1s.      | [In print.]      |
| 21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley.  | 4s.      | [In print.]      |
| 22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.  |          | "                |
| 23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyrt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.                                   | 10s. 6d. | [In print.]      |
| 24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall.    |          | [At Press.] 1867 |
| 25. The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Clene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall.       | 1s.      | "                |
| 26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS. (ab. 1440), ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.    | 2s.      | "                |
| 27. Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley.                   | 12s.     | "                |
| 28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.         | 6s.      | "                |
| 29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris.                   | 7s.      | "                |
| 30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.   | 2s.      | "                |



31. Myre's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s. 1868
32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruyng, Curtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Book, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s. "
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. 8s. "
34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.). Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. "
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s. "
36. Merlin, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie. 12s. 1869
37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaitis. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. "
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part I. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d. "
39. Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Pantton. Pt. I. 10s. 6d. "
40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21s. 1870
41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. "
42. Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s. "
43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 3s. "
44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathea, or The Holy Grail: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph: ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5s. 1871
45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10s. "
46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s. "
48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s. 1872
50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10s. "
51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock. 2s. "
52. Palladius on Husbandrie, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. 1873
54. The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeles (by William, the author of the Vision) and The Crowned King; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
55. Generydes, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s. "
56. The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Pantton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d. "
58. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s. "
59. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 15s. 1875
60. Meditacyuns on the Soper of our Lorde (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. "
61. The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceuldoune, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d. "
62. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s. 1876
63. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s. "
64. Francis Thynne's Emblemes and Epigrams, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. "
65. Be Domes Dæge (Bede's *De Die Judicii*), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s. "
66. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s. 1877
67. Notes on Piers Plowman, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s. "
68. The "Cursor Mundi," in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s. 1878
69. Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s. "
70. Generydes, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s. "
71. The Lay Folks Mass-Book, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25s. 1879
72. Palladius on Husbandrie, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. "
73. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. English Works of Wyclif, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s. "
75. Catholicon Anglicum, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1483, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Herrtage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20s. 1881
76. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, in MS. Cott. Jul. E. 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
77. Beowulf, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. The Fifty Earliest English Wills, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. "
79. King Alfred's Orosius, from Lord Tollemache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13s. 1883
- Extra Volume.* Facsimile of the Epinal Glossary. 8th cent., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15s. "
80. The Early-English Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Eikenkel. 12s. 1884
81. Piers Plowman: Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
82. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E. 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12s. 1885
83. The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20s. "
84. Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,' No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
85. The Three Kings of Cologne. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s. "
86. Prose Lives of Women Saints, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s. "
87. Early English Verse Lives of Saints (earliest version). Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
88. Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburgh (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s. "

89. *Vices and Virtues*, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen. Part I. 8s. 1888  
 90. *Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet*, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman. 12s. "  
 91. *Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books*, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10s. "  
 92. *Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter*, from the Trin. Cambr. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12s. 1889  
 93. *Defensor's Liber Scintillarum*, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12s. "  
 94. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part III., ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 12s. 1890  
 95. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-edited by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I. 18s. "  
 (With Reprints of No. 16, *The Book of Quinte Essence*, and No. 26, *Religious Pieces*, from R. Thornton's MS.)  
 96. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-edited by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. II. 15s. 1891  
 97. *The Earliest English Prose Psalter*, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part I. 15s. "  
 98. *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.*, Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1892  
 99. *Cursor Mundi*. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "  
 100. *Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine*, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s. 1893  
 101. *Cursor Mundi*. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s. "  
 102. *Lanfranc's Chirurgie*, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker. Part I. 20s. 1894  
 103. *The Prymer or Lay-Folk's Prayer-Book*, Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. 10s. "  
 104. *The Exeter Book* (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s. 1895  
 105. *The Legend of the Cross*, from a 12th century MS., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. 1896  
 106. 1896  
 107. "

### EXTRA SERIES.

*The Publications for 1867-1893 (one guinea each year) are:—*

- I. *William of Palerne*; or, *William and the Werwolf*. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13s. 1867  
 II. *Early English Pronunciation* with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s. "  
 III. *Caxton's Book of Curtesye*, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s. 1868  
 IV. *Havelok the Dane*. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. "  
 V. *Chaucer's Boethius*. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s. "  
 VI. *Chevelere Assigne*. Re-edited from the unique MS. by H. H. Gibbs, Esq., M.A. 3s. "  
 VII. *Early English Pronunciation*, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s. 1869  
 VIII. *Queene Elizabethes Achademy*, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 12s. "  
 IX. *Awdley's Fraternitee of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat*, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d. "  
 X. *Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3*. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s. 1870  
 XI. *Barbour's Bruce*, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s. "  
 XII. *England in Henry VIII's Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset*, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.) 1871  
 XIII. *A Supplicacyon of the Beggars*, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with *A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep*, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "  
 XIV. *Early English Pronunciation*, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s. "  
 XV. *Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth*, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s. 1872  
 XVI. *Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe*. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6s. "  
 XVII. *The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D.*, with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10s. "  
 XVIII. *The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D.*, ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s. 1873  
 XIX. *Oure Ladyes Myroure*, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s. "  
 XX. *Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail* (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. 8s. 1874  
 XXI. *Barbour's Bruce*, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s. "  
 XXII. *Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderick Mors* (ab. 1542): and *The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London*, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s. "  
 XXIII. *Early English Pronunciation*, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s. "  
 XXIV. *Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail*, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10s. 1875  
 XXV. *Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version*, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20s. "  
 XXVI. *Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version*, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14s. 1876  
 XXVII. *Bp. Fisher's English Works* (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text. 16s. "  
 XXVIII. *Lonelich's Holy Grail*, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 10s. 1877  
 XXIX. *Barbour's Bruce*. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s. "  
 XXX. *Lonelich's Holy Grail*, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 15s. 1878  
 XXXI. *The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus*, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "  
 XXXII. *Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time."* Pt. I. *Starkey's Life and Letters*, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 8s. "  
 XXXIII. *Gesta Romanorum* (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s. 1879  
 XXXIV. *The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbras*, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 15s. "



|  |      |
|--|------|
| XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege off Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 12s.              | 1880 |
| XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 16s.                  | 1881 |
| XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 15s.                | 1881 |
| XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hausknecht. 15s.                          | 1881 |
| XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Coylear, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s.             | 1882 |
| XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I. 15s.              | 1883 |
| XLI. Charlemagne Romances:—8. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. II. 15s.             | 1883 |
| XLII. Guy of Warwick: 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Caius MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 15s.                | 1883 |
| XLIII. Charlemagne Romances:—9. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. III. 15s.          | 1884 |
| XLIV. Charlemagne Romances:—10. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15s.             | 1885 |
| XLV. Charlemagne Romances:—11. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20s.                  | 1885 |
| XLVI. Sir Bevis of Hamton, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part I. 10s.      | 1886 |
| XLVII. The Wars of Alexander, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 20s.                                      | 1886 |
| XLVIII. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part II. 10s.                                       | 1887 |
| XLIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s.         | 1887 |
| L. Charlemagne Romances:—12. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV. 5s.              | 1887 |
| LI. Torrent of Portyngale, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10s.               | 1887 |
| LII. Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578 (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10s.        | 1888 |
| LIII. Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15s.        | 1888 |
| LIV. Caxton's Englishing of Alain Chartier's Curial, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5s.           | 1889 |
| LV. Barbour's Bruce, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s.                                       | 1889 |
| LVI. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. V., the present English Dialects. 25s.    | 1890 |
| LVII. Caxton's Eneydos, A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 13s. | 1890 |
| LVIII. Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine, c. 1489, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner. 17s. | 1891 |
| LIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s.        | 1891 |
| LX. Lydgate's Temple of Glass, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schiek. 15s.                                | 1892 |
| LXI. Hoccleve's Minor Poems, I., from the Philipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15s.          | 1892 |
| LXII. The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling. Part I. 15s.              | 1893 |
| LXIII. Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi, englished ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15s.     | 1893 |
| LXIV. Caxton's Godfrey of Bolyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s.             | 1894 |
| LXV. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part III. 15s.   | 1894 |
| LXVI. Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philisoffres, ab. 1445—50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s.                   | 1895 |
| LXVII.   | 1895 |
| LXVIII.  | 1895 |

## EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Cover of the Early English Text Society's last books, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

### ORIGINAL SERIES.

- Thomas Robinson's Life and Death of Mary Magdalene, from the 2 MSS., ab. 1620 A.D. (*Text in type*).  
The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part II.  
Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by I. Gollancz, M.A.  
Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthausen.  
Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part IV, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D.  
All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.  
The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Logeman and F. Harsley, B.A.  
Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., ed. Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.  
Byrhtferth's Handboec, edited by Prof. G. Hempel.  
The Secret of Secrets, 3 prose versions from MSS., 2 at Lambeth, and one by Jas. Younge, 1420, ed. R. Steele, B.A.  
The Rule of St. Benet: 5 Texts, Anglo-Saxon, Early English, Caxton, &c., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.  
The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.  
The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. Mr. T. Austin.  
Ailred's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.  
Loneleich's Merlin (verse), from the unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson and Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D.  
Merlin (prose), Part IV., containing Preface, Index, and Glossary. Edited by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.  
Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS.  
Early English Confessionals, edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.  
A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.  
Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.  
Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, edited by Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.

- Lanfranc's *Cirurgie*, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.  
 William of Nassington's *Mirror of Life*, from Jn. of Waldby. (*Editor Wanted*).  
 A Chronicle of England to 1327 A.D., Northern verse (42,000 lines), ab. 1400 A.D., ed. M. L. Perrin, B.A.  
 More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House. (*Editor Wanted*).  
 Early Lincoln Wills and Documents from the Bishops' Registers, &c., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.  
 Early Canterbury Wills, edited by William Cowper, B.A., and J. Meadows Cowper.  
 Early Norwich Wills, edited by Walter Rye, and F. J. Furnivall.  
 The Cartularies of Oseney Abbey and Godstow Nunnery, englisht ab. 1450, ed. Rev. A. Clark, M.A.  
 The Macro Moralities, edited from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., by Alfred W. Pollard, M.A.  
 A Troy-Book, edited from the unique Land MS. 595, by Dr. E. Wülfing.  
 Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph.D.  
 Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.  
 Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
 Seire Mori, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Miss Rosa Elverson, LL.A., and Miss Florence Gilbert.  
 Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson.  
 De Guilleville's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by G. N. Currie, M.A.  
 Stories for Sermons, edited from the Addit. MS. 25,719 by Dr. Wieck of Coblenz.  
 A 15th Century Treatise on Arithmetic, edited by Robert Steele, B.A.  
 Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.  
 Jacob's Well, from a Salisbury Cathedral MS., ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.  
 The Diary of Prior Moore of Worcester, A.D. 1518-35, from the unique MS., ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.  
 The pore Caitiff, from its MSS., ed. Henry Littlehales, Esq.  
 Early English Homilies in Harl. 2276 &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Friedländer.  
 Promptorium Parvulorum, c. 1440, from the Winchester MS., ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A.

### EXTRA SERIES.

- Vicary's *Anatomie*, 1548, ed. 1577, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part II. [*At Press*.]  
 Bp. Fisher's *English Works*, Pt. II., with his *Life and Letters*, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. [*At Press*.]  
 William Staunton's *St. Patrick's Purgatory*, &c., ed. J. T. Herbert, M.A.  
 A Parallel-text of the 6 MSS. of the *Ancren Riwle*, ed. Prof. Dr. E. Kölbing.  
 Trevisa's *Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.  
 Bullein's *Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence*, 1564, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. H. and M. Bullen. Pt. II.  
 The Romance of Boetius and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
 The Romance of Clariodus, re-edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
 Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
 Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.  
 Robert of Brunne's *Chronicle of England*, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.  
 Maundeville's *Voiage and Travaile*, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c., by Miss M. Bateson.  
 Arthur and Merlin, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
 Guy of Warwick, Copland's version, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.  
 The Siege of Jerusalem, Text A, edited from the MSS. by Dr. F. Kopka.  
 Liber Fundacionis Ecclesie Sancti Bartholomei Londoniarum: englisht ab. 1425, ed. Norman Moore, M.D.  
 Awdeley's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Douce 302, by Dr. E. Wülfing.  
 William of Shoreham's Works, re-edited by Professor Konrath, Ph.D.  
 The Wyse Chylde and other early Treatises on Education, Northwich School, Harl. 2099 &c., ed. G. Collar, B.A.  
 Caxton's *Dictes and Sayengis of Philosophers*, 1477, with Lord Tollemeche's MS. version, ed. S. I. Butler, Esq.  
 Caxton's *Book of the Ordre of Chyualry*, collated with Loutfut's Scotch copy, ed. F. S. Ellis, Esq.  
 Lydgate's *Court of Sapience*, edited by Dr. Borsdorf.  
 Lydgate's *Lyfe of oure Lady*, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.  
 Lydgate's *Reason and Sensuality*, edited by Dr. J. Schick.  
 Lydgate's *Life of St. Edmund*, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.  
 Jn. Hart's *Orthographie*, MS. 1551; black and fonetic letters, 1569, ed. Dr. Otto Jespersen.  
 Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.  
 The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.  
 The Romance of Sir Degare, re-edited by Dr. Breul.  
 Mulcaster's *Positions* 1581, and *Elementarie* 1582, ed. Dr. Th. Klaehr, Dresden.  
 Caxton's *Recuyell of the Histories of Troye*, edited by H. Halliday Sparling.

The Society is anxious to hear of more early Dialect MSS. Misyn's englishings, in the Lincoln dialect, 1434-5, of two of Hampole's Tracts, are in type. John Lacy's copy, in the Newcastle-on-Tyne dialect, 1434, of some theological tracts in MS. 94 of St. John's College, Oxford, is to be edited by Prof. McClintock. Prof. Napier will reprint his copy of a bit of a Hymn in the Chester dialect late in the 13th century. More Hampoles in the Yorkshire dialect will follow. The Lincoln and Norfolk Wills, already copied by or for Dr. Furnivall, unluckily show but little traces of dialect.

More members (to bring money) and Editors (to bring brains) are wanted by the Society.

# Lanfrank's "Science of Chirurgie."

---

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

1894.





PR  
1119  
Az  
no. 102

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

61034  
22-1-37





## CORRECTIONS.

Page 18, line 17, *for vndir oon of þese iij entenciouns read vndir þese iij entenciouns* (note : both MSS. insert *oon of*)

- „ 19, „ 18, *for vp on read vpon*
- „ 25, „ 1, *for white oute read white* (note : MS. inserts *oute*)
- „ 25, „ 12, *put a semicolon after lungis*
- „ 27, „ 13, *cancel to þe maris*
- „ 29, „ 7, *cancel the comma between brayn and & þe nucha, and put a comma after þe nucha and after þe lymes*
- „ 30, note 3, *for fila read villi*
- „ 31, line 7, *for vunnus read vulnus*
- „ 34, „ 8, *put a full stop after senerwe, and transfer note 2 to the preceding þat*
- „ 38, „ 10, *for humourer read humoures*
- „ 39, „ 14 and 33, *cancel the semicolon after lyme*
- „ 43, „ 10, *put a comma after drie*
- „ 46, „ 17, *cancel the inverted commas*
- „ 49, „ 6, *put a comma after myzt*
- „ 52, „ 16, *for eills read ellis*
- „ 55, „ 18, *cancel the inverted commas*
- „ 77, „ 1, *put an asterisk and ellipsis after condicioun*
- „ 77, „ 19, *put an asterisk after askyth*
- „ 83, „ 1, *cancel note 1*
- „ 89, „ 6, p. 90, l. 16, p. 99, l. 6, *for compouned read compouned*
- „ 108, „ 19, *cancel the comma after clepid*
- „ 110, sidenote line 1, *for Tassillus read Passillus*



# CONTENTS.

*Ashmole MS. 1396.*

<sup>1</sup>The firste tretis of<sup>1</sup>urgerie halt<sup>1</sup> wipinne him general ruelis & <sup>[<sup>1</sup> leaf 1]</sup>  
 4 canones, & haþ .iij. techingis / þe firste techinge of<sup>1</sup> þe firste tretis,  
 haþ þre chapitlis. ¶ Cap. j. of<sup>1</sup> þe first tretis of<sup>1</sup> þe firste techynge <sup>page 7</sup>  
 is of definicionis & of parties þat ben sugettis to urgerie / Cap. ij. <sup>page 8</sup>  
 is of þe qualite, foorme & maners of a surgien / ¶ Cap. iij. is of <sup>page 18</sup>  
 8 intencioun of a surgien / The secunde techynge of<sup>1</sup> þe first tretis <sup>page 20</sup>  
 is on summe & oon chapitle of anotomie, & þat is to seie: þe  
 knowleche of<sup>1</sup> þe foorme, & þe complexiouns, & þe helpingis of  
 alle þe senews, veines, grustlis, bawnis, guttis, bladdre, lyuere,  
 12 milte, & alle opere synguler lymes, & of þe engendringe of þe child  
 in þe modir wombe / The first<sup>2</sup> techinge of<sup>1</sup> þe first tretis haþ <sup>page 31</sup>  
 .xv. chapitlis /

¶ Cap. j. of<sup>1</sup> þe þridde techinge of<sup>1</sup> þe .j.<sup>3</sup> tretis <sup>is of a comoun</sup> <sup>[<sup>4</sup> leaf 1, bk.]</sup>  
 16 word of<sup>1</sup> woundis, & olde woundis / <sup>p. 31</sup>

<sup>2</sup> first, mistake for þridde, as below. <sup>3</sup> Chafed: not room for first.

*Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.*

## <sup>5</sup>Assit Principio Sancta Maria meo

<sup>[<sup>5</sup> fol. 31 a]</sup>

þe ffirste tretys of urgerie halt with inne hym genera<sup>1</sup> Rulys  
 20 & Canons, & hath þre techynges. þe ffirste techynge of þe furste  
 tretys haþ þre Chapytles. Cap. j. of þe furste techynge of the firste  
 tretys of dyffinicionis & of parties þat beþ suggettys to surgerye.  
 Cap ij. is of qualite, fforme & Maners of a Surgien.  
 24 ¶ Cap. iij. ys of Intencioun of a Surgien. þe secunde techynge  
 of þe ffirste tretys ys O summe & on Chapitell of a notamye, þat is  
 to sugge þe knowlechyng of þe forme, & þe complexion, & þe  
 helpynges of alle þe synwes, veyne, grustlys, bawnys, guttys,  
 28 bleddre, lyuere, Mylte, & alle opere senglere lymes, & of þe engend-  
 ringe of þe child in þe modire wombe. The þridde techynge of þe  
 firste tretys hath xv. ChapyteHs. Cap. j. on of þe þridde techynge,  
 of þe þridde tretys, ys a comyn worde of woundes & olde woundes.

SURGERY.

B

|                  |  |          |
|------------------|--|----------|
| Ashmole<br>1396. | ¶ Cap. ij. of heelynge of a wounde I-maad in fleisch /                         | p. 33    |
|                  | ¶ Cap. iij. of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe /                           | p. 39    |
|                  | ¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe boon /  | p. 47    |
|                  | ¶ Cap. v. of a wounde maad wiþ smytynge /                                      | p. 50 4  |
|                  | ¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde bollid and out of kynde, to hoot or to<br>coold /       | p. 54    |
|                  | ¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wode hound or of a uenymous<br>beest /            | p. 59 8  |
|                  | ¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of ioynthe and to-broken /                 | p. 62    |
|                  | ¶ Cap. ix. of to miche flux of blood of a wounde /                             | p. 64    |
|                  | ¶ Cap. x. of dietynge of men þat ben woundid /                                 | p. 72    |
|                  | ¶ Capitulum xi <sup>m</sup> of olde woundis /                                  | p. 77 12 |
|                  | ¶ Capitulum xij <sup>m</sup> of a festre <sup>1</sup> /                        | p. 89    |
|                  | ¶ Cap. xij. of a canker I-woundid /  | p. 92    |
|                  | ¶ Cap. xiiij. of causis þat letten helynge of woundis and of<br>olde woundis / | p. 97 16 |
|                  | ¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comeþ in a wounde /                                   | p. 99    |

**T**he secunde tretis is of particuler woundis of alle lymes of office  
from þe heed to the foot, techinge þe anotomie of alle lymes  
from þe heed to þe foot, þat happiþ to be woundid; & þou haddist 20  
tofore þe anotomie <sup>2</sup>of veynes & senewis, & opere smale lymes.

[<sup>3</sup> leaf 2]

<sup>1</sup> After *festre* in a later hand is written *festula*.

|                     |   |    |
|---------------------|---|----|
| Add. MS.<br>12,056. | ¶ Cap. ij. off helynge of a wounde y-makyde in flesch.                      |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. iij. off helynge of a wonde y-makyde in þe synwe.                    |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe bon.   | 24 |
|                     | ¶ Cap. v. of a wounde y-makyd with smytinge.                                |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde to bolled & out of kynde, to hote opere<br>to colde  |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wod hound, opere a venymouse 28<br>beste.      |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of Ioynte & to-broken.                  |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. ix. of to myche flux of blod of wounde.                              |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. x. of dyotyng of men þat beþ y-woundyde.                             | 32 |
|                     | ¶ Cap. xj. of olde woundes  |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. xij. off a ffestre   |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. xiiij. of a canere y-woundyd   |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. xiiij off causes þat lettyde helynge of woundes & olde 36<br>woundes |    |
|                     | ¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comyth to wounde                                   |    |

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 31 b] ¶ **þe secunde tretis** is of particulers woundes of alle lymes of  
office from þe hed to þe <sup>3</sup>ffot, & techyng þe Anotamy of alle lymes 40  
from þe hed to þe fote, þat happyde to be woundyde; & þou haddist



And so whanne þis tretis is ful eendid, þou hast anotamie of alle lymes of þi bodi, & þis tretis vnder oon summe conteyneþ x. chapitlis. Ashmole 1396.

- 4 ¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretis is of woundis of þe heed and is anotamie / p. 106  
 ¶ Cap. ij. is of woundis of þe face, and of anotamie of þe same face / p. 141  
 8 ¶ Cap. iiij. is of anotamie of þe necke, and of woundis of þe same / p. 145  
 ¶ Cap. iiij. of woundis of schuldris, armes and hondis, & anotamie of þe same / p. 155  
 12 ¶ Cap. v.<sup>1</sup> of woundis of þe brest, & lymes þat ben wiþinne þe brest, & anotamie of þe same. p. 161  
 ¶ Cap. vj. of woundis of þe rigboon & of whirlebones of þe rigge, & of anotamie of þe same / p. 166  
 16 ¶ Cap. vij. of woundis of þe wesounde þat goþ to þe stomak, & of þe stomak, and of þe guttis, and þe wombe anotamie / p. 167  
 ¶ Cap. viij. of woundis of þe lyuere & splene. p. 171  
 ¶ Cap. ix. of woundis of þe 3erde, þat is, in þi pintil, and  
 20 anotamie / p. 173

<sup>1</sup> v. above line.

to forn þe Anotamye of veynes & synwes, & opere smale lymes, & so whanne þis tretys is fully endyde þou hast anotamye of alle lymes of thy body. And þis tretys under summe conteynde x. Add. MS. 12,056.

- 24 Chapytles.  
 ¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretys is of woundys of þe hed, and hys Anotamye.  
 ¶ Cap. ij. is of woundes of þe face, & anotamye of þe same  
 28 vysage.  
 ¶ Cap. iiij. of Anotamie of þe nekke, and of þe woundes of þe same.  
 ¶ Cap. iiij. of woundys of schuldre. Armys & hondys, &  
 32 Anotamie of þe same.  
 ¶ Cap. v. of woundes of þe brest, and lymes þat betwixt ynne the brest, & Anotamye of þe same.  
 ¶ Cap. vj. of woundes of þe ruggebone & of whirele bonys of  
 36 þe rugge, & Anotamye of þe same.  
 ¶ Cap. vij. of woundes off the wesand þat goth to the stomak, & of þe stomak, & þe guttes, & þe wombe, & Anotamie of the same.  
 40 ¶ Cap. viij. of woundes of þe lyffere & the splene.  
 ¶ Cap. ix. of woundes of þe 3erde, þat ys thyn pyntel, & Anotamie.

|                  |  |        |
|------------------|--|--------|
| Ashmole<br>1396. | ¶ Cap. x. of woundis of þe haunche, þies & feet, and anotamie of þe same / | p. 176 |
| sign. ij.        | <i>The Ashmole MS. breaks off here.</i>                                    |        |

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Add. MS.<br>12,056. | ¶. Cap. x. of woundes of the hanche, thyes, ffet, and Anotamye. 4 |
|---------------------|---|

|               |  |           |
|---------------|--|-----------|
|               | ¶ þe þridde tretis is of cures of opere seknesse, þat bep noȝt woundes þat mowen falle to dyuers lymes from þe hed to þe fote, þat comyn to be helyde off a surgien, & haþ þre techynges : |           |
|               | þe furste techynge of þe þridde tretys hath viij Chapyttles :  | 8         |
|               | ¶ Cap. j of the furste techynge of þe þridde tretys ys off Ornamentys of heer.   | p. 178    |
|               | ¶ Cap. ij ys of ffallynge off heer & of scabbe.  | p. 180    |
|               | ¶ Cap. iij of whelkys in þe vysage, & scalys and crustlys  | p. 188 12 |
| [1 fol. 32 a] | ¶ Cap. iiij of Morfu, ffrakles, <sup>1</sup> Goute, rosed of þe vysage, & Cicatrices of woundes  | p. 189    |
|               | ¶ Cap. v of zycchynges & scabbe  | p. 191    |
|               | ¶ Cap. vi of drye scabbe & wete scabbe   | p. 193 16 |
|               | ¶ Cap. vii of lepre, & of knowlechynges of leprys Man  | p. 196    |
|               | ¶ Cap. viii of fastnynges a lene lyme, & to lenen a fat lyme   | p. 199    |
|               | ¶ þe secunde techynge of þe þridde tretys is of apostemes, & hath xvij Chapittles  | 20        |
|               | ¶ Cap. j of þe secunde techynge of þe þridde techynge, of generaciones of humour & here lyknesse   | p. 201    |
|               | ¶ Cap. ij of vniuersel word of enpostemes  | p. 204    |
|               | ¶ Cap. iij of enposteme of the hed & watire congregated in children hedys.   | p. 214    |
|               | ¶ Cap. iiij of emposteme undire þe rote of þe ere.   | p. 216    |
|               | ¶ Cap. v of aposteme of þe nekke & þe þrote.   | p. 217    |
|               | ¶ Cap. vj of Aposteme undire þe Arme hole.   | p. 222 28 |
|               | ¶ Cap. vii of Aposteme þat comeþ in the arme from þe schuldre to þe Elbowe.  | p. 223    |
|               | ¶ Cap. viij off Aposteme þat comyþ on þe sydes.  | p. 224    |
|               | ¶ [Cap.] ix of Aposteme þat comeþ aboute þe Mouth of þe stomak.  | p. 226    |
|               | ¶ Cap. x of apostem that comyþ in þe grynde  | p. 226    |
|               | ¶ Cap. xj of aposteme þat comyþ in þe hanche & þe thyes.   | p. 227    |
|               | ¶ Cap. xij of Aposteme off þe pyntel & þe ballokes   | p. 228 36 |
|               | ¶ Cap. xiii of scrofules & glandeles, þat buþ Curnellys þat comyþ in þe flessch  | p. 229    |
|               | ¶ Cap. xiiij of Cancre þat is nouȝt to-broke, & is cure  | p. 231    |
|               | ¶ Cap. xv of bocche þat hongyþ as swynes babbe undire here   | 40        |
|               | nekkys   | p. 232    |
|               | ¶ Cap. xvj of Akþe of Ioyntes  | p. 233    |

- ¶ The þridde techynge of þe þridde tretys haþ xviij Chapittles Add. MS.  
 ¶ Cap. I of seknesse of eyzen, & Anotamy of þe same p. 240 12.056.
- 4 ¶ Cap. ij of seknesse of þe eren p. 254  
 ¶ Cap. iiij of seknesse of þe nose p. 258  
 ¶ Cap. iiiij of seknesse of þe mouth p. 260  
 ¶ Cap. v of seknesse of a wommans tetys . to grete, to fatte,  
 1 opere to lene. p. 265 [1 fol. 32 b]
- 8 ¶ Cap. vi of eiphac þat is to-broke, opere that is to lose p. 268  
 ¶ Cap. viij of brokyn ballok p. 269  
 ¶ Cap. viij of stone in þe bleddre p. 273  
 ¶ Cap. ix of hermafrodite, þat is to seye, þat hath þe schappe of
- 12 Man & womman, & opere of wommen þat haþ scyne withynne here  
 schape / þat sche ne may nouzt conseywe þe seed of man  
 ¶ Cap. x of water of men þat beþ in þe dropsye p. 281  
 ¶ Cap. xj of fycus, þat is, a waxynge up on þe hed of þe 3erde
- 16 cancre fleynge, bocche in þe pyntel & olde wounde. p. 287  
 ¶ Cap. xij of emeroydes, festre & rogadyes, þat beþ slyttes in  
 þe Erse p. 289  
 ¶ [Cap.] xiiij of cancrefis & malo mortuo, þat buþ olde sores &
- 20 olde scabbys on þe schyne. p. 293  
 ¶ Cap. xiiij of veynes þat buþ to grete in þe legges, & of þe  
 leggyss þat buþ to grete out off kynde of flesch p. 295  
 ¶ Cap. xv of wryncles, & chynes of handes, & kybis on þe ffete,
- 24 & wertys, & oper schyn lyke flessch p. 296  
 ¶ Cap. xvj of helpynges þat buþ in blod letynge p. 298  
 ¶ Cap. xvij of helpys þat buþ in brennyng with yren opere  
 with gold p. 305
- 28 ¶ Cap. xvij of helpe þat is with brennyng of fyre, hote watyr  
 & oyle p. 312
- 
- ¶ þe iiij tretys is of wrenchyngis of lymes, & haþ tweye tech-  
 ynges, opere tweye summes.
- 32 ¶ þe firste techynge of þe furþe tretys haþ vij Chapyttles  
 ¶ Chap. j of broken bonys an vniuersel word [missing]  
 ¶ Cap. ij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe face p. 313  
 ¶ Cap. iiij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe breste p. 316
- 36 ¶ Cap. iiiij of bonys þat buþ brokyn of þe rybbes, & þe rugge  
 bon. p. 317  
 ¶ Cap. v of Armys þat buþ broken p. 318  
 ¶ Cap. vi of bonys þat buþ bende withouten brekyng p. 321
- 40 ¶ þe 2Secunde techynge off þe furþe Tretys haþ v Chapytells [2 fol. 33 a]  
 ¶ þe firste chapyttle of þe secunde techynge a comyn word off  
 wrenchynges out of Ioynte [missing]  
 ¶ Cap. ij of dislocacioun of þe cheke bon. p. 314
- 44 ¶ Cap. iiij of dislocacioun of þe rugge bon. p. 322  
 ¶ Cap. iiiij of dislocacioun of þe schuldre & about þe schuldre  
 p. 323  
 ¶ Cap. v of dislocacioun of þe pyze bon & withynne p. 326



|                     |  |          |
|---------------------|--|----------|
| Add. MS.<br>12,056. | ¶ The ffye tretys is Antidotarie, & hath wíthynne hym vij<br>chapitells                              |          |
|                     | ¶ Cap. j of castynge abache, & þe manere how þou schalt caste<br>abacch                              | p. 328 4 |
|                     | ¶ Cap. ij of resolueres & manere of vndoyng & makynge nessche  | p. 333   |
|                     | ¶ Cap. iij of Maturatiuis, þat buþ Ripers  | p. 336   |
|                     | ¶ Cap. iiij of Mundificatiuis, þat beþ clanseres   | p. 339 8 |
|                     | ¶ Cap. v of glutinatiuis & consolidatiuis, þat buþ closeres &<br>consouderes, & þe difference of hem | p. 342   |
|                     | ¶ Cap. vj of hem þat maken nessche hardnesse   | p. 353   |
|                     | ¶ Cap. vij of Cauterisinge, that is to sugge brennyng, & 12<br>opnyng þe extremities                 | p. 349   |

Ashmole MS. 1396.

## SCIENCE OF CIRURGIE.

<sup>1</sup> Now þese chapitles of þis book ben y-ordeyned, I wole fulfille [f. 1r, 2, bk.] my purpos pursuyng ech chapitle bi ordre, & confermyng my wordis aftir þe auctorite of myn auctouris and wiþ experiment þat

4 I haue longe tyme vsed wiþ þe help of god. // // //

**A** l þing<sup>1</sup> þat we wolde knowe, bi oon of .iiij. maners þat<sup>1</sup> we Capm. jm moun knowe, eiþir bi his name, or by his worchinge, or bi his verri beyng schewyng propirte of him-silf / In þis

8 þre maner we moun knoweurgerie bi expownyng of his name ;

for siurge cometh of siros, þat is a word of gru, & in englissh siros is an hand, & gyros gru, þat is worching in englissh / For þe ende & þe profite of syurgie is \* [of hand-wyrchyng. Of þe Name of

Surgery is from Greek cheir a hand, and ergon work.

12 a thyng Galyen seyth : he þat wyl knowe] soþfastnes of a þing<sup>1</sup>, bisie him nouȝt to knowe þe name of a þing<sup>1</sup>, but<sup>1</sup> þe worching & þe effete of þe same þing<sup>1</sup> / Therfore he þat wole knowe what siurgie is, he moot vndirstonde, þat it is a medicinal science, which techiþ us

It is a medicinal science:

16 to worche wiþ handis in mannes bodi, wiþ kuttinge or openyng þe

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

20 **N**OW the Chapitelles of þis bok buþ y-ordeyned, y wyl fulfille my purpos, pursuyng every chapyteH by ordere, & confermyng my wordys after þe Autorite of myn Autores, & wiþ experyment þat y haue longe tyme y-vsyde with help of god.

24 **A** l thyng þat we wolde knowe, by on of þre maneres we mowe knowe, opere by hys name ore by hys worchyng, opere by hys verrey beyng schewyng propirte of hym self. In þis þre manere we mowe knoweurgerie by expownyng of hys name ; ffor syrugie cometh of syros, þat ys a word of grewȝ, & in englyssche syros ys an hand, & gyros grewȝ, þat ys worchyng an Englyssche ; for þe ende & þe prophete of surgerie ys\* of hand wyrchyng. Of þe Name of a thyng Galyen seyth : he þat wyl knowe\* soþfastnesse of a thyng, besye hym nouȝt to knowe þe name <sup>2</sup>of a thyng, bute þe

28 worchyng & þe Effecte of þe same thyng ; where fore he þat wyl knoweurgerie ys, he mote vndirstonde, þat yt is a medycineal sciense, whyche techiþ vs to worche with handes in Mannes body, in

[f. fol. 33 b]

cutting, healing, and removing excrescences.

[1 leaf 3]

parties þat ben hole & in helynge þo þat ben broken, or kutt, as þei were tofor<sup>n</sup>,<sup>1</sup> or ellis as ny<sup>3</sup> as a man may, & also in doynge away þat is to myche skyn : as wertis or wennys, or þe fleisch to hiȝe //

¶ þe secunde chapitle of þe firste tretis is of þe 4  
qualitees, maners, and kunnyng of a surgian //

¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> ijm

A surgeon must be a temperate and well made man. An ugly man can't have good manners.

He must know Philosophy, Logic, Grammar, and Rhetoric.

He must not be a glutton or a niggard, but pleasant with his patients,

sign. iij.  
[4 lf. 3, bk.]

**N**Edeful it is þat a surgian be of a complexioun weel proporciound, and þat his complexioun be temperat / Races seiþ, who-so is nouȝt semelich, is ympossible to haue good maners \* [ & Auicenne : euyle maners ] but folowen þe lijknys of an yuele complexioun / A surgian muste haue handis weel schape, longe smale fyngris, and his body not quakyng, & al must ben of sutil witt, for al þing þat longiþ to siurgie may not wiþ lettris ben writen. He muste studie 12 in alle þe parties of philofie & in logik, þat he mowe vndirstonde scripturis ; in gramer, þat he speke congruliche ; in<sup>2</sup> arte, þat techiþ him to proue his proporciouns wiþ good resoun ; in retorik þat techiþ him to speke semelich. Be he no glotoun, ne noon enuyous, ne a 16 negard ; be he trewe, vnbeliche,<sup>3</sup> & plesyngliche bere he him-silf to hise pacientis ; speke he noon ribawdrie in þe sike mannys<sup>4</sup> hous /

<sup>2</sup> Lat. : quod docet dialectica

<sup>3</sup> *humbilly* in margin, in smaller hand.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

kuttyng ore opnyng þo partyes þat ben hol, & in helynge þo that ben tobroken opere kutte, as þey were to fore, opere ellys as ny<sup>3</sup> as 20 a Man may, and al so in doynge aweye þat ys to myche above þe schyn : as wertys, opere wennys, oper flesch to hyȝh.

¶ The secunde Chapiteil of þe ffurste Tretys is of þe  
qualites, maners and cunnyng of a surgien. 24

Nedfful ys þat a surgien be of a Complexioun wel proporciounede, & þat is complexioun be temperat. **Rasys** seiþ, whose face ys nouȝt semlye, ys inpossible to hauen gode maners ; \* & **Auicenne** : euyle maners\* beþ folwyng þe lyknesse of an yuele complexioun. 28 A surgien moste han handys wel schape, longe smale ffyngres, and hys body nought quakyng, & alle hys lymes able to fulfyllen gode werkynge of hys soule. He most ben of sotyl wytt, ffor alle þyng þat longyth to surgerye may nought wiþ lettres ben wryten. He 32 moste stodyen in alle þe partyes of naturell ffylosophye & in logyk, þat he mowe vndirstonde scriptures ; in gramere, þat he speke congruliche ; in art, þat techyth hym to preuen ys proposiciounes with gode resoun ; in retoryk, þat techith hym to speke semlyche ; be he 36 non glotoun, non spowsbrekere, ne Envyous, ne no nygarde ; be he trewe, vmbelyche<sup>5</sup> & plesyngliche bere he hym-self to hys pacientis ; speke he non Rybaudye in þe seke mannys house, ne in þe seke

[5 fol. 34, a]



- zeue he no counseil, but if he be axid; ne speke he wiþ no womman  
in folie in þe sik mannes hous; ne chide not wiþ þe sike man ne  
wiþ noon of his meyne, but curteisli speke to þe sijk man, and in  
4 almaner sijknese bihote him heele, þouȝ þou be of him dispeirid;  
but neuer þe lattere seie to his freendis þe caas as it stant / Loue  
he noon harde curis, & entermete he nouȝt of þo þat ben in dispeir.  
Pore men helpe he bi his myȝt, and of þe riche men axe he good  
8 reward / Preise he nouȝt him-silf wiþ his owne mouȝ, ne blame he  
nouȝt scharpliche opere lechis; loue he alle lechis & clerkis, & bi  
his myȝt<sup>1</sup> make he no leche his enemye. So cloþe he him wiþ  
vertues, þat of him mai arise good fame & name; & pis techiþ etik.  
12 So lerne he fisik, þat he mowe wiþ good rulis his surgerie defende  
& þat techiþ fisik / Neþeles it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe alle  
þe parties and ech sengle partie of a medicyn. For if a surgian ne  
knewe nouȝt þe science of elementis, whiche þat ben firstmoost force  
16 of natural þingis & of dyuers lymes, he mai not<sup>2</sup> knowe science of  
coniunctions, þat is to seie, medlyngis & complexiouns þat ben  
nessessarie to his craft / A surgian muste knowe þat alle bodies þat  
ben medlid vndir þe sercle of þe moone, ben engendrid of foure

and must in  
desperate  
cases even  
promise  
recovery,  
but tell the  
truth to the  
patient's  
friends.

He should  
make the rich  
pay for the  
poor.

He shall not  
praise himself  
or blame  
other  
physicians.

He must  
know  
Physics,  
Medicine,

[2 leaf 3\*]  
and the  
science of  
mixtures.

<sup>1</sup> myȝt in margin.

- 20 Mannes house gif non counseyle bote he be y-askyde, ne speke he with Add. MS.  
non womman in no<sup>3</sup> folye in þe seke Mannes howse, ne chyde nought 12,056.  
with þe seke Man ne with none of hys meyne; but curteslye speke  
to þe syke man, & in alle manere syknesse behote hym hele, þowȝ  
24 þou be of hym dyspeyred; but neuere þe lattere seye to hys frendys,  
þe cas as yt stant. Loue he non harde curys, & entyremete he  
nought of þo þat beþ in dyspeyre. Pore men helpe he be hys myȝt,  
& of ryche men aske he gode rewarde. Preyse he nought hymself  
28 with hys owne mouth, ne blame he nought scharplye opere lechys;  
loue he alle lechys & Clerkys, & by hys myȝt make he non leche  
hys enemye. So cloþe he hym with vertues, þat of hym mowe  
a-rysen gode fame & name, & pis techyth Etyk. So lerne he fysik,  
32 þat he mowe with gode rulys hys Surgerie deffende, & þat techith  
fysik. Napeles yt ys necessarye a surgien to knowe alle þe partyes  
in eche sengle partye of a medycine, ffor ȝif a surgien knowe nouȝt  
þe sciens of Elementis, whiche þat buȝ furst Meverys of naturel  
36 þynges & of dyuerse lymes, he may nouȝt knowe sciense of con-  
iunctiounes, þat ys to seye, medlynges & complexiouns þat beþ  
necessarye to hys crafte. A surgien most knowe þat alle bodyes  
þat ben medlyde, þat ben vndire þe cercle of þe Mone, ben engen-

<sup>3</sup> no above the line.

There are  
four ele-  
ments: fire,  
water, earth,  
and air.

By mixture  
of their  
qualities new  
forms arise  
capable of  
being en-  
dowed with  
life.

The noblest  
of all these is  
the human  
spirit.  
sign. iiij.  
[<sup>2</sup> lf. 3\*, bk.]

There are 4  
qualities and  
complexions,

symple bodies, her lijkes ech in opere medlynge; þat<sup>1</sup> is to seie: fier & watir, erþe & eir: þese<sup>1</sup> elementis for þe vttermeste eende, & þe vttermeste contrariouste of<sup>1</sup> here qualitees were fer drawn from bodilich lijf; but<sup>1</sup> whanne her qualitees, þat<sup>1</sup> is to seie, maner of<sup>4</sup> beyng, comen into medlynge, so þat<sup>1</sup> þe leeste partie of<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> oon entre into þe leeste partie of<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> oper partie, medlynge brekiþ her contrariouste; & þerof comen a newe foorme, & a newe complexioun of<sup>1</sup> þe medlynge of<sup>1</sup> her substaunce / Also þe medlynge of<sup>8</sup> qualitees & þe quantitees is fer drawn from þe contrariouste of<sup>1</sup> þe same elementis, & so complexioun is nyȝ brouȝt to a mele; & so þat<sup>1</sup> þat is medlid is more able to resceiue þe noble foorme of lijf, þe which nobilite aboue alle bodies I-medlid is founden in mannes<sup>12</sup> spirit. But for þat<sup>1</sup> þe qualitees þat wip þo bodies of<sup>1</sup> elementis<sup>2</sup> comen into medlynge, & it<sup>1</sup> is vnpossible to departe þo qualitees from bodies þat<sup>1</sup> ben foure: hoot, coold, moist & drie, & complexiouns ben bi hem, it is nessessarie to fynde in bodies þat ben<sup>16</sup> medlid foure complexiouns / Complexioun is no þing<sup>1</sup> ellis but a maner qualite medlid in worching & suffrynge of<sup>1</sup> contrarious qualitees þat<sup>1</sup> ben founden in elementis, so þat<sup>1</sup> þe leeste partie of<sup>1</sup> ech element entre into þe leeste partie of<sup>1</sup> þe opere. & for þat ilke<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ben above line.

Add. MS.  
12 056.

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 34 b]

dryd of foure symple bodyes, here lyknesse eche in opere medlyng; þat ys to sugge, fyr & eyre, erþe & water. þese elementys, ffor þe outemast ende & outemast contrariouste of here qualites, weren fer drawn from bodily lyffe; but whanne here<sup>3</sup> qualytes, þat is to<sup>24</sup> sugge manere of beyng, comyn in to medlynge, so þat þe leste partye of<sup>1</sup> þat on entre in to þe leste partye of<sup>1</sup> þat opere partye, medlynge brekyth here contrariosite, & þere of comme a newe forme & a newe complexioun of þe medlynge of here substaunce. Al so<sup>28</sup> þe medlynge of þe qualitees & þe quantites ys fer drawyn from þe contrariouste of þe same elementes, & so complexioun is nyȝ brought to a mene, & so þat þat ys medlyde ys more able to resseyuen þe noble forme of lyff, þe whiche noblete aboffe alle bodyes y-medlyde<sup>32</sup> ys y-founden in Mannys spiryt. But for þat þe qualites, þat with þo bodyes of Elementes comyth in to Medlynge—& yt ys vnpossible to departe þo qualites from bodyes—ben foure: hot, colde, moyst, & drye, & complexiouns ben by ham, yt ys necessarie to fynden in<sup>36</sup> bodyes þat ben medlyde, foure complexiouns; Complexioun ys noþyng ellys but a manere qualite medlyde in worchyng, & suffrynge of contrariouse qualites þat buȝ founden in Elementis, so þat þe leste partye of eche elemente entre in to þe leste partye of þe<sup>40</sup> opere partye. And for þat pilke foure complexiouns: hot, colde,

- .iiij. complexiouns, hoot, moist, coold & drie, sumtyme ben y-componed, þat is to seie, medlid, þer comen in hem .viij. as: hoot & drie, hoot & moist, & coold & drie, and coold & moist / Foure of þese ben symple, and foure componed; & for þilke .viij. sumtyme ben wiþ mater, & sumtyme wiþoute mater / þer ben .xvj.; & for þilke xvj. aftir sum consideracioun moun be naturel to summan, & summan vnatural / þer moun be .xxxij. Neuereþelatter among alle þe complexiouns þat man mai fynde, þat is componed of dyuers qualitees, þere ne is noon so temperat, as is mannes complexioun; & hauynge reward to mannes complexioun, alle opere þingis \* [ys] I-clepid, hoot, coold, moist, <sup>1</sup> eiþer drie. / Whanne <sup>2</sup> þat a mete or a medicyn haþ suffrid kyndely heete þat is in man, þat heetiþ him nouzt, ne driep him nouzt, ne moistiþ hym nouzt, so þat mannes complexioun may not conseyue wheþer it coldiþ him, heetiþ or driep or moistiþ him: it is clepid temperat / & þilke þing þat we seie is hoot in þe firste degree, þat is I-heet of kyndely heete þat is in oure bodies, & heetiþ oure bodies wiþouten greuaunce / & þilke we seien to be hoot in þe secunde degree, which þat is het of oure kyndely heete, so heetiþ oure bodi þat he ne myzte heete us no more wiþoute greuaunce /

hot, moist, cold, and dry. By mixing them we get 8;

and as these may be either with or without matter, 16;

and as they are either natural or unnatural in some men, 32.

Compared with men's complexion,

[1 leaf 4]

other things are hot, cold, moist, or dry.

A medicine which does not affect a man's complexion is called temperate.

A hot meat or medicine may be hot,

in 1 gradu,

in 2 gradu,

<sup>2</sup> A mistranslation from the Latin: Illam namque rem . . . dicimus esse temperatam, quæ cum *passa fuerit* a calore naturali, qui est in nobis, non calefit, etc.

- 20 moiste & drye, sumtyme ben y-componyd, þat ys to sugge medlyde, þere comen of hem VIII, as hote & drye, hote & moist, colde & drye, colde & moiste; ffoure of þese ben symple, & foure ben componyd. And for þilke VIII sumtyme ben with mater, sumtyme withoute mater, þere ben XVI; & for þilke XVI, after sum consideracioun mowe ben natureh to sum Man, <sup>3</sup> & to sum man vn natureh, þere mowe ben XXXII. Nevere þe lattere amonge alle þe complexiouns þat man may fynden, þat is componyd of dyuerse qualites, þere nys non so temperat as ys mannes complexioun; hauynge rewarde to mannes complexioun, alle opere þynge ys\* clepyde colde, hote, moyste, opere drye. Whanne þat a mete, opere a medycine, hath y-suffryde kendlye hete þat ys in Man, & hetyth hym nozt & colyth hym nauzt, ne dryeþ hym nozt, ne moysted hym nozt, so þat mannes complexioun may nozt conseyven wheþer yt colde hym, ore hete, dryze, opere moyste, yt is clepyde temperat; & þilke thyng we sigge is hot in þe firste degree, þat ys y-hatte of kendlye hete, þat ys in oure bodyes & hetyth oure bodies withouten greuaunce, & þilke we siggen be hote in þe secunde degree, whiche þat ys y-hette of oure kendlye hete, so hetyth oure body, þat he ne myzte hete vs namore withouten greuaunce; hot in þe þridde degree:

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 35 a]



in <sup>3</sup> gradu, pilke we seie to be hoot in þe þridde degree, which þat is het<sup>1</sup> of  
 in <sup>4</sup> gradu. <sup>1</sup>kyndely heete bryngiþ to oure bodi sensible greuaunce. & pilke  
 is in þe fourþe degree, þat<sup>2</sup> is hot<sup>2</sup> of <sup>2</sup>vnkyndely heete, distroieþ þe  
 bodi openliche / & in þis same maner 3e moun knowe degrees þat 4  
 ben colde / I mai preue in þis maner, þat it is nessessarie a surgian  
 .Nota. to knowe complexiouns of bodies, lymes, & of medicyns. Take .ij.  
 men þat<sup>3</sup> ben of oon age, & lete hem ben I-woundid wip a swerd or  
 a knyf<sup>3</sup> þwert<sup>3</sup> ouer þe arm in oon hour & in oon place; oon of 8  
 [4 lf. 4, bk.] þe men is of an <sup>4</sup>hoot complexioun & a moist, þat<sup>4</sup> oper of a cold  
 complexioun & a drie. þe comoun seiynge of lewid men is þat<sup>4</sup> þei  
 schulden boþe ben helid on o maner; but resonableurgerie I-preued  
 techiþ us, þat<sup>4</sup> þei ne schulde not boþe be helid aftir oon maner / For 12  
 he þat haþ an hoot complexioun, & a moist, may liztly haue an hoot  
 enpostym—þat<sup>4</sup> is an hoot swellynge—& þat may be cause of an  
 hoot feutere. What<sup>4</sup> schalt þou þanne do? þou must loke, wheþer he  
 haþ bled myche blood at his wounde, and þanne it<sup>4</sup> is weel; ellis 16  
 lete him blood of þe contrarious arme, or ellis\*—of þe oon same side,  
 if strenkþe & age acorde; or ventose<sup>5</sup> him on þe two buttokkis, if  
 þat he be feble. & if<sup>4</sup> he may not schite<sup>6</sup> oones a day, helpe him

People of  
 different  
 complexions  
 must be  
 treated  
 differently.  
 1. For a  
 patient of a  
 hot and moist  
 complexion,  
 use blood-  
 letting, cup-  
 ping and  
 purging.

<sup>1</sup> vn above line.

<sup>2</sup> vn in different hand.

<sup>3</sup> ouer above line.

<sup>5</sup> Lat. ventosare. Kersey, *Dict.* Ventose, a Cupping Glass.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. ascellare. Add. MS. translates accurately: *go to sege*. See below.

Add. MS. pilke we sigge to be hot in þe þridde degre, whiche þat ys y-hatte of 20  
 12,056. kendlye hete, bryngeþ to oure bodye sencyble greuaunce; **hot in þe  
 fourþ degre**: and pilke in þe fourþ gre þat is y-hat of kendly hete,  
 dystroyeþ þe body opynlyche; & in þis same manere 3e may knowe  
 degrees þat ben colde, & y may preue in þis manere þat yt is 24  
 necessarye a surgyne to knowe complexiouns of bodyes, lymes, & of  
 medicynes. ¶ Take two men þat ben off one age, & lete hem ben  
 y-woundyde with a swerd opere a knyffe twarte offere þe arme, in  
 [7 fol. 35 b] one oure & in <sup>7</sup>one place. One of þe men ys of an hote complexioun 28  
 & a moyste, þe opere of a colde & a drye; þe comyne siggyng of  
 lewyde men ys, þat þey scholde boþe by helyde aftere o manere.  
 But resonable surgye wel y-proved, techith vs þat þey ne schulle  
 nozt boþe ben y-helyde aftere on manere; for he þat haþ an hot 32  
 complexioun & a moyst, may lyztliche haue an hote enposteme, þat  
 ys an hote swellynge, & þat may be cause of an<sup>8</sup> hote fleuyre. What  
 schaltou þanne do? þou moste loke wheþer he haue y-bled myche  
 blod at hys wounde, & þenne it ys wel, ellys lete hym blod of þe 36  
 contraryose arme, opere ellys\* on þe fot on þe same syde; 3if strengþe  
 & age acorde, opere ventuse hym on þe tweye buttokkys; gif þat he  
 be feble, 3if he may nozt go to sege onys a day, helpe hym þereto

<sup>8</sup> an above the line.

- perto, or with clisterie, or wip suppositorie. & brynge þou þe parties of þe wounde togidere þoruȝ sowynge, or wip plumaciols—þat ben smale pelewys—or wip byndynge, if þat sewynge be nouȝt nessesarie, & þanne worche aboute þe wounde, as it is told aftir in þe book. But aboute þe wounde leie a medicyn defensif, of bole armonyac<sup>1</sup>, oile of rosis, & a litil vynegre; so þat <sup>2</sup>þe medicyn touche þe brynkis of þe wounde, þat humouris moun not haue her cours to renne to þe wounde; & we forbeden him wiyn, mylk & eiren & fisch þat engendriþ myche blood / But he schal ete for his mete growel maad of otemele, eipir of barli mele wip almaundis; & generaliche he schal vse a streit dietyng, til þat he be sikir þat he schal haue noon hote enpostym. & if þat we kunne fende him fro a feure & apostym, þe science of his complexioun techiþ us, þat he may of his sijknes soone be hool / þe opere of þe cold complexioun schal not be leten blood ne ventusid, for blood schulde be kept in him, as for tresour / Forbede hem neiþir wiyn ne fleisch, for þe stomak þat is so feble ne myȝte nouȝt engendre nessesarie mater of blood þat longiþ to þe wounde / Ne we drede nouȝt in him þe feure, for his complexioun is nouȝt able to resceyue þe feure / We moun Compare: *a Sege of a Privay*; gumfus. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 328. Compare the French: *aller à la selle*.
- <sup>1</sup> *Bole Armoniack*. See N. E. Dict.

Close his wound with compresses or with bandages,

and apply an *vnguentum defensivum*.  
[<sup>2</sup> leaf 5]

He must keep a strict diet. *dieta*.

2. Keep the blood in a patient of cold complexion; give him wine and meat.

- 20 opere wit clysterye, opere with suppositorie; & brynge þou þe parties of þe wounde to-gedire, opere with sowynge, opere wip plumaciols—þat beþ smale pelewys—opere with byndynge, ȝif þat sowynge be nouȝt nessesarie. And þenne worche aboute þe wounde, as it ys tolde aftere in þe boke; but aboute þe wounde leye a Medecine defensiu, of bol Armonyac, oyle of rosys, & a litil vynegre, so þat þe medecine touche þe sydes of þe woundes, þat humours mowe nouȝt haue here cours to renne to þe wounde. And we forbyde hym wyn, Milke, & eyren, & fysch, þat engendriþ myche blod; but he schal ete for his Mete grueþ y-made of ote Mele, opere barly mele with Almaundes, & generaliche he schal vsen a streyt doynge, tyl þou be sykere þat he schal haue non enposteme. And ȝif þat we kunne dyffenden hym from a ffevyre & aposteme, þe science of hys complexioun techyþ vs þat he may of hys seknesse sone be hol. ¶ þe opere of þe colde complexioun ne schal nouȝt be leten blod ne ventusyde, ffor blod scholde be kepte in hem as for tresoure; forbyde hym neiþere wyn ne fleisch; for þe stomak þat ys so feble, ne myȝte nouȝt engendre nessesarie mater of blod þat longyþ to þe wounde; ne we dredyþ nouȝt in hym þe ffevyre, for his complexioun ys nouȝt able to resceyuen þe ffevyre. We mowe

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 36 a]

vitriol  
has a differ-  
ent effect on  
different com-  
plexions.

[<sup>2</sup> If 5, bk.]

Galien  
Limbs of  
different  
complexions  
must be  
treated  
differently.

fynde a medicyn maad in oon maner þat worchip dyuers effectis, & he be I-leid to dyuers complexiouns / Grene vitriol, & he be do to a man of a drie complexioun engendrith fleisch<sup>1</sup>; & if þou leie<sup>2</sup> him on moist compleccioun, he greueþ nouȝt oonliche, but corrodith 4 it; and nepeles vitriol haþ but oon maner worchinge, þouȝ þat he worche dyuersliche in dyuers complexiouns / Riȝt as þe worchinge of þe sunne is dyuers, nouȝt for þe sunne, but for þe worchinge of dyuers bodies into whom he worchip / Vitriol drieþ wondirfullliche 8 myche: in drie bodies he defendiþ<sup>3</sup> þe smale lymes myȝt<sup>4</sup> to aȝenstonde his miȝt, wherfore he may nouȝt but drie þe superfluytees þat he fyndiþ in þe wounde; & whanne þo ben y-dried, kynde engendriþ fleisch. In moiste bodies, for þat þe smale lymes ben feble 12 & moun not wiþstonde þe strenkþe of þe vitriol, þe fleisch meltiþ vndir it, & so bi vitriol þe fleisch rotip. & þat is seid of dyuers complexiouns, is y-seid of dyuers lymes / Galioun seiþ: If þat tweye woundis ben euene I-quytturid, & þe oon be a drie lyme, & 16 þe oþer a moist lyme, þat þat is þe drie lyme nedip þe moister medicyn / And if þat .ij. lymes leue<sup>5</sup> ben I-woundid þat ben lich

<sup>1</sup> *fleisch* in margin.

<sup>3</sup> *defendiþ*, mistake for *fyndiþ*; see below.

<sup>4</sup> *myȝt* for *myȝty*; see below.

<sup>5</sup> *leue* for *leche*?

Add. MS. 12,056. fynden a Medycine made in o manere þat wirchith dyuerse effectis, & he be y-leyde to dyuerse complexiouns. Grene vytreole, & he be 20 done to a Man of dryȝe complexioun, engendrith flessch; & ȝif þou leggen hym on a moyste complexioun, he greuyth nouȝt onliche, but coroduþ yt. And napeles vitreole haþ but one manere wyrchinge, þouȝ he wirche dyuerslyche in dyuerse complexiouns, ryȝte as þe 24 wirchyng of þe sonne ys dyuerse—nouȝt for þe sonne, but for þe wyrchyng of dyuerse bodies in whom he wyrchyth. Vitreole dryeþ wonderlyche muche, & in dryȝe bodies he fyndeþ þe smale lymes myȝty to ageyne stonden hys strengþe. Wherfore he may 28 nought but drye þe superfluytes þat he fynte in þe<sup>6</sup> wounde; & whenne þo ben y-dreyede, kynde engendryth flessch. In moyste bodies, ffor þat þe smale lymes beþ feble, & mowe nouȝt wiȝtstande þe strengthe off þe vytreole, þe flessch meltyth vndire yt, & so be þe 32 vitreole þe flessch rotyth; & þat þat ys seyde of dyuerse complexiouns, ys y-seyde of dyuerse lymes. **Galyen**: ȝif þat tweye woundes<sup>7</sup> ben evyne i quyter, & þe on be in a dryȝe lyme, & þe oþere in a moyste lyme, þat þat is in þe dryore lyme nedip þe dryore 36 medycine. And ȝif þat two lymes ben y-wounded þat ben lyche in

[<sup>7</sup> fol. 36 b]

<sup>6</sup> *wound*, cancelled because blotted after *in þe* and re-written.



in complexioun, & þe oon haþ myche quytture & þe toþer litil, he þat haþ þe myche quytture, nedip to han þe drier medicyn /

- <sup>1</sup> **I**ohannes damascenus seiþ, Medicyns & enplastris schulden ben  
 4 acordynge to þe lymes þat þei ben leid on / **Galienus** : a kyndly ping' schal be kept wip a ping' þat is kyndly þerto / And þat is azen kynde schal be doon awei with ping' þat is contrarie þerto / If þat a surgian knew not complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he schal  
 8 nouzt conne to schewynge hise medicyns aftir þat kynde askip. A nota  
 surgian must knowe generacioun of humouris, if he wolde knowe A Surgeon must know the generation of the Humours, and the different offices of the Limbs.  
 þe science & þe helynge of apostymes, as it schal be declarid in þe tretis of apostymes. He muste knowe þe dyuersitees & þe profitis  
 12 & þe officis of lymes, þat he mowe knowe, what lymes han a greet worchinge in mannes body, & whiche ben of greet felynge, & whiche moun bere a strong' medicyn / & þe vertues of lymes þou must knowe, þat he se, whanne þe worchinge of ony vartu failip in ony  
 16 lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertu & þe same lyme failynge. & if he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe science of spiritis schal nouzt be hid fro him. Alle þese pingis bfore seid ben but natureles, & þei <sup>2</sup>ben but techinge of medicyns speculatyf / [<sup>2</sup> If. 6, bk.]  
 20 Also he muste haue knoulechinge of pingis þat ben not natureles, þat he kunne chese good eir to him þat is woundid or ellis haþ He must also know the things which are not

- 
- complexioun, & þat on haþ myche quyter and þe oþere lyte, he þat haþ myche quyter nedyth to haven þe dryere medicine. **Iohannes**  
 24 **damacenus** : Medycines & enplastres scholde ben acordynge to þe lymes þat þey ben y-leyde on. **Galienus** : a kendlye thyng schal be kepte with þynge þat ys kendlye þere to; and þat þat is azeine kynde schal be done away with þynge þat is contrarye þere to. 3if  
 28 þat a surgien knowith nozt complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he schal nozt kunne to chaungen hys medycines aftere þat kynde askep. A surgien moste knowe generacioun of humours, 3if he wolde knowen þe sciense & þe helynge of Apostemys, as yt schal ben  
 32 declared in þe tretys of apostemes; he moste knowyn þe dyuersite, & þe profytes, & þe offices of lymes, þat he mowe knowen what lymes han grete wyrchyng in mannys body, & whiche ben of grete felynge, & whiche mowe bere a stronge Medicine; & þe vertues of  
 36 lymes he moste knowe, þat he se whanne þat þe worchyng of enye vertue faylep in enye lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertue in þe same lyme faylinge. And 3if he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe science of spiritus ne schult nozt ben y-hud from hym. Alle þese  
 40 þynges before seyde bep natureles, & þey bep techynge of medicine speculatyff. Also he moste han knowynge of thynges þat bep nozt natureles, þat he kunne chesen gode eyre to hym þat is y-woundyde,

Add. MS.  
12,056.

natural, as  
the effect of  
the air on a  
wound.

nota

He must  
know how to  
prescribe  
moving or  
rest.

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 7]

Nota

He must  
regulate the  
patient's  
sleep,

a boch<sup>1</sup> / Woundis moun not be<sup>2</sup> dried in a moist eir & a vapouris,  
but þei þat ben woundid musten ben chaungid fro þat moist eir to a  
swete cleer eyr & a drie / In wyntir he muste kepe him fro cold ;  
for no þing<sup>3</sup> greueþ so myche boones & senewis as cold<sup>3</sup> þat ben <sup>4</sup>  
I-woundid / & in somer he muste haue temperable eir. It is  
nessessarie þat he kunne dietyn his pacient, as I schal telle in þe  
same chapitle of dietinge / also he muste ordeyne meuyng & reste,<sup>4</sup>  
as it nedip to þe same sijk man / for if þat he be woundid in þe 8  
heed eiper haue ony puncture of ony senewe, it is nessessarie þat he  
reste & dwelle in stillenes & haue an esy bed & a soft ; lest he suffre  
ony traueile of his lymes / But if þat olde woundis wipout akyng  
weren in his armes, it were good to him, þat is sijk, to walke on his 12  
feet, & lete his arme be bounde to his necke ; & if þat þe wounde  
be in hise schynes & in hise feet, it were good þat he lay &  
traueilide wip hise hondis / Also a <sup>5</sup>surgian, in al þat he myzte, he  
muste tempere a sijk mannes slepinge ; for to myche slepinge 16  
engenderip superfluyte & febliþ his vertewes, & coldip & lesip al his  
bodi / To myche wakinge dissolueþ & confoormeþ<sup>6</sup> hise spiritis &

<sup>1</sup> *boch*, Latin apostema ; M. E. botch. See N. E. Dict.

<sup>2</sup> *heelid* cancelled.

<sup>3</sup> as *cold* misplaced ; see below.

<sup>4</sup> to cancelled after *reste*.

<sup>6</sup> *confoormeþ*, erroneously for *consumeþ*, as below. Lat. Orig. : dissolvunt et consumunt.

Add. MS. 12,056. opere ellys haþ a bocche. Woundes mowe nozt ben y-dryzed in a  
[<sup>7</sup> fol. 37 a] y-chaungyde from þat moyste eyre to a swote cler eyre & a dryze.  
In wyntere he moste kepe hym from colde, ffor nopinge grevyth so  
myche bonys & synwes þat buþ y-woundyde as colde. And in  
somere he moste han a temperable eyre ; hit ys necessarye þat he 24  
kunne dyoten hys pacient, as y schal tellen in þe same Chapytell of  
dyotyng. Also he moste ordeyne moffyng & reste, as yt nedep to  
þe same syke man ; ffor 3if þat he be woundyde in þe hed, opere  
haue eny puncture off enye synwe, it ys necessarye þat he reste : 28  
dwelle he in styllenesse, & haue an euene bed & a softe, leste he  
suffren enye trauaylle of hys lemys ; but 3if þat olde woundes,  
wipouten akyng, weren in hys Armes, hit were gode to hym þat ys  
seke to walken on hys fete, & bere hys arme y-bounden to hys 32  
nekke ; & 3if þat þe wounde be in hys schynys & in hys ffete, hit  
were gode þat he leyze & trauelyde with hys handes. Also a  
surgien, in alle þat he myghte, he moste atempre a syke Mannes  
slepyng, ffor to myche slepyng engendreþ superffluyte, & feblyth 36  
his vertues, & coldyth & losyth alle hys bodye ; to myche wakyng  
dyssolfip & consumeþ hys spiritis, & makyth scharpe hys humores,

makip scharpe hise humouris ; it bryngip vnkindly drowpe to woun-  
dis, & is cause of akyng / Also he muste kunne evacuener him free the patient from evil humours  
pat is ful of yuel humouris & fulfille him pat<sup>1</sup> is waastid, pat he  
4 brynge sike men to good temperaunce ; ellis a wounde mai not be  
heelid / Entempre he pe herte of him pat is sijk, for to greet wrappe. and take care that the heart is temperate.  
makip pe spiritis renne to myche to pe wounde & pat is caus of  
swellynge ; to greet drede, oupir vttereste<sup>1</sup> of heelp of his wounde,  
8 holdip pe spiritis wipinne his bodi, pat mater mai not come to heele  
his wounde / pese .vj. pingis ben clepid vnnaturel,<sup>2</sup> which techip a  
man speculatif of leche craft.

He muste knowe pe sijknis : as olde wounde, festre, cankre & He must know the different kinds of wounds,  
12 alle opere soris, pat he traueile not in veyn & brynge pe sike man  
to his deef / For ech dyuers soor nedip dyuers helpingis. He  
muste knowe pe cause of pe wounde / ffor a wounde, pat is <sup>3</sup>maad  
wip a swerd eiper a knyf, must operwise be heelid, pan he pat is  
16 maad wip stoon eiper fallinge / And a wounde pat is biten wip an  
hound schal operwise be heelid, pan he pat is biten with a wood  
hound ; as pou schalt fynde soone told in pe book hereafter / & he  
muste knowe pe accidentis pat ben aboute a wounde / for pe wounde  
20 schal neuere heele, til pe accidentis be remeued away / accidentis is and the accidentes which befall a wound.

<sup>1</sup> *uttereste*, only known as an adj. : *extremus*, erroneously for *untryste*.  
See below.

<sup>2</sup> *Lat. quæ sunt secundum membrum theoricæ medicinæ.*

& hit brynge vnkyndly drowpe to woundes, & ys cause of akyng ; Add. MS. 12,056.  
also he moste kunne evacuen hym pat ys ful of euele humores, &  
fulfille hym pat ys wastyde, pat he brynge seke men to gode  
24 temperaunce ; ellis a wounde may nozt ben helyd ; entempre he pe  
hert of hym pat ys seke, ffor to gret wratthe makip pe spiritis renne  
to myche to pe wounde, & pat ys cause of swellynge ; <sup>4</sup>to grete drede, [<sup>4</sup> fol. 87 b]  
opere vntryst of helpe of hys wounde holdip spyrites withynne hys  
28 body, pat mater may nouzt come to hele pe wounde. pese sixe  
thynges ben y-clepyde vnnatureH, whiche techith a Man speculatyff  
of leche craft. He mot knowen pe seknesse, as olde wounde, festre,  
cancere, & alle opere sores, pat he traveylle nozt in deveyne, & brynge  
32 pe seke man to hys deþ : ffor eche dyverse sore nedith dyverse  
helrynges. He mote knowe pe cause of pe wounde ; ffor a wounde  
pat is mad with a swerd opere a knyff<sup>1</sup> mote opere weys ben helyde  
ben he pat is y-makyde with ston, opere with fallynge, & a wounde  
36 pat is byten with an hounde schal opere weys ben helyde ben he pat  
ys y-byten with a wod hound, as pou schalt fynde tolde in pe boke  
hereafter. And he mot knowe pe Accidentes pat buþ aboute a  
wounde, ffor the wounde schal neuere hele tyl pe Accidentes ben  
40 remevyde away. Accidentis ys a þynge pat fallip to pe wounde out

SURGERY.

C



He must  
know how  
to prescribe  
appropriate  
diet.

.Galien.

a þing<sup>1</sup> þat falliþ to a wounde out<sup>1</sup> of kynde as hoot, cold, drie, eiper to myche moistnes, crampe & opere þinges azens kynde / A surgian muste ordeyne dietyng in dyuers maner, as it is told in þe chapitle of dietyng; & whanne it is nedeful, he muste ȝeue dyuers drinkis / 4  
Galien: Laxatiues & vometis ben nedeful to hem, þat han olde rotid woundis & stynkyng / For whanne þe bodi is purgid fro wickide humouris, þe wickidnes of þe mater renneþ fro þe wounde & so þe wounde is sunner helid / He þat biholdiþ alle þe parties of 8  
a medicyn, he may weel se þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe phisik, & oper dyuers science, as I haue told tofore in þe book.

¶ þe .iiij. c<sup>o</sup>. of þe firste techinge is of intencioun of a surgian /

12

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 8.]  
¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> 3<sup>m</sup>.  
1.  
2.  
3.

<sup>1</sup> A l þe entencioun of a surgian, how diuers þat it be, it is on\* [of] þre maners / þe first is vndoyng of þat, þat is hool / þe secunde to hele þat, þat is broke / þe .iiij. is remeuyng of þat, þat is to myche; so þat it be don with hand craft / ffor al entencioun of 16  
a surgian is vndir oon of þese .iiij. entenciouns, or ellis vnder oon of hem. A surgian vndoip þat þat is hool, whanne he letiþ blood, eiper garsiþ,<sup>2</sup> eiper brenneþ, eiper settiþ on watirlechis, for þis is a  
<sup>2</sup> garsiþ] Lat. scarificat; Fr. gerçer; med. Lat. gersa, garsa. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 150.

A surgeon  
1. either  
undoes what  
is whole,

Add. MS. 12,056. of kynde, as hete, colde, drowþe opere to gret moistnesse, crampe, & 20  
opere þynges aȝeyne kynde. A surgien mot ordeyne dyetyng in dyverse manere, as it is tolde in þe ChapiteH of dyetyng. Whenne þat it is nedful, he mote ȝyve dyverse drynkes. Galien: laxativis & vomytes buþ necessarie to hem þat han olde, rotyde, stynkynde 24  
woundes; ffor whanne þat þe body is purgyde from evyle humours, þe wykkednesse of þe matere renneþ from þe wounde, & so þe wounde is sonnere y-helyde. He þat byholdeþ alle þe partyes of a  
[<sup>3</sup> fol. 38 a] medicyne, he may wel se <sup>3</sup>that it is necessarie a surgyne to knowen 28  
ffysyk and opere dyverse science, as hit is tolde tofore in þis boke.

¶ The þridde Chapitele of þe furste techyng is of Intencioun off a Surgyne.

Alle þe entencioun of surgerye, how dyverse þat it be, yt is on 32  
\*of þre maneres: þe ffurste ys undoyng þat þat is hol; secunde ys helpyng of þat þat is tobroke; þe þridde ys remevyng of þat þat is to myche, so þat it be do with hande crafte; ffor alle þe entencioun of a surgien ys vndire one of þis þre entensiouns, opere ellys 36  
vndire one of hem. A surgyne vndop þat þat ys hol, whanne he letyþ blod ore garsyþ opere brenneþ, opere setteþ on waterlechysh,

- surgiens craft; þouȝ we for oure pride haue left it to barbouris & to wymmen / for Galien & Rasis diden it *with* her hondis, as her bookis tellen. And we vndoon þat, þat is hool, whanne þat we
- 4 kutten þe veynes, þat ben in þe templys & þe forheed & maken cauterizaciouns for þe sijknis of þe yzen / And whanne þat we maken cauteries in þe heed & in dyuers placis of þe bodi, as I schal telle in þe chapitle of cauterisyng / þe secunde entencioun is to
- 8 hele þat, þat is broken as woundis, olde woundis, festriss, cankris & in bringyng<sup>1</sup> to her placis ioyntis þat ben oute & in helynge boones þat ben to broken / þe .iiij. entencioun is to remeue þat, þat is to myche, as <sup>1</sup>scrofulus of þe heed & þe necke & opere parties of þe
- 12 bodie / cataractis<sup>2</sup>—is a watir þat cometh bitwene þe white of þe yzen & þe appil; sebel—þat ben veynes þat ben in þe whijt of þe yzen & beþ ful of blood / vngula—is a þing, þat bigynneþ bi þe nose & goiþ ouer þe iȝe til he keuere al þe iȝe—& knottis, þat ben in þe
- 16 iȝe & opere siknes of þe iȝe; & in doynge away polippis, þat is fleisch þat growiþ wipinne þe nose; wertis & wennys; ficus, þat is superfluyte þat growen vp on þe skyn of þe pintils hede wipoute, emerawdis<sup>3</sup> & a skyn þat enclosiþ a wommans priuy membre, þe

*Nota.*  
G. R.

as when he bleeds, scarifies or cauterizes;

or 2. he heals wounds, &c.,

or 3. he removes excrescences, sign. 2j  
[<sup>1</sup> If. 8, bk.]  
as cataracts,

polypuses, and wens.

<sup>2</sup> cataract, sebel and ungula. See Notes.

<sup>3</sup> The Latin text has: superfluitatem hermaphroditis.

- 20 ffor þis ys a surgyns craft, þawȝ we for oure pride haue y-lefte yt to laborers & to wommen, for Galien & Rasys dyden it wiþ here handes as here bokys tellyþ. And we vndop þat þat is hol, whenne þat we kutteþ þe veynes þat ben in þe templys & þe forhed, &
- 24 makyth cauterisaciones from þe seknesse of þe eyzen, & whenne þat we maken Cauteries in þe hed & in dyverse places of þe body as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of Cauterysyng. þe secunde entencioun ys to hele þat þat is tobroke as: woundes, olde woundes, flestres,
- 28 Cancres, and in bringyng to here place ioyntes þat bene oute, & in helynge bonys þat ben tobroken. þe pridde entencioun is to remevyn þat þat ys to myche as scurfyls of þe hed & þe nekke, & opere parties of þe body, & Cataractis þat ys a water þat comyth
- 32 bitwene þe whyte of þe eyȝe & þe Appul. Sebel þat beþ veynes þat buþ in þe whyte of þe eyȝe, & beþ ful of blod. Vngula, þat ys a thyng þat bygynneþ bi þe nese & goth ouere þe eyȝe, tyl he keffere alle þe eyȝe & knottes þat ben in þe eyȝe, & opere seknesse
- 36 of þe eyȝe, & in doynge away polippes þat is fleisch þat growiþ wipinne þe nese, wertys & wennys, ficus þat is a superfluyte þat growiþ vp on þe skyn off þe pyntellys hed wipoute, emeraudes & a schyn

sixte fingre of þe hond & manye superfluytees þat beþ nouȝt semelich to a manys body

¶ þe firste chapitle of þe secunde tretis is an vniuersal word of smale lymes & her helpingis, & of generacioun of embrioun, þat is þe child, in þe modir wombe //

de anotho-  
[m]ia.  
A Surgeon  
must know  
Anatomy.

Auicen.  
[<sup>2</sup> lf. 9]

†The Embryo

.G?  
is engendered  
of the seed of  
man and  
woman.†

**G** Alienus seiþ, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe anotamic; ne leue we nouȝt þat ech brood ligament is a skyn, & ech 8 round ligament to be a senewe, so bi his opinyoun he myȝte falle into errour / þerfore I þenke to ordeyne a chapitle of þe kynde & of the <sup>2</sup>foorme & helpinge of alle smale lymes / Auicen seiþ / knoulechinge of a þing, þat haþ cause, mai nouȝt be knowen, but 12 bi his cause. þerfore we moten knowe þe cause, *membrorum consimilium*, þat is to seiþ, smale lymes. & I wole telle þe generacioun of embrioun: þat is to seiþ, how a child is I-gete in þe modir 16 wombe / Galien & auicen tellen, þat of boþe þe spermes of man & 16 of womman, worchinge & suffrynge togideris, so þat ech of hem worche in opir & suffre in opir, embrioun is bigete / But the worchinge of mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans kynde

<sup>1</sup> See *Vicary*, ed. Furnivall, p. 78.

Add. MS. 12,056. þat enclosyth a wommans priue membre, þe sixte fynger of þe hand, 20 and manye superfluytes þat beth nought semlye to manys body.

¶ The ffurste Chapiteþ of þe secunde tretys ys an universel word off smale lymes, & here helpynges of generacioun of enbrion þat is child in þe moder 24 wombe.

**G** Alien seiþ þat it ys necessarie a Surgien to knowe Anatomye, ne leffe henoȝt þat iche brode ligament þat ys a schyn, & iche 28 rounde ligament to ben a synwe, & so be hys opynioun he myȝte fallen in erreure. þerfore i þynke to ordeyne a Chapiteþ of þe kynde & of þe fforme & þe helpynge of alle smale lymes. Avycene seiþ, knowlechynge of a þynge þat haþ cause may noȝt be knowe but by hys cause, þerfore we mote knowe þe cause *membrorum* 32 *consimilium*: þat ys to sigge smale lymes. Y wyl telle þe generacioun of embrion, þat ys to sigge, how a childe ys bygete in þe modire wombe. Galien and Avycene tellen þat of boþe þe spermes of Man & womman—wirchyng & sofferynge togedires, so þat iche of hem 36 wirche in opere & suffren in opere—embrion ys bygete. But þe worchyng of Mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans <sup>3</sup>kynde

[<sup>2</sup> fol. 39 a]



- more febler / For riȝt as þe roundeles<sup>1</sup> of chese haþ bi him-silf wei  
 of worchinge & þe mylk bi wey of suffrynge, so to þe generacioun  
 of embrion mannes sperme haþ him<sup>2</sup> bi wei of worchinge & wommans  
 4 sperme bi wey of suffrynge / & riȝt as þe rundelis<sup>1</sup> & þe mylk  
 maken a chese, so boþe þe spermes of man & womman maken  
 generacioun of embrion. þowȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a child  
 ben I-geten of boþe two spermes, neþeles, to cloþe hem with fleisch  
 8 & wiþ fatnes, comeþ to hem menstrie<sup>3</sup> blood / þe maris<sup>4</sup> of womman  
 haþ an able complexioun to conseiuen; & of hir kynde he castiþ  
 þe spermes to þe depepest place of hir; & of hir nature he closiþ hir  
 mouþ, þat þer myȝte not entre the poynt of a nedle / & þanne þe  
 12 foormal vertu which almyȝty god haþ ȝeue to þe maris ordeyneþ &  
 diuidid euery partie of þese spermes in her kynde, til þat þe child  
 be born / Vndirstonde þat þe fleisch & þe fatnes is mad of menstrie  
 blood, þe boones & gristlis, ligamentis & senewis, cordis, arteries,  
 16 veynes, panniclis—þat ben smale cloþis—and þe skyn beþ engendrid  
 of boþe þe spermes, as auicen & opere auctouris tellen / If þat ony of  
 þe lymes þat ben engendrid of þe spermes ben doon away \*[he] moun  
 neuere verliche be restorid, for þe mater of hem is þe sperme of þe

† And as ren-  
net curdles  
milk and the  
two make  
cheese,  
so does the  
seed of man  
and woman  
make the  
Embryo.†

sign. 2j  
[s. 1f. 9, bk.]

The flesh  
and the fat  
are formed  
from the  
menstrual  
blood.

The Matrix  
closes itself  
after having  
conceived.

The whole  
body is  
developed in  
the Matrix  
(except the  
flesh and fat)  
from the seed  
of the man  
and woman.

Auicen

<sup>1</sup> roundeles, rundelis. Add. MS. rendelys, coagulum. See Prompt. Parv., p. 429, renlys, or rendlys. Comp. O. Du. rinsel, runsel.

<sup>2</sup> mannes sperme haþ him, Lat. ita sperma viri se habet. <sup>4</sup> maris, matrix.

- 20 ys more feblere. Ffor ryȝt as þe rendelys of chese haþ hym by weye of worchyng, & þe Mylk be weye off suffrynge, so to þe generacioun of embrion, Mannes sperme<sup>6</sup> hath hym be weye of worchyng, & wommans sperme<sup>6</sup> be weye of suffrynge, & ryȝt as þe  
 24 rendles & þe mylk makyth a<sup>5</sup> chese, so boþe þe spermes<sup>6</sup> of man & womman makyþ þe generacioun of embrion. þowȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a childe be y-geten of boþe two spermes,<sup>6</sup> napeles to cloþe hem with flesch & with fatnesse comeþ to hem menstrewed blod. þe  
 28 marys of a womman haþ an able complexioun to conseiuen, & of here kynde sche castyth þe spermes to þe depepest place off here, and of here nature sche closyth hire mouth þat þere myȝte nouȝt entre þe poynt of an nedle. And þenne þe foormal virtue whiche  
 32 þat almyghty god haþ ȝeuen to the marys, ordeyneþ & deff[e]ndeþ every party of þese spermes in here kynde, tyl þat þe childe ben ybore. Understande þat þe flesch & þe fatnesse ys y-mad of menstrewed blod, the bonys & þe grustlys, ligamentes, synwes, cordes,  
 36 Arteries, veynes, pannicles, þat buþ smale cloþes & þe schyn buþ engendred of boþe þe spermes, as Avicene & opere Autores tellyn. Ȝif þat enye of þe lymes þat buþ engendrede off the spermes be don away, \*he may neuere verelyche ben restoride, ffor þe matere of

Add. MS.  
12,056.

<sup>5</sup> Above line.

<sup>6</sup> MS. spernes.

fadir & of þe modir; but þe fleisch the which mater is blood, þat is  
aldai engendrid in us, may weel & verriliche be restorid / þese smale  
lymes han dyuers foormes, complexiouns & helpingis aftir þe  
dyuersitees of þe proporciouns of þe mater, which þat þei ben maad 4  
of / for þou3 þat alle þe lymes ben maad of oon mater I-medlid,  
[1 lf. 10] neþeles in ech of þe smale ly<sup>1</sup>mes þer is a dyuers proporcioun of  
mater, for þe which mater þei taken dyuers foormes & dyuers  
helpingis. Almy3ti god 3eueþ to ech þing<sup>4</sup> of his foorme after þat 8  
his mater is\* proporciound disserueþ /

*consimile  
membris,\*\**  
1st Member  
The Bone.  
Its functions:

to move  
limbs,

protect them,  
support the  
body,

and fill the  
hollows of  
joints.

þe boon is þe first of þe *consimile membrs*—þat is oon of þe  
smale lymes; þe which ben<sup>2</sup> cold & drie & he haþ dyuers foormes  
in mannes bodi: for he helpiþ dyuerslich / þe cause whi þer ben 12  
manye dyuers boones in mannes bodi is, for sumtyme it is nede to  
meeue oon lyme withouten anopir & þat were impossible, if þat al  
þe bodi were but oon boon / Anoper cause whi þer ben manye  
boones: for summe defenden þe principal lymes from harm, as þe 16  
brayn scolle from<sup>3</sup> þe brayn of þe heed / summe ben fundamentis,  
as þe boones of þe rigge & of þe schenes & of þe armes / summe  
ben as additamentis þat ben in þe side of þe rigge boon, & summe  
to fulfille the holownes of summe ioyntis, as þe handis & þe feet; 20

<sup>2</sup> *ben* for *is*, see below.

<sup>3</sup> *from*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[4 fol. 89 b]

*hym ys þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modere. But þe flesch whose  
matere ys blod þat is al day engendred in vs may wel & verrelliche  
be restoryde. þese smale lymes han dyverse formes, complexioun,  
& helpynges after the dyversite of þe proportiouns of þe mater 24*  
whiche þat þey ben <sup>4</sup>mad of; ffor þow3 þat alle the lymes be mad of  
on matere y-medlyde, napeles in eche of þe smale lymes þere is a  
dyverse proposicioun<sup>5</sup> of matere, for the whiche matere þey taken  
dyverse forme & dyverse helpe. Almyghty god gevyth to effrye 28  
þynge of hys forme after þat hys matere \*porporcioned deservyt.

þe bon is furst of *consimile membrs* þat is on off smale  
lymes, þe whiche ys colde & drye, & he haþ dyverse formes in  
mannes bodye, for he helpiþ dyversliche; þe cause why þere ben 32  
manye dyverse bonys in mannys body is,<sup>6</sup> ffor sum tyme it ys nede  
to meffyn o lyme without an opere, & þat were impossible, 3if in alle  
þe body were but on hol bon. An opere cause is why þere ys many  
bonys; for sum diffenden þe principal lymes from harme, as þe 36  
brayn scolle þe brayn of þe hed; somme ben ffundamentys, as þe  
bonys of þe rugge, & of þe schynes, & of þe Armes. Some ben as  
armure, as additamentys, þat ben in þe syde of þe rugge bon, &  
somme fulfille þe holwenesse of somme Iunttes, as þe handys & þe 40

<sup>5</sup> read "porporcioun."

<sup>6</sup> *is* above line.



& summe *per* ben *pat* þe roundnes of þe boon myzte entre into þe holownes of *pat* *oper* boon / & non les schulde not lacke his meuyng as þe schuldre boones & þe hiþe boones. þou maist fynde  
 4 how manye boones *per* ben in þe .ij. tretis, <sup>1</sup> where schal be told <sup>[1 lf. 10, bk.]</sup>  
 pleyulier þe anotamie of consimile membrs of al þe bodi from þe heed to þe foot.

A gristil is cold & drie, & is neischere þan a boon, & hardere þan  
 8 þe fleisch, and in þe fleisch he haþ sixe helpingis / þe firste, *pat* *pat* schulde be a meene bitwene þe vttr ende of þe hard boon & þe  
 neische fleisch / þe .ij. *pat* þe harde schulde not hirte þe neische,  
 nameli in þe tyme of *compressioun*, & in þe tyme of *smytinge* / þe  
 12 .ij. *pat* þe eende of þe boones whiche *pat* ben in þe ioyntis schulden  
 hane a softere *confutacioun*<sup>2</sup> in her ioyntis / þe fourþe, *pat* he schulde  
 fulfille þe office of þe boon to susteyne a brawne, meuyng a membre  
*pat* haþ noon boon, as þe ouer lid of þe iþe / þe fifþe: for it is  
 16 nessessarie a gristil to ben in place, *pat* is nouzt ful hard as þe þrote bolle; for þe eende of þe þrote bolle is gristeli / þe .vj.: for it is  
 nessessarie summe lymes to han a sustentacioun, and applicacioun,<sup>3</sup>  
*pat* is foldyng, to be streyned & drawen abrod as þe noseþrillis &  
 20 þe gristile of þe eere.

<sup>2</sup> *confutacioun*, erroneously for *confricacioun*. See below.

<sup>3</sup> *applicacioun*. Read a *plicacioun*.

fete, & somme *pere* ben *pat* þe roundnesse of on bon myzte entre in  
 to þe holwenesse of þe *opere* bon & napeles scholde nozt lakken hys  
 meffynge, as þe schulder bonys, & the heþe bonys. þou maiste fynde  
 24 hou many bonys *pere* ben in þe secunde tretys where schal be tolde  
 plenerliche—þe Anotamye of *consimile* membrys of alle <sup>4</sup>þe body, <sup>[4 fol. 40 a]</sup>  
 from þe hed to þe fot. A grustyþ ys cold & drye, & is nesschere  
 þenne a bon, & hardere þanne þe fleisch, & in þe fleisch hath vi  
 28 helpynges. ¶ Helpynge þe grustel. The ffurste *pat* *pere* scholde be  
 a Mene, bytwene þe vtter ende of þe hard bon, & þe nessch fleisch.  
 ¶ þe secunde, *pat* þe harde scholde nozt hurt þe nessche, namlyche,  
 in þe tyme of *comprission*, & in þe tyme of *smytyng*. ¶ The  
 32 pridde, *pat* þe ende of þe bonys, whiche *pat* ben in þe Iunttes  
 scholde han a softere *confricacioun* in here Iunttes. ¶ þe iiij, *pat*  
 he scholde fulfille þe office of þe bon, to susteyne a brawne meffynge,  
 a membre *pat* haþ non bon, as þe ouere lyd of þe eyze. ¶ þe  
 36 v. for his necessarie a grustyþ to be<sup>5</sup> in a place *pat* ys nozt ful  
 hard, as þe prote bolle; ffor þe ende of þe prote bolle ys grustlye.  
 ¶ þe vi. for it is necessarie some lymes to han a sustentacioun &  
 a plicacioun, *pat* is a foldyng, to be streynde & drawen abrod, as þe  
 40 nese þrylles & þe grustle of þe ere.

<sup>5</sup> *nozt* above line.

sign. 2ij

[1 lf. 10, bk.]

2nd Member,  
The Gristle;  
the six uses  
of Gristle.

.1.

.2.

.3.

.4.

.5.

.6.

Add. MS.  
12,056.



3rd Member,  
ligamentis.

[1 lf. 11]

The four uses  
of Ligament.

.1.

It binds the  
bones to-  
gether,

.2.

It joins with  
Sinews to  
make *Cordes*,  
i.e. Tendons  
and Muscles,

.3.

it is a resting-  
place for  
Sinews,

.4.

it sustains  
the parts  
within the  
body.  
4th Member,  
Sinews  
(Nerves).  
They start  
from the  
brain or  
Spinal Cord.  
sign. 2iiij  
[4 lf. 11, bk.]

Lygament is cold & drie, and goþ out of þe boones & hap þe foorme of a senewe. & he may be bowid, but he felip nouzt; & he 1hap foure helpingis / þe firste is, þat he knyttip oon boon wiþ anoper / it is nessessarie, þat oon boon be knytt wiþ anoper, þat 4 many boonys myzten make oon bodi as oon boon, & neuereþelatter ech membre myzte meue bi him-silf, & þefore þe ligament is as bowable & incensibile / for if þat it hadde be censibile, þei myzten nouzt han I-susteyned þe traueile & þe meuyng of þe ioyntis / & 8 if þat he hadde be inflexible as a boon, of whom he comþ of, oon lyme myzte not han meued wiþouten anoper / þe secunde help is, þat he is ioyned wiþ senewis to make cordis & brawnes / þe þridde help is þat he schulde be a restyng place to summe senewis / þe 12 fourþe þat bi him þe membris, þat ben wiþinne þe bodies, schulden ben y-teied, þe whiche þat neden hangyng.

A corde<sup>2</sup> is cold & drie, & he comþ from þe brayne, eiper from þe mucha<sup>3</sup>; þat is þe marie of þe rigge boones // From þe brayn 16 comen .vij. peire cordes. & þei ben clepid sensible senewis / ffrom þe nucha þer comen xxx peire cordis & oon bi him silf & þei ben mouable / And alle þe cordis þat comen of þe 4brayn & nucha, hap

<sup>2</sup> There is a constant confusion in all the mediæval medical books between nerves and sinews. See further Notes.

<sup>3</sup> *mucha*, an error for *nucha*; med. Lat. *nucha*. Dufr.: postera pars colli. Fr. nuque. Littré gives references from the 14th cent. for the signification, marrow. See Notes.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

Ligamente is colde & drye, & goþ out of þe bonys, & hap þe 20 forme of a zenewe, & he may be bowyde, but he felip nouzt, & he hap iiij helpynges. þe fyrste ys þat he knytte on bon with an opere. It is nessessarie þat o bon be knytte with an opere, þat 24 manye bonys myzte make on body as on bon, & nevere þe later eche membre myzte meffyn by hym-selfe, & þere fore þe ligamente was bowable & insensibile; for 3if þat yt had y-be sensible, þey myzte nouzt have susteynde the travaylle & þe meffynge of þe Iunttys; and 3if þat he hadde be inflexible as a bon, of whom þat he comþ 28 of, 6on lyme myzte nouzt han meffyde withouten an opere. þe secunde help ys, þat he ys joynede with zenewys to make cordys & brawne. þe þridde helpyng ys, þat he scholde ben a restyng place to summe senewys. þe fourþe, þat be hym þe membris þat ben withynne þe 32 body scholde ben tyede, whiche þat nedyþ hongyng.

[5 fol. 40 b]

A corde ys colde & drye, & he comyþ from þe brayn opere fro þe nuca, þat ys þe marie of þe rugge bonys. ¶ From þe brayn comþ 36 vij peire cordys, & þey buþ y-clepyde sensible zenewys, from þe nuca þere comyþ xxx peire cordys, and on by hym selfien & þey buþ mevable; & alle þe cordys þat comyþ of þe brayn, & þe nuca

boþe felynge & meuynge. & þe cordis ben white oute, bowable, strong<sup>1</sup> & tow<sup>3</sup>. & of her kynde þei bryngen meuynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat it is long<sup>1</sup> & dyuydiþ<sup>1</sup> alle þe parties of þe senewis  
 4 \* [in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamy of zenewes & here place] as þei ligge; in þe whiche placis þou must be war whanne þou schalt kutte eiþer brezne / whanne þat we schulen ordeyne anotamie of official membris & of her woundis / Official membr  
 8 is to seie: a fyngir, a ioynt<sup>1</sup>, an hand, eiþer a foot \*[ore] opere lymes of office /

Nerves of Feeling spring from the Brain: those of Motion from the Spinal Cord.

Official membr.  
bris.

Arteries ben hote nouȝt of her owne kynde, but for þe hoot blood & lijf þat goiþ in hem from þe herte. Of her kynde þei ben  
 12 colde & drie & þei han two clopis, outcept oon þat goiþ to þe lungis þe ynnere corde is stronger & grettere, þat he mowe wiþholde a meuable mater & an hoot. & her bigynnyng is in þe lift side of þe herte. & þere bigynnen two arteries; oon goiþ to þe lunge & hap  
 16 but oon coote and sprat in þe same lunge, & þere endiþ & bringiþ blood to þe lunge, bi whom he is norischid, & spirit of lijf, and þat he myȝte brynge from þe lunge eir to þe herte for to entempre þe fumosite of hete of þe herte. & þis arterie<sup>2</sup> is <sup>3</sup>y-clepid venales. & it

5th Member, Arteries spring from the heart, and have two coats,

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 12]

<sup>1</sup> & dyuydiþ] a mistake for *to dyvyde*. Latin: De divisione vero membrorum multum longa est doctrina.

<sup>2</sup> *Arteria venalis*, Pulmonary vein. It was taken to be an artery, as it carries arterial blood. See *Vicary's Anatomie*, ed. Furnivall, p. 58, note 1.

20 habbeþ boþe felynge & meffynge. & þe cordys ben whyte, bowable, stronge, & tow<sup>3</sup>; & of here kynde þey brynge meffynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat hit is longe to devydeþ alle þe parties of zenewes; \* in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamy of  
 24 zenewes & here place,\* as þey ligge; in þe whiche place þou moste be ware, whenne þou schalt kutte opere brezne, whenne þat we schulle ordeyne Anotamy of official membris & of here woundes. Official membre ys to sigge: a ffynger, a Ioynt, an hand, opere a  
 28 fote \*ore opire lymes of ofyce.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Arteries beþ hote, nouȝt for here owne kynde, but for þe hote blod & lyf þat goþ in ham from þe herte. Of here kynde þey ben colde & drye, & þey han tweye clopes, outsepte on þat goth to þe  
 32 longes. þe innore cote<sup>4</sup> is grettere & strengere, þat he mowe wiþholde a Mevable mater & an hote. & here bygynnyng is of þe lyfte syde of þe herte. & þere bygynneþ tweye Arteries, on goþ to þe longe & hap bot on cote & sprat in þe same longe, & þere endyth  
 36 & bryngeþ blod to þe longe, bi whom he ys y-norysschyde, & spirit of lyf, & þat he myȝte brynge from þe longe eire<sup>5</sup> to þe herte, for to entempren þe fumose hete of þe same herte. & þis Arterie ys clepyde

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 41 a]

<sup>5</sup> MS. *eiþere*.



save *Arteria venalis*, and that has but one.

The uses of Arteries:

1. to bring cold air to the heart;

2. to cast out the fumosity;

3. to carry life to the whole body.

is a maner veyne, for as myche as he ne hap but<sup>1</sup> oon coote, and perfore he is þe more obedient to be drawe abroad þoru3 out<sup>2</sup> alle þe lungis; & also þat þe blood þat norischip þe lungis myzte listly swete out of þis arterie / þe toþer arterie þat comeþ out of þe lift- 4 side of þe herte hap two cootis, bi cause þat oon myzt not azenstonde þe strenkþe of þe spiritis; & also þat, þat is wipinne þe arterie, is ful derworþe & nedip greet kepinge / þer ben þre helpingis of þe arteries: oon is þat cold eir myzte bi hem be drawe & I-brouzt to 8 þe herte whanne þe arterie is drawe abrod. þe secunde is, þat þe fumosite myzte be cast out whanne he is constreyned / þe þridde is, þat þe spirit of lijf myzte be brouzt bi hem to al þe bodi / þese arteries ben deuydid many weies; whos dyuysious man mai nouzt<sup>12</sup> conseyue bi his witt, ne þei ben nouzt dredful to<sup>1</sup> surgiens craft, but whanne þou schalt drede þe arteries I schal telle þee in her placis /

6th Member, veynes.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 12, bk.]

Veins spring from the liver.

Veynes bi cause of her bodies ben deemed cold & drie; for þe 16 blood þat is *withynne* hem þei ben deemed hoot<sup>1</sup>; & alle þe veynes han her bi<sup>2</sup>gynnyng at þe lyuere, in þe which lyuere .ij. veynes han pryncipal bigynnyng / oon veyne bigynneþ of þe holow3 side of þe lyuere. & is clepid porta<sup>3</sup>—þat is a 3ate / & her office is to drawe \* [Chilum] 20

<sup>1</sup> *a* erased.

<sup>3</sup> *Vena Porta*. See *Vicary*, p. 22, note 1.

Add. MS. 12,056.

*venalis*, & yt is a manere veyne, ffor as myche as he may haue but o cote, & perfore he is þe more obedient to be drawn abroad þorwe out alle þe longes & also þat þe blod þat noryschith þe longe myzte listlokere swete out of þis arterie. þe opere Artery, þat 24 comyth out of þe lefte syde of þe herte, hap two cotys, because þat on myzt nozt ageyne stonde þe strengþe of þe spirites, and also þat þat is wipynne þe Arterye is ful derwarde & nedip gret kepyng. þere ben þre helpynges of þe Arteries: on is þat colde eyre bi hem 28 myzte be drawe & y-brouzt to þe herte, whenne þe arterye is drawe abrod; þe secunde ys þat þe fumosite myzt be caste out, whenne sche is constreynede; þe þridde ys þat þe spirite of lyf myzte be brozt by hem to alle þe body. þese Arteries bep devydyde many 32 weyes, whose divisions Man may nozt conseyue by hys wyt, ne þey ne bep nozt dredful to surgiens crafte; but whenne þou schalt drede þe arterye i schal tellen þe in here places.

Veynes by cause of here bodyes bep y-demyde colde & drye; but 36 for þe blod þat is *withynne* hem þey bep y-demyde hote, & alle þe veynes han here <sup>4</sup>bygynnyng of þe lyffere, in þe whiche lyffere two veynes han pryncipal begynnyng. On veyne bygynneþ of þe holwe syde of þe lyvere, & ys y-clepyde *Porta*, þat ys a 3atte, & here ofyce 40 is to drawe *chilum* from þe stomake & þe guttes by mene of þe

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 41 b]



fro þe stomak & þe guttis bi mene of þe veynes miseraices<sup>1</sup>; & pilke chilum spredip þoru; al þe lyuere bi mene of veynes capillares /

The Mesaraic  
veins bring

Chilum<sup>2</sup> is þe licour of þe mete, whanne it goip out of þe stomak & 4 þe guttes / Veynis miserak<sup>1</sup> ben smale veynes þat comen out of þe veyne þat is clepid porta & cleueþ on þe stomak & þe guttis / Venes capillares, þat ben veynes as it were heers of a mannes heed /

Chilum  
to the Portal  
Vein.

After hem comeþ panniclis—þat is to seie smal clooþ, þat is maad

7th Member,  
panikelles.  
the fleshy  
membrane.  
The uses of  
the Pannicle.

8 of sutil predis of senewis, veynes & arteries / wherfore þei ben colde & drie & censible / & þei han þre helpingis / þe firste is: þat þei moun bynde manye þingis in oon foorme, as þe panicle of þe heed byndip seuene boones / þe secunde Iuuament is: þat þei hangen &

.1.

.2.

12 bynden summe membris wiþ opere as þe reynes to þe rigge & þe maris to þe maris<sup>3</sup> to þe rigge / þe þridde helpinge is: þat þe mem-<sup>4</sup>bris þat ben incensible bi her kynde, bi þe panniclis þat wriep hem velen bi accident: as þe lungis, þe lyuere, & þe splene, & þe reynes.

.3.

[4 lf. 13]

16 þes lymes bi her kynde han no felynge, but what þei felen it is bi accidens of þe pannicle þat wriep hem.

þe<sup>5</sup> fleisch is not hoot, but it is moist & hap þre maner lijknis: oon is a symple fleisch, & his helpinge is to fulfille þe voide placis

8th Member  
Flesh.  
3 Maner of  
fleisch.\*\*

<sup>1</sup> Veynis miserak. See Vicary, p. 66, note 7.

<sup>2</sup> Chilum. See Vicary, p. 68, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> MS. þe maris to þe maris to þe rigge. The second maris is cancelled.

<sup>5</sup> Latin: Caro vero calida est et humida.

20 veynes miscraykus; pilke chylum spredeþ þorwe al þe lyffere by mene of veynes Capillares. Chilum ys þe licoure of mete & of þe 12,056.

drynke, whanne yt goþ out of þe stomake & þe guttes. Veynes miserayke beþ smale veynes, þat comyþ out of þe veyne þat is 24 y-clepyde porta, & elevyþ on þe stomake & þe gottys. Veynes capillarys þat beþ veynes, as yt were herys of a Mannes hed.

¶ After hem comyþ pannyceles, þat ys to sigge, a smal cloth,

þat ys mad of sotyþ predys of synwis veynes & arteries, where 28 fore þey ben colde & dryge & sensible, & þey han þre helpynges. þe firste is þat they mowe bynden manye þynges in on forme, as þe pannicle of þe hed bynde vii bonys; þe secunde Iuvament is þat þey hongen & bynden somme membrys with opere, as þe reyns to þe

32 rugge & þe marys to þe rugge bou; þe þrydde helpinge ys þat some membrys þat beþ insensible by here kynde, by þe pannycles þat wreyep hem fliep by accydent, as þe longes, þe lyffere, & þe splene, & þe reynes; þese lymes by here kynde hap non felynge, but what 36 þat þey felyn it ys by Accident of þe pannycle þat wreyep hem.

þe flesch is nozt hot, but yt is moist, & hap þre manere lyknesse; on ys symple flesch, & hys helpinge ys to fulfille þe voyde placys

.1.  
Simple flesh  
fills up hol-  
lows.

.2.  
Glandulous  
flesh turns

blood into  
milk,  
and makes  
sperin into  
spittle.

.3.  
Brawny or  
muscular  
flesh.

[4 lf. 13, bk.]

9th Member,  
Skin.  
It is temper-  
ate.

of smale lymes to brynge hem to a good schap, & þat ech hard lyme schulde nouzt hirte oper wiþ confucacioun<sup>1</sup> togidere / Anoper maner fleisch þer is þat is glandelose, þat<sup>1</sup> is as it were accornis,<sup>2</sup> & his Iuvament is þat<sup>1</sup> he turne<sup>3</sup> humedites, þat<sup>1</sup> is to seie moistnes to her 4 heete; as þe glandelose fleisch of wommans brestis þe which þat<sup>1</sup> turneþ þe blood þat<sup>1</sup> is drawn from þe maris into mylk; & þe glandelose fleisch of þe ballockis, þat turneþ þe blood into sperme / & þe glandelose fleisch of þe chekis þat engendriþ spotil / þe þridde 8 maner fleisch is a fleisch þat is in brawnys, þat is clepid a brawn fleisch, for he is medlid wiþ sutil þredis of cordis, as I schal telle after þe whiche helpingis schal be told in þe<sup>4</sup> anotamie of þe brawn.

At þe laste is þe skyn þat is temperat in al her qualitees; & it 12 is maad of smale þredis of veynes, senewis, & arteries, þat makip him censible, & ȝeueþ him lif & worchinge, þat ben gouvernouris of al þe bodi. & þe skyn is maad temperat, for he schulde knowe hoot, coold, moist, & drie, soft, hard, sharp, & smope / & if þat þe skyn 16 were as sencible as a senewe, þanne a man myzte not dwelle in erþe ne in hoot eir; ne þe skyn of þe fyngris endis þe whiche þat is more temperat þan any oþir skyn of þe bodi ne schulde nouzt be a

<sup>1</sup> *confucacioun*. Addit. *confricacioun*. See page 23, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> *accornis*, glands.

<sup>3</sup> Latin: eius iuvamentum est, ut convertat humiditates ad eius colorem. The English translator read: calorem.

Add. MS. 12,056. of smale lymes, to bryngen hem to a gode schappe, & þat iche harde 20 lyme<sup>5</sup> ne scholde nouzt hurten opere with *confricacioun* togidere. [5 fol. 42 a] An opere manere flesch ys þat is glandelose, þat ys as hyt were achcharnes, & hys Iuvamente is þat he turnyth vmydites to here hete: as þe glandelose flesch of wommans brestys, whyche þat 24 turnyth þe blod þat ys drawe from þe marys into þe mylk, þe glandelose flesch of þe ballokes, þat turnyth þe blod into sperme, & þe glandelose flesch off the chekys þat engendreþ spotel. þe þridde manere of flesch ys a flesch þat is in brawnys, þat ys y-clepede a 28 brawny flesch, ffor he ys medlyde wiþ sotyl þredys of cordys, as y schal tellyn aftere, whose helpynge schal be tolde in þe Anotamye of þe brawne.

At þe laste is þe schyn, þat is temperat in al here qualite, & is 32 y-mad of smale þredys of veynes, synwes, & Arteries, þat makeþ hym sensible, and geveþ hym lyf and norisschyng, þat he be governoure of alle þe body. & þe skyn ys y-mad temperat, for he scholde knowe hot, colde, moyste & drye, softe & hard, scharpe & smepe; & ȝif þe 36 skyn were as sencible as a ȝenewe, a man myzte nozt dwellen in colde eyre, ne in hote eyre; ne þe skyn of þe fyngres endys, whiche þat ys more temperat þenne eny opere skyn of þe lody, ne scholde

good demere in knowynge hoot, cold, hard, scharp, soft, eiper neische.

- Brawnes þouȝ þat þei be maad of mater medlid, nepeles þei ben 9th Member, Muscles are instruments of moving. Cords are made from Sinews and Ligaments,
- 4 rekened among<sup>t</sup> membris consimiles, for þei comen to þe making<sup>t</sup> of membris officials / Brawn is maad of fleisch, senewe, & ligamentis, & þei ben instrumente voluntarie meuyng. þe senewe þat cometh fro þe brayn, & þe nucha & goiþ forþ to meue þe lymes is medlid
- 8 wiþ a ligament / & whanne þe senewe & þe ligament<sup>t</sup> ben medlid togidere, it<sup>t</sup> is clepid a corda / & þe corde is maad for þre skilis. þe firste<sup>1</sup> for a symple sinewe is to cen<sup>2</sup>sible; þe senewe bi him-silf [2 lf. 14] the Sinew alone being too sensible, myȝt not suffre gret<sup>t</sup> traueile & meuyng, but þe felowschipe of þe
- 12 ligament þat is incensible lettith þe felynge of þe senewe, & bringith him to a profitable temperaunce / þe senewe haþ .ij. oþere defaultis: neischenesse and litznesse. But þo .ij. defaultis þe medlynge of þe ligament<sup>t</sup> fulfillith<sup>3</sup>; for þe neischenes is temperid & strenkpid, & þe too soft,
- 16 litilnes is maad more. þe neischnes cometh of þe brayn for it is myche, & þe litilnes cometh of þe nucha, for it is litil. þat þat is maad of þis nerf & þis ligament is clepid a corde; þe which þat and too small. cordis, meueþ þe lymes to þe wille of þe soule, whanne þat<sup>t</sup> it is schortid

<sup>1</sup> þe firste in margin.

<sup>3</sup> fulfillith, supplet. See *Cath. Angl.*, p. 145, to *Fulfylle*, supplere vicem Alterius.

- 20 noȝt ben a gode demere in knowynge hot, cold, hard oþere scharpe, softe oþere nessche. Add. MS. 12,056.

- ¶ Brawnyȝ þowȝ þey ben mad of matere y-medlyde, nevere þe latere þey beþ y-reknyde amonge membrys consimiles, for þey comen 24 to þe makynge off Membrys-officiales. Brawne ys y-mad of flesch, 3zenewe, & ligamente, & þey ben Instrument off voluntarie mevyng. þe zenewe þat comyth from þe brayn & þe nuca, & goþ forþ to meue the lymes, ys y-medlyde with a ligamente, & whenne þe zenewe & þe 28 ligamente beþ medlyde togedyre, yt ys clepyde a corde, & the corde ys y-made for þre skylles: þe ffurste for a symple senewe ys to sensible, & þe zenewe by hym-self<sup>t</sup> ne myȝte noȝt suffren to grete travaylle & mevyng, but þe felawschipe of þe ligamente, þat ys 32 insensible, lutliþ þe felynge of þe synwe, and bryngeþ hym to a profitable temperaunce. þe zenewe hadde tweyne oþere defautes: nesschenesse & litylnesse, but þo tweyne defautes, þe medlynge of þe ligament ffulfilleþ; for the nesschenesse ys entempred & y-strength- 36 yde, and þe lytelnesse ys y-made more. The nesschenesse comyth of þe brayn, ffor it ys nessche; and þe lytelnesse cometh of þe Nuca, for it ys lytel. þat þat is mad of þis nerff & þis ligamente ys clepyde a corde, whiche þat meviþ þe lymes to wyl of þe soule,

[4 fol. 42 b]



Muscles are  
made from  
cords and  
flesh.

.1.

.2.

.3.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 14, bk.]

When the  
Cords enter  
the Muscles,  
they are  
divided into  
many  
threads.

ouper drawn after þat þe lyme bouwip. To þis<sup>1</sup> corde, þer is asocied  
a symple \*[flesch] for to make a brawn for þre profitis / þe firste  
profizt þat is in drawyng & wiþdrawyng of þe corde, þe fleisch  
schulde be as a pelewe vpon þe which he myzt reste / þe secunde, 4  
þat þe fleisch þat is neische & moist schulde kepe þe corde, þat he  
drie nouzt in her meuyng / þe þridde, þat þe makyng of lymes  
were þe more schaploker. / þe brawn is maad bowyng as a bowe  
þat is bent; & for þe kynde wolde kepe þis complexioun, he clopide 8  
þe brawn wiþ a pannicle / þe corde whanne he entrip into þe brawn  
is departid into many smale predis, & þei ben clepid villes<sup>3</sup>—þat is  
to seie wrappingis. & þese villes ben of .iiij. maner: in lenkþe bi  
þe which vertu, þat drawip hæþ myzt, in brede, bi þe which vertu 12  
þat castide out hæþ myzt / in þwert ouer bi þe which vertu \*[þat] with  
halt hæþ myzt / & at þe eendis of þe brawn pilke predis ben gaderid  
togidere to make a corde, aftir þat it is nessessarie / many cordis  
eiper brawnes to ben engendrid. & official membris ben maad of 16  
þese consimile membris, þe whiche þat ben instrumentes to resonable  
soule. And in þe ij. tretis I wole telle þe anotamie of lymes  
of office.

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : Huic autem chordæ—associatur caro simplex. Comp. Add. MS.

<sup>3</sup> villes. Lat. fila.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 43 a]

whenne þat it is schortid opere y-drawe, aftere þat þe lyme bowyth 20  
to þis corde. ffor þere ys Asosyed a symple \*flesch forto maken a  
brawne for þre proffytes: þe furste profyt, þat boþe in drawyng &  
wiþdrawyng of þe corde, the flesch scholde be as a pylwe, vp on  
whom he myzte reste; þe secunde cause, þat þe flesch þat is nessche 24  
& moyst schulde kepen þe corde, þat <sup>4</sup>sche dreyzede nozt in here  
mevyng; þe þridde, þat þe makyng of lymes were þe more schap-  
lokore. þe brawne is made bowyng, as a bowe þat ys y-bent; &  
for þat kynde wolde kepe þys compositionn, he clothyde þe brawne 28  
wyþ a pannycle. þe corde whenne he entriþ in to þat brawne, ys  
departyde in to many smale predys, & þey ben clepyde vyllis, þat  
ys to sugge, wrabbynges. & þese villes bene of þre maners, in  
lengþe—by whom vertue þat drawep hæþ myzt, in brede—by whom 32  
vertu þat castyþ out hæþ myzt, in twart ofere—by whom vertu  
\*þat wiþhalt hæþ myzt; & at þe ende of þe brawne pilke predys bep  
gadride to gedre to maken a corde, after þat it is necessarie, many  
cordys opere brawmys to ben engendride. & official membrys ben 36  
y-mad of þese consimile membrys, whiche þat bep instrument  
to resonable soule. And in þe secunde tretys y wyl tellen þe anotamye  
of lymes of office.

## The firste chapitle //

¶ Capm. jm

- ¶ þe .iij. techinge is of difference of woundis & of general *de vulneribus*  
 curis / We schulen undrestonde þat wounde, & old wounde, festre  
 4 & cankre woundid, & boon out of ioynte, & a boon to-broken, &  
 apostyme, alle þese ben clepid vndoyng of þat þat is hool. & alle  
 þese sicknessis, & many oon opir as weel, moun falle to *consimile*  
*membris* as to official *membris* / *vunnus* is a newe wounde / *vlcus* is  
 8 an old rotid wounde. <sup>1</sup> I schal tellen in her placis þe difference of <sup>[1 leaf 15]</sup>  
 festre & cankre & apostyme; plage comounly is taken for an oold  
 wounde, & ofte tymes we fynde þat an old wounde is clepid *vulnus*,  
 as *ypocras seip* / *vulnera annua necesse est* in eis os taliefieri<sup>2</sup> & *cica-ypocras*  
 12 *trices concavas fieri*: þat is to seie, it is nedful<sup>3</sup> þat þe boon in an  
 oold wounde to be rotid & þe cicatrices to be holow; / *Cicatrice* is þe  
 place of þe schynboon<sup>4</sup> þe wounde, whanne þat it is hool / Summe  
 woundis ben symple, & summe compound / in two maner he is  
 16 clepid a symple wounde / oon maner, for he hæþ not lost of fleisch /  
 anoþer maner for he hæþ noon opir sickness wip him, ne is nouzt  
 distemperid / A wounde compound is clepid contrarie to him þat is  
 symple / but boþe symple & compoundis sumtyme is in þe fleisch or

Wounds are  
 either  
 woundis  
 sempell

or compound,

<sup>2</sup> read *tabefieri*.<sup>3</sup> it is nedful in margin.<sup>4</sup> *schynboon*, read *schyn* above. See below.

- 20 The ffurste Chapitle of þe þridde techyng is of differ- Add. MS.  
 ence of woundes & olde woundes & off generall 12,056.  
 cures.

- ¶ We schulle vndirstonde þat wounde, olde wounde, ffestre, cancre  
 24 y-wondyde, a bon out of loynt, a bon tobroken, Aposteme, alle þese  
 ben y-clepyde vndoyng of þat þat ys hol, & alle þese seknesse  
 & many opere as wel mowe fallen to *consimile membrys*. as to oficial  
*membris*. *Vulnus* is a newe wounde. *Vlcus* ys an olde rotyde  
 28 wounde. I schal <sup>5</sup>tellen in here place þe dyfference of festre & <sup>[5 fol. 43 b]</sup>  
 cancre & apostemys. Plage comynliche ys y-taken of an olde wonde;  
 and ofte tyme we fynden, þat an olde wounde ys y-clepyde *Vulnus*,  
 as *Ipcres seip*: *Vulnera Annua necesse est* in eis os *tabefieri* &  
 32 *cicatrices concavas fieri*. ¶ That is to sugge, it ys ned, þat þe bon  
 in an olde wounde to be rotyd, & þe Cicatrices to be holwe. *Cica-*  
*trice* ys þe place of þe skyn above the wounde, whenne þat yt is  
 hol. Some wounde buþ symple & some ben componyde. In tweye  
 36 manere he ys clepyde a symple wounde. On manere, for he hæþ  
 nouzt leste of flesch; an opere maner, for he hæþ non opere seknesse  
 with hym, ne is nouzt distempide. A wounde componed ys y-clepyde  
 contrarye to hym þat is symple. But boþe symple & also com-

in þe senewe, or in þe boon, or in þe veynes, or in þe arterie / also þese woundis han dyuers cause. Summe comen fro wiþinne of þe malice, eiþer of to greet multitude of humouris. \* [forto gret multitude of humores] opirwhile tobrekiþ þe membre & wiþholdiþ & woundiþ 4 him / Cold matere streyneþ, drie mater kuttiþ, moisture wiþoute  
 [1 If. 15, bk.] mater makiþ no wounde, but selden with<sup>1</sup> mater, but he drawe þe and external. lyme to brode. & also þe cause wiþoute<sup>2</sup> mai be dyuers opirwhile wiþ a swerd eiþir wiþ a þing<sup>1</sup> þat kuttiþ along, oþerwhile wiþ a knyf 8 or wiþ a spere or an arowe þat prickiþ, & summe ben maad wiþ a staf or wiþ a stoon eiþir wiþ fallynge, & summe ben maad wiþ bitynge of an hound oupir a wood hound; & alle þese ben diuers affir þe dyuersite of her causis; & also þe maner of helynge is dyuers / Al þe intencion 12 of helynge of woundis is for to sowden or to helen & to restoren þat, þat is departid, þe which þat mai not oueral be doon / for if þat membris of office ben kutt of, þei moun neuere be restorid, ne noon of þe consimile membris mai be restorid, if he be doon away: 16 as boonis, pelliculis, gristlis, ligamentis & skyn / For þe cause of her generacioun is þe sperme of þe fadir & of þe modir, as I tolde tofore / but in place of þing<sup>1</sup> þat is I-lore, kynde restoriþ þat, þat is moost conuenient to þe place; but fleisch mai be restorid bi cause 20

and have different causes, both internal

The object of healing is to close a wound, and to restore what has been lost.

Nota

Bones, ligaments, and similar parts cannot be restored;

<sup>2</sup> The cause wiþoute, causa exterior.

Add. MS. 12,056. ponyd some tyme is in þe flesch opere in þe synwe oper in bon, opere in veyne, opere in arterie. Also þese wondes han dyverse causes. Some comen from wiþynne of þe malice, opere of to greet multytude of humores; \* forto gret multitude of humores opere while 24 tobrekyth þe membre, þat wiþholdiþ & woundiþ hym cold matere streyneþ, drye matere kutteþ, moistnesse withouten matere makeþ no wounde, but selden with matere, but he drawiþ þe lyme to brode. And also þe cause wiþout may be dyverse, operwhyle with a swerd, 28 ore with a þynge þat kutteþ alonge, operwhile with a knyff, opere a spere, opere an arwe þat<sup>3</sup> prykeþ, & somme ben made wiþ a stafe, opere with a ston, opere with fallynge, & somme ben mad with bytynge of an hound, opere of a wod hounde; & alle þese ben dyverse, 32 after þe dyverste of here cause; & also þe manere of helynge ys dyverse. Alle þe entension of helynge of woundes, ys forto sowdyn & to helyn, & to restoren þat þat is departyde, whiche þat may nogt overe al be don. Ffor ȝif þat membres of offyce ben kutte of, þey 36 mowe neuere ben restoryd; ne non of þe consimile membres may be restoryde, & he be don away: as bonys, pellicules, grustles, ligamentis & schyn. Ffor þe cause of here generacioun is þe sperme of þe ffadire & þe modere, as y tolde tofore; but in place of thyng 40 þat is lore, kynde restoryth þat þat is most convenient to þat place; but the flesch may be restoryd, by cause þat þe blod ys engendred

[3 fol. 44 a]



- pat þe blood is engendrid al day in us, & þe blood is þe mater of þe <sup>flesh, veins, and arteries</sup> fleisch / & summe seien þat veynes, arteries, & senewis myzt not be <sup>can be.</sup> restorid as þei weren tofore; but þei moun <sup>[1 leaf 16]</sup> <sup>1</sup> be restorid as boоныs
- 4 ben / But Galien and Auicen & I þat am expert here seiynge,<sup>2</sup> **G. A.** we<sup>3</sup> seie þat þei moun be restorid wiþ veri consolidacioun, whanne þat her kuttinge is lital, & whanne þat þe senewis þat ben newe kutt<sup>4</sup> & <sup>4</sup> soude azen; but þei moun not be consoudid, whanne þat
- 8 her kuttinge is myche & greet; & resoun grauntip it / Senewis bi kynde ben neische & viscouse; & þefore þei moun<sup>5</sup> ben consoudid, & þe veynes & þe arteries moun be consoudid bi resoun of þe blood <sup>vaynes & arteries may be consoudid but not senewis.</sup> þat is in hem. I þenke to ordeyne ech chapitle bi him-silf after
- 12 þe dyuersite of lymes & of placis, þe whiche þat þei ben maad synne / & I wole bigynne at a symple wounde maad in fleisch /

þe secunde chapitle of þe pridde techinge /

ijo. co.

- 16 **N**OW we wolen trete of a wounde maad in fleisch. We wolen <sup>Of wounde maad in fleisch.</sup> bigynne at a symple wounde maad wiþ knyff or wiþ swerd, or spere or arowe, or wiþ ony opir þing<sup>1</sup> semblable to hem.

<sup>2</sup> I þat am expert here seiynge. Lat.: ego qui sum expertus eorum dicta.

<sup>3</sup> we, added above line.

<sup>4</sup> s, mistake for ben.

<sup>5</sup> not, erroneously added above line.

- al day in vs, & þe blod ys þe matere of flesch; & somme suggen þat <sup>Add. MS. 12,056.</sup> veynes, synwes, & arteries myzte nouzt be restoryde as þey were tofore; but þey mowe be restoryd as bonys buþ. But Galien & Avycene, & I þat am expert here suggynge, suggen þat þey mowe be restoryde with verrey consolidacioun, whanne þat here kuttinge ys lyteft, & whanne þat þe synwys þat buþ newe kutte beþ so wyde
- 24 azeine; but þey mowe nozt be consouded, whanne þat here kuttinge ys gret & myche; & resoun grauntyth yt. Synwys bi kynde buþ nessche and viscose; & þefore þey mowe ben consouded. þe veynes & þe arteries mowe be consouded by resoun of þe blod þat ys
- 28 in hem. I þynke to ordeynen eche Chapitell <sup>[6 fol. 44 v]</sup> <sup>6</sup> be hym selven, aftere þe dyversite of lymes & of placys, whyche þat þey buþ y-made yn; & y wyl begynne at a symple wounde y-mad in flesch.

- ¶ þe secunde Chapitell off þe thridde techynge off the
- 32 ffurst tretis is of cure of a wounde y-mad in flesch.

- Now we willen treten of a wounde y-makyd in flesch. We wylle begynne at a symple wounde, y-mad wiþ knyff opere wiþ
- 36 swerd ore spere, opere with arwe, opere with enye opere thyng
- D
- SURGERY.

Simple  
wounds, if  
painless, will  
close if only  
bandaged,

Bynde togideris pilke wounde with a boond þat closiþ þe wounde togideris, & kepe pilke wounde from swellynge wiþ þe whizt of an ey leid aboue þe wounde, & lete þe wounde be in reste; & þer nedip noon [1. 16, bk.] oþer cure, namely, <sup>1</sup> whanne þe wounde is wiþoute akyng; but, & þer <sup>4</sup> be in þe wounde greet akyng, þanne it is a tokene, þat þer is a senewe prickid vndir þe wounde, eiþer a pannicle þat is bitwene þe fleisch and þe boon; & þanne þer is anoþer cure, as I schal telle in þe chapitle of puncture of a senewe þat I haue heeled a man þat<sup>2</sup> was \*[sefenty 8 zere olde þat was] smyte wiþ a spere þoruþ þe fleisch of þe buttoke, bi þe lenkþe of a fote, \* [& more] but pilke wounde touchide no senewe, & þat I wiste sikirliche, for he hadde noon akyng / I heeld þe wounde open aldai wiþ a litil smal tent & a schort, þat I myzte 12 wite, if þat he schulde aken on þe morowe, & I comaundide him to reste / & on þe morowe I foond noon inflacioun ne akyng; & þanne I took away þe tent & lete þe wounde closen, & so comaundide I him to reste þe secunde dai / In þe pridde day he was hool. & if a 16 wounde were maad wiþ a sword or wiþ ony þing þat bitip in lenkþe, anoon þou must loke if þe wounde be so litil þat he nede no sowynge, & þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togideris, þat it may be weel ioyned, & leie aboue þe wounde a poundir maad oon partie 20

Naracio.

Ego curauy  
homo.  
as has been  
shown in the  
case of an old  
man.

Treat slight  
wounds with  
pulis conso-  
lidativus



<sup>2</sup> þat, scribal insertion.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

semblable to hem. Bynde togedyre pilke wounde with a band þat close þe wounde to gedire, & kepe þe wounde from swellynge, with þe whyte of an eyze y-leyde aboue þe wounde, & lete þat wounde ben in reste, & þere nediyth none oþere cure, namlye, whanne þe wounde 24 ys withouten akyng; but and þere be in wounde gret akyng, þanne þere is a tokne þat þere ys a synwe prikyde vndire þe wounde, oþere a pannicle þat ys betwene þe fleisch & þe bon, & þanne þere ys al an oþere cure, as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of the puncture of a synwe. 28 And y haue helyd a man þat was \*sefenty zere olde, þat was y-smyten wiþ a spere þorwe þe fleisch of þe buttoke by þe lengþe of a fote \* & more, but pilke wonde touchyde non synwe; & þat y wiste sykerliche, for he had non akyng; y helde the wounde opyn al a day, 32 with a lyte smal tente & a schert þat y myzte wyte, zif þat he scholde ake on þe morwe & I comaundyde hym to reste, and on þe morwe y fonde non inflacion ne akyng, & þenne y caste awaye þe tente & lete þe wounde closen, & so y comaundide hym to reste, & wiþynne 36 þe pridde day he was al hol. And zif þat a wounde were maad wiþ a sword, oþere wiþ eny þynge þat <sup>3</sup>kutteþ in lengþe, a man most loke zif þe wounde be so litel þat he nede non sowynge, & þenne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togedyre, þat it may wel ben y-joynede, & 40 leye aboue þe wounde a poudere y-mad of on partye of franke-En-

[3 fol. 45 a]



of frankencense, & of two parties<sup>1</sup> of sandragoun,<sup>2</sup> & of pre parties<sup>[1 leaf 17]</sup> of quyk lym, & lete nouzt þe poudre entre bitwene in þe wounde butt aboue, for þer schal no ping<sup>3</sup> entre in þe wounde, & kepe þe 4 parties of þe wounde þat ben brouzt togidere wiþ a plumaciol<sup>3</sup> .iiij. cornered maad of herdis or of towe in þis maner:  oon bi þe sidis of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumaciols holde þe wounde þus iclosed<sup>4</sup>:  & ioyned togidere as it was ioyned arst, or 8 it were kutt / & bynde þe wounde togidere aboue þe plumaciols wiþ a rolle þat goiþ ouerþwert aftir þis lettre .X. & take a lynnen cloof & wete him in two parties of þe white of an ey, in oon partie of oile of rosis, þei ben togidere medlid, undir þe plumaciols, leid aboue 12 þe wounde þat is brouzt togidere, for to kepe þe<sup>5</sup> poudre; & do nouzt away þi medicyn til .iiij. daies ben goon, but if þat þe 16 þe wounde were so myche, þat byndynge wolde nouzt suffice, or were kutt ouerþwert ouer þe lyme, so þat þe parties of þe lyme myzt nouzt wel be<sup>6</sup> brouzt togideris, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis maner / Ioyn þe lippis of þe wounde, & be war þat noon oile \*[ne dust] ne no 20 ping<sup>7</sup> ellis, þat lettif consolidacioun, falle bitwene þe lippis of þe

Way of dressing a wound with com-presses.

Nota



Large wounds and those which run athwart the limb are to be stitched  
[6 lf. 17, bk.]

<sup>2</sup> Sandragoun. Sanguis draconis: the gum of the Dragon-tree. Kersey. 1706.

See Notes. <sup>3</sup> Plumaceoli: Bolsters used by Surgeons. Kersey. 1706.

<sup>4</sup> iclosed, inserted in margin.

<sup>5</sup> MS. wounde, cancelled.

sence, & of two parties of sanedragoun & of pre parties of quyke-Add. MS.  
lyme, & lete nozt þe poudre entre wiþynne þe wounde butt aboue, 12,056.  
for þere schal noþynge entre withynne þe wounde, & kepe þe parties  
24 of þe wounde þat buþ brouzt togedire with a plumacyole pre corneled  
y-made of hurdes opere towz in þis manere  on be þe sydes of  
þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumacioles holde þe wounde þus  
y-closyde  & joynde togedire, as yt was joyned ere þenne  
28 yt was ykutte; & bynde þe wounde togedire abouen þe plumacioles,  
with a rolle þat goth twartoffere after þis lettere XX, & take a lynnen  
cloth & wete hym in two parties of whyte of an eyze, & in on  
partie of oyle of roses i-bete togedire, vndire þe plumacioles aboue þe  
32 wounde, þat ys y-browzt togedyre, forto kepe þe poudre, & do nozt  
away þe medicine tyl foure dayes ben ago, but 3if þat þe wounde  
ake, opere ellys be to-swollyn; & þenne bynde þe wonde as yt was  
toforne, with þe whyte of þe eyze, oyle, poudre, & plumacioles. But  
36 3if þe wounde were so myche, þat þe byndynge wolde nozt suffice,  
opere were kutte twart offere þe lyme, so þat þe parties of þe lyme  
myzt nozt wel be browzt togedire, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis  
manere: joyne þe lippes of þe wounde togedire, & ware þat non oyle  
40 \*ne dust, ne noþynge ellys þat lattyd consolidacioun, falle bytwene



with an  
acus trian-  
gulum.

Way of stitch-  
ing a wound.

Number of  
the stitches  
and their  
distance from  
each other.

[1 leaf 18]

The stitches  
must be deep  
enough

wounde, & haue a nedle pre cornerid, whos ize schal be holid on  
bope sidis, so þat þe pred þat is in þe nedle may lie in þe holow;  
place, & pilke pred schal be twyned, & wipoute knotte, & I-wexid,  
& þe lippis of þe wounde schal be sowid togideris; & þe pred schal 4  
be knytt wip two knottis in þe firste place, & in þe secunde place  
wip oon knotte; & so make as manye poyntis, as it is nessessarie,  
& ech poynt schal be from opir bi þe brede of a litil fyngir, &  
streyne þe wounde with knottyng & þe sewyng of þe lippis of þe 8  
wounde togidere þat he ake sumwhat, but nouzt to myche. & if þat  
þer nede mo poyntis to be þere þan two, euermore þer schal be odde  
poyntis, as .iij. v. or .vij. & þe oon poynt schal be first from þe oon  
eende of þe wounde, bi þe space of a litil fyngir, & þe topir poynt 12  
schal be at þe opir ende of þe wounde, & þe þridde poynt schal be  
in þe myddil of þe wounde / & if it be nede to haue mo poyntis,  
þanne schalt þou <sup>1</sup>bigynne at þe myddil poynt, & make as manye  
poyntis on bope sidis as it is nede, til þou come to bope eendis / For 16  
bi þis maner of sowyng neipir partie schal be crokid, & so þe place  
mai faire be restorid, & euermore take kepe þat \*[zif] þe wounde be  
not depe, þi sowyng schal be nouzt deep / & if þi wounde be deep,  
þi sowyng schal be deep, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde moun 20

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[2 fol. 45 b]

þe lippes of þe wounde, & haue an nedle <sup>2</sup>pre kornerde, whose eyze  
scholde be holyde on bope sydes, so þat þe <sup>3</sup>prede þat is in þe nedle  
may ligge in þe holwe place, & pilke schal be twynede, & withoute  
knotte & ywaxide, & þe lippes of þe wounde schulle ben sowyde 24  
togedyre, & þe prede schal be knette with two knottes in þe firste  
place; in þe secunde place with on knotte, & so make as manye  
punctis as yt is necessarie, & eche puncte schal be from opere by þe  
brede of a lytel ffyngere, & streyne þe wounde wip knettyng, & þe 28  
sowyng of þe lippes of þe wounde togedire þat he ake sumwhat,  
but nozt to myche, & zif þat þere nede mo punctis to be þere þen  
two, efire more þere schal be odde punctys, as pre, fyfe, opere seuene;  
& þe on puncte schal be fyrst from þe on ende of þe wonde by þe 32  
<sup>4</sup>brede of a litel fyngire, & þe opere puncte schal be at þe opere ende  
of þe wounde, & þe þridde puncte schal be in þe myddul of þe  
wounde; & zif it be nede to haue mo punctis, þou schalt begynnen  
at þe myddel puncte, & make as manye punctes on bope þe sydes, as 36  
yt ys nede, tyl þou come to bope endys; ffor by þis manere of  
sowyng neipere partye schal be crokyde, & so þe place may fairere  
ben restoryde. And euermore take hede, \*zif þe wounde be nozt  
depe, þy sowyng schal be nouzt depe. And zif þy wounde be depe 40  
þy sowyng schal be depe, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde mowe

<sup>3</sup> þridde cancelled before prede.

<sup>4</sup> sp. cancelled before brede.

be ioyned / For if þe wounde were deep, & þi sowynge not<sup>1</sup> deep, to leave no hollows in the wound.  
 nede þer muste be in þe deppe of þe wounde a greet<sup>1</sup> holownes, to  
 þe which holownes blood & quyttre schulde be cast<sup>1</sup>; & þilke  
 4 quyttre & blood schulde lette þe helynge of þe wounde. & þe  
 poudre þat<sup>1</sup> is seid in þe same chapitle, schal be leid aboue on þe  
 same wounde; & þou schalt<sup>1</sup> kepe þe sewynge & þe parties of þe  
 wounde þat<sup>1</sup> I brouȝte togidere wiþ plumaciols þre cornerid, & wiþ  
 8 alle þe opere pingis þat<sup>1</sup> ben in þis chapitle tofore seid / And if þat To wounds exposed to the air apply a cleansing ointment.  
 a wounde haþ be to longe in þe eir open, which þat is þe cause of  
 quyttre þat<sup>1</sup> lettith consolidacioun, þanne we musten clense þe wounde  
 wiþ þis mundificatif<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> is maad of flour of wheete & hony & water a mundi-  
ficatif.  
 12 & mel roset, <sup>1</sup>I-colat, þat is to seie, clensid from þe rosis, and of [ 1f. 18, bk.]  
 barly mele / Of þese mundificatyues þou schalt<sup>1</sup> haue a ful techinge  
 in þe laste tretis /

But if þe wounde be compound, a leche muste haue as manye  
 16 intenciouns as þer ben accidentis to þe wounde / I sette an ensauple. Nota  
 I suppose þat a wounde be compound wiþ holownes & lesynge of  
 fleisch & of skyn, & þere be myche quytter, & also þat þer be If pus and pain come on,  
 apostyme, & þer be a greet akynge; al þis is clepid a wounde com-  
 20 pound / þanne schulen we nouȝt onliche take hede to consolidacioun  
 of þat<sup>1</sup> wounde: þat is to seie, helynge; but first<sup>1</sup> we schulen aswage

be joyned togedire. Ffor ȝif þe wounde were depe, & þy sowynge Add. MS.  
 were noȝt depe, nedys þere moste ben in þe deppe of þe wounde a 12,056.  
 24 gret holwenesse, to þe whiche holwenesse blod & quyter scholde be  
 cast; & þilke quyter & blod scholde lette þe <sup>2</sup>helynge of þe wounde. [ 2 fol. 46 a]  
 And þe poudre þat ys seyde in þe same chapytell schal be leyde  
 aboue þe same sowynge, & þou schalt kepen þe sowynge & þe parties  
 28 of þe wounde, þat buȝ brouȝt togedyre, with plumacioles þre cornelyd  
 & with alle opere pynges þat beþ in þis chapytel forseyde. And ȝif  
 þat a wounde haue be to longe in þe eyre opyne, whiche þat ys  
 cause of quyter þat latteþ consolidacioun, þenne we moste clense þe  
 32 wounde with<sup>3</sup> þis mundificatyff, þat is mad of floure, of whete & hony  
 & watyre opere mel rosate, & colat þat ys y-clansed from þe roses, &  
 of barly mele. Of þese mundryficatyfes þou schalt han a ful tech-  
 ynge in þe laste tretys. But ȝif þe wounde be y-componed, a leche  
 36 moste han as manye intensiones as þere ben accidentys to þe wonde.  
 Y sette ensauple: y suppose þat a wounde be componed with hol-  
 wenesse & lesynge of flesch & of skyn, & þere be myche quyter &  
 al so þere be a posteme & þere be grete akynge, al this ys clepyde a  
 40 wounde componyde. þanne we schulle noȝt only take hede to con-  
 solidacioun of þilke wounde, þat is to sigge helynge, but firste we

<sup>3</sup> MS. þat.



deal with the  
symptoms  
separately,

and *first*  
relieve pain.  
*nota*,

Auicen  
[<sup>2</sup> leaf 19]

G. & A.

A purulent  
wound must  
be cleansed,  
before closing  
it or putting  
on a "rege-  
neratif."

akpe & apostymes, as it schal be told in þe chapitle of an enpostyme & of akyng / Aftirward we schulen clense þe quytture, & aftir þat regenerere fleisch, & at þe laste brynge ouer cicatrice. In alle þe worthingis of medicyns, where þat akpe is, first we schulen aswage akpe, 4 for aboue al opir ping' strong' akyng ouercomeþ myzt of vertu & strenkpe / & also resoun telliþ; membris<sup>1</sup> þat han akpe, pilke akpe is cause of drawynge from þe opere placis to þe membre þat akip þe worste <sup>2</sup>ping' of þe humouris / Auicen seiþ: humouris ben drawn 8 to lymes þat aken for .ij. causis: o cause, for kynde \* [& Spiritus and humourer rennyth pedyre; þe secunde cause, for akpe feblyth þe lyme, & humours] & spiritis rennen to þe feble lyme / þe swellynge schal eer be heeled þan þe wounde / Galien & Auicen tellen: þat al 12 þing' þat consowdiþ þe wounde greueþ þe wounde, if þat þer be apostyme wiþ þe wounde / & þe quytture schal be clensid or þou leie ony regeneratif to holow; woundis. Auicen telliþ þe cause, whi þat yuel fleisch growiþ in a wounde / If þat a leche wolde bisie him 16 wiþ a medicyn regeneratif to regendre fleisch in a wounde, & er þan þe quytture were clensid / & whanne þat þe wounde is clensid, þanne we schulen fulfille pilke holownes wiþ fleisch or þat þe wounde be

<sup>1</sup> Lat., Membra quoque dolorem habentia, dolor ipse est causa attrahendi aliunde humorum pessimitatem.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 46 b]

schul aswagen akpe & aposteme, as yt schal be tolde in þe chapitle 20 of aposteme & of akyng; aftirwarde we schullen clanse þe quyter, & aftere þat regenerere flesch, & at þe laste brynge ouere a Cicatrice. In alle þe werkynges of medicine, where þat akpe ys, fiirste we schulle aswagen akyng; ffor abouen alle opere þynge stronge 24 akyng, ouere comeþ myzte of vertu & strengpe, & also resoun tellyth; membrys þat han akpe, pilke akpe ys cause of drawynge from opere places to þe membre þat akep<sup>3</sup> þe worste þynge of þe humoures. Avicene seyth humours beþ drawn to <sup>4</sup>lymes þat aken 28 for two causes: On cause, for kynde \* & Spiritus and humoures rennyth pedyre; þe secunde cause, for akpe feblyth þe lyme, & humours \* & spiritis renne to þe feble lymme. þe swellynge schal ere ben y-helyde þen þe wounde. Galien & Avycene tellen þat alle 32 þynge þat consoudeþ þe wounde, grefyþ þe wounde, 3if þat þere be aposteme with þe wounde, & þe quyter schal ben y-clansyde, ere þenne þou legge enye generatyff to holwe woundys. Avicenne tellyth a cause, why þat yuele flesch growith in a wounde, 3if þat a leche 36 wolde besy hym with a medycin regeneratyff to engendre flesch in a wounde, ere þanne þe quytere were clansede. And whenne þat þe wounde ys clensyde, þenne we schulle fulfyllen pilke holwnesse with

<sup>3</sup> MS. akpe.



heelid, lest *peraventure*<sup>1</sup> þat þer dwelle an holownesse vndir þe wounde, whanne þat he is helid, in whom þat quytture schulde be engendrid, þerwith<sup>2</sup> ech dai schulde augmente pilke holownesse, & 4 so we moten be constreyned to opene anopir tyme þat, þat was heelid tofore / þou maist fynde in þe chapitle of woundis of senewis, how þou schalt aswage akþe, & in þe .vj. chapitle of þis techinge þou schalt fynde þe cure<sup>3</sup> of a wounde þat haþ a swellynge, & is 8 out of kynde distemperid; & þou schalt haue in þe chapitle of olde woundis, how þou schalt clense quytture & regendre fleisch /

[3 lf. 19, bk.]

in þe co. of  
olde woundis  
in þe ante-  
datorie.

**T**he bridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe /

¶ 3o. co  
De vulnerē  
incarne.

12 Almyȝti god hath ȝeue to senewe greet felyng, & if þat he be hirt, he suffriþ greet akyng / Galien seiþ: a senewe þat is more felynge þan anoper \*[lyme]; it is nessessarie þat he haue grettere akþe / Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is maad in a senewe, mai not be 16 wiþoute akyng. Ne<sup>4</sup> woundis þat ben maad in senewis, ouþer þat ben in lenkþe or in brede / þe woundis þat ben maad in lenkþe of þe<sup>2</sup> senewe, ben lesse perilous þan<sup>5</sup> þo þat ben maad in brede of þe

A wound cut-  
ting the nerve  
lengthwise,  
a *fissura*, is  
less danger-  
ous than one  
crossing it,  
a *sisura*.<sup>1</sup> *peraventure*. See N. E. Dict., adventure, I. b.<sup>2</sup> *þerwiþ*, scribal error for *þe which*.<sup>4</sup> *no*, scribal error for *þe*.<sup>5</sup> *þan* erroneously inserted.

fleisch, ere þanne þat wounde ben y-helyde; leste þat þere dwellen an 20 holwnesse vndire þe wounde whenne þat he ys helyde, in whom þat quytter scholde be engendryde, þe whiche eche day scholde augmente pilke holwnesse, & so we moste ben constreynede to opyne an opere tyme þat, þat was helyde tofore. þou mayste fynden aftere in þe 24 chapyteH of woundys of synwes how þou schalt aswagen akþe, and in the sixte ChapiteH of þis techyng þou schalt fynde þe cure of a wounde, þat hath a swellynge, and ys out of kynde dystempryde, and þou schalt haue in þe chapitle of olde woundys; how thou schalt 28 clense, quytyre, and regendre flessch //

Add. MS.  
12,056.

<sup>6</sup>Cap. iii. of the bridde techyng of the ffurst tretis is of helynge of a wounde y-makyde in synwe. [c fol. 47 a]

Almȝtie god hath ȝife to synwe gret felyng, & ȝif þat he be 32 hurt he suffrede grete akyng. Galien: a synwe that is more felyng þen anoper \*lyme; yt is nessessarie þat he haue gretter akyng. Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is y-makyde in a synwe, may nouȝt ben wiþouten akyng. The woundes þat beþ y-makyde 36 in synwe, oper þey ben in lengthe opere þey beþ in brede. þo woundes þat beþ y-mad in lengthe of þe synwe beþ lasse perylous,

If the nerve is cut through, the limb becomes insensible;

if the nerve is pricked by a punctura, then there is danger of cramp.

Spasmos.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 20]

Loss of feeling and cramp happen when a sinew or muscle is cut or pricked.

Senewe,  
corde &  
Brawne.

When the nerve is pricked, but the skin whole,

senewe ben moost perilous / Oþerwhile a senewe is kutt al atwo / & þanne pilke lyme, to whom þat senewe serueþ, lesiþ his meuynge & þe felynge, þat pilke senewe brouzte to him from þe brain. & pilke senewe oþirwhile is not kutt al atwo, but he is 1-preickid, & þanne 4 it is perilous lest þe crampe come for to greet akþe / For akþe entriþ into þe part of þe senewe þat is kutt or prickid; & bi þe 1partie of þe senewe þat is hool, akþe is brouzt to þe brayn. & so þe crampe mai come to þe wounde bi oon of þre weies: þat is to greet 8 akþe, cold, or rotynge. Of þese þre or of oon bi him-silf mai come a drawinge togidere of a senewe þat is cause of a crampe / & þat þat is seid of a wounde of a symple senewe may fallen ofte-tymes in a wounde of a corde & a brawn, & nameliche of a corde þat is in 12 bigynnyng of a brawn. þo woundis þat ben in þese þre consimile membris, þat is \*[to] seie senewe, corde, & brawn han o. drede in cours of þe crampe, & also o. drede of felynge, lesyng & meuyng / & 2 þerfore be-war in þe cure of a wounde maad in senewe, wheþer 16 þat it be a prickynge or þat it be kutt ouerþwert, or ellis be kutt oonly bi his lenkþe. If oonly he be prickid þe wounde of þe skyn is hool, & þanne it is clepid a blynde puncture; eþer þe wounde is open, & it is clepid an open puncture / In a blind puncture it is 20

<sup>2</sup> &, above line.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

& þo þat beþ in brede of þe synwe beþ more perilous. Oþere whyle a synwe ys y-kut al atwo, & þenne pilke lyme to whom pilke synwe serfede, lesiþ þe menyng & þe felynge þat pilke synwe brouzt to hym from þe brayn. Oþere while þulke synwe is nouzt y- 24 kut a two, but he is y prikyde, and þenne it is perel lest þe crampe come for to gret akþe. For akþe entriþ in to þe part of þe synwe þat is y-kut oþer priked, & by þe party of þe synwe þat is hol akþe is brouzt to þe brayn, & so crampe may comen to þe wounde 28 by on of þre weyes, þat is to gret akþe colde oþer rotyng. Of þese þre oþere ellys of on by hym self, may come a drawyng togedre of a synwe þat is a cause of a crampe; & þat þat is seyde of wounde of a symple synwe, oft-tymes may fallyn in a wounde of a 32 corde & a brawn, & namlyche of a corde þat is in þe bygynning of a brawn. þe woundes þat ben in þese þre consimel membris, þat is \*to sigge, synwe, corde, & brawn, habben on drede in course of þe crampe, & also on drede of lesyng, felyng, & menyng, & þerfor 36 be war in þe cure of a wounde i-makyde in synwe, wheþer þat þere be a prikyng, oþere þat þe synwe be y-kut twartofere, oþer ellys be y-kut only by his lengthe. 3if only he be y-prikyde þe wonde of þe skyn is hol, & þenne it is clepyde a blynde puncture, oþer þe 40 wounde is opene & it is clepide an opene prikyng. In a blynde



- nessessarie to opene þe skyn, & aftirward heelde into þe hoole as  
 hoot as he mai suffre, hoot<sup>1</sup> oile of rosis swete smellynge, þat is  
 maad of<sup>1</sup> oile de oliue þat is nouzt ripe, til al þe wounde be ful. &  
 4 aboute þe wounde leie whizt<sup>1</sup> tere<sup>1</sup>bentine<sup>2</sup> I-drawe abroad bitwene  
 two clowtis, & anoynte alle þe membris aboute þe wounde wip hoot  
 oile of rosis maad þicke with bool armoniak. & aftir þat leie a  
 lynnē cloof I-het<sup>1</sup> aboute, & aftir þat a good quantite of tow I-tosid,  
 8 & bynde þe lyme softliche wipoute streynynge; & if þe akþe wip  
 þis medicyn wole not ceessen, remeue & chaunge þis medicyn ofte  
 tymes in þe dai & in þe nyzt / & if þe prickynge be in þe foot,  
 anoynte þe grynde<sup>3</sup> wip hoot comoun oile; & vndir þe arme holis  
 12 & in þe necke pitt, if þat þe prickynge be in þe hand, for þis  
 enoynture rarefies & eueneþ þe placis bi whom akþe goiþ to þe  
 brain, & it lettij drawynge togidere of þe senewe / & þouþ þat þou  
 seest<sup>1</sup> nouzt<sup>1</sup> þe akþe ceesse in summen as hastiliche as þou woldist,  
 16 neuer-þe-lattere chaunge not þi medicyn, for þer may be no bettere  
 medicyn. But if þat akþe dure ouer longe, it is not yuel to putte a  
 litil opium to þe oile of þe rosis & þe bole armoniak, þat þou leidist<sup>1</sup>  
 aboute þe wounde. þe sike man muste reste & bi no wey he

open the skin  
and apply  
hot oil.

R  
and dress the  
wound.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 20, bk.]

N

If the pain  
endures re-  
new the  
dressing  
frequently.

N

and add  
opium to the  
ointment.

R

<sup>2</sup> *tere*bentine, from *Pistacia Terebinthus*, L. The *Alah* of the Old Testa-  
ment, and the *ρίγινος* of Theophrast. : now almost obsolete.

<sup>3</sup> *þe grynde*, inguina. *W. Wr.*, p. 589. 39, 15th cent. : inguen, the grynde.

- 20 prikyne hit is necessarie to opyn þe skyn, & afterwarde held in to  
 þe hole, as <sup>4</sup>hot as he may suffren, oyle of roses swote smyllynge,  
 þat is y-made of oyle de olyffe, þat is nouzt rype tyl þe wounde be  
 al ful. & aboute þe wounde leye whyte terbentyne y-drawe abrod  
 24 betwene tweye cloutes, & anoynt al þe membris about þe wounde  
 wip hote oyle of rosys, y-made þikke wip bol Armonyak, & after þat  
 leye a lynne cloth y-hat aboute, & after þat a gode quantyte of towz  
 y-tosyd, & bynde þe lyme<sup>5</sup> softliche wipout streynynge; & 3if þe  
 28 akþe wip þis medycine wolde nouzt cese, remeffe & chaunge þis  
 same medycine oft tymes in þe day & in þe nyzt, & 3if þe prikyng  
 be in þe fot, anoynte þe grynde wip hote comyn oyle, & vndire þe  
 Arme holys & in þe nekputte, 3if þat þe prikyng be in þe hande.  
 32 For þys vnture rarefies & efenyþ þo placys by whom akþe goth to  
 þe brayn, & it lattij drawynge togedre of þe synwe, & þowþ þat  
 þou sest nouzt akþe, sese in some men, as hastily as þou woldyst,  
 36 bettere medycine. But 3if þat akþe dure ouere longe yt is nouzt  
 efel to putte a lutyl opin to þe oyle of rosys and þe bol armoniak,  
 þat þou leydest aboute þe wounde. þe seke man most reste, & by

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 47 b]

<sup>5</sup> MS. lynne.



schulde nouzt be wrop; his bed muste be maad soft, euene, &  
 [1 ff. 21] smope, & þat he <sup>1</sup>myzte haue reste / Whanne þat þe akþe aswagip  
 & þe wounde 3eueþ sum quytture, þanne þe sike man is saaf from al  
 Ypocras. maner perel, but if he do ony newe errour / Of þis wounde Ypocras 4  
 It is a bad spekip: *in vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non apparante*—þat  
 sign if no pus is dis- is to seie: *in yuel woundis and strongt woundis*, if no quytture  
 charged. appere it is yuel / *Strongt woundis ben clepid woundis* þat sore  
 N aken / *Yuel woundis ben þo*, to whom scharpe humouris rennen 8  
 & ben nouzt obedient to kyndeli heete, to be turned into quit-  
 Ypocras. ture / And þerfore Ypocras seide: þat whanne akyng & quytture  
 appereþ it is a tokene of heele / þe þridde signe a man muste  
 Laymen fre- knowe in þis place, þat lewde men, seyinge akyng & swellunge 12  
 quently ap- in a lyme þat is woundid, leie þerto a potage in maner maad of  
 ply a wrong erbis & swynes greece & water & wheete flour, corruptyn þe  
 ointment, lyme, & pilke corrupeioun is cause of þe crampe / For Galion seiþ:  
 which causes the injured limb in hot water, þat a senewe is maad of moist mater & a cold, & þerfore he 16  
 Galion. rotip of heete and moistnes / Also summen, for to aswage akþe as<sup>2</sup>  
 nota. a senewe þat is prickid, puttip þe lyme in hoot watir \* [oper ellys  
 [4 ff. 21, bk.] caste it on þe lyme] þe which mater<sup>3</sup> is þe moost greuauunce <sup>4</sup>to  
 Galion. þe senewe / Galion seiþ / Hoot watir, þouȝ it aswage akþe to þe 20

<sup>2</sup> as, error for of; see below.

<sup>3</sup> mater, error for watir.

Add. MS. no weye he scholde nouzt be wrop, hys bed most be made softe  
 12,056. euene & smeþe þat he myzte haue rest. Whanne þat þe akþe  
 aswagyth & þe wounde gyueþ sum qyter, þan þe syke man ys saf  
 from al manere peryle, but ȝif he do enye newe error. Of þis 24  
 wounde ypocras spekip: *In vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non*  
 aparente malum, þat is to seye: in evyle woundys & stronge  
 woundes, ȝif no quyter apere, hit is yuele. Stronge woundes ben  
 y-clepyde woundys þat sore aken. Iuel woundes beþ þo, to whom 28  
 scharpe humores rennyth & beþ nouzt obedyent to kyndlie hete to  
 ben turnyde into quyter & þerfore ypocras seyde, þat whanne þat  
 akyng sesyth & quyter aperith, yt is a tokne of hele. þe þridde  
 [5 fol. 48 a] signe a man moste <sup>5</sup>knowe in þis place, þat lewyde men seyne 32  
 akyng & swellunge in a lyme y-woundyde, leggen þerto a maner  
 potage y-mad of erbys & swynes grese, water, & floure of whete,  
 corrupyn þe lyme, & pilke corrupeioun is cause of þe crampe; for  
 Galyen seiþ þat a synwe is mad of a moiste matere & a cold, & he 36  
 rotyth of hete & moistnesse. Also sum men forto aswage þe akþe  
 of a synwe þat is y-prikyde, putteþ þe lyme in to hote water,\* oper  
 ellys caste it on þe lyme hot water,<sup>6</sup> þe whiche water is most grefes  
 to þe synwe. Galyen: hote water þowȝ it aswage akþe, to the 40

<sup>6</sup> hot water, insertion.

- prickyng of a senewe is most greuaunce / Cold also greueþ sore þe senewe as wel in somer as in wyntir / And Ypocras seiþ in þe .v. *Ypocras* part of his *amphorismus*: cold is bitynge & greuous to senewis & woundis, & also in þe chapitle next folowyng, but it be in a crampe wipoute wounde / Galien seiþ in þe ende of his coment: coold is moost greuous to a senewy lyme þat is woundid & is sore swollen; namely, & he haue þe crampe. It schewiþ<sup>1</sup> þanne þat an hoot medicyne & a drie is moost acordynge to senewis þat ben woundid; but nouzt to hoot a medicyn, lest perauentre þat he make þe lyme to swelle; & if it be drie nouzt wip stipticte, an auntre if þat he closiþ þe poris of þe skyn / Galien seiþ: þat it is yuele to close þe poris of a lyme þat is prickid. þe medicyn þanne muste be hoot & drie with subtiliate as terebentine to moiste bodies; & to drie bodies he muste be medlid wip a litil enforbium, azafetida<sup>2</sup> is best medicyn if þou make of him enplastre, serapinum,<sup>3</sup> & þe fecis<sup>4</sup> of a litil wax, & þe filþe of þe vessels of been, alle þei ben gode to a senewe þat is prickid, þou þat þou putt ech of hem bi him-silf or ellis compound / & þow schalt fynde a ful techinge of þese medicyns in þe antidotarie of þis boke / þou schalt nouzt close a

<sup>1</sup> *schewiþ* for *sewiþ*; see below.

<sup>2</sup> *Asa fetida*, a sort of gum pressed out of a certain plant, which grows in Persia.

<sup>3</sup> *Serapinum* = *Sagapenum* . . . A gum resin obtained from the *Ferula Persica*. See *Notes*.

<sup>4</sup> *fecis*, Lat. *fæces*, dregs.

and the heat  
is as danger-  
ous as great  
cold.

*Galien*.

*Galien*.

N.  
The pores of  
a wounded  
limb must be  
kept open.

R

[3 l. 22]

- prikyng of a synwe ys most greuest; colde also gefyþ sore þe synwes as wel in somere as in wyntere. Ypocras in þe ferthe partye of his *Amphorismes*: colde is bytinge and grefes to woundys; and also in þe chaptell nexte folwyng, bot it be in a crampe wip oute wounde. Galien seiþ in þe ende of his comente: colde is most grefest, to a synwe lyme þat is y-woundyde & ys toswolle, namly, & he haue þe crampe. Hit sewiþ þenne þat an hote medicine & a drye is most accordynge to synwes þat beþ y-woundyde; bot nouzt to hot a medicine, leste þat he make þe lyme toswellyn; & drye nouzt wip stipticte, lest he close þe pores of þe schyn. Galien seiþ: it is yuel to close þe pores of a lyme þat is y-prikyde. þe medicyne þenne most ben hote & drye, wip subtilite as terebentyne to moiste bodies; & to drye bodies, he most be medlyde wip a lytel enforbium. *Asa fetida* is best medicine, zif þou make of hym enplaster, serapinum, & þe feces of wax, & þe fylthes of vesselis of been, alle þei ben gode to a synwe, þat is prikyde, wheþer þou put iche be hymself oper opyn hem; & þou schalt fynden a ful techynge of þese medicynes in þe Antidotarie of þis boke. þou schalt nouzt closen

Add. MS.  
12,056.



The nerve must be cleansed and healed before the wound is closed.

.Galion.

relates, how a physician, by not so doing, caused the death of his patient.

wounde where þat þe prickynge of a senewe is, til þat þe senewe be perfytly clensid & heelid, & til þat þou be sikir þat þe place schal not swelle / Galion telliþ of a man þat was prickid with a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom came oon of tislies<sup>1</sup> 4 clerkis þe which took hede to heele alle woundis generaliche; & he leide to pilke prickynge a consowdyngne oynement þat was more acordynge to a wounde maad in fleisch; & he leide þerto a plastre maturatijf, wherfore al þe hand rotide & he fel into a crampe, & 8 so he diede, or þat þe .vij. daies weren passid / & if þat ilke leche hadde maad þat wounde broddere, & þanne þat he hadde helt into þe wounde hoot oile of rosis, & þanne þat he hadde do<sup>2</sup> comen out quytture wiþ hote medicyns sotil & drynge, & nouzt wiþ moist 12 medicyns, þat man schulde not haue be deed /

Tederik.

[41r. 22, bk.]

The ends of the nerve ought to be sewn at the same time as the skin, and a medicine applied,

If þat a senewe hadde ben I-kutt ouerþwert ouer al atwo þanne, þouȝ þat Tedericus<sup>3</sup> & summe opere seien þe contrarie, it is good þat þow<sup>4</sup> sowe togidere þe eendis of þe senewis þat ben kutt wiþ þe 16 sowinge of þe skyn. & aboue pilke maner of sowinge, þe firste dai leie oile of rosis, in þe which oile, maddockis<sup>5</sup>—þat ben wormes

<sup>1</sup> Lat., unus de secta Thessali. Thessalus lived in Rome at the time of Nero, and enjoys the reputation of being the first great quack.

<sup>2</sup> Lat., Si . . saniem . . subtiliter desiccantibus expectasset. Add. MS. translates literally, abyde. The use of *do* (= faire) is further illustrated by Mätzner. See *don* .6.

<sup>3</sup> Theodoricus, an Italian (?) monk of the 13th century, was the author of a *Surgery*.

<sup>5</sup> maddock, O.E. maček, Dan. maddik. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, under maggot and mawkish.

Add. MS. 12,056. a wounde, where þat þe prikyng of a synwe is, ere þan þe synwe be perfytlye clansyde & helyd, & ere þou be sykere þat þe place 20 schal nouzt swelle. Galyen tellyth of a man wiþ a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom come one of <sup>6</sup>Tesilies clerkys, þe whiche toke hede to helyn alle woundis generalyche, & he leyde to pilke prikyng a consoudynge oynement þat was more acordynge 24 to a wounde y-makede in flesch, & he leyde þereto a maturatyff plastre, where fore al þe hand rotyd, & he fel into a crampe, & so he dyede ere þe vii dayes were passyde; & ȝif þat pilke leche hadde y-made pilke wounde braddere, & þenne & hadde y-helde in þe 28 wounde hote oyle of rosys, and þenne hadde abyde quytter wiþ hote medicynes sotyl & dreying, & nozt wiþ moiste medicynes, pilke man ne scholde nouzt haue ben ded. ȝif þat a synwe hadde ben kut twart ouer al atwo þenne, þawȝ þat tedericus & summe opere sigge 32 þe contrarye, hit is good þat þou sewe togedre þe hedys of þe synwys þat beþ y-kutte, wiþ þe sowinge of þe skyn & abouen pilke maner of sewynge, þe first day leye oyle of roses, in þe whiche oyle

[6 fol. 48 v.]



of þe erþe—han be boilid, & caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat  
 kepþ þe sowynge .o. day or two aftirward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ  
 plumaciols .iiij. cornerid, & wiþ byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from  
 4 swellynge, for bi sich a maner sowynge of a senewe þou maist<sup>t</sup> con-  
 sowde þe senewe aȝen; for þe lyme schulde han be lost<sup>t</sup> in partie or  
 in al, þe meuyngþe þat was brouȝt vnto him fro þe braun, for bi þat  
 senewe þe lyme mai rekeuere his felynge, & so þe restoringe of þe  
 8 braun may be fastere & schapliker. þou schalt nouȝt<sup>t</sup> drede of þe  
 akyngþe þatt<sup>t</sup> schulde be maad of prickynge<sup>1</sup> of þe senewe, for þe  
 akþe schal be doon awei wiþ oo leynge to eiper tweyne of þilke  
 oyle / Ne sich maner akþe may nouȝt<sup>t</sup> make þe crampe, for þe senewe  
 12 is al kutt<sup>t</sup> atwo ne no man \*[make an] obieccioun wiþ Galion .Galion.  
 wordis, þat we schulden be war in ioynynge parties of a wounde  
 togidere \*[þat non here ne oyle ne scholde nouȝt entre wiþynne þe  
 lippes of a wounde, þat betþ y-brought togidre] To þilke abiec-  
 16 cioun we answeren : þat þe stipticite <sup>2</sup>of þe rosis & þe oile þat was  
 nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosite of þe wormes of þe erþe remeuen þe akþe  
 of þe senewis & al þe harm þat schulde come of þe ilke sowynge.

then the limb  
 may regain  
 its motor  
 powers.

.Galion.

Nothing  
 should enter  
 into the  
 wound.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 23]

If þat a senewe were woundid in lenkþe, he mai wel & liztliche

<sup>1</sup> prickynge of þe senewe. The Latin, *acus punctura*, is correctly trans-  
 lated in Add. MS. See below.

20 Maddokys, þat beþ wormys of þe erthe, haue ben boyllde; and Add. MS.  
 caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat kepyth þe sowynge a day 12,056.  
 oþer two afterward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumacioles þre kernel-  
 lyde & wiþ<sup>3</sup> byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from swellynge, ffor by  
 24 swyche a manere sowynge of þe synwe þou maiste consoude þe  
 synwe ageyn, for þe lym scholde haue lost in party oþer in al the  
 meuyngþe, þat was y-brōwȝt to hym from þe brayn, for by þilke  
 synwe þat lyme may rekeuere hys felynge, & so þe restorynge of  
 28 þe brayn may be more schaplokere & fastere. Ne þou ne schalt  
 nouȝt drede of þe akyngþe þat scholde be made of þe prekyngþe of þe  
 nelde, for þe akþe schal be don away by one leggyngþe to oþere  
 tweyne of þilke oyle; ne swyche manere akþe may nouȝt make þe  
 32 crampe, for þe synwe ys al kutte atwo. Ne no man \*make an  
 obieccioun wiþ galyens wordys, þat we scholde be ware in ioynynge  
 þe parties of a wounde togidre, \*þat non here ne oyle ne scholde  
 nouȝt entre wiþynne þe lippes <sup>4</sup>of a wounde, þat beþ y-brouȝt to- [<sup>4</sup> fol. 49 a]  
 36 gedre.\* To þilke obieccioun we answeren, þat þe stipticite of þe  
 roses & þe oyle þat was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosyte of þe wormys  
 of þe erthe remywen þe akþe of þe synwes, & al þe harmþe þat  
 scholde comen of þilke sewynge. Ȝif þat a synwe were woundede  
 40 in lengþe he may be wel & lyȝtliche y-soudyde togidre, wiþ

<sup>3</sup> *wiþ* above line.

The wounded  
limb must be  
kept from  
swelling.

Nota.

If there is  
swelling, and  
if the wound  
is purulent,  
apply a munda-  
cative,  
and keep the  
wound  
tent.

[4 ff. 23, bk.]

a munda-  
cative  
medicyn

be sowdid togidere wip ioynynge of lippis, & wip þe sowynge & wip  
þe kepyng of þe lyme þat he swelle nouȝt / Vndirstonde here in  
þis place: þat þer is no þing more worschipful to a leche ne more  
profitable to a sijk man þan to kepe a lyme woundid fro swellynge, 4  
& nepeles it is hard to kepe senewis þat ben woundid from swell-  
ynge / Nepeles a leche here schal take heed aftir þe techinge þat  
schal be ȝeue him in þe chapitle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne  
þat þer is wip him a swellynge. If þat a wounde were chaungid 8  
of þe eyr and made quytture, þat þe sowynge were to-broke and þe  
puncture were vndir,<sup>1</sup> þanne make a medicyne mundificatif & leie  
him abroad on a lymen cloof & leie it aboute þe wounde, & putte a  
litil smal tent in þe eende of þe wounde þat is moost lynynge,<sup>2</sup> & 12  
pilke tent schal touche no senewe ne make noon akþe vndir<sup>3</sup> þat,  
þat ilke wounde be <sup>4</sup>weel dried. A mundificatif medicyn of  
senewis woundid is maad in þis maner: Take mel roset colat ȝ .iij.  
smal flour of barly & medle hem togidere & boile hem slili þat þei 16  
brenne nouȝt, & remeue hem fro þe fier & bete hem "longe" togi-  
dere wip a spatire;<sup>5</sup> & þanne putte þerto ȝ j. of whit terebentyne;  
& if þou mowe finde noon whijt terebentyne, þanne waische opere

<sup>1</sup> undir, mistake for undo. See below. <sup>2</sup> lynynge, for declynynge.

<sup>3</sup> undir þat, donec.

<sup>5</sup> spatir, spatula.

Add. MS. ioynynge of þe lippys & wip sowynge & wip kepyng of þe lym, þat 20  
12,056. he scholde<sup>6</sup> nouȝt. Understande here in þis place, þat þere is no  
þynge more worschipful to a leche ne more profytable to a seke  
man, þenne to kepe a lyme y-woundyde from swellynge, & napeles  
it is hard to kepe synwys þat bep woundyde from swellynge. 24  
Napeles a leche here schal take hede aftere þe techynge þat schal  
be ȝeuen to hym in hys chapytelle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne  
þat þere ys wip hym a swellynge. Ȝif a wounde were chaungyd of  
þe eyre and mad quytter, þat þe sowynge were to-broke, & þe 28  
punctis weren vndo, þenne make a medicine mundaycattyff, &  
leye hym abroad on a lynne cloth, & leye it aboute þe wounde, &  
put a lytel smal tent in þe one ende of þe wounde þat is most  
declynynge; & pilke tent schal touche non synwe, ne make non 32  
akþe, vndire þat þat pilke wounde be wel dryede. A munday-  
cattyff medicine of synwes y-woundyde ys y-made in þis manere:  
R. mel rosat colat ȝ iii smal floure of barly ȝ, & medle hem togedre  
& boyle hem slyȝly þat þey brenne nouȝt, & remywe hem from þe 36  
fyre & bete hem togedre longe wip a spator, & þenne put þere to ȝ.  
of whyte terbentyne, & ȝif þou maiste fynde no whyte terbentyne

<sup>6</sup> scholde, error for swelle, or it belongs to: scalle, scalde, scalled, scab.  
See W. Wright, and *Cathol. Angl.*



terebentyne *with* cold watir til it be whizt, & whanne þat be þis  
 medicyn þis wounde is almoost drie, þanne putte in þe same medi-  
 cyn a litil poudre of frankencense mastik & sauendragoun, medle  
 4 hem togidere & leie aboue þe wounde til it be hool / & whanne þat  
 it is hool manye daies aftir, leie flex in good strong wiyn het hoot  
 til it be perfiztli al hool, & if þat þer leue ony hardnes in meuyng, Any remain-  
 ing stiffness  
 of the limb  
 may be re-  
 moved by a  
 mollificative  
 medicine.  
 after þat it is hool, þanne þou schalt vse þe techinge þat schal be  
 8 þouen to þee in þe laste tretis þat schal be antidotarie in þe chapitle  
 of medicyns mollificatyues; þere þou schalt fynde þe maner how þou  
 schalt helpe best lymes þat ben heclid and moun not riȝt weel meuen /

þe firste<sup>1</sup> techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of  
 12 a wounde maad in boon / Om. 4m.  
 Off wounds  
 made yn the  
 bonis

Whanne þat woundis ben so depe þat<sup>2</sup> only fleisch is not [2 1f. 24]  
 woundid but þe boon þat is vndir þe fleisch & þe senewe / þanne a  
 man muste biholde, wher þat þe boon be kutt al atwo, as ofte-tyme  
 16 it may happe in þe boon of þe thie & schene boons & þe boons  
 of þe armes. And þanne þilke wounde is ful perilous; & nameli if  
 þe boons of þe thie ouþir þe boon of þe arme from þe schuldre to  
 þe elbowe be kutt al atwo, so þat þe marie go out. But ofte-tymes  
It is danger-  
 ous if the  
 thigh bone or  
 the bone of  
 the upper arm  
 has been cut  
 in two.

<sup>1</sup> firste, mistake for furþe.

20 wassche it wyth colde watyre, tyl it be whyt; & whenne þat by þis Add. MS.  
 12,056.  
 medycine þe wounde is almost drye, þenne put in þe same medycine  
 a lite smal poudre of franke ensence, mastike, & sank dragoun, &  
 medle hem to gedre, & leye aboue þe wounde tyl it be al hol; &  
 24 whanne þat it is hol manye dayes aftere, leye flax in gode stronge  
 hot wyn, tyl yt be al hol perfytlyche. & ȝif þat þere leue enye  
 hardnesse<sup>3</sup> in meuyng, aftere þat it is hol, þenne þou schalt vse [3 fol. 49 c]  
 the techyng þat schal be geuen to þe in þe laste tretys, þat schal  
 28 be antidotarye in þe chapitle of medycine, molyficatyffes; þere þou  
 schalt fynde þe manere how þou schalt helpyn beste lymes, þat þeþ  
 y-helyde & mowe noȝt ryȝt wel meffen.

The furþe techyng of þe firste tretys is of helyng of  
 32 a wounde y-makyde in bon.

Whenne þat woundes þeþ so depe þat only þe flesch is nouȝt  
 y-woundyde, but þe bon þat is vndire þe flesch & þe synwe, þenne a  
 man most byholde wheþere þat þe bon be kut al atwo, as ofte tymes  
 36 yt may happen in þe bon of þe thyȝ & þe schynebonys, & þe bonys  
 of þe Arme, & þenne þylke wounde is ful perylouse; and namlye,  
 ȝif þe bon of þe thyȝ ore þe bon of þe arme, from þe schuldre to þe  
 elbowe, be y-kutte al atwo, so þat þe marie gon out. But ofte tymes



The wound  
ought not to  
be closed be-  
fore the bone  
has been re-  
paired.

*Nota*

In the place  
of the missing  
bone, there  
grows either  
a hard sub-  
stance

[4 fr. 24, bk.]

*poris sar-  
coides.*

or a soft one:  
*caro poroides.*

oon boon of þe schene or o. boon of þe armes is kutt<sup>t</sup> al atwo ouertwert<sup>t</sup> ouer & neþeles afterward may be restorid; ouþer a boon is not kutt<sup>t</sup> al atwo but sum of his substaunce is don away, & þilke substaunce, ouþer he is doon away or ellis he hangiþ togidere / A 4 general rule is in cure of woundis in whom boonys ben woundid: þat neuere bi a leche fleisch schal ben I-sowdid aboue þe boon, but first pleynerliche bi repeire<sup>1</sup>; for þe boon may neuere be<sup>2</sup> wiþ verri consolidacion be consowdid, for his mater was þe sperme of þe fadir 8 & of þe modir; but in summe children, for þe age<sup>3</sup> is toward ofte tyme þat þei were sperme / but þer schal be maad a maner of restorynge in place of þe boon þat was broken eiper lost, þat men clepen <sup>4</sup>poris sarcoides or ellis caro poroydes, & a<sup>5</sup> maner þing<sup>t</sup> þat is 12 restorid is hardere þan þe fleisch & neischere þan þe boon / & if þat ilk mater þat is restorid be ny<sup>3</sup> as hard as is þe boon, it is clepid porus sarcoides / & if þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat porus sarcoides / & if þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat neische, it is clepid caro poroydes / & if þat a neische fleisch were 16 & a moist nouȝt regenerated vpon boonys þat ben sett togidere, a man schulde not haue his purpos to heele & consowde þe wounde. Loke þanne wheþer þe boon be kutt<sup>t</sup> atwo altogidere ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> ouer, þat

<sup>1</sup> *repeire*, erroneously for *repeired*.

<sup>2</sup> *be* has to be cancelled.

<sup>3</sup> *for þe age is toward ofte tyme*, for, *for þe nyȝte of tyme*. See below.

<sup>5</sup> *a*, above line.

Add. MS. on bon of þe schyne, oþere in bon of þe Arme, ys ykutt al atwo 20  
12,056. twartofere, & napeles afterward may be restoryde; oþer a bon ys nouȝt ykut al atwo, but sum of his substaunce ys done aweye, and þilke substaunce oþere he ys don al aweye, oþere he hongyth to gedre. A general rule ys in cure of woundes in whom bonys ben 24 woundyde, þat neuere by a leche flesch schal be y-sowdyd aboue þe bon, but first þe bon plenerlyche be repeyrede; ffor þe bon may neuere with verrey consolidacyoun ben consoude, for his matere was þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modire, but in somme children for 28 þe nyȝte of tyme þat þei were sperme (*sic*); but þere schal be mad a manere restorynge in plas of þe bon þat was broken oþere lost. þat men clepen porrus sarcoides oþere ellys caro poroydes, & þat manere thyng þat is restoryd is hardere þe fleisch & nesschere þen 32 þe bon; & ȝif þat þilke mater þat is restoryde by neye<sup>6</sup> as hard as yt were a bon, yt is clept porus sarcoides; & ȝif þat þilke mater be nouȝt harde, but sumwhat nessche, yt is clepyde caro poroydes; ȝif þat a nesch flesch & a moist were nouȝt regenerated vpon bonys 36 þat ben set togedre, a man scholde nouȝt han his purpos to helyn & to consoude þe wounde. Loke þenne wheþere þe bon be kutte a-

[7 fol. 50 a]

<sup>6</sup> MS. *neþe*.

- pou bryngist togidere & bindist þe parties of þe wounde, as it schal be told in þe .viij. chapitle folowyng, where pou schalt haue how a wounde schal be heclid þat is out of ioynthe I-kutt atwo & 4 to-broken / & if a wounde<sup>1</sup> be not kutt atwo al togidere ouerþwert ouer, loke if any pece of þe boon dwelle sadliche with þe opere partie of þe hool boon / & þanne if pou myzt brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore wiþ þristyng doun þilke pece wiþ 8 sum instrument acordyng þerto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hool boon wiþ þe poudre þat I shal telle aftirward; for so the<sup>2</sup> schap of þe lyme mai dwelle<sup>3</sup> faire & strengere / & if þat ilke pece haue no fastnes to þe hool boon, do þat pece away & regenerere in þe place of 12 þe boon þat þat<sup>4</sup> was lost a reparation / For þou3 þat ypocras & Galion tellen þat it is nessessarie after quantite of þe boon þat is lost, an holow3 cicatrise to be alwey, neþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese poris may be mendid, not a litil, but ryzt 16 myche / þis is þe poudre: take frank-encense, mastik, mirre, dragagantum, gumme arabik, ana. ʒ ij. flour of fenegrek, ʒ. s' caste þis poudre vpon þe defaute of þe boon þat is lost, til þat pou holde a pleynere reparation \* [& a restauracioun. þenne & nozt ere 20 brynge ouere flesch ouere þe reparation wiþ] regeneratiuis, mun-
- <sup>1</sup> wounde, erroneously for boon.      <sup>3</sup> hool, cancelled after dwelle.  
<sup>4</sup> The second þat has to be cancelled.      <sup>5</sup> incarnatyff in a later hand.

A portion of the bone can either be refastened,

[2 lf. 25]

or it must be removed.

ypocras & Galion.

poudre incarnatyff<sup>5</sup>

- two al togedre twartofere, þat pou brynge togedre, & bynde the parties of þe wounde as yt schal be tolde in þe eyzte chapytell folwyng, where pou schalt han hou a wonde schal ben helyde þat 24 is out of joynt, y-kutte atwo & tobroke. & ʒif þat a bon be nozt kutte atwo al togedre twartofere, loke ʒif enye pece of þe bon dwelle sadlyche to þe on partye of þe hole bon, & þenne ʒif pou myzte brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore with 28 þrustyng don þilke pece with sum Instrumentis acordyng þereto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hole bon with þe poudre, þat y schal tellyn afterwarde; for so þe schap of the lyme may dwelle fairere & strengere. & ʒif þat þilke pece haue no fastnesse to þe hole bon, 32 do þat pece away, & þenne regenerere in þe place of þe bon þat was lost a reparation. Ffor þow3 þat ypocras & Galien tellyn þat it ys necessarie after þe quantite of a bon þat is lost, an holwe cicatrice to be alwey, napeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese 36 pores may be mendyde nozt a lytel, but ryzt myche. þis is þe poudre: Take frank ensence, Mastike, Mirre, dragagantum gu. arabyke ana. ʒ. ij., flour of fenegreke, ʒ, ʒ, cast þis poudre a gode quantite vpon þe defaute of the bon þat was lost, tyl þat pou haue 40 a plener reparation \* & a restauracioun. þenne & nozt ere brynge ouere flesch ouere þe reparation with \*generatyffes, mun-

Add. MS. 12,056.

dificatiuis & consolidatiuis aftir þe techinge þat þou haddist biforn / Undirstonde þat al þing þat is seid of boonys in þis chapitle is of alle þe boonis of þe bodi saff þe heed / I schal make a chapitle by hym-silf //

4

¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> vñ  
Wondis  
made with  
conteschoun  
l. h.

**T**He fifþe chapitle of þe pridde techinge of þe firste tretis of woundis þat ben maad wip smytynge of staf or stoon, or fallynge or smytynge of an hors, or wip ony oþir þing semblable.

8

[1 lf. 25, bk.]

must be at-  
tended to in a  
different  
manner to  
incised  
wounds.

All the soft  
parts are  
bruised

with or  
without the  
skin being  
divided.

To hem happen greet difference <sup>1</sup>fro woundis þat ben maad wip kuttynge, as wip swerd, knyf, eipir arowe prickynge; & in opere maner þei schulen ben-I-heelid / For þow þat verry consolidacioun be þe firste & principall entencioun of helynge of a wounde, to þis chapitle it acordiþ nouȝt, for in smytynge, þe fleisch & þe veynes, & senewis, & arteries ben brusid, for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe boon azenstondip, & on þe ouer part <sup>2</sup>of þe þing þat is smyten knyttip nouȝt / Wherefore it is nessessarie, if þer schulde be a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat ben bitwene þe boon & þe þing

<sup>2</sup> The passage is corrupt; the correct version is given by Add. MS. : þe þynge þat smytep & kutteþ nouȝt.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

dificatyfes, & consolidatyfes, aftere þe techynge that þou haddyst toforñ. Undirstonde þat alle þynge þat ys seyde of bonys in þis chapitle, ys of alle þe bonys of þe body saff þe hed; & of þe bonys off the hed y schal make a chapitle by hym-selff.

[3 fol. 50 b]

þe ffye Chapitle of þe pridde techynge of þe furst tretis is of woundis <sup>3</sup>that beth y-mad with smytynge.

24

The woundys þat bep mad wip brosynge, as wip smytynge of a staf, opere ston, oper fallynge, opere wip smytynge of an hors, oper wip enye thyng semblable to hem, habbitþ gret differens from woundis þat bep y-made wip kuttynge: as wip swerde, knyf, ore arwe prikyng, & in opere manere þey schulle ben helyde. For þow þat verreye consolidacioun be þe first & þe principall Intencioun of helynge of a wounde, to þis chapitle it acordyth nouȝt, for in smytyng, þe flesch & þe veynes, synwes & arteries ben y-brusyde; for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe bon azeine stonde, & on þe vtter part þe þynge þat smyteth & kutteþ nouȝt, wherefore it is necessarie, ȝif þat þere scholde ben a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat bep bitwene þe bon & þe þynge þat smyteth, scholde be brusyde; &



- pat smytip, schulde be brusid, & operwhile þe fleisch & þe opere consimile membris ben brusid wipoute wounde / Wherefore þe curis of þe bope I wole ordeyne in þis chapitle. If þat a leche wolde enforse
- 4 him to ioyne togidere wip consolidatiuis þe wounde þat is maad wip smytinge, nedis quytture & corrupeioun bi þilke consolidatif muste be vnder þe wounde; þe which quytture schulde corrupte þilke lyme & brynge him to putrefaccioun, but if þat kynde were so myzty,
- 8 þat he myzte eftsoone opene þilke wounde, þat was consowd bi a sori leche<sup>1</sup>; or wip<sup>2</sup> a good leche come & knowe þilke dispo<sup>3</sup>sicioun & knowe helpe, wip propre eir<sup>4</sup> to rectifen þe corrupeioun of þilke lyme / What schalt þou þanne do? þou muste loke wheþer þat þe
- 12 bodi be ful of wickide humouris, eiþer be clene; if þat he be ful late him blood, if alle particuler þingis acorden, as vertu, age, complexioun & consuetude; & þese þingis moten alwey<sup>5</sup> taken in mynde, þou alwey þei be not I-nempned & namely vertu; & he be
- 16 not strong<sup>6</sup> & alle opere þingis acorden, þou schalt not lete blood, but þou maist ventosen, if þat it be nessessarie, or ellis [lose] \* þe wombe if þat he be costif<sup>6</sup>; & if þat he be feble, & þe brosure were in þe ouer parti of þe bodi, voide þe fecis of his wombe bi clisterie. &
- <sup>1</sup> *bi a sori leche*, a malo medico. See Halliwell, *Diet.*, sorry Laten.  
<sup>2</sup> *wip*, mistake for *þat*.  
<sup>4</sup> *eir*, read *cur*. <sup>5</sup> *be wanted after alwey*.  
<sup>6</sup> *costif*, costive, subject to be bound in body.—Kersey.

Such wounds,  
when joined  
too soon,  
will slough.

[3. If. 26]

If the patient  
is plethoric  
use blood-  
letting;

if he is feeble,  
cupping and  
purging.

Nota

Clisterie

- 20 operwhile þe flesch & þe opere consimele membris bep brusyde witout wounde, wherefore þe cures of bope y wyl ordeyne in this chapitle. 3if þat a leche wolde enforce hym to lue to gedire with consolidatyfes þe wounde þat is mad wip smytinge, nedys<sup>7</sup>
- 24 quyter & corupeioun by þilke consolidatyff, most be vndire þe wounde; þe whiche quyter scholde corumpe þylke lyme & brynge hym to putrefaccioun, but 3if þe kynde were so myztye, þat he myzte eftesonys opyne þylke wounde, þat was consouded by a sorye leche,
- 28 opere þat a gode leche come & knewe þilke dispocioun, & coupe helpe wip propre cure to rettesien þe corupeioun off þilke lyme. What schaltou þanne do? þou most loke wheþere that þe body be ful of yueft humores, oper be clene; 3if þat he be ful, lete hym
- 32 blod, 3if alle partikelere þynges acorden: as vertu, Age, complexioun & consuetude; & þese þynges þou most alweye taken in þy mynde, þow alweye þey ben nouzt y-nempnyde, & namlye vertue; & he be nouzt stronge & alle opere þynges acorden, þou schalt nouzt leten
- 36 blod, bot þou <sup>8</sup>maiste ventosen, 3if þat it be necessarie, oper ellis lose \* þe wombe 3if þat he be costyff; & 3if þat he be feble, & the brosure were in þe ouere party of þe body, voyde þe feces of hys

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[8 fol. 11 a]

<sup>7</sup> MS. nedyth.

concussio  
membrum ner-  
uosi cura  
l. h.  
oile *Roses*

[1 lf. 26, bk.]  
An antiseptic  
powder.

Treatment  
of a contu-  
sion, if the  
wound is  
open.

if þou wolt lete blood, þou schalt lete blood on þe contrarie partie  
of þe veyne, bryngyng<sup>t</sup> norischinge to þe lyme þat was hirt<sup>t</sup>; & pilke  
veyne þou schalt knowe, if þat þou knowist pleynerliche anotamie,  
þat I haue tauzt<sup>t</sup> þee in þis same book / & whanne þat þe bodi is 4  
clensid, if þat þe brosour be wiþoute þe wounde, anynte þe membre  
þat is brosid, which bigynneþ to haue an enpostym, with hoot oile  
of rosis, & caste aboue a poudre maad of þe seed of mirtilles, &  
hynde it softly; <sup>1</sup>for ofte-tymes it nedip noon oper eir<sup>2</sup> / For þis 8  
medicyn fastneþ þe place, & defendip him fro putrefaccioun. &  
þou3 þat þis medicyn mowe not letten al þe mater from rotynge,  
neþeles it defendip myche of þe same mater fro rotynge / & if al þe  
mater mai not be defendid from putrefaccioun, but sum partie þerof 12  
putrifieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quytture, & clense al þe place.  
& his cure schal be seid in þe chapitle of apostymes<sup>3</sup> & of exitours /  
But if<sup>4</sup> þat a brusour were wiþ a wounde, anynte aboute þe  
wounde or eills þe place þat is brusid wiþ þe forseid oile of rosis, & 16  
caste aboue þe forseid poudre of mirtilles, for it fastneþ þe place,  
ne it lettip nouzt<sup>t</sup> þe corrupcioun to spreden eiper to be drawen  
abrood; & it castip to þe wounde þe corrupt mater þat is in þe

<sup>2</sup> eir, read *cur*.

<sup>3</sup> Latin, *de apostematibus exituris*, apostems which discharge pus.

<sup>4</sup> if, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056. wombe by clisterye. & 3if þou wilt lete blod, þou shalt lete blod 20  
on þe contrarie party of þe veyne, bryngyng<sup>e</sup> noryschyng<sup>e</sup> to þe  
lyme þat was hurt; & pilke veyne þou schalt y-knowe, 3if þat þou  
knowist plenerlyche Anotamye, þat y haue tauzte þe in þis same  
boke. & whenne þat þe body ys y-clansyde, 3if þat þe brosure be 24  
wiþout þe wounde, anynt þe membre þat is y-brusyde, whiche þat  
begynneþ to han a postum, wiþ hote oyle of roses, & cast aboue a  
poudre y-mad of þe sed of mirtylles & hynde it softlye, for ofte  
tymes it nedyth non oper cure. For þis medecyne fastnyth þe 28  
place, & defendyth hym from putrefacioun, & þow3 þis medecyne  
mowe nozt letten alle þe mater from rotyng<sup>e</sup>, napeles yt deffendyth  
myche of þe same matere fro rotyng<sup>e</sup>; & 3if þat al þe matere may  
nouzt be defendyde fro putrefacioun, but sum partye þereof 32  
putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quyter, & clanse al þe place.  
& his cure schal be seyde in þe tretys of apostomes & of exitures.  
But 3if þat þe brosure were wiþ a wounde, anynte about þe wonde  
opere ellys þe place þat is y-brusyde, wiþ þe forseyd oyle of roses, 36  
& caste aboue þe forseyd poudre of mirtillyes, for þis medecyne  
fastnyth þe place, ne yt ne letteþ nozt corrupcioun to spredyn, opere  
to be drawe abrod, & it castith to þe wounde þe corrupt mater, þat



- place þat is brusid / Wipinne þe wounde leie þe zelke of an ey, wip  
oile of rosis, with stupis, or ellis wip lint.<sup>1</sup> Leid<sup>2</sup> aboue þe N  
wounde a potage maad of .iiij parties of watir & oon partie of  
4 oile de olyue, & flour of wheete þat sufficiþ to þe medicyn, & leie R  
þis medicyn to þe wounde, til þat þe akþe be aswagid, & til þat þe  
quytture be engendrid; aftirward clense <sup>3</sup>þe wounde, aftir þe [<sup>3</sup> lf. 27]  
clensynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatrice. & þou schalt haue a  
8 ful techinge in þe antidotarie of mundificatiuis & cicatriꝝatiuis /  
But if þe membre þat was brusid be ful of senewis, as þe hand Treatment of  
a contusion,  
if the injured  
limb is full of  
nerves, e. g.  
hand or foot.  
ouper þe foot, þou schalt not chaunge þi cure if þat þer be no  
wounde; but þou þer be a brusour in senewy membre I-woundid,  
12 leie not þere þe potage tofore seid, but oonly hoot oile of rosis, &  
aboue þe oile poudre of mirtillis, & aboue þe wounde leie terebentine olium  
Rosarum  
I-waischen & drawen abrood bitwene two lynnen cloþis. & make  
a plastre of pich & hony & bene flour, & leie aboute þe lyme þat N plaster  
16 is ful of senewis, as þe hand, þe foot, & speciali whanne þe flux of  
humouris ceessen not / & þou þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go  
not awei from þis cure / & whanne þat al þe akþe is ceessid and þe  
swellynge is aswagid, for to clense þe wounde, vse þe medicyn of  
20 mel roset colath with barly mele, seid in þe wounde of senewis / R

<sup>1</sup> lint. *Prompt. Parv.*, schauynge of lynnen clothe.<sup>2</sup> leid, mistake for leie.

- is in þe place þat is brusyde. Wipynne þe wounde leye þe 3olke of Add. MS.  
12,056.  
an eye with oyle of roses, with stupes opere ellys wip lynte; & leye  
aboue þe wounde a potage y-made off foure parties of water & o  
24 partye of oyle d'Olyve & floure off Whete þat suffyseþ to þe  
medycine, & leye þis medycine to þe wounde, tyl þat þe akþe be  
aswagyde & tyl þat þe quyter be engendryde; afterwarde clanse þe  
wounde, aftre þe clensynge regenerere, & at þe laste cicatryce, & þou  
28 schalt haue a ful techynge in þe Antiodarie of mundificatyfes,  
maturatyfes, & zicatisatifes. <sup>4</sup>But ȝif þat þe membre þat was [<sup>4</sup> fol. 51 b]  
y-brusyde ys ful of synwes, as þe honde oper þe fot, þou schalt noȝt  
chaunge þy cure ȝif þat þere be no wounde; but þawȝ þat þere be a  
32 brusure in a synwy membre y-woundyde, ne leye noȝt þere þe  
potage forseȝd, but only hote oyle of roses, & aboue þe oyle poudre  
of mirtillis, & aboue þe wounde leye terbentyne iwassche & drawe  
abrod betwene tweȝe cloþes lynnen. & make enplastre of pych,  
36 hony & bene flour, & leye aboute a lym ful of synwes: as þe fot  
opere þe hand, & specialyche whenne þat þe flux of humours sesep.  
& þawȝ þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go noȝt away fro þis cure;  
& whenne þat al þe akþe ys y-sesyȝd, & alle þe swellynge ys aswagyde,  
40 forto clanse þe wounde, vse þe medycine of mel rosat colat with



*Galion* þis cure is apreued bi galion, & I haue preued þis medicyn ofte tymes /

¶ Þe sixte chapitle of þe þridde techinge is of woundis  
þat han enpostymes & be distempered //

4

[<sup>1</sup> ff. 27, bk.]

¶ Capm vjm  
If the wound  
is tumorous  
or distem-  
pered,  
the tumour  
and the  
"dyscrasia"  
must be re-  
moved first.

Off woundes Impostemed.

<sup>1</sup> **A** Wounde þat hæp enpostym or an yuel discrasiam—þat<sup>t</sup> is to  
seie out<sup>t</sup> of kynde distemperid, eiper to cold eiper to hoot—  
he mai not be heelid, ne he schal not ben heelid, but<sup>t</sup> first<sup>t</sup> he<sup>2</sup> be 8  
aswagid in þe yuel discourciour be amendid / & as I haue seid in  
anoþer place, it<sup>t</sup> is profitable to þe sijk man, & worschipe to þe leche,  
if þat<sup>t</sup> he mowe defende þe lymes þat<sup>t</sup> ben woundid from enpostyme  
& from an yuel discrasie. For þanne a leche schal kepe þe canoun 12  
o<sup>3</sup> galion, þat<sup>t</sup> is oon of þe .iiij. canouns; oon is to kepe lymes in  
her owne kyndely complexioun. For woundis moun not<sup>t</sup> ellis be  
heelid, but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> þei be brouzt first<sup>t</sup> into her owne kynde / & a wounde  
mai be kept<sup>t</sup> from apostyme & an yuel discrasie if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe leche be 16  
kunnyng & do his deuer, & þe sike man be obedient<sup>t</sup> to þe leche /  
þe leche muste loke if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þer go blood y-now<sup>3</sup> out<sup>t</sup> at<sup>t</sup> þe wounde;  
& if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounde haue not<sup>t</sup> bled blood y-now<sup>3</sup>, þe pacient<sup>t</sup> muste

If necessary

<sup>2</sup> The correct version is given by Add. MS.

<sup>3</sup> o, mistake for of.

Add. MS. barly mele, y-sayd in the wounde of synwes. þis cure ys aprefyde 20  
12,056. by galyen, & y haue preffyde þis medicine ofte tymes.

¶ The sixte Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of  
Woundes þat han enpostemes, & beþ dystemp pryde.

A wounde þat hatþ aposteme oþer an yuel discrasie—þat<sup>t</sup> is to 24  
sigge, out of kynde distemp ride, oþere to hote oþere to cold, he may  
nozþ ben helyd, ne schal nouzt ben heled, but first þe posteme be  
aswagyde, & þe yuele discrasie be amendide. & as y haue seyde, in  
an oþere place, yt is profitable to þe syke man, & worschipful to þe 28  
leche, zif þat he mowe dyffende þe lymes þat beþ woundyde fro eny  
postemys, & fro an euyþ discrasie. For þenne a leche schal kepe  
þe canon of galyen, þat is on of foure canones; on is to kepyn  
lymes in here owne kendlye complexioun. For woundys mowe 32  
nozþ ellys ben y-helyd, but zif þey ben brouzt first to here owne  
kynde, & þe wounde may be kepte from aposteme & an yueþ  
discrasie, zif þat þe leche be kunnyng & do hys deffere, & þe syke  
man be obedyent to þe leche. þe leche mot loke \*zif þat þere haue 36  
go blod ynow<sup>3</sup> out of þe wounde; & zif þat the wounde haue nozt  
bled blod ynow<sup>3</sup>, þe pacyent most ben lete blod, oþere ellys ben

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 52 a]

- be lete blood or ellis ventusid, takynge reward to alle particuler  
 pingis tofore seid / & ordeyne him a couenable dietyngge, as schal be  
 told in þe chapitle of dietyngge; & leie a defensif aboute þe wounde,  
 4 3 j. of bole armoniak distemperid wip oile of <sup>1</sup>rosis, & a litil vinegre: use blood-  
letting or  
cupping,  
prescribe a  
proper diet  
and a  
deffensiuum.  
 as picke as hony *tempere* it / & if þat þe tyme of þe zeer were  
 hoot, putte to þis medicyn þe ius of sum cold erbe: as morel,<sup>2</sup>  
 penywort,<sup>3</sup> virge pastoris. Late not þe lyme hange; but if it be  
 8 the arm, hange it aboute þe necke / & if it be þe foot eiper þe Put the  
injured limb  
in a proper  
position.  
 schene, lete him ligge / & if þat þe lyme ake, aswage þe akpe wip  
 an oynement of hoot oile of rosis / For as Galion seiþ: þer is no  
 ping more noious to a wounde þan is akpe & declinacioun of a  
 12 lyme, for þese .ij. maken soone an hoot swellynge, þe which is to þe  
 feure as a welle, & to þe bodi as an ouene / þe woundid man  
 muste absteine him after þe chapitle of dietyngge techip, & boþe þe  
 sike man & þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe sike, moten absteine The patient  
and the  
physician  
must live  
chastely.  
 16 hem fro fleischly knowynge of a womman, [ne a womman] \*in tyme  
 of menstrie,<sup>4</sup> ne loke not on þe sike man / & oonys in þe dai þe sike  
 man schal go to priuy;<sup>5</sup> & if he mai not schite "oonys" kyndeli in Regulate  
the patient's  
stool.

<sup>2</sup> *morel*, Lat. *Solathrum*. See Notes.

<sup>3</sup> *penywort*, Lat. *umbilicus Veneris*.

<sup>4</sup> See Notes.

<sup>5</sup> *privy*. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 414, Pryvy or gonge (or Kocay), Latrina, cloaca, ypodromium; p. 202, Goo to pryvy, or to shytyng, Acello. *Pryvy* still used in Yorkshire.

- ventusyde, takynge rewarde to alle partikelere pynges tofore seyde, Add. MS.  
12,056.  
 20 & ordeyne hym a couenable dyotyngge, as schal be tolde in þe  
 ChapiteH of dyotyngge; & leye a defens aboute þe wounde: 3 j. of  
 bol Armonyake, distemperid wip oyle of rosys & a lytel vynegre, to  
 þe piknesse of hony; & 3if þat þe tyme of þe zere were hot, put to  
 24 þis medycine þe jus of sum colde erbe: as morel, nytschode, peny-  
 wort, virge pastoris, opere sum oper colde erbe; & bynde nozt þe  
 lyme to harde, ne lete nozt þe lyme hongyn; but 3if it be þe arme,  
 honge him aboute þe nekke; & 3if it be þe fot oper þe schyne, lete  
 28 hym ligge; & 3if þat þe lyme akpe, aswage þe akpe wip anoyntyngge  
 of hote oyle of roses. Ffor as Galyen seyth: þere is nopyngge more  
 grefes, þan ys akyngge & declynacioun of a lyme, for þese two makip  
 sone an hote swellynge, the whiche is to þe ffeuyre as a welle, & to  
 32 þe body as an Oryn. þe woundyde man most absteine hym,  
 aftere þat þe chapiteH of dyetyngge techith; & boþe þe syke man &  
 þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe syke, mote absteinen hem from  
 fleschlye knowlacheinge of a womman, ne a womman \*in tyme of  
 36 menstrew, ne loke nozt on þe syke man; & onys in þe day þe syke  
 man schal schyte, & 3if he may nozt schyte kendly onys in þe day,

a clisterie þe dai after þe quantite of mete þat he takip, make him a clisterie  
 If a tumour develops, ouper a suppositorie oonys ech day. & if þou my3t not wiþ alle  
 þese þingis defende þe lyme from apostyme, it is an yuel signe, for  
 [1 lf. 28, bk.] þe lyme is <sup>1</sup>feble, & þe humouris arn wickide; þanne bigynnen<sup>2</sup> to 4  
 use a maturatif, materen þe swellynge wiþ potage maad of flour, oile & watir, or  
 R ellis wiþ þis maturatif / Take malowe leues & leues of violet, & þe  
 rote of holihoкке; seþe hem weel in water, & staumpe hem, & take  
 a pound of water, þat þei ben soden ynne, & comoun oile; 3 .iiij.; of 8  
 wheete flour 3 .iiij.; of flour of lynseed 3 j.; of flour of fenegrek  
 dj.<sup>3</sup> 3.; of erbis I-stampid half a pound. & boile alle þese togidere  
 in a panne ouer þe fier, & stire it weel wiþ a spatire; & þis  
 maturatif leie on a lynnen cloof, & leie it on þe postyme til þat it 12  
 and remove the pus. be maturid / & whanne þat þe postyme is maturid, make þe quytture,  
 if þou maist, be cast to þe wounde; & if it mai not be cast to þe  
 wounde, opene þe place þat is moost lowist þere, as þe quytture mai  
 best goon out; & þanne hele þe wounde, as I schal telle in þe 16  
 þridde chapitle of apostymes / Take hede alwey to þis techinge;  
 If the tumour is caused by the pricking of a nerve use an ointment. & if þe postyme were for þe prickynge of a senewe, ne leie not  
 þerto þis potage maturatif; but wiþ þe oynement of oile of rosis, &  
 of opere þingis, as it is seid in þe woundis of senewis / 20

<sup>2</sup> bigynnen, mistake for bigynne.

<sup>3</sup> dimidium.

Add. MS. 12,056. after þe quantyte of mete þat he haþ takyn, make hym a clistry, oper  
 a suppositorie onys iche day. & 3if þou maiste nozt with alle þese  
 þynges defendyn þe lyme from aposteme, yt is an yuele signe, for þe  
 lyme ys feble, & þe humores ben wykkede; þen begynne to maturen 24  
 maturatyff þe swellynge, with potage y-made off flour, oyle & water, oper ellys  
 [4 fol. 52 b] with þis maturatyff: R malwe leuys, leffys of vyolett, & þe rote  
 of holy hokke; seþe hem <sup>4</sup>wel in water, & þanne stampe hem, &  
 take a pounce off þe water þat þey be sodyn yn, & of comyn oyle 28  
 3 .iiij, of whete flour 3 .iiij, of flour of lynsed .3. j, of flore vynegreke  
 3 ß, of erbys i-stamped lb.<sup>5</sup> ß; & boille alle þese togedire, in a pan  
 ouere þe fyre, & stire yt wel wiþ a spator; & þis maturatyff leye  
 on a lynne cloth, & leye on þe posteme, tyl þat yt be maturyd; & 32  
 whanne þat þe posteme is matured, make þe quyter, 3if þou maist,  
 ben y-cast to þe wounde; & 3if it may nozt ben y-cast to þe wounde,  
 opyne þe place þat ys most lowest þere, as þe quyter may best gone  
 out; & þan helyn þe wounde, as y schal tellyn, in þe þridde 36  
 chapyteH of Apostemys. Take hede alweye to þis techynge, þat  
 3if a posteme were for þe prikyng of a synwe, ne leye nozt þereto  
 þis potage maturatyff, but wyt þe vncture of oyle of roses & of  
 opere þynge, as yt is seyde in þe woundys of synwys. þou schalt 40

<sup>5</sup> MS. lj



- pou schalt knowe þe yuel discrasie of a wounde, <sup>1</sup>if þat pou seest þe skyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed & to hoot in felynge, þanne þe wounde is discrasie in hete; namely, if þat þer come out  
 4 of þe wounde<sup>2</sup> a sotil quytture, reed; þilke discrasie pou schalt helpe wip coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde with oile of rosis & vnguentum album, Rasis of ceruse, which pou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie, & with þe ius of þe opere eerbis colde. 1. A hot dyscrasia, Nota
- 8 & pou schalt knowe a cold discrasie bi þe whiztnes eiper þe wannesse of þe place / & whanne þe place is cold in towchinge, & whanne þat þe quytture is þicke; þe which discrasie pou schalt remeue bi þe enoynture of hote oiles, as oile of coste,<sup>3</sup> oile of  
 12 laurine, oile of enforbium, & so opere hote oiles / 2. a cold dyscrasia, 1. h.
- A moist discracie pou schalt knowe bi þe neischenes of þe place, & bi aboundaunce of whizt liquide rotenes, þe which pou schalt helpe wip desiccatiuis: as wip waischinge of wyne & hony  
 16 togidere, in þe whiche ben soden balaustie,<sup>4</sup> gallis & þe ryndis of some garnadis, or alle or summe bi hem-silf / 3. a moist dyscrasia, R
- þe drie discrasie pou schalt knowe bi þe smalnes of þe lyme, & þe smalnes of þe lippis of þe wounde, & litil quytture, if þat þe  
 20 quytture be þinne; þe which discrasie pou schalt helpe: with <sup>5</sup>þe 4. a dry dyscrasia. 5. 1f. 29, bk.]

<sup>2</sup> MS. erroneously inserts *quytture* after *wounde*.<sup>3</sup> *oile of coste*, Lat. cum oleo de castoreo.<sup>4</sup> *balaustie*. Balaustum, the floure of the wylde Pomgranate. Halle. Table, p. 16.—1565. Turner, *Herbal*, II., fol. 49 b., calls it Balastrum.

- y-knowe þe euyl dyscrasie of a wounde, ȝif þat pou sest the schyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed, & to hot in felynge, þenne þe wounde is discrasyede in hete, namly ȝif þat þere come out of þe  
 24 wounde a sotyȝ qyter & a red; & þilke discrasye pou schalt helpen with coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde, with oyle of roses, & with vnguentum album—rasis of ceruse—whyche pou schalt fynde in þe Antodarie, & wip ius of opere colde erbys. & pou schalt knowe a  
 28 colde discrasye by þe whitnesse oper þe wannesse of þe place, & whanne þe place ys colde in touchyng, & whanne þat þe quyter is thykke; the whiche discrasye pou schalt remeffen, by þe vneture of hote oyles, as oyle of cost, oyle lauryne, oyle of enforbium, & so  
 32 opere hote oyles. A moiste discrasie pou schalt knowe by þe nesschenesse of þe place, & by þe Aboundaunce of whit lyquyde rotnesse, þe whiche pou schalt helpyn with defficatyffes: as with wasschyng of wyne & honye togedres, in  
 36 balaustye, gallys, & þe ryndes off poume garnettys, oper alle oper some by hem-selffen. þe drye dyscrasye pou schalt knowe by þe smalnesse of þe lyme, & þe smalnesse of þe lippes of þe woundes & litel quyter, ȝif þat the quyter be þenne; þe whiche discrasye pou Add. MS. 12,056. 6 fol. 53 a]

As soon as  
the dyscrasia  
is removed,  
try to heal  
the wound  
itself.

Auicenn

castynge on of hoot water til þat þe lyme wexe reed, & wiþ an  
oynement þou muste<sup>1</sup> grece, as hennes, goos, & dokis, þe marie boon  
of a calf, & wiþ plenteuousnes of good mete þat norischip: as þe  
bropis of fleisch, & temperate wynn, & rere eyren, & smale fischis, 4  
& wiþ reste, & softnes of al þe bodi, & of þe lyme þat is hirt; &  
alwey to þis techinge take hede þat as soone as a membre is brouȝt  
to his kyndeli disposicioun, anon aȝenstondip<sup>2</sup> wiþ contrarious  
medicyns, & turne aȝen to þe principal cure of þe wounde. But 8  
þenke nouȝt to heele þe wounde as longe as it is enpostemed, or  
ellis haue an yuel discrasie; but first remeue þilke discrasie, or þat  
þou heele þe wounde / For whanne two þingis þat schulden ben  
heelid ben togidere, & þe oon of hem mowe not be helid wiþoute 12  
helynge of þat opere, first we schulen heelen him, þat mai nouȝt  
be heelid wiþoute þat oper helyng, as þe apostyme eifer þe dis-  
crasie / þus Auicenne techip in þe laste chapitle of þe firste book.  
Neuer-þe-lattere forȝete nouȝt þe principal cure, þat whanne þe 16  
accidentis ben asesid turne aȝen to þe principal cure //

<sup>1</sup> þou muste, mistake for of moiste.

<sup>2</sup> aȝenstondip, mistake for aȝenstonde.

Add. MS. 12,056. schalt helpen wiþ castynge on of hote water, tyl þat þe lyme wexe  
rede, & with an oyntyng of moiste greys, as hennys, gosys &  
dokys, & þe marye bon of a Calff, & with plentefoste of gode mete, 20  
þat noryschyth, as þe brothys of flesch, & temperat wynn, & rere  
eyren, & smale fyssches, & opere gode þynges, & with reste and with  
softnesse of alle þe body & of þe lyme þat is y-hurte; & alwey to  
þis techynge take hede, þat as sone as a membre ys y-broȝt to his  
kendlye dysposicioun, anon aȝeyne stonde with contraryouse medy- 24  
cine, & turne aȝeyne to þe pryncipal cure of þe wounde. But þynke  
noȝt to helyn þe wounde, as longe as þe wounde ys apostomyde,  
opere ellys haȝ an yuele discrasye, but first remywe þilke discrasye  
ere þan þou hele þe wounde. For whenne þat tweye þynges þat 28  
scholde ben y-helyde, buȝ togedres, & þe on of hem mowe noȝt ben  
y-helyde withouten helynge of þe oper, first we schulle helyn hym,  
þat may noȝt be helyde withouten helynge of þe opere, as þe  
posteme oper þe dyscrasye; & þus Avycene techith in þe last 32  
chapiteH of þe first bokys. Ne nevere þe latere ne forȝete noȝt þy  
pryncipal cure, þat whanne the accidentes ben asesyde, turne aȝeyne  
to þe pryncypale cure.



¶ Pe .vij. chapitle of pe .iij. techinge is a wounde maad  
with a wood hound, eiper of any oper venemous  
beest /

- 4 <sup>1</sup> **B** Vt whanne an hound hap biten a man, loke first if pat pe <sup>[1 lf. 30]<sup>2</sup></sup>  
hound be wood ; & if pat pe hound be not wood, heele pe ¶ Capm vijm  
wounde as pou doist opere comoun woundis ; & if pat pe hound <sup>Bite of a dog.</sup>  
were wood, pou schalt knowe it bi certeyn cause & disposiciouns / <sup>Ascertain whether the dog was rabid.</sup>
- 8 For a wood hound sleepe mete & water ; & he renneþ hidirward & pidirward as a drunken man, wiþ open mouþ & his tail bitwene hise leggis ; his tunge hangiþ out, but he wolde biten alle men ; ne he knowiþ not þo men pat ben in houshold. He berkiþ not / & if
- 12 pat he opirwhile berke, his vois is ful hors, & opere houndis fleen fro him & berken vpon him. Also pou schalt knowe bi disposicioun of pe same wounde. For if pat pou wetist a crumme of breed in pe blood of pe wounde, & zeuest it to anoper hound to ete, he
- 16 wole not ete it ; & if pat he ete it, he wole die / Or ellis take an ote, & staumpe it, & leie it on pe wounde al nyzt, & on pe morowe zeue it to an hen ; & pe hen wole not ete it / & if pe hen ete it, pe hen schal die / <sup>Food saturated with blood of the wound kills other animals.</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Heading to leaf 30, in a later hand, *Off woundes bitten with doges.*

- 20 ¶ The vij Chapitelle of pe þridde techynge is off a wounde y-made of a wod hounde, opere of eny opere venymouse bestys.

- Whenne pat an hounde hath byten a man, firste loke zif pat pe <sup>Add. MS. 12,056.</sup>  
24 hounde be wod ; & zif pat pe hounde be nozt wood, hele pe wounde as pou dost opere comyn woundys ; & zif pat pe hounde were wood, pou schalt y-knowe yt by certeyne causes, & by dispo<sup>s</sup>iciouns. Ffor <sup>[3 fol. 53 b.]</sup>  
28 whenne pat he seþ water ; & he rennyth hydirward & pedirwarde, as a drunken man, wiþ opyn mouþ & hys taylle bytwene his leggis, hys tunge hongyth out, he wolde byte alle men, ne he ne knowyth nouzt þo men pat ben his housholde, he berkyth nozt ; & zif pat
- 32 he operewhyle berke, hys voys ys ful hors, & opere houndys fien from hym & berkyn vpon hym. Also pou schalt y-knowe by dysposicioun of pe same wounde, for zif pat pou wetyst a crumme bred in pe blod of pe wounde & geuyste yt to an oper hounde to
- 36 etyn, he wyl nozt etyn yt, & zif pe hounde etyþ yt he wyll deyen ; opere ellys take a note & stampe yt, & leye on pe wounde al nyzt, & on pe morwe zif yt to an henne, sche wyl nozt etyn hyt ; & zif sche etyth yt sche wyl deyen. & anone as pou wost pe hounde ys



If the dog  
was rabid,  
withdraw the  
blood from  
the wound by  
cupping,  
cauterization,  
[<sup>1</sup> lf. 30, bk.]  
and attrahent  
remedies.

Simple  
remedies.  
Haeue it [7]

Compound  
remedies.

Another  
treatment:

And anon as þou woost þat þe hound was wood, sette a greet ventuse aboue vpon þe wounde, & drawe out þe myche blood out of þe wounde, & aftirward drawe abroad þe wounde; & aboue al opere þing, brennyng of hoot yren to þe ground <sup>1</sup>of þe wounde is 4 moost profitable. & leie aboue þe wounde attractiuis, to drawe out þe venym / Summe of þese attractiuis ben symple, & summe compound / Symple beþ: þe lyuere of þe same wood hound þat boot þe man, garlik stampid, salt fisch, aischis of wiyn lies, apponak 8 þat is wondirful, þe leeuys of a gourde,<sup>2</sup> & þe rote of fenegrek, þe gile<sup>3</sup> of fisch, & amptyn I-stampid / þese medicyns ben compound: vreyne of a 3ong<sup>t</sup> man wiþ nitre; ouper mintis stampid<sup>4</sup> wiþ salt, & distemperid wiþ vynegre, & maad an enplastre. Anoper medicyn 12 compound: take floris eris & salt, of eech .x. parties, & þe fatte of a calf, & of a wolf þat sufficþ, & make a plastre / Anoper: take schepis talow & buttere, & make a plaster / þis wounde schal be holden open at þe leeste fourty daies, & þis schal be do aboute þe 16 place. In anoper maner regimen / Vndirstonde þat þe man þat is biten, schal not be lete blood in þe bigymynge, lest þe venym be drawe abroad bi opere lymes; ne þou schalt zeue him no laxatif, lest it drawe þe venym to þe entrailis wiþinne; but þou schalt sette 20

<sup>2</sup> gourde, cucumer. See *Prompt. Parv.*, 203, *Goord*, Cucumer, cucurbita, colloquintida.

<sup>3</sup> gile, ne. gill. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, p. 268. The Latin has, *gluten*, glue.

<sup>4</sup> stampid, in margin.

Add. MS. 12,056. wod, sette a gret ventuse aboue þe wounde & drawe out myche blod out of þe wounde, & afterwarde drawe abrod þe wounde; & abouen alle opere thyng brennyng of hote eyren to þe deppe of þe wounde ys most proffitable, & aftere leye aboue þe wounde attractyfes, to drawe out þe venym. Some of þese attractifes beþ symple, & some beþ compond. Symple ben: þe lyffere of þe same wod hounde þat bote þe man, garlyke y-stampyde, salt fyssch, asschys of vyne, Opopanac ys wondirful, þe leuys of a Gourde, & þe rote of flyne- 28 greke, þe gele of fyssches, & amptes y-stampyde. þese medycynes ben compondyde: vryne of a 3onge man, with nytre oper myntes, i-stampyde with salt & distempred with vynegre, & y-mad in emplastre. An opere medicyne compond: R floris eris & salt ana 32 ten parties, & þe fat of a calff twelf parties, & make a plastre. An opere: take schepys talwz & buttre, & make emplastre. þis wounde schal ben y-holde opyne at þe leste fourty dayes; al þis schal be do about þe place. <sup>5</sup>In an opere manere regimen vndir- 36 stande, þat þe man þat is y-bete ne schal nouzt be lete blod in the bygymynge, lest þe venym be drawe abrod by opere lymes. Ne þou ne schalt 3if hym non laxatyff, lest yt drawe þe venym to þe entraylles withynne; but þou schalt setten on þe place a stronge 40

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 54 a]

- vpon þe place a strong<sup>t</sup> ventuse, as it<sup>t</sup> is seid tofore, <sup>1</sup>þat it<sup>t</sup> mowe drawe miche of þe blood. And whanne þat<sup>t</sup> .iiij. daies ben passid, it<sup>t</sup> is not<sup>t</sup> yuele to lete blood & to purge with a litil purgacioun, þat<sup>t</sup> <sup>use first cupping, [1. 31]</sup> then blood-letting and a purgative.
- 4 purgiþ þe malencolie, as with decoccioun epithimum,<sup>2</sup> wiþ gotis whey; & norischip him with dieting; þat<sup>t</sup> fattip & makip him glad & bliþe; & waische his heed with decoccioun of water, þat<sup>t</sup> þe feet<sup>t</sup> <sup>Keep the patient in good spirits.</sup> & þe heed of a weþer were soden yune. Ne late him not<sup>t</sup> þirsten
- 8 ne hungren, suffren, ne traueilen; & so if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> god wole, þou maist<sup>t</sup> him kepe from perile / & ech dai to a monþis eende he schal take opere symple medicyns or compounned / \* — — Take þe ayschis of crabbis I-brent in an ouene .iiij. parties, of frankencense vij.
- 12 parties, & make hem into a poudre / þe pacient schal take ech dai of þis poudre .ij. ȝ. / Anoper medicyn: take þe powder of crabbis brent<sup>t</sup> vj. parties, gencian .iiij parties, terre sigillate oon partie, make poudre / If<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þou were not<sup>t</sup> at þe bigynnyng, & it<sup>t</sup> bigynne
- 16 to haue yuel accidentis: as yuel þouȝtis, soruful metyng in his sleep, & þat<sup>t</sup> he be wroþ & grucche, & woot<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> whi; & if<sup>t</sup> men aske him ony þing, & ȝeueþ no good answer þerto, & fley lith,<sup>3</sup> & he haþ alle opere signes of malencolie, þanne ȝeue to him a <sup>If the patient seems melancholy, [1. 31, bk.]</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Epithemum. See Notes.

<sup>3</sup> fley lith, altered to fleyntlith with different ink. Read: fleyth lyȝt.

- 20 ventuse, as yt is seyde tofore, þat he mowe drawe myche of þe blode. & whenne þat þre dayes ben passyde, yt is nouȝt yuele to leten blod, & to purge with a lyȝt purgacioun, þat purgith þe malyncolye, as with decoccioun of Epytemum, with gotys whey; & norissche
- 24 hym with dyetyng, þat fattyth hym & make glad & bliþe; & wassche hys hed with decoccioun of water, þat þe fet & þe hed of a weþire ben y-sodyn yn. Ne lete hym nouȝt þrustyn, ne suffren hungryre ne traueH, & so ȝif þat god wyl, þou maiste kepen hym
- 28 from peryle. & euery day to a moneþ ende, he schal taken opere symple medicynes, oper componed. \*Symple buþ: Asa ffitida. Asa dulsis, poſm,<sup>5</sup> terra sigillata, Wermot, KockuH,<sup>6</sup> mirre & gencyane. Medycynes componed gode: \*R þe assches of crabbyes
- 32 y-brent in an Offyn .iiij parties, of frankensens vij parties, make a poudre; þe pacient schal take iche day of þis poudre ȝ .ij wiþ wyn. An oper: R þe poudre of crabbyes y-brende vj parties, of gencyane .iiij. parties, terre sigillate one partie, make poudre. ȝif þat þou
- 36 were noȝt at þe bygynnyng, & he bygynneth to haue yuele Accidentes, as yuele þouȝtes, schrewyde metyng in his slepe, & þat he be wroth & grucche & wot noȝt why, & ȝif men aske hym enye þyng he ȝeuyth no gode answer þere to, & fleyþ lyȝt, & he hath
- 40 alle opere signes of malencolye, þanne ȝif to hym a medicine y-made

Add. MS.  
12,056.

<sup>5</sup> polium, Paley.

<sup>6</sup> Kockull, Nigella. See Prompt. Parr., p. 86.



give him  
troches com-  
posed of  
cantharides  
and spices,

R  
N

until he  
micturates  
blood.

Treat bites  
from venom-  
ous beasts  
similarly.

medicyn maad of<sup>r</sup> cantarides / Take old grete cantarides, & do  
aweī þe heed & þe wyngis, .ij. dragmis; lentis<sup>1</sup> I-clensid, .ṡ. j.;  
safron, spikenard, clowis, canel, .ana. ṡ. s'.; bete hem weel, & make  
of<sup>r</sup> hem smale ballis, þat<sup>r</sup> ech bal weiȝe a dragme. & ȝeue o. bal at 4  
pre tymes, at<sup>r</sup> ech tyme þe weiȝte of<sup>r</sup> pre cornys of<sup>r</sup> wheete, til þat<sup>r</sup>  
he pisse blood; þanne he schal be saaf<sup>r</sup> / For whanne þou art<sup>r</sup> sikir,  
heele þe woundis after þat<sup>r</sup> fourti daies ben passid, in þe same  
maner. If<sup>r</sup> þat<sup>r</sup> þe wounde were maad of<sup>r</sup> bitinge of<sup>r</sup> an eddre or of<sup>r</sup> 8  
ony oper venomous beest, þe leche schal take heede to drawe abrod  
þe wounde, & sette aboue a uentuse, & drawe out<sup>r</sup> miche blood; &  
it is miche worþ to enuyroune þe place aboute þat<sup>r</sup> is biten wiþ  
brome I-stampid / For if<sup>r</sup> þat<sup>r</sup> þe prickynge be in þe foot<sup>r</sup> or in þe 12  
hand, if<sup>r</sup> þou enuyroune þe arme with brome, it<sup>r</sup> lettīþ þe venym to  
go vpward; & ȝeue him þe medicyns writen aboue, & also lete þe  
wounde be open, til þe venym be excludid /

¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> viij<sup>m</sup> **T**He .viij. chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste 16  
tretis of a wounde maad in a ioynt, & is dislocate /

Whanne þat<sup>r</sup> a wounde is in a lyme, & þe boon of þe same lyme  
[<sup>2</sup> 1f. 32]<sup>3</sup> is to-broke <sup>2</sup>atwo & dislocate—þat is to seie out<sup>r</sup> of<sup>r</sup> ioynthe, þanne

<sup>1</sup> doesnet above *lentis*; meaning ?

<sup>3</sup> Heading to leaf 32 in a later hand: *Off woundes in Jintes.*

Add. MS. 12,056. of cantarydes. Take *olde* grete kantarydes & do aweye þe hed & 20  
þe wynges 3. ij., lentys I-clansed 3. j., saferen, spikenard, clowys,  
canest ana 3. ʒ.—in opere bokys—ipone hem wel & make of hem  
smale ballys þat weyȝen j. penyē wyȝt; & ȝif a bañ at pre tymes,  
at iche tyme þe wyȝt of vij. cornys of whete, tyl þat he pysse blod, 24  
for þenne he schal be saff. Ffor whenne þou art sykere, hele þe  
[<sup>4</sup> fol. 54 b] <sup>4</sup>wounde after þat fourty dayes ben passyde, in þe same maner.  
ȝif þat a wounde were mad of þe bytinge of an eddre, opere of eny  
opere venymouse beste, þe leche schal take hede to drawe abrode þe 28  
wounde & setten abouen a ventuse & drawe out myche blod, & yt  
is myche worþ to environ þe place abouten þat is y-betyn wiþ  
brome y-stampyde. Ffor ȝif þat þe prikyng be in þe fot opere in  
þe hande, ȝif þou environ þe arme opere þe legge with brome, yt 32  
latteþ þe venym to gone vpwarde; & ȝif hym þe medecines y-wryten  
aboue, & also tryacle, & lete þe wounde be opyne, tyl al þe venym  
be escludyde.

The viij. Chapytelle of þe bridde techynge of the firste 36  
tretys is of a wounde y-made in a joynt & is dislocat.

defensiff

Whenne þat<sup>r</sup> a wounde is in a lyme & þe bon of þe same lyme  
ys tobroken atwo & is dislocat—þat is to sigge, out of joynt,



- it is good þat þou putte in þe wounde whanne þe blood is staunchid, & also aboute þe wounde þe ʒolke of an ey wip oile of rosis, & anointe al þe lyme aboute þe wounde with two parties of oile of rosis, & half oon partie of vynegre maad picke wip bole armoniak, til þe quytture be engendrid, & þat þou be sikir þat no postyme schal come. Ne take noon hede to brynge togidere þe parties of þe boon þat is to-broken or dislocate, til viij. daies ben goon in þe wyntir, & v. in þe somer; for þanne it schal make quytture, and be sikir from swellynge; & þanne brynge togidere þe brynkis eiper þe disiuncture after þe techyng þat schal be seid in þe chapitle of algebra. & if þat þe prickynge eiper þe dislocacioun nedij splentis, make þat þe splentis & byndynge faile aboute þe wounde. þat þou may do if þat þou kutte þe splentis & þe bindynge aboute þe wounde with a knyft or a rasour, & in drawynge abroad þe hoole of þe wounde<sup>1</sup> aboute þe wounde wip a nedle, so þat þou maist bi þat hole ech day chaunge þi medicyn of þe wounde wipoute choudynge<sup>2</sup> of þe boond þat þou madist first aboute þe boonyss þat weren broken ouper dislocate; þe which boond þou schalt nouȝt remeuen til tyme schal be told in his place, but þou schalt bynde aboute pilke

If the wound is accompanied by fracture or dislocation of a bone,

R dress the wound,

and do not join the bone before some time elapsed.

Cut a hole in the splints or bandages,

through which the wound can be dressed.  
[<sup>1</sup> If. 82, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> *wounde*, error for *bonde*.

<sup>2</sup> *choudynge*, error for *chongynge*.

- þanne it is gode þat þou putte in þe wounde, whanne þe blod is y-staunchyde, & also aboute þe wounde, þe ʒolke of an eyȝe, with oyle of roses, & anoynt alle þe lyme aboute þe wounde, wip two partyes of oyle of rosys, & wip half on party of vynegre, y-made pikke with bol Armonyake, tyl þat þe quyture be engendered,<sup>4</sup> & þou be sykere þat none Aposteme schalt come. Ne take none hede to brynge togidere þe parties of þe bon þat is tobroken opere dislocat, tyl viij daies ben go in þe wyntire, & fyff in the somere; for þenne yt schal make quytere, & be sykere from swellynge; & þenne brynge togedire þe brekyng opere þe dysynncture aftere þe techyng þat schal be seyde in þe Chapytell of **Algebra**. & ȝif þat þe brekyng opere þe dyslocacioun nedij splyntes, make þat þe splyntes & þe byndynge faylen aboute þe wounde; & þat þou maiste do, ȝif þat þou kyttest þe splyntes & þe byndinge aboute þe wounde with a knyft opere a rasoure, & in drawynge abroad þe hole of þe bonde aboute þe wounde<sup>5</sup> wip a nedle, so þat þou maiste by pilke hole euery day chaungen þe medecine of þe wounde withouten chaungynge of þe bonde, þat þou madest firste aboute þe bonys þat were broke opere dislocat. þe whiche bonde þou schalt nouȝt remeffen, tyl þe tyme þat schal be tolde in hys place; bote you schalt bynde aboute pilke

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 55 a]

<sup>4</sup> MS. engenderes.

R boon a newe boond, which þou schalt remeue as ofte as þou chaungist þi wounde. & whanne þat þou art sikir fro þe enpostemyng, & whanne þat þou hast sett togidere þe boonys þat were sett togidere & dissolate, þanne leie vpon þe wounde bi þe hole 4 þat þou madist in þe boond, a mundificatif of mel roset colat, & of barli mele til þe wounde be clensid; & leie on þat a<sup>1</sup> mundificatif, predys of oolde whizt lynnyn clop, til þat þe wounde be ful clensid; aftirward regendre fleisch, & aftirward consowde with 8 regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis, whiche þat schulen be seid in þe ende of þe book /

¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> ix<sup>m</sup>

THE nynþe chapitle of þe .iiij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of fluxblood of a wounde / 12

Hæmorrhage arises from an injury, corrosion, or weakness of the veins and arteries—

þer ben ij. maner of causis þat makij blood to blede out of a mannys body; þe oon cause is clepid—cause coniuncte; & þe toþer—cause antecedent / þe enchesoun of cause coniuncte is compouned of þe moupis of þe veynes and arteries, or ellis whanne 16 þat þe veynes ben kut atwo, or ellis corrosion of þe bodies of þe 2 same veynes & arteries, or ellis to greet febilnes or to greet losenes / And þer ben manie enchesouns of cause antecedentis: as to

<sup>1</sup> a, erroneously inserted.

<sup>3</sup> Heading to leaf 33, *Off flux off blode in woundes.*

Add. MS.  
12,056.

bonde a newe bonde, þe whyche þou schalt remeffe, as often as þou 20 chaungiste thy wounde. & whanne þou art sykere from empostomyng & þou haue sette togedire þe bonys þat were sette togedire & dislocat, þanne leye vpon þe wonde by þe hole þat þou madyst in þe band a mundifycatyff of mel rosat colat, & of barlye mele, tyl 24 þe wonde be clansyde; & leye on þilke mundrycatyff predys of olde clene whyte lynne clop, tyl þat þe wounde be ful clansyde; afterward regenere flesch, & aftereward consoude wiþ regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, whiche þat schullen ben seyde in þe ende of 28 þe boke.

The ix Chapitle of þe pridde techynge is of flux blod off a wounde.

þere beþ two manere causes þat makyth blod to bleden out of 32 mannes body; þat on cause is clepyde cause conjuncte, & þat oþer cause antecedent. þe encheson of cause conjuncte ys openyng of þe moupes of þe veynes & þe Arteries, oþer ellys whanne þat the veynes be kut atwo, oþer ellys corosion of þe bodies of þe same 36 veynes & arteries, oþer ellys to gret feblenesse, oþere to gret losnesse. & þere beþ manye enchesouns & causes antecedente: as to myche



- myche frelenes<sup>1</sup> of blood, or ellis to myche acute of blood, & also manye opere causis per ben pat ben clepid cause of<sup>2</sup> primitif: as smytynge pat woundith, to greet lepyng, cryng; wraþe, chidyng, & so manye opere; & ech of þese causis tofore seid haþ his maner heelyng by him-silf in fisik medicinal. But it is not þe entencioun of þis booke to treten<sup>3</sup> of blood pat bledip of wounde, pat is maad with wounde, þe which may be restreyned with craft of ciurgie. In flux of blood pat comeþ of a wounde, þe leche muste loke þe disposicioun, þe abitude, age, vertu, & complexioun of him pat is woundid; if pat þese acorden, & he be myzty in vertu, he schal blede myche blood at þe wounde, þouȝ pat þe leche be clepid at þe bigynnyng, but if it be so pat he be<sup>4</sup> feble ouer greetliche. & if pat nede constreynen þe leche to staunche blood, he muste loke if pat þe blood go out at þe veynes capillares, pat ben smale veynes as heeris of a mannys heed / & þanne oonly þe whizt<sup>5</sup> of an ey leid as heere is.
- 12 at þe bigynnyng, but if it be so pat he be<sup>4</sup> feble ouer greetliche. & if pat nede constreynen þe leche to staunche blood, he muste loke if pat þe blood go out at þe veynes capillares, pat ben smale veynes as heeris of a mannys heed / & þanne oonly þe whizt<sup>5</sup> of an ey leid as heere is.
- 16 aboue with towȝe of flex suffisip / whanne pat þe parties of þe wounde ben brongt togidere; & if þou caste aboue poudre of lym aforeseid in þe chapitle of sowynge of woundes, it schal be þe bettere; for pat poudre wipstreyneþ þe blood & consoudip þe parties
- <sup>1</sup> frelenes, mistake for fulnesse. <sup>2</sup> of, erroneous insertion. See below.  
<sup>3</sup> but, omitted. Latin: Non est huius libri intentio tractare nisi de fluxu sanguinis. . . <sup>4</sup> be, added in margin in same hand.

from fullness of blood—  
cause antecedentes;  
from an accident—cause  
primitiva.

If the patient is strong, let him bleed freely;  
if he is weak use a mild styptic when the blood is lost from the capillaries; [<sup>5</sup> ff. 33, bk.]

- 20 fulnesse of blod, oper ellys to myche Acuyte of blod & also manye opere causes; and pere bep opere causes pat bep clepyd causes prymytiff; as smytyng pat wondip, to gret lepyng, cryng, wraþe, chydng, & so many<sup>6</sup> opere & iche of þese causes tofore seyde haþ hys manere helyng by hym-selfen in fesyke medecynal. Bot it ys noȝt þe entencyoun of þis boke, to tretyn but of blod, pat bledip of wounde, pat is y-mad wip wounde, the<sup>7</sup> whiche may be restreyned by craft of surgerye. In flux of blod, that comyth of
- 28 a wounde, þe leche most loke þe disposicioun, þe Abytude, Age, vertu & complexioun of hym pat is y-woundyde; & ȝif pat þese acorden, & he be myztye in vertue, he schal blede myche blod at hys wounde, þowȝ pat þe leche be clepyde at þe bygynnyng, bot ȝif
- 32 it so be pat he feble ouere gretlyche. & ȝif nede constreynen þe leche to staunche þe blode, he most loke ȝif pat þe blod go out of þe Veynes capillares, pat bep smale veynes as herys of mannys hed; & þanne only þe whyte of an eyȝe, y-leyde aboue wip towȝ of flex
- 36 suffiseþ, whenne pat þe parties of þe wounde bep brouȝt togidere; & ȝif þou cast aboue þe poudre of lyme, tofore seyde in the chapytelle of sowynge of woundes, yt schal be þe betyre; for þe poudre wipstreyneþ þe blod & consoudeþ þe parties of þe wounde, togidere.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>7</sup> fol. 55 b]

<sup>6</sup> MS. may.



when it is  
lost from a  
larger vein  
use a stronger  
styptic;

when it is  
lost from an  
artery press  
the artery  
until a clot is  
formed,

and apply a  
styptic

R

[2 ff. 34]

Renew the  
remedy care-  
fully.

of þe wounde togidere. & if þe blood come fro grete veynes he  
mai nouzt<sup>t</sup> so sumtyme be constreyned, but<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> nedip a stronger  
medicyn & also a more cautele / & if þat<sup>t</sup> þe blood go out of  
arterie, þou schalt knowe it<sup>t</sup> bi construccion & dilatacion of þe 4  
same arterie—þat<sup>t</sup> is to seie, þat<sup>t</sup> þe blood go out wiþ lepinge &  
operwhile wiþ wiþdrawinge<sup>1</sup>; & þanne sette þi fyngir vpon þe moup  
of þe grete veyne or ellis on þe arterie, & holde þi fyngir þeron bi  
a greet<sup>t</sup> hour; for þanne by grace sum greet<sup>t</sup> drope of blood may be 8  
congelid togidere & þere-bi vertu may be myche comfortid; aftir-  
ward leie plenteuousliche of þis medicyn vpon þe veyne eiþer þe  
arterie þat<sup>t</sup> is kutt<sup>t</sup> atwo / Take frankencense, whizt<sup>t</sup> gummis, &  
fatt<sup>t</sup> .ij. 3., aloes .3. j., make poudre & distempere with þe white of 12  
an ey as picke as hony / after take heeris of an hare smal kutt<sup>t</sup>,  
medle alle þese togidere, & þer is no medicyn so good as þis medi-  
cyn is in streynynge of blod & consowdynge of þe veyne / But<sup>t</sup>  
whanne þat<sup>t</sup> þou comest<sup>t</sup> to chaunge þat<sup>t</sup> medicyn of þe wounde, do 16  
nouzt<sup>t</sup> þe medicyn away wiþ strenkþe, but<sup>t</sup> leie aboue of þe same  
medicyn<sup>3</sup> moist<sup>t</sup>, to neische þe firste medicyn, þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> myzte  
falle away bi him-silf<sup>t</sup> / Neþeles it<sup>t</sup> is possible þat<sup>t</sup> a medicyn  
caustik, þat<sup>t</sup> is to seie, a medicyn þat<sup>t</sup> brennep, sunner staunchip 20

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : quod sanguis exit cum saltu secundum constrictionem et dilata-  
tionem ipsius arteriæ.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *medicyn*, repeated.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[f fol. 56 a]

& 3if þe blod come from gret Veynes, he may nozt so sumtyme be  
constreynde, but it nedip a strengere medycyne & also a more  
cautele; & 3if þat þe blod go out of an arterye, þou schalt y-knowe yt  
be constructioun & dilatacioun, of þe same arterye—þat is to sigge, 24  
þat þe blod goþ out with lepynge, & oper whyle with wiþdrawynge,  
& þenne sette þy fyngere vpon þe moup of þe gret veyne, opere ellys  
þe Artarye, & holde þy fyngere þere on by a grete our; for þenne  
by hap sum grete drope of blod may be congelyde togedre, & þereby 28  
vertu may be myche y-comfortyde. Afterwarde leye plentyfullyche  
of þis medycine vpon þe<sup>4</sup> Veyne opere þe arterye þat is kut atwo.  
R ffrancencens, whyzt gommous & fat 3. ii., Aloes 3. i., make  
poudre & distempere with þe whyzt of an eyze as þykke as hony; 32  
after take herys of an hare smale & kutte, medle al þis þynge to-  
gedire, & þere ys no medycine so gode as þis medycine is, in streyn-  
ynge of blod & consoudynge þe Veyne. Bot whanne þat þou comyst  
to chaunge þe medycine of þy wonde, do nozt away þe medycine 36  
wiþ strengþe, but<sup>5</sup> leye aboue of þe same medycine moist, to nessesche  
þe firste medycine, þat yt myzte fallyne away by yt-self<sup>t</sup>. Naþeles  
yt is possible, þat a medycine caustyke, þat ys to sigge a medycine

<sup>4</sup> wounde, cancelled before veyne.

blood þan þis medicyn of frank encense ; & þou schalt haue greet<sup>1</sup> The styptic  
 plente of medycyne caustik in þe antidotarie, but we ben nouȝt is a surer  
 sikir þat þe blood of þe veyne eiþer arterie anoþir tyme wole goon remedy than  
 4 out, whanne þat þe schorft of pilke caustik Medicine<sup>1</sup> is remeued a caustic.  
 away / but þis medicyn of encense with þe heeris of an hare not  
 oonliche staunchiþ þe blood, but also sowdiþ<sup>2</sup> þe veyne & þe  
 arterie, as I haue preued it ofte tymes / And for to ȝeue autorite I **Nota bene**  
 8 sette a saumple þat come sumtyme to myn hondis : A child of þre 1st Example.  
 ȝeer old hadde a litil knyf in his hond, & he fel on þat knyf in þe A child hav-  
 former partie of þe þrote persched þe veyne organise ; þer cowde no ing cut its  
 man it staunche, & þanne I was clepid, & I cam to þe child in throat with  
 12 <sup>3</sup> greet haaste, & he hadde almost lost his siȝt ; for hise ȝen in his [3 lf. 34, bk.]  
 heed weren turned vp so down ; <sup>4</sup> & þe blood come out at þe wounde the loss of  
 whiȝt as whey, vnneþe he hadde no pouste<sup>5</sup> / & þanne I leide my blood caused  
 fyngir on þe heed of þe veyne, & I heeld it faste þat þer myȝte no collapse.  
 16 þing go out ; & so I heeld þe veyne a greet hour, & þanne vertu of The vein was  
 his bodi þat was almost lost quykenede aȝen, & þe pouse bigan pressed,  
 appere febiliche as it were a smal þred / þanne I sente to þe spiceris

<sup>1</sup> medicine, added in margin.<sup>2</sup> MS. *sowdyngē*.<sup>4</sup> *up so down*. See Mätzner, *Diet.*, s. v. "down." Latin: *oculos habebat in capite revolutos*.<sup>5</sup> *vnneþe he hadde no pouste*. This passage is corrupt ; for the correct version see below.

þat brennyth, sennore staunchyȝth blod, þenne þis medicine of encense ; Add. MS.  
 20 & þou schalt haue gret plente of medycine caustyke in þe antido- 12,056.  
 darye, but we beþ nouȝt sykere þat þe blod of þe Veyne, oþere þe  
 arterye an oþer tyme wyl gon out, whanne þat þe serche of pylke  
 caustyke medycine ys remywed away. But þy medycine of ensence,  
 24 with þe herys of an hare, nouȝt only staunchiþ þe blod, but also *con-*  
 soudeþ þe Veyne, & þe Arterye, as y haue preuȝde yt ofte tymes.  
 And forto ȝif Autorite, I sette an saumple, þat come sum tyme to  
 myn handys : A childe of þre ȝere olde, hadde a lyte knyf in hys  
 28 haude, & he fel on þat knyf, & þe poynt of þe knyf, in þe fore  
 partye of þe þrote, persyde þe Veyne organys ; ne þere ne coupe no  
 man yt staunche, & þanne y was y-clepyde & y come to þe child in  
 gret haste, & he hadde almoste loste hys syȝht ; for hys eyȝen in  
 32 hys hed were turnyde vp so down, & þe blode come out of þe  
 wounde, whyte as wheyȝe, ne he ne hadde no pous, & þenne y  
 leyde my fyngere on þe hed of þe veyne, & y helde faste þat  
 noþyng myȝte go out, & so y helde þe veyne by a grete houre, &  
 36 þe vertue of hys body þat was almost lost quyknede aȝeyne, & þe  
 pous bygan to apere ffiblyche as yt were a smal þreed. þanne y



a styptic ap-  
plied, the

wound band-  
aged

[2 lf. 35]

and left un-  
disturbed for  
four days.

The child re-  
covered on  
the fifth day.

If necessary

schoppe þat' was a greet weye fro me / ne I remeuede not' away my  
fyngir fro þe place, til þat' þe messanger cam azen, and þe child  
bigan þanne to opene hise izen; & þanne I ordeynede þis medicyn  
to be maad, & plenteuousliche I leide it aboue þe wounde, & I 4  
boond þe wounde wip plumaciols & with stupis<sup>1</sup> I-leid in whit of  
an ey, & with a boond I boonde it' streitly, and comaundide hem to  
zeue him crummys of breed leid in water; & on þe morowe I come  
azén, & þanne I foond þe child comfortid / & neuere þe lattere I 8  
nolde nouzt vndo þe medicyn / þe fader preiede me wip greet in-  
staunce to vndo þe medicyn, <sup>2</sup> but I wolde not'; & so I lete it' lie  
stille, til iiij. daies weren passid withouten remeuyng / & neþeles  
I visitide him ech day; & þe .iiij. day I vndide þe wounde, & þe 12  
medicyn was drie aboue þe wounde, so þat' I myzte not' han re-  
meued it' wipoute greet violence. & þanne I leide aboue þe whizt  
of an ey wip a litil oile of rosis, & so I lefte it lie oon day til on þe  
morowe I turnede azen; & þanne I remeuede away þe medicyn 16  
wipouten violence, & I foond þanne þe wounde & þe veyne al hool.  
& of þis heelyng' his fadir & alle hise neizeboris hadden greet  
wondir / And if' þat' wip þis medicyn þou maist' not' sowde þe  
arterie ne þe veyne, ne þow maist' not constreyne þe blood for sum 20

<sup>1</sup> "Stupes (in Surgery), Pledgets of Tow, Cotton, etc., dipt in scalding  
hot Liquors and apply'd to the diseased Part."—Phillips.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[3 fol. 56 b]

sente to þe spysers schoppe, þat was a grete weye from me, ne y ne  
remywede nozt away my fyngere from þe place tyl þat þe messagere  
come azeyne, & þe childe þenne bygan to opene hys eyzen; and  
þanne y ordeynede þilke medycine to be mad, & plentyffuliche y 24  
leyde it abouen þe wounde, and y bonde þe wounde with plumaceoles  
& with stupes y-leyde in whyzt of an eyze, & with a bande y bonde  
yt streytly, & y comaundede hem to gyuen hym crommys of brede,  
y-leyde in water; and on þe morwene y come azeyne, & þenne y 28  
fonde þe childe y-cunffortede & neuere þe latere y wolde nouzt vndo  
þe medycine; þe ffadire <sup>3</sup>preyde me wip grete instaunce to se þe  
wounde, but y wolde nouzt; & so y lete yt be, tyl foure dayes were  
passyd, withouten remeffyng & napeles y vysitede hym every day; 32  
in þe fourþe day y vndyde þe bande, & þe medycine was drye aboue  
þe wounde, so þat y myzte nozt haue remywede hyt withouten grete  
Vyolence. & þenne y leyde aboue þe whyte of an eyze, with a lytel  
oyle of roses, & so y lasfe yt by on day. On þe morwen y turnyde 36  
azeyne, & þenne y remeffyde away þe medycine withouten Vyolence,  
& þenne y fonde þe wounde & þe Veyne al hol. And of þis helynge  
þe fadire & alle his neyghboures hadden gret wondire. And 3if þat  
with þis medycyne þou maiste nozt soude þe Arterye, ne þe Veyne, ne 40  
þou ne maiste nozt constreyne þe blod for sum opere Impedement,



- oper impediment: panne þou must ouþer bynde þe veyne, or drawe  
 hir out of hir place, & bynde þe heed of þe veyne or arterie, ouþer  
 þou must brenne hir wiþ hoot iren, & make on hir heed a greet  
 4 cruste & a depe. ¶ Anoper ensaumple: þer was a child of .xv.  
 3eer oold þat smoot him-silf with a smal knyf, & pilke knyf per-  
 side o. senewe of þe arm & prickide a ueyne þat lay vnder pilke  
 senewe. & for þe prickynge of þat senewe <sup>1</sup>he hadde greet  
 8 akynge, & blood drewe down to þe wounde & nouȝt azenstood <sup>2</sup>for  
 alle þe staunchis of medicyns þat me myȝte do þerto, it wolde not  
 staunche, þe blood ran out at þe wounde. & colde medicyns ben  
 greuous to senewis þat is prickid, for þei stoppen þat lyme, & þat  
 12 is contrarious aȝens senewis; & panne I demede nessessarie to  
 drawe out al þe veyne out of her place & to bynde hir & to helpe  
 pilke senewis wiþ oile of rosis / But þe modir of þat child sente for  
 a lewde leche which þat repreuede foule my doom, & he bihiȝte to  
 16 heele safly þe child. He dwellide on þe cure, & I wente my wey /  
 þe which leche took hede to him .x. daies, þat neipir þe akynge  
 ceesside ne þe blood was not staunchid, & so þe sijk man was nyȝ  
 deed / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I wolde not come to þe pacient /  
 20 þanne a fisician þat was frend to þe freendis of þe pacient blamede  
 þe modir & hir freendis þat þei hadden left counseil for pilke idiotis  
<sup>2</sup> azenstood, for azenstondyng.

use a ligature  
 or torsion or  
 canterization  
 of the bleed-  
 ing artery or  
 vein.

Nota

2nd Example  
 Case of a  
 child which  
 had pricked  
 a nerve and a  
 vein in its  
 arm.

[1 ff. 35, bk.]

Lanfranc  
 suggested ty-  
 ing the vein  
 and applying  
 oil of roses to  
 the nerve.

A lay phy-  
 sician at-  
 tempted an-  
 other treat-  
 ment,

but for ten  
 days the child  
 suffered acute  
 agony and  
 bleeding;

- þan þou moste opere bynde þe Veyne, opere drawyne here out of  
 here place, & wynde þe hed of þe Veyne oper Arterye, oper þou most  
 24 brenne here wiþ hote yren, & maken on here hed a grete croste & a  
 depe. An opere exaample: þere was a childe of xv ȝere olde, þat  
 smot hym-self with a smal knyff, & pilke knyff persyde on Veyn of  
 þe Arme, & prikyde a Veyne þat lay vndire pilke synwe. & for þe  
 28 prikyng of pilke synwe he hadde grete akyng, & blod ran to þe  
 wounde & nouȝt aȝeynestondyng medycines þe blod ran out at þe  
 wounde. Kolde medycines weren profitable to bledynge of wounde,  
 and colde medycines beȝ greffes to prikyng of synwes; for þey  
 32 stoppyn þat lyme & þat ys contraryus aȝeyns þe synwys; and  
 þenne y demyde necessarye to drawe out alle þe Veyne out of here  
 place & to bynde here & to helpen pilke synwe with oyle of roses.  
 But þe modire of pilke childe sende for a lewyde leche, whyche þat  
 36 reprevyde fouliche my doom, & he behyȝte to helyn saflyche þe  
 childe. He dwellyde on þe cure, & y went my weye. þe whyche  
 leche toke hede to hym be ten dayes, þat neipere þe akyng sesyde  
 ne þe blod was nouȝt y-stauchyde, & so þe syke man was <sup>3</sup>nyȝh ded.  
 40 And at þe laste y was clepyde & y wolde nouȝt come to þe pacient.  
 But þenne a ffysisyen þat was frende to þe man of þe pacyent,  
 blamyde þe modire & here frendys, þat þey hadde lefte my consaylle

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

[3 fol. 5<sup>v</sup> a]

[I. 1f. 36]

finally a surgeon tied the vein and saved the child.

*Nota*  
The bleeding of the wound prevented cramp.

When styptics fail, use cauterization;

*Nota*

biheeste; & pilke fisician purposide, after þat he hadde herd my counseil, þat þer was noon oþer wey þat myzte saue þe sike man from deþ, & he axide of þe sirurgian wheþer he coude do as I hadde seid bifore. & <sup>1</sup> he seide, þat he coude so doon, & so he 4 dide / He kutte þe skyn aboue þe veyne & twynede þe veyne in hise handis, & boond þe eende of þe veyne *with* a þred; & after he helde on þe senewe hoot oile of rosis, & so bi þis counseil he was restorid aȝen to heelpen / But who so wolde aske how þat he 8 myzte so manye daies be kept from þe crampe for þat he suffride so greet akþe / I answer & seie: þat þe cause was, for þat he bledde at þe wounde ech day, so þat þe senewe <sup>2</sup> myzt not be to myche replete eiþer ful of blood / Alle þese þingis I haue told, þat he þat 12 rediþ hem mai þe visiloker in semblable causis wochen. & if bi þis medicyn he myzte nouȝt sikirliche be restorid or restreyned þat falliþ riȝt seelde whane <sup>3</sup> / þanne we moten brenne þe heed of þe veyne eiþer of senewe <sup>4</sup> wiþ hoot iren, & pilke hoot iren myzte 16 make an hard cruste. & be war þat þou touche not þe lippis of þe wounde ne þe senewe, ne noon oþer þing but onli þe veyne wiþ hoot iren. & if al þis craft wole not helpen, we musten drawe

<sup>2</sup> *senewe*, error for *wounde*. Add MS. has the same mistake.

<sup>3</sup> *riȝt seelde whane*. *Polychron*, i. 133, wel silde whanne. *Stratm.*, seldhwonne.

<sup>4</sup> *senewe*, error for *arterie*. The same mistake in Add. MS.

Add. MS. 12,056. for þe byhestys of pylke ydyote; & pilke ffysisyens proposyde, 20 aftere þat he had herde my counseyle, þat þere was non oþere wey. þat myzte saue þe syke man from þe deþ, & þenne he askyde a surgyne, wheþere he couþe don as y hadde seyde byfore; & he seyde þat he couþe so don, & so he dyde. He kutte þe skyn aboue 24 þe Veyne, & twynede þe veyne in his handys, & bonde þe ende of þe Veyne wiþ a þrede, & afterwarde he hylde on þe synwe hote oyle of rosys, & so by þis counseyle he was restoryde aȝeyne to hele. But ho so þat wolde aske how þat he myzte so manye dayes be 28 kepyde from þe crampe, for þat he suffryde so grete akþe, I answer & sigge: þat þe cause was, for he bledde at þe wounde eche day, so þat þe synwe ne myzte noȝt be to myche replet oþere fulfyllde of blode. Alle þese thynges y haue tolde, þat he þat redyȝh hem may 32 þe wyslocor in semblable causes wyrchen. And ȝif be þis medecyne he myzte noȝt sykerliche be restreynede, þat fallyȝh ryȝte selden, þenne me moste brenne þe hed of þe Veyne oþere of þe synwe wiþ hote yren, þat pilke hote yren myzte maken an harde croste. And 36 be war þat þou touche noȝt þe lippes of þe wounde, ne þe synwe, ne non oþere thyng, bot only þe veyn *with* hote yren. And ȝif al þis crafte wolde noȝt helpyn me, men most drawn out þe Veyne, &

- out<sup>t</sup> þe veyne & fle þe fleisch aboue here, & wynde þe veyne sadliche  
 & bynde hir heed wiþ þin han<sup>1</sup>dis.—Bi<sup>2</sup> my witt<sup>t</sup> I<sup>3</sup> trowe amene  
 þat<sup>t</sup> a bodi schulde make þeron a knotte I-knytt<sup>t</sup> of him-silf<sup>t</sup> or ellis  
 4 knytt<sup>t</sup> wiþ a þred. I woot<sup>t</sup> neuere wheþer he meneþ; for he seiþ in  
 anoþer place tofore þat<sup>t</sup> I schulde knytte it<sup>t</sup> wiþ a þred, & þerfore I  
 suppose bi my witt<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> I schulde make a knotte þeron of his owne  
 silf<sup>t</sup> bi my witt<sup>t</sup>.—& sumtyme it<sup>t</sup> happiþ þat<sup>t</sup> an arterie is broken  
 8 ouþer kutt<sup>t</sup> & þe fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> is aboue is hool & nouzt<sup>t</sup> to-broke neipir  
 I-kutt<sup>t</sup>, or ellis þe fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> is aboue þe arterie is helid tofore & not<sup>t</sup>  
 þe arterie; & vndir þe fleisch þer is a swellynge of blood þat<sup>t</sup> is  
 clepid aperisma<sup>4</sup> ouþer mater sanguinis, & þerof<sup>t</sup> þe pacient<sup>t</sup> hap  
 12 greet drede, lest<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe skyn to-breke & þe blood go out<sup>t</sup>, þe which  
 blood is hard to restreyne / for of þis maner sijkes spekiþ galion  
 & seiþ þat<sup>t</sup> a seruau<sup>t</sup> of sich a disposicioun was helid of<sup>t</sup> a lewde  
 man þat<sup>t</sup> tauzte him þat<sup>t</sup> he schulde leie snow on his siknes. Wher-  
 16 fore a man may vndirstonde þat<sup>t</sup> to siche enpostymes colde medicyns  
 & drie ben nessessarie. // // // // // //

and if this  
 fails, torsion  
 and a liga-  
 ture.  
 [1f. 36, bk.]

In the case of  
 rupture of an  
 artery an  
 aporisma is  
 formed.

.Galion.

<sup>2</sup> An insertion of the scribe.

<sup>3</sup> *I trowe a mene*, "I believe to mean."

<sup>4</sup> *aperisma*, Lat. *ophorisma seu mater sanguinis*. Dufr. Gloss. med. Lat.:  
*Aporisma*—collectio sanguinis in aliquo membro extra venas non putrefacti  
 maxime sanguinis arterialis.

- flene þe flesch aboue here & wynde þe Veyne sadlyche & bynde here  
 hed with þyn handys. And sum tyme yt happyth, þat an Arterye  
 20 is y-broke opere y-kutte, & þe flesch þat is abouen ys hol & nozt to-  
 broke ne y-kutte, opere ellys þe flessch þat is aboue þe Arterye ys  
 y-helyde & nozt þe Arterye, & vndire pilke flessch þere is a swellynge  
 of blode<sup>5</sup> that is y-clepyde **Aporisma** opere matere **Sanguis** &  
 24 þere of þe pacient hath grete drede, lest þat þe skyn tobreke & þe  
 blod gone out, þe whiche blod is hard to restreyne. Of þis manere  
 seknesse spekyth **Galyen**, & seiþ þat a seruau<sup>t</sup> of swyche a dys-  
 posisioun was y-helyde of a lewyde man, þat tauzte hym þat he  
 28 scholde legge snow vpon þat seknesse, wherfore a man may vndir-  
 stande, þat to swyche empostemys colde medicynes & drye beth  
 necessarye.

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

[5 fol. 57 b]



¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> x<sup>m</sup>

[2 lf. 37]

The .x. chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste tretis<sup>1</sup> is of gouernaunce & diete<sup>1</sup> of men þat ben woun<sup>2</sup>did /

off dietyng  
for woundes.  
Some phy-  
sicians give  
nourishing  
food and  
wine,

pretending  
that water is  
harmful;

others allow  
only bread  
and water  
and sodden  
apples.

Both are  
dogmatic.

þer ben manye men þat discorden of<sup>t</sup> dietyng of men þat ben 4  
woundid, for sum men zeuen to alle men þat ben woundid, whepir  
þat it be in þe heed or in ony opere place, good wyn & strong  
fleisch of capouns & of hennes; & þei affermen þat bi sich a  
maner wey sike woundid men ben sunnere heelid / for þei seien þat 8  
water putrifieþ lymes þat ben woundid & engendriþ enpostymes &  
corrupiþ & febliþ complexiouns & makþ manye harmys / &  
sunne opere men gouernen alle maner of<sup>t</sup> sike men þat ben woun-  
did wiþ breed & watir & applis soden til ten daies ben goon / And 12  
if god wole eende þis book, it schal be remeuyng eerrouris & de-  
claryng & openyng doutis / I seie þat þese boþe sectis erren in  
her opynyouns, for þei taken hede onoly to her experimentis not  
consideryng reson of<sup>t</sup> complexioun of him þat is woundid / þe firste 16  
secte of þese two \* [seyth] þat summen onoly eten breed & watir in  
so myche þei ben feblid þat blood & mater in her bodies may nouzt  
be restorid; þe<sup>3</sup> which were sufficient to hele with her woundis,

1—1 added in margin.

3 þe cancelled in MS.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

¶ The x Chapitle of þe bridde techyng of þe firste 20  
tretys is of men that beth y-woundye.

Many men discorden of dietyng of men þat ben woundyde, for  
sum men zeuen to alle men þat ben woundyde, wheþer þat it be in  
þe hed oper in enye opere place, gode wyn & stronge flesch of 24  
capouns & of hennys; and þey affermen þat by swyche a manere  
weye seke woundyde men sonnere ben y-helyde, ffor þey siggen þat  
watyre putrefyþ lymes, þat beþ woundyde, & engendriþ Apostemys  
& corrupyth & feblyth complexiouns, & makyth many harmys. 28  
Sum opere men gouernen alle manere of syke men þat beþ woundyde  
with brede & water & Applys y-sodyn, tyl x dayes ben passyde, &  
þif þat god wyl ende þis bok, yt schal be remeffyng away Errores,  
& declaryng & opnyng Downtous. Y sigge, þat boþe þese sectes 32  
erryn in here opynyouns, ffor þey taken hede onolyche to here expe-  
rymentys, nouzt consideryng reson of þe complexioun of hym þat  
is y-woundyde. The firste secte of þese \*seyth þat some men, only  
etyng bred & watere, in so myche ben y-feblyde, þat blode & 36  
matere in here bodies may nouzt be restoryde; þe whiche were suffi-

- but<sup>t</sup> þei ben so feble þat<sup>t</sup> þei <sup>1</sup>dien, or ellis þei languren <sup>2</sup>longe [<sup>1</sup> If. 37, bk.]  
 tyme; ne þe lymes may not<sup>t</sup> receyue resonable vertu. as þei schulde;  
 & þese maner men ben of cold complexioun & drie & her bodies  
 4 weren feble or þei weren woundid, & her stomak & her entrailis  
 wipinne weren feble / þe secunde secte seip: þat<sup>t</sup> summe þat<sup>t</sup>  
 drinken wyyn & eten fleisch hadde in þe membre þat<sup>t</sup> was woundid  
 a greet<sup>t</sup> enpostyme & a febre—& þo ben zonge men þat<sup>t</sup> ben of an  
 8 hoot<sup>t</sup> complexioun & a moist—wherefore þei comaundide to alle  
 maner opere of complexioun þat<sup>t</sup> þei schulden drynke no wyyn ne  
 ete no fleisch / 3e schulen vndirstonde þat<sup>t</sup> bope þese sectis ben  
 nouzt<sup>t</sup>; & þefore I folowyng þe doctryne of rasis, auicen, & galion  
 12 & of opere doctouris, & also experimentis þat<sup>t</sup> I haue longe preued,  
 I seie þat<sup>t</sup> it is nedeful þat<sup>t</sup> a woundid man in þe bigynnyng ab-  
 steyne him fro wyyn, & namely if þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounde be in þe heed  
 eipir in ony partie of a senewe. for þer is no þing þat<sup>t</sup> so soone  
 16 smytþ greuance in þe heed or þe senewis as wyyn; for he is soone  
 conuertid of kyndely heete & for he is so sotil, he persiþ swiþe into  
 þe senewis, & he assendiþ soone into þe heed, bryngyng wif him  
 humouris & spiritis. It<sup>3</sup> troublþ a mannys witt, & wyyn greueþ  
 20 alle men þat<sup>t</sup> han a feble heed / & þefore in alle maner woundis of

The patient  
ought, ac-  
cording to

Rasis, & A.  
Galion.

to abstain  
from wine at  
the begin-  
ning.

Nota

if he is  
wounded in  
his head or  
in a nerve,

[<sup>3</sup> If. 38]

<sup>2</sup> languren, languent. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 286, *Languryn yn sekenesse* languet. And *ibid.* note 5.

- saunt to hele with here woundys, bot þey ben so feble þat þey dyzen, Add. MS.  
 opere ellys þey langoren longe tyme; ne þe lyme may nozt resseyuen 12,056.  
 resonable vertue, as he scholde; & þese manere of men ben of a  
 24 colde complexioun & a drye, & here bodies weryn feble.—\*The  
 secunde secte seyth þat some þat dronken <sup>4</sup>wyn & etyn flesch hadde  
 in þe membre þat was y-woundyde a gret enposteme & a ffeyre—  
 and þo bep zonge men þat bep of an hot complexioun & a moyst—  
 28 wherefore þey comaundyde to alle opere manere complexiouns, þat  
 þey scholde nozt drynken no wyn, ne eten non flesch. þe vnder-  
 standyng of bope þese sectes nys nozt comendable and þefore y  
 folwyng þe doctryne of rasis, Avence, galien, & of oper doctoris,  
 32 & also experymentis, þat y haue longe y-preuyde, sigge þat it is  
 nedeful in þe bygynnyng þat a woundyde man Absteyne hym  
 from wyn & namlye 3if þat þe wounde be in þe hed, opere in eny  
 partye of a synwe. For þere nys noþyng þat so sone smyteþ with  
 36 greuance þe hed opere þe synwe as wyn; for he ys sone conuertide  
 of kendlye hete, and for he ys so sotyH, he persyth swiþe into þe  
 synwes & he assendyth sone into þe hed, bryngyng with hym  
 humores and spiritis. Yt trublyth a mannys wyt, & wyn greuyff  
 40 alle men that hap a feble hed; & þere fore in alle manere woundys

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 58 a]

if his complexion is hot and moist;

if he has a cold complexion he may have a little wine, but in general a specially prepared beverage.

R

þe heed & of senewis he schal be forbode in þe bigynnyng namely to þo pingis<sup>1</sup> þat han hoot complexiouns & moist into þe tyme þat þe cure be ful endid / & to þo þat ben of a cold complexioun, whanne .iiij. daies ben passid, þou maist zeue to drynke smal temperat wyn, & afterward a litil strengere, aftir þat þou art sikir þat þer schal nouȝt come to þe membre noon enpostyme. But þis<sup>2</sup> drinke schal be watir of barlich, eiper water of crummes of breed bene soden in whit<sup>3</sup> wyn,<sup>4</sup> or ellis lete þe breed lie in cold watir<sup>8</sup> rapere þan þou faile þat he schal drynke / but he may tende weel to heete it, & nameliche in somer / & to þat ben woundid<sup>5</sup> to drynke watir, or ellis with þe x. partie of wyn of pome garnates or ellis with þe sixte partie of wyn agrestis þat is smal brusk<sup>6</sup> 12 wyn, or ellis þis is a perfiȝt drynke to woundis of þe heed & to senewis : / Take a potel of water & of barly clensid .iiij. ȝ., juiube,<sup>7</sup> sebesten<sup>8</sup> ana. ȝ. ȝ., of drie prunis of damascenes ȝ j, sugre of rosis ȝ ij., seþe hem<sup>9</sup> to .iiij. parties ben consumed, & þanne lete him 16 drynke. To asaye it softly<sup>10</sup> / <sup>11</sup>þis drynke is alteratijf : þat is to seie, chaunginge, ne it swelliȝ not, & it lettij fumosite to arise

<sup>1</sup> pingis, inserted. <sup>2</sup> þis, error for his. <sup>3</sup> whit, error for with.

<sup>4</sup> wyn, inserted. <sup>5</sup> woundid, error for wonid. Lat. homini assuetus.

<sup>6</sup> brusk, Roman brusco (Lat. rusticus?), harsh. See later reference in N. E. Dict.

<sup>7</sup> Juiube, a kind of prune growing in Italy. Kersey—1721.

<sup>8</sup> Sebesten, Arab. sebesten. Name for Cordia mysa vel sebastena.

<sup>9</sup> Corrupt passage. Lat. : donec consumetur tertia pars.

<sup>10</sup> softly, error for soply.

Add. MS. 12,056. of þe hed & off synwes, he schal be forebode in þe bygynnyng, & namlye to þo þat han hot complexiouns & moiste, into þe tyme þat þe cure be ful endyde ; & to þo þat beþ of colde complexioun, whenne þre dayes ben passyde, þou maiste zeuen to drynke a smal temperat wyn, & afterwarde a lyte strengore ; aftere þat þou art sykere, þat þere schal nouȝt comen to þe membre non Aposteme. But 24 his drynke schal be watyre of barlyche opere watire þat crommes of brede ben sodyn yn, wiȝ opere colde watyr & namlye in sommere, & to þo þat beþ woundyde drynke watyre, opere ellys wiȝ tenȝe partye of wyn of pome garnettys, opere ellys wyth sixte partye of 28 wyn agreste þat is smal broske wyn, opere ellys þis is a perfyte drynke to wondys of þe hed & of synwys : Take a potell of watyr & of barlyche y-meynde ȝ. iiij, juiube, sebesten, ana. ȝ ȝ, of drye prunes of damacynes ȝ j., sucre of rosis ȝ ij, sethe hem to þre 32 partyes ben consumed, & þenne lete hym drynken yt. Sothlye þis drynke ys alteratyff : þat ys to sigge chaungyng, ne hyt ne swel- lyth nouȝt. & yt latteȝ fumosites to aysen to þe brayn. <sup>12</sup> Of mete

[<sup>12</sup> fol. 58 b]



- to þe brayn. Of mete I seie: to him þat is of a moist complexioun & hoot / bi no maner wey schulde not be ȝouen fleisch, fisch, mylk, eiren, ne no comfortable mete, but if þei weren ouer-
- 4 comen wiþ to greet febilnes; but he muste holde him content wiþ ius of barli or ellis of ootis wiþ almaunde mylk; outake<sup>1</sup> wounde of þe heed, were<sup>2</sup> I ne apreue nouȝt almaundis ne noon oper vaperous fruyt: as notis eipir walnotis eiper avellanes; for þei han
- 8 a maner fumose properte greuyng þe heed / he may eten amidoun, betis, letuse, & breed I-waische wiþ sugre if þat he were feble. & if þat he myȝte not absteyne him fro fleisch, ȝeue him fleisch of smale chikenes & of smale briddis & kidis & lambis & calues
- 12 I-saured with agresta eiper wiþ wyn of pome garnatis; & pilke dietyng he schal vse til he be sikir fro swellynge & þat þou schalt knowe whanne þat akyng swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben ceessid & þe wounde almoost consowdid. If þat it was a wounde
- 16 <sup>3</sup> þat was sowid eiper brouȝt togidere with byndinge, in whom quytture was nouȝt engendrid, & if þat it was a wounde maad wiþ smytyng or ellis chaungid wiþ þe eyr, in whom it is nedeful engendryng of quytture, þanne it is siker þat it schal not enpos-

A patient of a hot and moist complexion should eat vegetables only;

**Nota**

if he cannot abstain from meat, chickens or veal may be given him.

[<sup>3</sup> II. 39]

<sup>1</sup> outake, except. See *Catholicon Angl.*, p. 264, Oute take, note.

<sup>2</sup> were, error for where.

- 20 y sigge: þat to hym þat is of an hot & moiste complexioun, be non manere weye ne scholde nouȝt be ȝeffen flesch, ffysch, Mylke, eyren, ne no manere conuertyble mete, bot ȝif þey weryn ouere come with to gret febylnesse; but he mos'e holde hym content with Iuse
- 24 of barlyche, opere ellys of otys wiþ almaunde mylke; out take wounde of þe hed, where y ne Apreue nouȝt Almaundys, ne non opere vaporose frutys, as notys oper walnottys oper Avelanes, for þey hauen a manere fumose properte greuyng þe hed; he may etyn
- 28 Amidoun, betes, letuse & bred y-wassche wiþ sucre, ȝif þat he were feble. And ȝif þat myȝte nouȝt Abstynen hym from flesch, ȝif hym flesch of smale chyknes, & of smale briddys: as larkys & opere sengle briddys, & kyddes & lambres, & kalffes I-saveryde with
- 32 agresta, oper with wyn of pom garnett; & þis dyetyng he schalt vse, tyl he be sykere from swellynge, & þat þou schalt y-knowe, whenne þat Akyng, swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben secyde & þe wounde is almost consouded. ȝif þat it was a wounde þat
- 36 was sowyde opere brouȝt togedyre with byndynge, in whom quyter was nouȝt engendryde, and ȝif þat it was a wounde y-mad wyth smytinge—opere ellys y-chaungyde with þe eyre, in whom yt is nedful engendryng of quyter, þenne yt is sykere þat yt schal nouȝt

Add. MS.  
12,056.

Improve this diet when he gets better.

If he has a cold and dry complexion,

he should take meat from the beginning.

tyme, whanne *pat* he makij quytture plenteuousliche; & whanne *pat* þe lyme is weel disposid & not<sup>t</sup> to swolle ne drawe abroad & is wipoute akyng; þanne chaunge a litil & a litil his dietynge til *pat* þou come to his dietynge *pat* he was wont<sup>t</sup> to vse tofore / & if *pat* 4 þe pacient were of a cold complexioun & a drie & *pat* he hadde bi nature eijer bi custum a feble stomak, þanne it were nessessarie to zeue him at þe bigynnyng fleisch a litil sauerid with swete spicerie: as canel, gynger & opere semblable to hem, & to zeue him in þe 8 bigynnyng Julep<sup>1</sup>—*pat* is a sirup maad oonly of water & of sugre —& aftir iij. daies ben passid, wyne, & bope in þe oon complexioun & in þe opere complexioun. If *pat* a boon were broke wip a wounde or wipoute a wounde aboute þe eende of þe cure, *pat* is to 12 seye, whanne þou art siker from apostyme & swellinge, it is good to zeue norischaunt<sup>t</sup> metis *pat* it<sup>2</sup> myzte make a good & a strong re-  
[2 lf. 39, bk.] peirement<sup>t</sup> of þe boon *pat* was to-broke: as furmente soden in,<sup>3</sup>  
Nota potage of flour weel soden & wip þe extremytes of beestis feet & 16 swyne groynes & oxen wombe weel soden & bi sicke opere þingis bi whom a good ligament & a strong<sup>t</sup> may weel be engendrid / Wherefore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe his dietynge, vertues of coplexciouns, agis, regiouns, consuetudes & þe tymes of þe zeer *pat* 20

If a bone has been broken, prescribe food which will repair the bones and ligaments.

<sup>1</sup> *Julep*, med. Lat. *julapium*, Fr. *julep*, Pers. *goulāb*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

<sup>3</sup> *in*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056. enposteme, whenne *pat* he makij quytter plentuouslyche; & whenne *pat* þe lyme ys wel dysposyde & not<sup>t</sup> toswolle, ne y-drawen abroad. & ys wipouten akyng, & þanne chaunge a lytel & a lytel hys dyetyng, tyl *pat* þou come to hys dyetyng, *pat* he was wont 24 to vse tofore. And ȝif *pat* þe pacient were of a colde complexioun & a drye & *pat* he hadde by nature opere by costeme a feble stomak, þanne yt were necessarye to zeuen hym at þe bygynnyng flesch a lytel y-saueryde with swote spysorye: as kanell gyngeffre & opere 28 semblable to hem & to zeuen hym in þe bygynnyng Julep—*pat* is a syripe y-mad only of watyre & of sucre—& aftre pre dayes ben passyde, wyne, and bope in þe on complexioun & in þe opere complexioun. ȝif *pat* a bon were y-broke, wip a wonde ore wipouten 32 a wounde, aboute þe ende of þe cure, *pat* is to sigge, whenne þou art sykere from a posteme & swellynge, yt is gode to ȝif norysschande mete, *pat* it myzte make a gode & a stronge repayment of þe bone *pat* was tobroke: as with ffurmente y-sode, & potage of floure wel 36 y-sode, & with þe extremetes of bestys, as fette & swynes groynes & oxe wombys wel y-soden, & with swiche opere þynges by whom a gode ligamente & a stronge may wel be engendrede. Where fore yt is necessarye to a surgyn to knowe in hys dyetyng, vertues of 40 complexiouns, Ages, regeouns consuetudes & þe tymes of þe zeer, *pat*

[4 fol. 59 a]



he mowe chaunge his dietynghe aftir þat dyuerse condicioun. Ne he schal not aftir o maner of counseil procede in his dietynghe.

**T**He .xj. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste ¶ Capm. xjm.  
4 tretis.

is of olde woundis þat ben maad of kuttinge or of open- off olde vere-  
lent woundes  
ynghe of a postyme, or ellis of a wounde þat is not heeled in  
his tyme, or ellis of sum maner fleinge, or of brewnynghe, or Various  
causes of  
ulcers.  
8 of to greet heete, or of to greet drouthe, or of to greet cold  
constreynynghe, or of to greet aboundaunce of mater corruppynghe /  
For euery olde wounde hauynghe rotnes or wire<sup>1</sup> þat is þinne  
venymous quyttir or ony opir þing þan good quytture is not clepid  
12 a wounde, but it is clepid vlcus / Rowland & Rogerine & þe Roulond &  
Rogeryn  
[2 lf. 40]  
moste<sup>2</sup> partie of men þat ben now, clepen it a festre<sup>3</sup> or a cankre,  
but it is neipir festre ne cankre, but festre & cankre han difference  
fro þis / þis vlcus as a propre þing haþ difference from a þing þat  
16 is comoun / for ech festre & ech cankre þat is woundid, is clepid  
vlcus, but it ne schewiþ not þat ech vlcus is clepid cankre or festre Ulcer is a  
more general  
term than  
fistula or  
cancer.

<sup>1</sup> wire, Lat. virus.

<sup>3</sup> festre, fester in Mätzner Dict.; O.Fr. flestre, festre; Lat. fistula.  
Comp. N. E. fester vb.

he mowe chaungen his dyetynghe, aftere þat dyverse condycioun Add. MS.  
12,056.  
askyth. Ne he ne schal noȝt aftere on manere of counseyle proceden  
20 in hys dyetynghe.

¶ The xi. Chapitle of þe þridde techynghe of þe firste  
tretys is of olde woundes.

¶ Olde woundes ben mad of kuttinge oper of openynghe of a  
24 posteme, opere ellys of a wounde þat is noȝt helyde in his tyme, oper  
ellys of sum manere fleynge oper of brewnynghe, oper of to grete hete,  
oper of to grete drovþe, oper to gret colde constreynynghe, opere of to  
grete Abundaunce of moist mater corruppynghe. For euery olde  
28 wounde, hauynghe rotnesse opere virus þat is þenne venemy quytter,  
oper eny oper þynge þenne gode quytter nys noȝt y-clepyde wounde,  
but is y-clepyde vlcus þat is an olde wounde. And of þis Vlcus,  
Roulond & Rogerine, & þe most partye of men þat ben now, clepyde  
32 it festre, oper cancre. But it is neipere festre ne cancre, but festre &  
cankre habbe dyfference from þis. <sup>4</sup> Vlcus, as a propre þynge hath [4 fol. 50 b]  
dyfference, from a þynge, þat is comyn; for euerye festre & euerye  
cankere, þat is y-woundyde, ys y-clepyde Vlcus, but yt ne syweth  
36 noȝt þat euerye Vlcus, ys clepyde cankre opere festre, as y schal



Auicēn  
distinguishes  
six kinds of  
ulcers.

as I schal telle openliche in ech chapitle bi him-silf / Auicēn seiþ,  
þat þer ben .vj. maner of þis vlcus : summe þat ben venemous,  
summe hore, summe depe, summe cauernose eiper hid, summe  
corosif, summe rotin, summe ambulatif þat is spredynge abroad, & 4  
summe harde to consowde / Of þese maners tofore seid, summe<sup>1</sup>  
han acordynge with festris in tokenes & in foormes as venemous &  
holowz & summe han acordynge with cankris as spredynge abroad  
& fretynge him-silf & nepeles þei han difference, as it is conteyned 8  
in þe chapitle of cankris I-woundid & of festre. & alle þese tofore  
seid han difference fro wounde / for in a wounde þer is whizt  
quytture & euene in alle hise parties & hole and nouzt departid &  
wipoute stenchē. þis maner of quytture is engendrid of goodnes 12  
[<sup>2</sup> 1f. 40, bk.] & kyndely heete, & is perfiztly defied / But venym rotynes<sup>2</sup> & a  
cruste, & al opere superfluyte of olde woundis ben engendrid of a  
strong vnkynndly heete.

vlcus viru-  
lentum

A uenym vlcus is in whom aboundþ venym sutil & liquid. If 16  
þat it be reed or zelu, or oon partie redisch and scharp bitynge þe  
lyme, it signifief lordschipe of a strong heete.

vlcus  
sordidum

An hori elde wounde þat hap summe greete crustis, or ellis a 20  
wroting, sum gret proud fleisch to hize.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> MS. *summen*.

<sup>3</sup> *proud fleisch to hize*. Lat.: *carnem superfluum grossam*. Proud flesh,  
Fungosity. Dunglison.

Add. MS. 12,056. tellen opynlyche in euerye chapyteH be hym-self. Auesene seyth  
þat þere ben sixe manere of þese Vlcus, for sum ben Venemy, sum  
hory, some depe, some cauernouse opere y-hud, sum corosyff, sum  
rotyne, some Ambulatoryff—þat is spredynge abroad, & some hard 24  
to consouden. Of þese manerys tofore seyde, some hath acordynge  
with festres in toknes & in fourmes : as Venemy & holwy, & sum  
han acordynge with cancre : as spredynge abroad & fretynge hym  
self. And napeles þey habbe difference as yt is conteynede in þe 28  
chapytelles of cancre y-woundyde & of festre. & alle þese tofore  
seyde habbiþ difference from a wounde, for in a wounde þere ys  
whyte quyter & euene in al his parties & hol & nozt departyde,  
—& wilhouten stynke. þis manere of quyter is engendrede, of 32  
godnesse of kendlye hete & is perfitley deffiede. But vemyn,  
rottenesse, & croste, & alle opere superfluyte of olde woundes ben  
engendred of a straunge vnkendlye hete. A venemy Vlcus is, in  
whom habundeþ venym sotyl & liquydy. 3if þat yt be red opere 36  
zolwe, opere a partye redyssche, & scharpe bytynge þe lyme, hit  
synifieþ lordschipe of straunge hete. An hory olde wounde ys  
y-clepyd, þat hap sum grete crostes, opere ellys sum grete awrotynge

A deep vlcus is þat, þat hap a greet depnes & an holow; & vlcus profundum  
peraunture crokinge.

A wroting<sup>r</sup> vlcus is þat of his malice fretiþ bi cause þat þe vlcus  
4 blood is sent to him so scharpe / Galien seiþ : þat scharp blood not<sup>r</sup> vlcus  
oonli corrodip [nozt]\*—fleisch in woundis, but also hool fleisch / Galien.

A rotid vlcus is stynkyng, hauynge a strong<sup>r</sup> heete in his vlcus  
ground, & out of him passiþ a stynkyng smel, eiper smoke, as putridum  
8 doip out of fleisch þat is rotid / þilke<sup>1</sup> word 'stynk' I vndirstonde  
it bi my maner witt : sich breeþ þat comeþ out of a bodies ende,  
whanne a bodi breeþ wiþ þe mouþ in frosty wedir, þat men taken  
a saumple, bifor to sle her lac dre / þanne whanne þou myzt se þe  
12 breeþ of þin owne ende comynge out at þi mouþ in þe air.

A walkynge / vlcus is þat walkiþ hidirward & pidirward, & vlcus ambu-  
neþeles he profoundip nouzt depe <sup>2</sup>into þe ground. lativum

An vlcus þat is hard to helin is he þat for his yuel propirte þat vlcus diffi-  
16 is sent to him fro þe bodi lettip him to heele. cilis.

& for to heelen ech maner of þese vlcus, þer ben manye dyuers Cura vlcis  
rulis / þe firste rule is þat þei moun not be heeled, but þe super- .1.  
fluytees þat ben in hem ben I-dried / þe secunde rule / but if þat .2.  
20 bodi ouþer þe membre be oute of his naturel complexioun, or þan  
þou þenke to heele þilke vlcus þou muste brynge azen to his diete

<sup>1</sup> This curious explanation of the word *stynk* is an insertion of the scribe.  
Read: *ste her laddre*. One letter half erased in *laddre*. *Ste*, see *Stratm.*  
*Dict.*, O.E. *stigan*.

proud flesch to hyze. A depe Vlcus is þat þat hap a gret depnesse Add. MS.  
& an holwe, & peraunter crokyng. A wrotyng vlcus is þat of 12,056.  
24 hys malyce wroteþ, bycause þat þe blod þat is sent to hym, is to  
scharpe. Galien : scharpe blod nozt onlyche cordytiþ nozt \*flesch in  
woundes, but also hol flesch. A rotyde vlcus is stynkyng, hab-  
bynge a straunge hete in his grounde, & out of hym passiþ out a  
28 stynkyng smel opere smoke, as pere dop <sup>3</sup>out of flesch þat is [3 fol. 60 a]  
y-rotyde. A walkynge Vlcus is þat walkeþ hyderwarde & þedir-  
warde & napeles he profundeþ nozt depe into þe grounde. An  
Vlcus þat is hard to helyn, is he þat for his yuele proprete, þat is  
32 sende to hym fro al þe body, latteþ hym to hele. & forto helyn  
euery manere of þese hulkes, þere ben manye dyverse rulyes. þe  
firste rule ys þat þey mowe nozt ben helyde, but þe superfluytes  
þat ben in hem ben dried. þe secunde rule ys þat 3if þat þe body  
36 opere membre be out of hys naturell complexioun, ere þan þou  
þynke to hele þilke Vlcus, þou moste bryngen azeine to hys due

3. complexioun distempred pilke bodi oupir membre. þe þridde rule is : þat if þe lyuere eipir þe splene ben I-greued, as it happiþ ofte  
 4. tymes in olde woundis, þou muste rectificien hem / þe .iiij rule is : þat þe qualitees & þe quantitees of humouris schulden be temperid 4 wiþ blood-letynge & purgaciouns & with good gouernaile / & if þat þe eir be yuel, þe sike man schal be chaungid into good eyr / & whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seen alle þese þingis, þanne he may go to his cure / 8

If the ulcer is virulent, wash the wound with a washinge,

Nota<sup>1</sup>  
 [3 lf. 41, bk.]

and apply an vnguentum

& if þe vlcus be virulent, þat is to seie venemi, loke if þat þe venym þat goiþ out be redisch or zelowisch, & if þat þe lyme haue ony maner heete; þanne waische it wiþ water of rosis & barlich. alim<sup>2</sup> & balaustia & lentiles with hony<sup>3</sup> symple eipir compounned 12 ben soden yn, & lete þis watir peersen to þe deppe of þe wounde; & if þe virus be wiþoute heete & þe membre haue noon heete, waische it wiþ watir or with wiyn þat mirre wormode,<sup>4</sup> horhone,<sup>5</sup> sauge,<sup>6</sup> pimpermelle<sup>7</sup> hony symple or compounned ben soden yn / Clense þe 16 wounde perfiztliche & engendre fleisch & afterward consowde it wiþ þis propre oynement þat þi<sup>8</sup> olde foule venym woundis, eipir

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Nona*.

<sup>2</sup> *alim*, Latin: *aluminis*.

<sup>4</sup> *wormode*, *absinthium*. O.E. *wormôd*, M.E. *wormwood*.

<sup>5</sup> *horhone*, *Marrubium vulgare*. See Britten, *Dict*.

<sup>6</sup> *sauge*, *salvia*.

<sup>7</sup> *pimpermella*, *Pimpinella*.

<sup>8</sup> *þi*, error for *in*.

Add. MS. 12,056. complexioun distempred<sup>9</sup> pilke body oper membre. þe þridde rule ys, þat zif þat þe lyfere opere splene ben y-greuyde, as yt happyth 20 ofte tymes in olde woundes, þou most retytien hem. The fourth rule ys: þat þe qualites & quantytes of humours scholde be temperid with blodletynge, & purgatiouns & with gode governaylle; and zif þat þe eyre be yuel, þe syke man schal be chaungyde into gode 24 eire. And whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seye alle þese þynges, þenne he may go to hys cure. & zif þat þe Vlcus be Virulente, þat is to sigge Venemy, loke zif þat þe Venym þat goþ out be redyssch opere zolwe, & zif þat the lyme haue enye manere hete; & þenne 28 wassche it wiþ water þat rosys & barlyche Alum & balaustia & lentilis with honye symple opere componed ben sodyn In. And lete þis watere percen to þe depthe of þe wounde. And zif þe Virus be withouten hete & þe membre haue non hete, wassche it with water 32 opere wyþ wyyn, þat Mirre, wermot, horhowne, sauge, pypirnel, honye symple oper componed ben sodyn In. Clanse þe wounde perfityle & engendre flesch & afterwarde consoud it with þis propre oynement, þat in olde foule venemy woundys oper Vlcus engend- 36

<sup>9</sup> At the margin.



- vlcus, engendriþ fleisch, clensip & heeliþ as auicen & rasis witnessen / **Auicenn & Rasis**  
 recipe litargium<sup>1</sup> as myche as þou wolt & stampe it in a morter<sup>2</sup> &  
 putte wiþ him good oile of rosis & vynegre now on & now þe opere,  
 4 alwey stiring, til it be perfiztly an oynement & come into þe foorme  
 of an oynement. & þis oynement is clepid litargirum nutritum, **litargirum nutritum**  
 þat is to sai litarge nurschid, þat is profitable in manye causis /  
 afterward take of pilke litarge norischid .vij. parties & of alim,  
 8 & of balaustie or ellis in þe stide of balaustie wormes of þe erþe  
 brent, bras brent, leed, gallis, sandragoun chathinie<sup>3</sup> argenti ana.  
 as myche as is xij parties of al þe oynement; medle alle togidere **[4 li. 42]**  
 and make an oynement / þis oynement schal be leid wiþinne þe **vnquentum nutritum.**  
 12 wounde & al aboute þe wounde; for it driþ þe wounde & engendriþ  
 good fleisch & consowdiþ / Take hede to þis rule, þat in heelynge **Nota.**  
 of alle olde woundis after þat þei ben clensyd, aboute þe oynement  
 it is good to leie a linnen cloþ, to distende abroad on of þe  
 16 mundificatiuis of ony which þat schal be told in þe antidotarie, &  
 leie aboute aboute pilke vlcus specialy from þe ouer partie fro whens  
 humouris fleen, a defensif of bole armonyak & terra sigillata; þat **Put a "mundificatif" on a linen cloth upon the wound, and add a T<sup>b</sup> defensif dressing.**  
 1 "Lithangyros, Litharge or Silver-glet, the frothy Dross, or Scum that  
 arises in the purifying of Silver with Lead."—Phillips.  
 2 MS. *þ putte it in a morter*, scribal insertion.  
 3 "Cathima est minera de qua elicetur aurum vel argentum."—Sinonoma  
 Barth. p. 14. *Cathimia: argenti spuma*, Cartelli *Diet.* <sup>5</sup> a sign like *Nota*.

- reth flesch, clansyth & helyth as Auecene & Rases wytnessith, **Add. MS.**  
 20 litargium nutritum. R litarge as myche as þou wylt & stampe it  
 & put it in a mortere & putte wiþ hym gode oyle of roses &  
 vynegre, now þe on now þe opere, alwey sterynge, tyl it be perfit-  
 lyche augmentyd & come to þe fourme of an oynement. & þis  
 24 oynement—litargirum nutritum—þat is to sigge litarge y-noryssched,  
 þat is profitable in many casis. Afterwarde take of pilke litarge  
 viij parties, & of alym, & of balaustie opere ellys, in þe stede of  
 balaustie, wormys of þe erþe y-brend, brend bras, brend led, gallis,  
 28 sanke dragoun, cathinie, Argenti ana as mychel as ys .xij parties  
 of alle þe oynement, and medle al togedre, & make an Oygne-  
 ment. þis oynement schal be leyde withynne þe woundes & aboute  
 þe wounde, for yt dryeth þe wounde, & engendriþ gode flesch &  
 32 consoud. Take hede to þis rule, þat in helynge of alle olde  
 woundes, aftere þat þey ben clansyde, aboute þe oynement yt is  
 gode of one a linnen cloþ, forto dystende abrode on of þe mundryfi-  
 catyfes of hony whiche þat schulle be tolde in þe antidotarye. And  
 36 leye aboute aboute pilke vlcus, & specialiche from þe ouere partye,  
 fro whom humores flotyn, a<sup>7</sup> defensif of bol Armonyake & terra

<sup>7</sup> MS. *þ*.

T  
R

Nota.

In a (2) sordid  
ulcer remove  
the scurf.

[? If. 42, bk.]  
In a (3) deep  
ulcer cleanse  
the wound,

and make the  
pus discharge  
itself freely.

is maad on þis maner / take bole armoniak .ḡ j. terra sigillata. 3 ḡ  
oile of rosis & vynegre þat suffisiþ, I-now3 do in þe oon now in þe  
oper til þe oynement be ful maad & liquide I-nou3 / so þat of þe  
oile of rosis be double as myche as of vynegre / þis defensif a 4  
membre fro corrupcioun & also vlcus þat he sprede nouzt abroad /  
An hory wounde shal be heelid, in remeuyng away þe crust  
eiþere filþe þat is in him wiþ poudre of affodill, þat schal be said in  
þe eende of þis booke, ouþer wiþ sum oper mundificatiuis; aftir 8  
consowde it wiþ consolidaciouns /

A deep wounde is heelid <sup>1</sup>wiþ castyng into þe deppe of þe  
wounde with an instrument maad to þe lijkenesse of a clisterie, ony  
of þe waischingis þat ben seid in þe venemy wounde aboue, aftir 12  
þat þe disposicioun of þe membre askiþ of heete or of cold. &  
aftir þat, he is clensid in castyng in watre ouþir wyyn þat mastik  
or frank encense is soden ynne & in leggyng wiþouten oon of þe  
mundificatiuis of hony þat schal be seid aftir. & also it is good to 16  
ordeyne þe lyme so þat þe mouþ of þe wounde hange downward, &  
streyn þi ligature at þe ground of þi wounde, & bynde it losely at  
þe mouþ of þe wounde; also it were good, if þat it myzte be, þat  
þer were maad a newe wounde in þe place þat is moost hangyng, 20  
þat þe rotynes & þe quytture myzte þe bettere goon out; for so  
þilke vlcus myzte þe sunnere be heelid /

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[? fol. 61 a]

sigillata þat is mad on þys manere: R bol armoneake 3 j terre  
sigillate 3 ḡ, oyle of rosis & vynegre, þat suffyseþ, now do in þe on, 24  
now þe oper, tyl þe oynement be ful mad & lyquyde ynow3; so  
þat of þe oyle of roses be duble as myche as of þe vynegre. þis  
diffensiff defendiþ a membre fro corrupcioun, & also Vlcus þat he  
sprede nozt abroad. An hory wonde ys y-helyde, in remeffyng 28  
away þe croste opere þe fylthe þat is in hym with poudre of affodylles  
shal be sayde in þe ende, opere with sum opere mundificatyfes;  
afterwarde consoude yt with consolydatyfes. A depe wounde ys  
y-helyde in castyng in to þe <sup>2</sup>deppe of þe wounde with an instrument 32  
y-mad to þe lyknesse of a clisteyre, any of þe wasschynges þat bep  
seyde in þe Venemy wounde aboue, after þat þe disposisioun of þe  
membre askeþ of hete oper of cold. And after þat he is y-clansyde,  
in castyng in water opere in wyyn þat mastyke opere frankensence 36  
ys y-soden yn, & in leggyng without, on of þe mundificatyfes of  
hony, þat schal be sayde aftere. & also it is gode to ordeyne þe  
lyme, so þat þe mouth of þe wounde honge dunwarde, & streyn þi  
ligature at þe grounde of þy wounde & bynde it looslye at þe mouþ 40  
of þe wounde. And also yt were gode, zif þat it myzte be, þat þere  
were made a newe wounde in þe place þat is most hongyng þat þe



- A wroting<sup>1</sup> vlcus is heelid in leggyng<sup>e</sup> specialiche aboute him colde pingis whiche þat ben<sup>2</sup> obtunden or casten bach þe scharpnes of þe same vlcus; & also with amendinge, as with metis & drynkis, 4 þe scharpnes of þe same blood, & in purgyng<sup>e</sup> þe reed colere; & wip anoyntyng<sup>e</sup> wip colde oynementis & consolidatiuis. & þerto  
<sup>3</sup>is miche worþ vnguentum album rasis þat schal be told in þe antidotarie /
- 8 A stynkyng<sup>e</sup> wounde is heelid in remeyng<sup>e</sup> away þe stinche & þe rotnes; & þerto is myche worþ a waisching<sup>e</sup> of ydromel: þat is hony & watir soden togidere wip mirre, & a mundificatif<sup>4</sup> maad wip ius of wormod & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is maad on þis  
 12 maner / take ius of wormod. ȝ iiij. of hony. ȝ iiij. barli mele ȝ ij. of mirre ana. ȝ j. & compounne hem togidere & fille þe wounde wipinneforþ with lynnet<sup>5</sup> of lynn<sup>e</sup> cloop. & if þat wormes ben engendrid in þe wounde, sle hem wip þe ius of calamynte ouper wip  
 16 þe ius of þe leues of pechis, or ellis persicarie,<sup>3</sup> eiper wip decoccioun of elebre. & whanne þat a perfyte mundificatif is maad, engendre fleisch & consowde as it is seid tofore /

(4) In a corroding ulcer, use an obtundens,

an appropriate diet, purging,

and the vnguentum album rasis [3 lf. 43]

(5) In a stinking ulcer use a lotion of ydromel, and a mundificatif.

Nota bene

(6) In a walking ulcer use phlebotomy and purging,

A walkyng<sup>e</sup> vlcus is heelid wip flebotomie & formacie<sup>4</sup> þat is

<sup>1</sup> wrotyng, error for fretyng.

<sup>2</sup> ben, erroneously inserted. <sup>3</sup> persicarie glossed colorag. See Notes.

<sup>4</sup> O.Fr. farmacie = purgation. See Littré, *Dict.*

- 20 rotnesse & þe quytere myzte þe betyre gone out, for so pilke Vlcus myzte sumnere be helyde. A ffretyng<sup>e</sup> vlcus ys y-helyde, in leggyng<sup>e</sup> specialiche aboute hym colde pynges, whiche þat obtunden oper castyn bach þe scharpnese of þe same Vlcus, & also in amendinge  
 24 with metys & with drynkes the scharpnese of þe same blod, & in purgyng<sup>e</sup> þe rede colore & with anoyntyng<sup>e</sup> wip colde oynementis & consolidatifes, & þerto is myche worþ vnguentum album Rasis, þat schal be told in þe antidotarie. A stynkyng<sup>e</sup> wounde ys  
 28 y-helyde in remeyng<sup>e</sup> away þe stenche & þe rotnes, & þerto ys myche worth a wasschyng<sup>e</sup> of ydromel þat is hony & water y-sode togidre wip mirre, & a mudyficatiff<sup>4</sup> y-mad with ius of wermot & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is made on þis manere: take jus of  
 32 wermot .ȝ. iiij, of hony ȝ iiij, of barly mele .ȝ. ij, off mirre ȝ j., compone hem togidre, & fulle þe wounde, wipyne forth wip lynete of lynn<sup>e</sup> clop. & ȝif þat wormys ben engendride in þe wounde, sle hem wip jus of calamynte, opere with þe juse of þe leuys  
 36 of pechys, opere ellys persicarie, oper with decoccion<sup>5</sup> of ellebre. And whanne þat a perfyte mudyficioun is mad engendre fleisch & consoude, as yt is seyde tofore. A walkyng<sup>e</sup> Vlcus ys y-helyde with flebotomye & ffarmasye þat is laxatyfes purgyng<sup>e</sup> þe colere &

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 61 b]



laxatiuis purgynge þe colere & brent<sup>t</sup> humouris, & in leggyng aboute a defensiv<sup>t</sup> of bole & terra sigillata þat is seid tofore in þis chapitle; & with oon of þe cold mundificatiuis, & sumtyme þou muste cauterise þe vlcus aboute with an instrument<sup>t</sup> of gold. For þilke maner of 4  
brennyng rectifieþ weel þe membre /

[1 If. 43, bk.] þe cause whi þat summe vlcus <sup>1</sup> is hard to consowde is, for an yuel disposicioun þat is hid in þe bodi, & þerfore it nedip to rectifien þe membre & þe bodi as I haue seid tofore. & if þe cause be vpcn,<sup>2</sup> 8  
oon oper manye, do awei þilke cause or ellis þe manye causis, or þat þou go to þis principal cure / þese ben þe causis þat letten consowdyng of olde woundis: an yuel disposicioun of al þe bodi as ydropisie; or ellis an yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere as if þat he be 12  
to feble, as to hoot or to cold, to moist or to drie, wiþ mater or wiþoute mater, as wiþ to greet hardenes; or ellis þe splene is to feble to purge þe malancolient<sup>t</sup> blood; or ellis to myche blood or ellis to litil blood; or ellis þe veynes ben to fulle of blood þat goon 16  
doun to þe vlcus; or elles þat glandeles þat ben kirlnelis þat ben in þe ground<sup>3</sup> þat senden doun mater to the vlcus þat is in þe þies & in þe leggis; or ellis þe lippis of þe vlcus ben to grete; or ellis myche fleisch; or ellis mys-ordynaunce of dietynge or ellis an 20

if necessary cauterization.

(7) In a malignant ulcer remove any special cause of the ulcer.

The healing is delayed if  
Nota.  
the patient suffers from dropsy, the liver, the spleen, the blood, or the glands,

or an inappropriate diet or medicine,

<sup>2</sup> vpon, error for open.

<sup>3</sup> ground. See grynd, page 41, note 3.

Add. MS. 12,056. brende humoures, & in leggyng aboute a defensiv<sup>t</sup> of bol & terra sigillata þat is seide tofore in þe same Chapytile, & with on of þe colde mundryficatyfes & sum tyme men most cauterise þe Vlcs aboute with an instrument of gold. for þilke manere of brennyng 24  
rectefieþ wel þe membre. þe cause why þat sum Vlcs is hard to consoude is, for an yuel disposicion ys y-hydde in þe bodye, & þerfore it nedyth to retyfien þe membre & þe body as y haue seide tofore. And 3if þe cause be opene, on opere manye, do aweye þilke 28  
causes oper ellys þo manye causes, ere þanne þou go to þe princypal cure. þese ben þe causes þat lettyn consowdyng of olde woundes, an yuele disposisioun of alle þe body: as dropsye, opere ellys an iuele disposisioun of þe lyuere: as 3if þat he be to feble, as to hot opere 32  
to colde, to moiste opere to drye, with mater ore withouten matere, as wiþ to grete hardnesse; opere ellys þe spleen is to feble to purge þe malancolyent blod; opere ellys to myche blod, opere ellys to acute blod; opere ellys þe veynes bep to ful of blod, þat goþ doun 36  
to þe Vlcs; opere ellys curnellys þat glandeles, þat bep kurnellys þat bep in þe grynde, þat sendip doun matere to þe Vlcs þat is in þe thyȝes & þe legges, opere ellys þe lippes of þe Vlcs bep to grete & hard, opere ellys to myche flesch, opere ellys mysordeynninge of 40

- inconuenient<sup>t</sup> medicyn to þat<sup>t</sup> membre or ellis þe lyme þat<sup>t</sup> is hirt  
 hap an yuel discrasie; or ellis pilke vlcus is in an yuel place as in  
 þe eende of þe <sup>1</sup>elbowe; or ellis þe vlcus is al round; or ellis þe [<sup>1</sup> lf. 44]
- 4 boon þat<sup>t</sup> is vndir þe vlcus is corrupt / Alle þese tofore seid letten  
 vlcus to be heelid / wherefore it<sup>t</sup> nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese  
 þingis tofore seid, to amende al þe bodi & namely þo lymes þat<sup>t</sup> han  
 principalte in mannes body, & kepen alle þe lymes þat<sup>t</sup> ben in her Remedial  
measures—
- 8 naturel disposicioun with þingis þat<sup>t</sup> ben acordinge to her naturel  
 disposicioun, þo / & if þei ben discrasid, remeue pilke discrasie wiþ  
 þat<sup>t</sup>, þat<sup>t</sup> is contrarie to þe discrasie / also tempre þe qualite & þe  
 quantite of þe blood & streyne þe veyne if þat<sup>t</sup> þou brynge þidir remove the  
dyscrasia,  
regulate the  
patient's  
blood,
- 12 blood, or ellis if þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> be possible latt<sup>t</sup> þe blood away; vndo þe  
 glandeles þat<sup>t</sup> ben kirkels þat<sup>t</sup> sendin þider mater, & remeue deed  
 fleesch, smale þe lippis of woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben greete & kutte hem  
 away if þat<sup>t</sup> þou myȝt<sup>t</sup> do noon opirwise; amende his dietynge; &
- 16 brynge aȝen þe rondnes of pilke vlcus into a long forme aftir þe  
 lenkþe of þe membre with a knyft hoot brennyng / but if a veyne  
 or a senewe lette. & þou schalt remoue þe boon þat<sup>t</sup> is corrupt on  
 þis maner: in kutyng away al þe fleisch & þe boon þat<sup>t</sup> is corrupt give an ob-  
long shape to  
a round ulcer,  
  
remove any  
rotten bone  
by means of  
a hot iron—
- 20 with an hoot <sup>2</sup>iren, or wiþ a medicyn þat<sup>t</sup> schal be seid in þe laste  
 eende of þis booke, or ellis it<sup>t</sup> is bettere to don it<sup>t</sup> away wiþ hoot [<sup>2</sup> lf. 44, bk.]
- 
- dyetyng, oper ellys an vncouenable medycine to pilke membre, Add. MS.  
12,056.  
 oper ellis þe lyme þat ys y-hurt hap an yuele discrasie, opere ellys [<sup>3</sup> fol. 62 a]
- 24 pilke VlCUS is an yuele place—as in þe ende of þe elbowe, opere ellys  
 þe VlCUS ys al rounde, opere ellys þe bon þat is vndir<sup>3</sup> þe vlcus is  
 corrupte. Alle þese tofore seide letteþ VlCUS to by helyde, where-  
 fore yt nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese thynges tofore seyde, &
- 28 to amendyn alle þe body, & namlye þe lymes þat habbiþ principalte  
 in mannes body, & kepe alle þe lymes þat beþ in here natureH  
 disposisioun wiþ þynges þat beþ acordynge to here naturel disposi-  
 sioun, & zif þey ben discrasiede, remywe pilke discrasie with þat,
- 32 þat is contrarie to pilke discrasie. Also tempre þe qualyte & þe  
 quantyte of þe blod, & streyne þe veynes zif þat þey brynge þedire  
 blod. Oper ellys zif it is possible, lete þe blod aweye. Vndo  
 glandeles, þat beþ kurneH þat sendeþ þedire mater, & remywe ded
- 36 flesch, smale lippes of þe woundes þat beþ grete, & kytte hem away,  
 zif þou maiste do non opere weys; amende his dietyng, & brynge  
 aȝene þe roundnesse of pilke VlCUS in to a longe fourme, aftre þe  
 lengþe of þe membre, wiþ a knyft hot brennyng, but zif þat a
- 40 synwe opere a Veyne latte. And þou schalt remywe þe bon, þat is  
 corupe on þis manere: unwrey al þe bon, in kutyng away al þe  
 flesch,\*—þe bon þat is corrupte with an yren, oper wiþ a medycine  
 þat schal be seyde in þe laste ende of þis boke. Oper ellys it is



*Nota.* iren. & whanne þat þe boon þat<sup>1</sup> is corrupt<sup>1</sup> is vnkeuerid, schaue it not<sup>1</sup> as manye men doon, but<sup>1</sup> touche harde þat<sup>1</sup> boon with hoot iren; & aftirward heelde on pilke boon hoot oile of rosis, & leie on oon of þe mundificatiuis þat<sup>1</sup> ben in þe antidotarie whiche þat<sup>1</sup> wolen<sup>4</sup> remoue þe rotid boon wipoute violence / For vndirstonde weel þou<sup>3</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> þou clense þe rotid boon wip schauynge or wip filynge with violence, neuere þe lattere kynde wole afterward don away a schelle of pilke same boon, nouȝt azenstondynge þi schauynge & þi rasyng / 8 wherfore in remeuyng pilke boon þou multiplieth<sup>1</sup> þi traueile & makist<sup>2</sup> newe<sup>2</sup> mundificacion to þe fulle<sup>3</sup> & þerof may come ofte tymes an yuel festre. An inconuenient<sup>1</sup> medicyn is amendid in considerynge þe complexioun of al þe body & þe complexioun of þe 12 lyme & þe gre of þe medicyn; for if þat<sup>1</sup> þe membre be drie as þe eeris & al bony & gristly lymes, & þei han greet<sup>1</sup> putride & rotschipe, þanne þou nedist<sup>1</sup> a ful drie medicyn / & if þat<sup>1</sup> þe bodi or þe lymes 4 þen mene bitwene fatnes & lenenes þat<sup>1</sup> is neiper to fatt<sup>1</sup> ne to 16 leene, þanne þou nedist<sup>1</sup> a medicyn þat<sup>1</sup> is in kynde mesurableliche drynge / & if þat<sup>1</sup> þe bodi or þe membre be natureliche moist, & if þat<sup>1</sup> he haue a litil putrede or rotschipe, þanne þou nedist<sup>1</sup> a medicyn

If the medicine was not  
[<sup>4</sup> If, 45]

<sup>1</sup> MS. *corrrupt*.

<sup>2</sup> *newe*, error for *no*.

<sup>3</sup> *to þe fulle*. Lat.: ad plenum. See *Polychr.*, iii. 443, he forgaf him the trespas at the fulle.

Add. MS. 12,056. bettere to don it away with hot yren & whanne þat þe bon þat is 20 corrupte is vnkeueride, schaue yt nouȝt as many men don, but touche harde pilke bon with hot yren & afterwarde helde on pilke bon hot oyle of rosys, & leye on one of þe mundryficyfes þat bep in þe antidotarye, whiche þat wylle remywe þe rotyde bon withoute violence. Ffor vndirstond wel, þawȝ þat þou clanse þe rotyde bon with schauynge opere wip vylinge with vyolence, neuere þe latere kynde wyl afterwarde don awaye a schelle of pilke same bon, nouȝt azenstondynge þy schauynge & þy rasyng; wherfore in remefyng 28 pilke bon, þou multipliest þy traueil, & þou makyste no mundificatioun to þe folle; & þerof may come ofte tymes, an yuele festre. And inconuenient medecyne ys amendide, in consyderynge þe 32 complexioun of alle þe bodye, & þe complexioun of þe lyme, & þe gree of þe medecyne; for ȝif þat þe membre be drye as þe erys, noseþrylles & alle bony & grestly lemes, & þey han grete putrede & rotschipe, þenne þou nedyste a ful drye medecyne; & ȝif þat þe body opere þe membre be naturelliche moist, ȝif þat he haue a lyte 36 putrede opere rotschipe, þanne thou nedyste a medecyne þat ys lyte dryinge. And ȝif þat the body opere þe lymes ben mene betwene fatnesse and lenesse—þat nys neipere to fatte ne to leue, þenne þou nedyst a medecyne þat is in kynde, mesurableliche dryinge. 40

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 62 b]



pat<sup>t</sup> is litil drynge / & if<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> .ij. membris ben in complexioun appropriate,  
 I-liche euene, & þe toon haue myche quytture, & þe toþer litil change it  
 quytture, he pat<sup>t</sup> haþ þe more quytture nedip þe driere medicyn / & according to  
 the patient's  
 complexion.  
 4 \*he pat<sup>t</sup> haþ but litil quytture, him nedip his medicyn I-maad nouzt  
 fulliche so drie / þerfore it<sup>t</sup> nedip bi mesure pat<sup>t</sup> þou kepe naturel  
 þing<sup>t</sup> wiþ þing<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> is acordinge to þe same naturel þing<sup>t</sup> / & also  
 remeue with mesurable contrariouste þing<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> is azens kynde / But<sup>t</sup>  
 8 þe quantite of medicyns pat<sup>t</sup> schulden be leid to þe soor as galien *Galien.*  
 witnessip mai not wiþ lettris be writen / nepeles it<sup>t</sup> sufficiþ pat<sup>t</sup> a  
 man diuise þe medicyn after<sup>1</sup> þe complexioun mai bere / For kynde  
 pat<sup>t</sup> is wondirful, fullillip þing<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> is absent, & þat. pat<sup>t</sup> is to myche,  
 12 castip away, but if<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> be to myche azen kynde ; & þanne kynde  
 muste nede faile in his kyndely worchinge / A medicyn mundificatif<sup>t</sup>  
 2 & exciccatif<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> is nessessarie in ech old holowe wounde, — 3 [2 if. 45, bk.]  
 & pat<sup>t</sup> may be knowe bi þis maner / if<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> þe medicyn make  
 16 þinne quytture & blodi & make þe wounde holower, þanne he  
 schulde be, þanne is medicyn to scharpe / & if<sup>t</sup> þe quytture be picke  
 & towz, þanne is þe medicyn to liþe / & also anoþer signe pat<sup>t</sup> þe  
 A thin pus, a  
 discoloured  
 skin, a burn-  
 ing sensation  
 show that the  
 medicine was  
 too dry.

<sup>1</sup> N. E. Dict. s. v., "after C. 2. c" gives later references for the use of  
 after conj. = according as, without relative particle.

<sup>3</sup> Both MSS. omit the end of the passage. Lat. "Medicina vero mundi-  
 ficatiua & exiccatiua — aut est fortior, quam conuenit, aut debilior com-  
 petenti." Then, as a heading to the next passage : "Significatio si medicina  
 est magis sicca quam oportet." The *pat* in *þ pat may be knowe*, refers to this  
 omitted heading.

And 3if pat two membrys ben in complexioun i-lyche euene, & þe Add. MS.  
 20 on haue myche quyter & þe opere lyte quyter, he pat haþ þe more 12,046.  
 quyter nedyth þe dreyere medycine,\*—afterwarde it nedip by  
 mesure pat þou kepe naturel þynge, with þynge pat is acordynge to  
 þe same nature, and also to remeffe with mesurable contraryouste  
 24 þynge pat is azeyns kynde. But þe quantite of medicynes pat  
 scholde<sup>4</sup> be leyde to þe sore, as Galien witnesseþ, ne may nozt with  
 lettres ben wryten. Neuer þe latere it suffisith, þat a man defye þe  
 medycine, after þe complexioun may bere ; ffor kynde pat is  
 28 wondirful fulfyller þynge pat is absent & þat pat is to myche  
 castyth awaye, but 3if pat it be to myche azeyne kynde ; & þanne  
 kynde most nedys faylen in his kendlye wirchyng. A medycine  
 mundyficatyff<sup>t</sup> & exsiccatif<sup>t</sup> pat is necessarie in eche olde holwe,  
 32 vlcere,\*—may be knowe by þis manere : 3if pat þe medycine make  
 þenne quyter & bloody & make þe wounde holwere þan he scholde  
 be, þenne ys þe medycine to acute ; & 3if þe quyter be pikke &  
 towz, þenne ys þe medycine to lythye ; and also an opere<sup>5</sup> signe pat

<sup>4</sup> MS. *pat scholde*, twice.

<sup>5</sup> *medycine*, cancelled before *signe*.

medicyn is to scharp, þat þe place aboute þe wounde is to grene, blak, reed, eiper zelow; & þanne þe sike man schal fele to greet heete & brennynge, also þe venym of þe wounde multipliþ / and whanne þe vnkunynge leche seþ þese accidentis tofore seid, he 4 ordeyneþ a drie medicyn; & so ech day þe wounde apeirip.<sup>1</sup>

A livid pus, or paleness of the limb, show that the medicine was not sufficiently dry.

& þe signe þat þe medicyn is of feble drynge is, þat þe quittance & þe rotynes þat goiþ out þerof is greet in substaunce, ponderous & vneueene, wan ouþir pale & þe membre is cold & is whiȝt ouþir 8 wan, ouþir cleer in colour ouþer soft; & þe sike man felip cold in his membre / & whanne þat þou knowist þese þingis in þe firste cause make not þi medicyn so drie, & in þe secunde cause make þi medicyn more drie, & also chaunge þi worchinge as condicioun of 12 kynde askith <sup>2</sup>þope of bodi & membre as weel symple as compound medicyns / He þat knowiþ not þes canones. wel yuele schal he heele woundis / wherfore manye lechis bryngen liztliche woundis with her yuel worchinge into þe worste olde woundis þe whiche moun not 16 aftir ben I-heelid bi a good leche / þese ben lizt medicyns whiche þat drien olde woundis þat neden a litil drynge: mastik, frank encense, barli mele. & þese medicyns ben sumwhat more driere: yrios,<sup>3</sup> aristologie rotunda, orabum<sup>4</sup> þat is wiilde tare, lupines, 20

[<sup>2</sup> Ir. 46]

An ignorant physician may make a dangerous wound out of a slight one.

A mild siccatis.

A stronger siccatis.

<sup>1</sup> *apeirip* intr. See Prompt. Parv. *Appeyryn*, or make wors. Pejoro, deterioro.

<sup>3</sup> *yrios*. Lat. *Iris*. See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 123.

<sup>4</sup> "*Orobis*, gall. uesche, anglise thare uel mousespese."—Alphita, p. 131.

Add. MS. 12,056. þy medecine is to scharpe, þat þe place about þe wounde ys to grene, blake, red opere to zelwe & þe syke man felyþ to grete hete <sup>5</sup>& brennynge, & also þe Venym of þe wounde multiplyeth, and whanne þe vnkunynge leche seþ þese Accidentes tofore seyde, he ordeyneþ 24 a dryere medecine; & so eche day þe wounde apeirith. And þe signe þat þe medecine is of feble dreyinge is þat þe quyter & þe rotnesse, þat goþ out þere of, ys gret in substaunce, ponderose & vneueene, wan oper pale; þe membre is colde whyte oper wan, oper clere in coloure, oper softe, & þe syke man felyth colde in his membre, & whenne þat þou knowist þese þynges in þe firste cas, make noȝt þy medecine so drye. In þe secunde cas make þy medecine more drye, & so chaunge þy wirkyng, as condyciouns of kynde 32 askyth, þope of body & of membre, as wel symple as componede medecines. He þat knowiþ noȝt þese kanones wel\*—schal helen olde woundes; wherfore manye lechys brynge lyȝte woundes wiþ here iuele wirchyng, into þe worste olde woundes, þe whiche mowe 36 noȝt aftere be helyde by a gode leche. þese ben lyȝte medecines, whiche þat drye olde wondys þat neden a lytel dryyinge; mastyke, ffrankensence, barlymele. þese medicynes beþ sumwhat dreiere: yreos. Aristologia. Orobum þat is wilde Tare, lupines, þe rotnesse 40

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 63 a]



þe rotynes eiper þe drie poudre of trees; & þese medicyns ben strongere: balaustie, psidie,<sup>1</sup> rose, notts of cipris *et cetera* / & þese ben lȝt mundificatiuis: sugre, hony, water of barlich, gotis whay, watir of þe see, watir of brimston þat clensip & hetep, water of alym þat clensip & coldip. & þou schalt haue greet plente of enplastris, mundificatiuis, oyntmentis compouned in þe antidotarie of þis book /

A mild mundificatif.

**T**he .xij. chapitle of þe iij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of festre /

Festre is a deep old wounde, & þe moup of him is streyt, & þe ground is brood, & he hap<sup>2</sup> wipinne him a calose<sup>3</sup> hardnesse al aboute as it were a goos penne or ellis a kane / & a festre hap difference from a deep vlcus & a cauernose / for a deep vlcus & cauernose of whom it is toold in þe chapitle tofore seid, þou þat þei acorden togidere in depnes & in streitnesse of þe moup, þe vlcus hap not wipinne him a calose hardnes / Wherefore a festre mai not be clensid wip waischinge with which a cauernose vlcus mai be clensid / but it is nessessarie aftir þat þou hast waischen it to

A fistula [2 lf. 46, bk.] is distinguishable from a deep ulcer by its hardness,

which must be removed by cauterization.

<sup>1</sup> "*Psidia cortex est mali granati.*"—*Synonoma Barthol.*, p. 35.

<sup>3</sup> O. Fr. calus, (Godefroy). See later references in *N. E. Dict.*

oper þe dryze poudre of trees. þese medycines ben strengere: balaustie, prosidyde, rose, notys off Cipresse et. cet. And þese<sup>4</sup> ben lyzte mundificatyfes in cure,<sup>5</sup> hony, watire of barlye, gotyswhey, water of þe see, water of brymston þat clansith & hetyþ, water of Alym þat clansyth & coldyth. þou schalt haue grete plente of enplastres, mundificatyfes, and oygnementys componede in þe antitodarye of þis ilke booke.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Cap. xii of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretis is of a<sup>6</sup> festre.

ffestre<sup>7</sup> is a depe olde wounde and<sup>8</sup> þe mouth is streyt of hym & þe grounde is brod, & he hap wip ynne hym a callose hardnesse alle aboute, as yt were a gose penne oper ellys a kane, & a ffestre hap<sup>9</sup> diffence from a depe Vlcus & a cauernose; for a depe Vlcus & a Cauernose, of whom yt ys tolde in þe chapitle toforeseyde, þow þat þey acorden togedire in depnesse & in streytynesse of þe moup, þe Vlcus hap noȝt wipyn hym a callose hardnesse, wherefore a festre may noȝt be clensyde with wasschynges, with þe whiche a<sup>10</sup> cauernose Vlcus may be clansyde, but it is necessarye, aftere þat

[2 fol. 63 b]

<sup>4</sup> MS. þese, twice. <sup>5</sup> in cure, a scribal mistake from sugre.

<sup>6</sup> of a, above line. <sup>7</sup> MS. ffirste.

<sup>8</sup> in, cancelled; and, above line. <sup>10</sup> a, above line.



remeue pilke calose hardnesse wiþ a cauterie eiper with a medicyn cauterizinge þat<sup>1</sup> is brennyng, þe which cauterie ouþir brennyng schulde make þe deppe of þe vlcus holowere þan he was / Wherefore it<sup>1</sup> is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe þe difference of þis science, 4 þat<sup>1</sup> he mowe knowe to heele boþe þe vlcus & þe festre wiþ medicyns different þat<sup>1</sup> longen to hem boþe /

Nota.

If the fistula is in fleshy parts, use cleansing medicines.

[<sup>1</sup> ff. 47]

R

& if þat<sup>1</sup> a festre be in þe fleisch or ellis bitwene senewe & senewe, so þat<sup>1</sup> þe substaunce of þe senewe be not<sup>1</sup> corrupt<sup>1</sup> ne þe 8 boon, it is no nede to take noon opere medicyn but egrimoyn & staumpe it<sup>1</sup> with salt<sup>1</sup> as þou woldist<sup>1</sup> make sause, & drawe out<sup>1</sup> þe ius of pilke egrimoyn, & do it into þe hole of þe festre wiþ a penne & leie þe substaunce of þe same eerbe pere-vpon til he haue 12 slayn pilke festre & clensid it<sup>1</sup>; & þou schalt<sup>1</sup> knowe bi reednes & sadnesse of fleisch þat<sup>1</sup> is wipinne þe festre al aboute; & aftirward haue þis sirup of hony wiþ þe whiche þou schalt<sup>1</sup> waische þe festre þat<sup>1</sup> is now vlcus I-compouned in þis maner / Take a pound water, 16 vynegre half a pound, of hony dispumed 3 .iiij., of leeuës of olyuetre bounden togidere wiþ a þred / 3 j., of galingale<sup>2</sup> 3 j, boile alle þese to þe perfytnesse of a sirup, & lete it<sup>1</sup> colden, & do away þe

<sup>2</sup> galingale, ne. galangale, for sagittelle.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

þou hast y-wasschyde yt, to remeffyn pilke callose hardnesse with a 20 cauterye, opere wiþ a medicine cauterysynge þat ys brennyng, þe whiche cauterye oper brennyng schulde make þe deppe of þe Vlcus holwere þanne he was. Wherefore it is necessarie to a surgiene to knowe þe difference of þis scyence, þat he mowe conne hele boþe þe 24 Vlcus & þe festre with medicines different þat longyth to hem boþe. And 3if þat a festre be in þe flesch, oper ellys bytwene synwe & synwe, so þat þe Substaunce of þe synwe be nozt corrupte ne þe bon, yt nys non nede to take non opere medicine but egremoyne, & 28 stampe hym wiþ salt, as þou woldest maken sause, & drawe out þe jus of pilke egremoyne, & do yt into þe hole of þe festre with a penne, & leye þe substaunce of þe same erbe pere-vpon, tyl he haue slaw<sup>3</sup> alle pilke festre & y-clansyde yt; & þat þou schalt knowen 32 by þe rednesse & sadnesse of flesch þat is withynne þe festre al aboute, & aftirwarde haue þis surype off<sup>1</sup> honye, with þe whiche þou schalt wassche þe festre, þat ys now Vlcus componed, in þis manere: <sup>4</sup> R water ii .j., of vynegre ii .ss, of hony despumed 3 .iiij, 36 off<sup>1</sup> leuys of olyue-tre, y-bounde togedre with a þrede, 3 .j., of <sup>5</sup>sagytelle 3 .j., boylle al þis to þe perfytnesse of a sirupe, & let yt

[<sup>1</sup> fol. 64 a]

<sup>3</sup> At the end of the line. One letter wanting.

<sup>4</sup> Confection of syrup mellyne, in margin.

leeues of þe olyue, & kepe al þe remenaunt of þe sirup *with* þe  
 leeues of sagittel & waische þe vlcus þat was festred tofore wiþ þis  
 licour twies on þe day þat þe licour may go to þe ground, & aftir-  
 4 ward drie it weel & fille it ful of drie leeues of sagittelle & leie a  
 sagittel-leef<sup>1</sup> aboue; & þis medicyn þou schalt contynuen til it be  
 hool / Euery festre þat is in fleisch is heelid wiþ þis medicyn  
 I-preued, but if þat substance of þe senewe & of þe boon be If parts of a  
bone or sinew  
are rotten,  
 8 apeirid in þe ground, & specialiche if þat þe festre be not old, & if  
 þat þe calosite be nouzt to hard. In þese two causis þe medicyn  
 of egrimoyne <sup>1</sup>ne suffisþ nouzt, but it is nessessarie to haue [1 If. 47, bk.]  
 a cauterie of fier eiper a medicyn caustik / & of þese medicyns þou use cauteriza-  
tion, or a  
caustic medi-  
cine,  
and remove  
the morbid  
bone.  
 12 schalt haue a ful techinge folowyng in þe book / & if þat þe boone  
 were corrupt in þe deppe of þe festre, do it awei aftir þe techinge  
 tauzt in þe chapitle tofore / & herof take hede, if þat a festre  
 perse bi þe weyes of þe vryne so þat þe vryne go out bi pilke weie,  
 16 as we han seen ofte tymes, or ellis þat it go bi crokid placis & hid  
 placis of þe face<sup>2</sup> persinge into deppe, it is<sup>3</sup> an vnperfizt cure, but  
 þou maist pale<sup>4</sup> it, & do it away þe stinche *with* hony waischinge,  
 enplastre, & hony mundificatiuis, & *with* defensiuis aboute þe place

<sup>2</sup> Lat. per tortuosas aut occultas partes faciei.      <sup>3</sup> it is, above line.

<sup>4</sup> pale, Lat. palliare. Duf., *Gloss.*: 1. tegere; 2. simulare.

20 coldyn & do aweye þe leffys of þe olyfe, & kepe alle þe remnaunt of Add. MS.  
12,056.  
 þe surype *with* þe leffys of sagytelle, & wassche þe Vlcus þat was  
 festre tofore *with* þis licoure twyes a day, þat þe lycoure may go to  
 þe grounde, & afterwarde dreye it wel & fyl yt ful of drye leffys of  
 24 sagytelle, & leye a sagittelle leff<sup>1</sup> aboue, and þis medycine þou schalt  
 conteynen tyl þat it be hol. Every festre þat is in flesch ys helyde  
*with* þis medycine y-prefed, but ȝif þe substance of þe synwe & of  
 þe bon be apeyred in þe grounde, & specialyche ȝif þe festre be  
 28 nouzt old & ȝif þat þe callosite be nozt to hard. In þese tweye  
 cases þe medycyne of egremoyne ne suffiseþ nozt, but it ys neces-  
 sarye a kauterye of fyre oper a medycine caustyke; & of þese medy-  
 cins þou schalt han a ful techyng, folwyng in þe boke. And ȝif  
 32 þat þe bon were corrupte in þe deppe of þe festre, do yt aweye after  
 þe techyng, þat y haue tauzte þe in þe chapiteh tofore. And  
 hereof take hede: ȝif þat a festere perse be þe weyes of þe vryne,  
 so þat þe vryne go out by pilke weye, as we haue seyne ofte tymes,  
 36 oper ellys þat he go by crokyde placys and hudel<sup>4</sup> places of þe face,  
 persyng into þe depnesse of þe hed whose grounde þou maiste nozt  
 perseyue, hit ys bettyre nozt for to cure *with* a perfyte cure, but þou  
 maiste pale it & don away þe stynke, *with* hony & wasschynges of  
 40 emplastre in mundificatyfes & *with* defensives aboute þe place, þat

<sup>4</sup> hudel, adj. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, hudels, sb. O.E. *hýðels*, hiding-place.



cauteriza-  
cioun of þe  
senewe þat  
is hurt.

þat his malice mowe<sup>1</sup> þen lasse greue. For a festre þat is in ioynnturis as þe feet eiper þe knee, eiper þe hand, eipir þe elbowe, is hard for to heele, & sumtyme impossible / & if þat he be in anoper place, & he haue corrodid eiper rotid sumwhat of þe senewe, þow þat it<sup>4</sup> be greuou for to cure it, þer is noon oper wey, but a lyzt cauterizacioun of þe senewe þat is hurt / For cauterizacioun wip hoot iren eiper wip gold, þat is bettere, it clensip & driep þe senewe þat is corrupt<sup>2</sup> & rectifesh þe complexioun of al þe membre & <sup>2</sup>a medecyn 8 caustik worchip þe contrarie / Brennynge medicyns, boþe þe symple & þe compound þou schalt haue to þe fulle<sup>3</sup> in <sup>4</sup>antidotarie of þis book, & þou schalt fynde þe maner of cauterisynge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretis folowyng. & whanne þou hast maad a perfyzt mundi- 12 ficacioun of þilke colose fleisch, regendre fleisch & consowde wip medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis þe whiche þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie //

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 48]

¶ Cap<sup>m</sup>  
xiiij<sup>m</sup>  
canser  
vleirat

**T**he xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste 16 tretis is of a cankre /

Cankre I-woundid cometh of openynge, eiper of kuttinge, eiper of brekyng of a cankre not I-woundid, whos techinge þou schalt

<sup>1</sup> MS. *moore*.

<sup>3</sup> See page 86, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> þe þridde tretis folowyng / & whanne þou hast maad a perfyzt mundificacioun struck through in red. after to þe fulle in.

Add. MS. his malyce mowe þe lasse greff. A festre þat is in juncturis as 20  
12,056. þe fote oper þe kne, oper þe hand, opere þe elbowe, is hard forto hele & sumtyme vnpossible. And ȝif þat he be in an opere place & he haue coroded oper rotyd sumwhat of þe synwe, þow þat it be greffes forto cure it, þere nys none opere weye bote a lyzt cauterys- 24 aciou of þe synwe, þat is y-hurt: ffor cauterysacioun wip hote yren, oper wip gold þat is betyre clansyth & dryep <sup>5</sup>þe synwe þat ys corrupte, & rectefyeth þe complexioun of al þe membre, and a medecine caustyke worchep þe contrarye. Brennynge medecines, 28 boþe symple & componed, þou schalt han to þe fulle in þe antidotarye of þis boke, & þou schalt fynde þe manere of cauterysinge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretys folwyng; & whanne þou hast made a perfyte mundificacioun of þilke callose flesch, regenere flesch & con- 32 soude wip medecines regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, þe whyche þou schalte fynde in þe antitodarye.

[<sup>2</sup> fol. 64 b]

¶ Cap. xiii off þe þridde techyng off þe ffirste tretys is Off a Canker. 36

¶ Cankyre y-woundyde comyth of opnyng, opere of kuttyng, opere of brekyng of a cancre noȝt y-woundyde, whose techyng þou



haue in þe chapitle of þe apostymes in þe þridde techinge / & he comes of a wounde yuel heeled, to whom comes a malancolient mater rotid; or for þe mater þat comes to þe wounde is þere cor-

arises from a badly healed or purulent wound.

4 rumpid & chaungip þe vlcus into a cankre /

& þese ben þe tokenes of þe cankre / þe vlcus is foul & stynkynge, þe lippis ben grete, wan, or blak, hard, & wipinne kirmely, & ouer al aboute arerid and <sup>1</sup>holowe / & þis is þe difference bitwene

Its signs are: the peculiar condition of the wound, [1 lf. 48, bk.]

8 a cankre & a foul vlcus & an hori of whom I haue maad mencionn aboue, þat if þat þou waische hem boþe wip lize, þe cankre schal be palere & foulere þan he was bifore, & þere schal falle out of him pecis gobetmele.<sup>2</sup> & þe vlcus is clensid wip pilke lize, & þe fleisch

Nota  
the effect of a lye lotion,

12 is maad fairer þan it was tofore, ne þe vlcus stynkip not bi þe same stinche as þe cankre doip; for þe cankre haþ a propre sauour, þe which mai not be write wip lettre; but pilke sauour is best knowe of men whiche þat best han seiþe cankreis.<sup>3</sup>

and the smell of the cancer.

16 A general rule in þe cure of a cankre is, þat a cankre mai not be heeled, but if þat he be do away wip alle hise rotis / þe secunde rule is, þat he schal not be touchid wip hoot iren ne with hoot medicyn caustik, þat is to seiþe brennynge, but he be in place

A cancer must either be left untouched or entirely removed.

<sup>2</sup> gobetmele, piecemeal. *Polychron.*, iv. 103: membratim. See further, Mätzner, *Dict.* <sup>3</sup> MS. *cankre is*.

20 schalt habbyn in þe Chapitle of enpostemes in þe þridde techynge & he comyth of a wounde yuele y-helyde, to whom comyth a malancolient rotyde matere, oper for þat þe matere comes to þe wounde is þere corrupyd, & chaungyth þe Ulcus into a Cankere. And þese bep

Add. MS. 12,056.

24 þe toknys of þe cankere: þe Ulcus ys foule & stynkynge, þe lippes bep grete, wanne, opere blake, harde, and wipinne kernelly, & ouere alle aboute areryde & holwy, & þis is þe dyfference bytwene cancre & a foule Ulcus & an hory, of whom y haue made mensioun aboue,

28 þat zif þat þou wassche hem boþe<sup>4</sup> wip leyze, þe cancre schal ben pale & foulere þenne he was tofore, & þere schal fallen out of hym pecys, gobetmele. And þe Ulcus ys y-clansede with pilke leyze, & þe flesch ys made fayrere þenne yt was tofore, ne þe Ulcus stynkep

32 nozt by þe same stenche as þe cancre doþ; for þe cankre haþ a propre saffoure, þe which may nozt be wryten wip lettres, but pilke safore ys best knowyn to of men, whiche þat beste han seiþe cankrys. A <sup>5</sup>generall rule in þe cure of cankre ys, þat a cankyre

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 65 a]

36 may nozt ben helyde bot zif þat he be done away wip alle hys rotys. The secunde rule ys, þat he schal nozt ben touchyde with hot yren ne wip hot medycyne caustyk—þat is to sigge, brennynge

<sup>4</sup> MS. *opere*.

**Nota** where he may al be doon away / for þe more þat þou touchist him  
 wip a violent<sup>t</sup> þing<sup>t</sup> eiper medecyn, þe more his malice is encressid /  
**If possible, cut away and** Take þanne good heede if he be in a fleischi place, where þat he  
 may be don al wey, & þanne kutte him al away wip alle hise rotis / 4  
**[1 ff. 49]** & þanne priste out<sup>t</sup> al þe malancolient<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>blood þat<sup>t</sup> is wipinne þe  
**burn the cancer, and apply a cleansing poultice.** veynes þat<sup>t</sup> ben aboute þe cankre. & aftirward brenne al aboute in  
 þe place þere as þe cankre was with hoot iren / aftirward leie on þis  
 confeccioun maad of flour of wheete & hony & ius of smalache,<sup>2</sup> til<sup>8</sup>  
 þat<sup>t</sup> he be perfiztliche clensid. After regendre fleisch & cicatrice.  
**Nota** To þis rule / take hede as ofte as þou wilt wip sirurgie heelen a  
 cancre: first euacue þe malancolient<sup>t</sup> mater, for þat<sup>t</sup> is ypocras  
**the counsel off ypocras: if the cancer cannot be removed, try no cure at all.** techinge; & if þat<sup>t</sup> he be growen in sich a place þere as he may not<sup>t</sup> 12  
 be doon al away, as in þe necke or in þe tetis, or in þe face, or in þe  
 arshole, or in þe mareis; & also for schortere conclusioun, & he be  
 entrid in ony place þere as ony senewis, arteries, veynes, ben—as  
**ypocras.** ypocras seiþ—it is bettere nouzt<sup>t</sup> to cure þe cankre þan to cure. For 16  
 & he be curid, þat<sup>t</sup> is to seië kutt<sup>t</sup> or I-brent<sup>t</sup>, þei perischen þe  
 sunnere; & if þei ben not<sup>t</sup> curid, þei lyuen þe lengere tyme—libro  
 vj<sup>o</sup>. *afforismorum: Canceri absconditi multum tempus perficiunt*

<sup>2</sup> *smallage*, Halle Table, p. 12. “Smalache, Marche, or Marshe Persley.”  
 See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 217.

**Add. MS. 12,056.** —but he be in place, þere he may al be don away; ffor þe more 20  
 þat þou touchiste hym with a vyolent thyng<sup>e</sup> oþer medecine, þe  
 more hys malys is encressyde. Take þenne gode hede zif he be in  
 a fleschlye place, where þat he may be don al aweye, & þenne kutte  
 hym al aweye wip alle hys rotys, & þruste out þe malencolyent blod 24  
 þat ys withynne þe Veynes, þat bep aboute þe cancre, & afterwarde  
 brenne alle aboute in þe place, þere as þe cankre was, wip hote  
 yren. Afterward leye on þis *confeccioun* y-mad of floure of whete  
 hony, jus of smallache, tyl þat he be perfytly y-clansyde. After 28  
 regenere flesch & cycatrice. To þis rule take hede as ofte as þou  
 wylt wip surgerye helyn a cancre: furst evacue þe malencolyent  
 matere, ffor þat is ypocras techynge, & zif he be growen in swyche  
 a place, þere as he may nozt be done alle aweye, as in þe nekke ore 32  
 in þe tetys, oþere in þe face, ore in þe ers hole, oþer in þe marys,  
 and also for the schortere conclusioun, & he be entrede in enye  
 place, þere as enye Veynes, synwes, & arteryes buþ, as ypocras  
 seiþ, yt ys betyre nozt to cure þe cancre, þen to cure; ffor he be 36  
 curyde, þat is to sigge, y-kutte oþere y-brent, þey perysschen  
 sonnere; & zif þey be nozt curyde þey lyuen longe tyme—libro  
*sexto afforismorum Canceri absconditi multum tempus per ficiunt*

*Regula*, in margin.



- curati vero cicius pereunt / But<sup>2</sup> defende þe lyme þat<sup>3</sup> is hool aboute  
 with defensif<sup>4</sup> of<sup>5</sup> bole þat<sup>6</sup> I haue ofte tymes seid & waische þe  
 wounde of<sup>7</sup> þe cankre wip gotis whey, & drie it<sup>8</sup> softly, <sup>1& anynte</sup> R  
 4 þe wounde wipinne & wipoute with þis oynement<sup>9</sup> of rasis & <sup>2</sup> tutie<sup>3</sup> / <sup>[1 lf. 49, bk.]</sup>  
 take ceruse,<sup>4</sup> tutie I-waische & medle hem wip oile of<sup>5</sup> rosis & wip  
 ius of<sup>6</sup> purcelane<sup>5</sup> or of<sup>7</sup> sum opere cold eerbe, putte ynne sum of<sup>8</sup> þe  
 toon, & now sum of<sup>9</sup> þat<sup>10</sup> oper, til þe oynement<sup>11</sup> be weel I-maad /  
 8 þis oynement<sup>12</sup> is myche worþ for to defende þat<sup>13</sup> þe malice of<sup>14</sup> þe  
 cancre schal not<sup>15</sup> wexen, & also þat<sup>16</sup> þe pacient<sup>17</sup> vse a good govern-  
 aile: as drinke good wyyn & cleer & lithe, & he muste leeu reed  
 wyyn & troublid & picke wyyn, & he may ete good fleisch, as  
 12 motoun<sup>6</sup> of<sup>7</sup> a weþer, kide fleisch sowkyng, capouns, hennys,  
 chikenes, partrichis,<sup>7</sup> fesauntis, & smale briddis, & he muste leeu:  
 beeuys fleisch<sup>8</sup> & gotis fleisch, hertis fleisch & haris fleisch, goos,  
 dokis, & alle greete briddis þat<sup>9</sup> lyuen in watri placis, & al salt<sup>10</sup>  
 16 þing<sup>11</sup> & acute þing<sup>12</sup>: as garleek, oynonyms & vynegre et cetera [þat]<sup>13</sup>\*

<sup>2</sup> þ, erroneously for of.

<sup>3</sup> tutie, Matth. Sylvat. "Tuchia . . Lat. Cadimia & pomfolix." Arab. tūtīā. Fr. tutie. See Wr. Wü., p. 559, 13. "Tucia, i. tutie" (xiii<sup>th</sup> cent.). It is: Oxidum Zinci impurum.

<sup>4</sup> ceruse, white lead. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Ceruse.

<sup>5</sup> purcelane, Lat. portulaca. Halle Table, p. 90. "Another herbe there is also called Portulaca marina, only of the likenes that the leaves therof haue with porcelaine." See "Purslane," Prior, *Popular Names*, p. 193.

<sup>6</sup> moton, carnes ovine, Wr. Wü., 741, 39, xv<sup>th</sup> cent.

<sup>7</sup> partrichis, *Cathol. Ang.*, p. 270, a Partryke, perdrix. See further Skeat, *Et. Dict.* <sup>8</sup> bef, added above line, in different hand.

- curati vero cicius pereunt. ¶ But diffende þe lyme þat is hol  
 aboute with defensiff<sup>1</sup> of<sup>2</sup> bol, þat y haue ofte tymes seyde, & wassche  
 þe wounde of<sup>3</sup> þe cancre with gotys whey<sup>3</sup>, & drye yt softlyche &  
 20 anynt þe wounde withinne & without, with þis oynement of rasys  
 of tutye, R ceruse, tuthye, y-wasschyn and medle hem wip oyle of  
 roses & wip jus of poslane, <sup>9</sup> opere of sum opere colde erbe, now  
 puttyng in sum of þe on & now sum of þe opere, tyl þe oynement  
 24 be ful mad. þis oynement ys myche worth forto diffende; þat þe  
 malys of þe cancre þat is y-woundyde schal nozt waxen, and also  
 þat þe pacient vse a gode gouernaylle: as drynkinge gode wyn &  
 clere & lyzt, & he mote leuen red wyn and trobyde & pykke wyn;  
 28 & he may eten gode flesch, as motoun of a weþire, kyde flesch  
 sokkyng, Capouns, hennys, Chykenys, partryches, fesauntes, &  
 smale briddes, & he moste leuyn beffys flesch, gotys flesch, hertys  
 flesch, harys flesch, goses, dokys, & alle grete briddys. þat lyuen  
 32 in watrye places, & alle salt þyng & acute þyng: as garlyke,  
 Oynouns, vynegre, &c., þat<sup>\*</sup> þe syke men mowe lyuen þe lengere vpon

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[f. 65 b]



þe sike man may lyue þe lengere vpon erþe / Neþeles if vlcus be ryȝt  
 foul & haue nouȝt so greet malice as a cankre, of þe which vlcus I  
 haue told tofore may be curid wiþ poudre of affadillis, and aftirward  
 weel be clensid ; & for þat þis vlcus <sup>1</sup>þat was so foul may be heclid / 4  
 Rogeryn and Rowland & manye opere settide in her bokis þe cure  
 of a cankre, þouȝ þat he be in a senewey place, & þei seien þat þei  
 han heclid him / But vndirstonde weel for certeyn, þat an olde  
 cankre mai not be heclid bi noon oper wey, but bi þe same wey þat 8  
 I haue seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle / & if þat þou dredist  
 wheþer þat it be a symple vlcus or a cankre & a foul, for þe signes  
 & þe tokenes tofore seid þeþ doutis, bigynne to mortifie it wiþ sum  
 maner of poudre : as wiþ poudre of affadillis, & bi my witt poudre 12  
 of erbe robert<sup>2</sup> / & loke aftirward þe prosis of þi worchinge seiþ  
 þis boke<sup>3</sup> / For if þat he be a uerry cankre, þou schalt se þe more  
 þou woldist clense him, þe more his malice schal wexen / & if he  
 be not a cankre, he schal be clensid ryȝt as an vlcus / Whanne þat 16  
 þou seest þe wexynge of a cankre & his malice agmenten, ceesse  
 from þe verry cure & turne aȝen to þe forseid cure of þe oymnent  
 of tutie, þe which þat palip þe cankre. For & þou bisie þee to

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 50]

Rogeryn  
 and Roland  
 pretended to  
 have healed  
 old cancers.

In doubtful  
 cases rub  
 with a pow-  
 der ;

in the case of  
 cancer the  
 patient will  
 grow worse.

<sup>2</sup> *erbe robert*, insertion of the scribe. *Geranium Robertianum*. See *Prior*, p. 113. Cronenburg. *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, a. 1555, fol. 106, A. Ruprechtskraut : *Roberti herba* (*Geranii species*).

<sup>3</sup> *seiþ þis booke*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

erthe. Napeles ȝif vlcus be ryȝt foul & hath nouȝt so gret malys as 20  
 a cancre, off þe whyche Vlcus y haue tolde tofore, may ben y-curyde  
 wiþ poudre of affedylle, and afterwarde wel be clansyde, & for þat  
 þis Vlcus þat was so foul may be helyde. Rogeryne & Rouland  
 & manye opere settyde in here bokys þe cure of þe cancre, þowȝ 24  
 þat he be in a synwy place, & þey siggen þat þey haue helyde hym.  
 But vndirstande wel for certeyne, þat an olde cancre may noȝt ben  
 helyde by none opere wey, bote by þe same wey, whiche þat y haue  
 seyde in þe bygynnyng of þys chapyteH. & ȝif þat þou dredyst, 28  
 wheþere þat yt be a cancre opere a symple Vlcus & a foul, for þe  
 signes & þe toknys tofore seyde þeþ doutes, begynne to mortefye  
 yt wiþ sum maner poudre as wiþ poudre of affodylles, & loke after-  
 warde þe processe of þy worchyng ; ffor ȝif þat he be a verrey 32  
 cancre þou schalt se, þe more þou woldyste clansen hym þe more  
 hys malys schal waxen, and ȝif he be noȝt a cancre, he schal be  
 clansyde ryȝt as an Vlcus. Whanne þat þou seste þe waxyng <sup>4</sup>of  
 þe cancre & hys malys augmenten, sese fro þe verrey cure & turne 36  
 ageyne to þe forseide cure of þe oymnement of tuetye, whiche þat  
 palyth þe cancre. ffor & þou bysy þe to cure þe cancre, & þou pro-

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 66 a]

cure þe cankre, & þou procede in þi cure, þou schortist þe pacientis lijf / & if þou palist, þou lenkþist his lijf /

4 **T**he .xiiij chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste tretis is for to remeue causis þat letten þe cure of olde woundis /

[lf. 50, bk.]

¶ Cap<sup>m</sup>  
xiiij<sup>m</sup>

I tolde þee aboue in þe general chapitle of olde woundis cause whiche þat letten olde woundis to be heelid / & also I tolde þe techinge plenerliche þat ben nessessarie to remeue ech sengle cause þat is nessessarie, how þat alle maner causis þat letten mai be don away bi a good surgien & a wijs ; so þat þou ioynest þis chapitle wiþ þe opere chapitle tofore seid, þou schalt han a pleyner techinge.

12 If þat þe bodi be ful of olde humouris eiper in þe idropisie, loke þat he may be heelid of pilke disposicioun, & þanne heele him if þat þou canst / &<sup>1</sup> if þat he be not ful of olde humouris whiche þat neden no curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne traueile not in deueyn<sup>2</sup>

16 þe sike man neipir wiþ medicyns corosiuus, ne wiþ kuttyng, ne with puttyng into þe woundis greete tentis ; but do aboue þe vlcus lyt

If a patient is hydroptic or cachectic, his condition must first be improved,

<sup>1</sup> The translator, perhaps intentionally, altered his original : si non (seis), pette physicum qui curationem illius dispositionis faciat.

<sup>2</sup> in deueyn = in veyn.

cede in thy cure, þou schortest þe pacientes lyff. And 3if þou palest þou lengthiste hys lyff.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

20 ¶ Cap. xiiij of þe bridde techyng of þe furste tretys, is forto remefe causes þat latten þe cure of olde woundys.

¶ I tolde þe aboue in þe general Chaptyle of olde Woundes, causes whiche þat latteþ olde woundys to by helyde. And also y telde þe techynges plenerlyche þat beþ necessarye to remywe eche sengle cause, þat is necessarye to be done away. And now y schal in þis specyal chaptyle teche, how þat alle manere cause þat lettyth may be done away by a gode surgyne & a wyse, so þat 3if þou joynest þis chapitele with þe opere chapyteH to fore scyde, þou schalt han a plener techyng. 3if þat þe body be ful of elde humores, opere in þe dropsye ; loke 3if þat he may be helyde of pilke disposicioun, & þenne hele hym 3if þat þou canst, and 3if þat he be nozt ful of elde humorys ; whiche þat nedyth to curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne traueyle nozt in deueyne þe syke man, nowþere with medicines corosifes, ne with kuttynges, ne with puttynges into þe wounde grete tentys ; but do aboffe þe Vlcus lyzte mundrycatyfes & swote

and in the  
mean time  
only mild  
mundificatis  
applied.

[I. ff. 51<sup>a</sup>]

The same  
must be done  
if the liver or  
the spleen is  
bad.

If the patient  
has too much  
blood,

use phlebot-  
omy.

mundificatiuis & swete smellynge, þat kepib þe membre lytliche  
clene þat it stynke not / & whanne þat he is keuerid from an yuel  
disposicioun, thanne turne azen to þe principal cure / & þis same  
þing<sup>1</sup> I saye of yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere of what maner cause 4  
þat he be enfeblid; þe same I saye of þe splene / But if þese  
tweyne ben in her kyndely disposicioun, olde woundis moun not be  
heelid. If<sup>2</sup> þat greet multitude of blood lettib, þat may be knowen  
bi ful replacioun of þe veines of al þe bodi, bi reednesse & exten- 8  
cioun of þe face, bi swetnes of þe mouþ, bi flatings<sup>3</sup> / Whanne þat a  
man is fastynge, bi heuynes of þe browis, & bi zongt age, & his  
complexioun is hoot & moist, & þat he hap vsid in his dietynge  
wijn and fleisch; & make him þanne be lete blood of þe veyne þe 12  
which þat bryngib norischinge to þe lyme, & aftirward of þe veyne  
þat mai best voiden þe membre þat is hurt / & if þat þe blood  
trespace oonly in qualite, amende him as if þat he be to hoot, voide  
him a litil & diete him with colde metis & stiptik. & aftirward 16  
procede forþ in alle maner opir causis as it is told in þe general  
chapitle, takynge hede þat þer ben summe maner medicyns whiche  
þat ben drynge & clensynge, & han a priuy<sup>4</sup> propirte to consowde

<sup>2</sup> if above line.

<sup>3</sup> *flating*, Add. MS. *wlattinge*. See Wright Wü. O.E. *wlatung*.

<sup>4</sup> *privy*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, *pryway*, *occultus*.

<sup>a</sup> Heading to this page: *Causes þat lettes þe cure off old woundes*.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 66<sup>b</sup>]

smellynge þat kepyth the membre lyztliche clene, þat he stynke 20  
noz. And whanne þat he is curyde from an yuele disposicioun,  
turne azeine to þe princypal cure; & þis same þynge y sugge of  
yuele disposicioun of þe lyfere, of what manere cause þat þe  
enfebylde; þe same y sigge of the spleen, ffor but 3if þese tweyne 24  
ben in here kendlye dysposicioun, olde woundes mowe nozt ben  
helyde. 3if þat grete multitude off blode lette þe, þat may be  
knowe by ful replacioun of þe veynes of alle þe body, by rednesse  
& extension of þe face, be swetnesse of þe mouth, be wlattinge, 28  
whenne þat a man ys fastynge, by<sup>5</sup> heuynesse of þe browys, & by  
zonge age, & þat hys complexoun ys hot & moyst, and þat he hath  
y-vsyde in hys dyotyng wyn & flesch, and þenne make hym be  
lete blode on þe veyne, whiche þat bryngeth norysschyng to þe 32  
lyme, & afterwarde of the Veyne þat may beste voyden þe membre  
þat ys y-hurt. And 3if þat þe blode trepasse onlye in qualyte,  
amende hym as 3if þat he be to hot, voyde hym a lytel & dyote  
hym wip colde metys & styptyke. And afterwarde procede forth in 36  
alle opere manere cases as it ys tolde in þe generall chapytel, takynge  
hede þat þere ben sum manere medycines, whiche þat bep dryzinge  
& clansynge, & haue a prefe proprete to consowde olde woundys,



olde woundis whiche þat<sup>t</sup> ben difficult<sup>t</sup> to be consowdid; of þe  
 whiche medicyns summe ben symple & summe <sup>1</sup>ben compouned / [<sup>1</sup> If. 51, bk.]  
 Symple ben: limature of iren, flour of bras brent, vitriol leed Simple con-  
 4 brent, & alle scharpe corosiuus if þat þei ben brent<sup>t</sup>; for þat þei solidatifs.  
 han vertu more to consowden, & also her corisoun is lessid / þis is  
 a medicyn compouned: take floris<sup>2</sup> eris, limature of bras ana. 3 j. a compound  
 litarge of gold, litarge of siluir, 3 .viij. gumme of cipresse, 3 .iiij. consoledatiff  
 8 sal gemme,<sup>3</sup> 3 .ij. aristologia I-brent<sup>t</sup> smal to poudre of franken-  
 cense, ana. 3 .v. wex & oile of mirtill þat suffisib // //

**T**he .xv. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of a crampe þat cometh to a wounde / ¶ Capm.  
xv.

- 12 Nessessarie þing<sup>t</sup> is to a surgian to knowe þe causis of a crampe,  
 þe which þat cometh to a wounde þat schulde be heelid, & also þat  
 he knowe þe disposicioun of him þat haþ þe crampe, & also what  
 þing<sup>t</sup> þat þe crampe is, þat he mowe resonabliche hele þe crampe /  
 16 þe crampe is a sijknis cordous eijer neruous, in þe which sijknis Cramp is a  
 cordis & þe senewis weren drawen to her bigynnyng; of þe whiche contraction  
 drawyng þat ben .ij. causis coniunct: þe toon is repleccioun of þe of the tendons  
or nerves  
arising from

<sup>2</sup> Lat. flor. æris.

<sup>3</sup> sal gemme. A Salt so named, from its Transparent and Crystalline  
 Brightness.—Kersey.

- whiche þat beþ deffykyl to be consoudyde, of þe whyche medycines Add. MS.  
 20 some beþ symple & some beþ componed. Symple beþ: lymature 12,056.  
 of bras, lymature of Iren, floure of bras brent; vytreol rede y-brent,  
 and alle scharpe corosifes, 3if þat þey ben y-brent. ffor þat þey han  
 þe more vertue to consouden, and al so here corosion ys y-lasyde.  
 24 þis ys a medycine componyde: R. floris eris, lymature of bras ana  
 .3. j., litarge of gold, litarge of syluere ana. 3. viij., gumme of cypresse  
 .3. iiij, sal gemme .3. ij, Aristologie I-brende, smal poudre of frank  
 Ensence ana. 3. v., wax & oyle of myrtyne þat suffyseþ.

- 28 ¶ Cap. XV. off the þridde techyng of þe ffirste tretys  
 is off a Crawmpe, that comyth to a Wounde.

- Necessarye thyng<sup>t</sup> ys a surgyne, to knowe þe causys of þe  
 crampe whiche þat comyth to a wounde þat scholde ben y-helyde,  
 32 and also þat he knowe þe dysposicioun of hym þat haþ þe crampe.  
 And also what þynge þe crampe ys, þat he mowe resonablyche hele  
 þe crampe. The crampe ys a seknesse cordouse, opere ellys neruose,  
 in the whiche syknesse þe cordes & þe synwes were drawyne to  
 36 here bygynnyng; of þe whiche drawyng þere beþ tweye causes

repletion or  
inanition.  
[<sup>2</sup> lf. 52.]

Repletion oc-  
curs after

- .1.  
great pain,
- .2.  
cold,
- .3.  
putrefaction.

Cramp must  
be prevented  
in three  
ways:

- .1.
- .2.
- .3.

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 52, bk.]

as it is diffi-  
cult to heal.

senewe, þe opere of þe corde, þe oper is inanisioun.<sup>1</sup> He þat<sup>1</sup> is of in-anisioun,<sup>2</sup> ofte tymes he haþ a cause goynge tofore as to myche euacuacioun of blood eiper of sum oper þing<sup>1</sup>, as to longe affliccioun for long<sup>1</sup> akþe, or ellis for þe appetite of þe sike man haþ ben longe<sup>4</sup> tyme enfeblid; & þis comeþ lilit & lilit, & þe crampe þat<sup>1</sup> comeþ of boþe þese causis may not<sup>1</sup> be heelid, & he þat<sup>1</sup> comeþ of replecioun haþ oon of þe .iij. causis goynge tofore / þe firste cause is to greet<sup>1</sup> akþe / þe .ij. cause is cold / & þe .iij. cause is putrifaccioun eiper<sup>8</sup> rotynge / & þow3 þat<sup>1</sup> oon sengle cause sumtyme suffice to make a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causis happen to come togidres / And þis crampe may be heelid or þat<sup>1</sup> he be confermed, & aftir þat<sup>1</sup> he is confermed seelden or neuere / A surgian muste þanne be bisy in al<sup>12</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> he myzte, þat<sup>1</sup> a crampe ne wexe not<sup>1</sup> in þe wounde þat<sup>1</sup> schulde be heelid, wiþ obuacioun<sup>3</sup> defendinge þe lyme, þat<sup>1</sup> noon of þe .iij. causis tofore seid ne come nouzt into þe wounde: þe oon is in defendyng þe lyme from putrifaccioun / þe toþere is for kepyng þe<sup>16</sup> lyme fro rotynge / þe þridde is to gouerne him from a greet<sup>1</sup> akyng / for it<sup>1</sup> is more sikir to defende þat<sup>1</sup> a crampe<sup>4</sup> ne come not<sup>1</sup>, þanne aftir þat<sup>1</sup> he is come with medicyns þat<sup>1</sup> is douteful or dredeful to

<sup>1</sup> *inanisioun*, Lat. *inanitio*. Vigo. Interpretation. "*Inanition*, emptyng."

<sup>3</sup> *obuacioun*, Lat. *cum obuiatione defensiuorum*.

Add. MS. 12,056. *conjuncte*: þe on ys repletion of þe synwe, opere of þe corde, þe opere<sup>20</sup> is Inanysion. He þat ys in<sup>5</sup> auision ofte tymes haþ a cause goynge to fore, <sup>6</sup>as to myche euacuacioun of blod, opere of sum othire thyng; as to longe affliccioun for longe akþe, opere ellys, for þe Appetite of the syke man hath be longe tyme enfeiblyde; & þis<sup>24</sup> comyþ lytel & lyteþ, and þe crampe þat comyþ of boþe þese causys may nozt ben helyde. And he þat comyþ of repletion hath on of þre causys goynge tofore: þe firste cause ys to grete akþe, þe secunde cause ys colde, þe þridde ys putrefaccioun oper rotynge; <sup>28</sup> and þow3 þat one sengle cause sumtyme suffiseth to maken a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causes happe to come togedres. And þis crampe may ben y-helyde ere þat he be comfermyde, & after þat he ys con-fermyde selden opere neffere. A surgyne moste þenne be busye; <sup>32</sup> in alle þat he myzte, þat a crampe no wexe nozt in þe wounde þat scholde be helyde, wiþ obuacion dyffendyng þat none of þe þre causes tofore seyde ne come nozte to þe wounde; þe one ys in defendyng þe lyme from putrefaccioun, þe opere is in kepyng þe lyme <sup>36</sup> from rotenesse, þe þridde is to gouerne hym from gret akyng; ffor it is more sykere to dyffende, þat a crampe ne come nozt, þenne aftere þat he ys come with medycine þat is doutes opere dredful to

<sup>5</sup> Scribal mistake.



do away / For if a feuere come to an heed or to a senewe þat  
is woundid, & if þe crampe folowe, euermore it is deedliche.

- Take hede þanne to aswage þe akþe wiþ anyntyng of oile of  
4 rosis, in doynge as I haue seid afore in þe chapitle of senewis þat  
ben woundid; for ofte tymes þe crampe comeþ fro woundis þat  
ben *maad* in þe heed or ellis in þe senewe / & if þat akþe were so  
greet, þat makip þe crampe for þe prickynge of a senewe or ellis of  
8 a corde / & if þat þou myztist nouzt defende þe crampe neiþir wiþ  
blood letynge, neiþer wiþ ventusyng, ne wiþ clisterie, ne wiþ sup-  
positorie, ne wiþ defensif in anyntyng þe necke, ne þe grynde,  
ne þe arm hoolis, þanne it is nessessarie þat þou kutte al atwo þilke  
12 senewe or þilke corde þat is prickid, þouþ þat þe felynge or þe  
meuyng of þe lyme to whom þilke senewe or þilke corde seruþ in  
parti or in al be lost / For it is bettere þat a man lese þe felynge &  
þe meuyng of a lyme, þan for to deie. But it is bettere, if þat  
16 þou cowdist, to kepe a man þer-fro *with* opere<sup>1</sup> medicyns þan þat þe  
senewe or þe corde be kutt al atwo. & if<sup>2</sup> þat þou were not at  
þe bigynnyng, & þou fyndist a man hauynge þe crampe for a  
wounde, do þou as I dide at melain. þer was a scoler of myn þat  
20 was a surgian þat was clepid Olyuer, which þat curide a scheþere

Treatment of  
cramp.

Allay the suf-  
fering with  
an ointment,

if necessary,  
cut the in-  
jured nerve  
or tendon.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 53]

Nota.

<sup>2</sup> if, above line.

- don awaye, Ffor 3if þat a ffeuyre come to an hed opere to a synwe  
þat ys y-woundyde, & þe crampe folwe eyre more, yt ys dedlyche.  
Take hede þenne to aswage þe akþe *with* anyngtyng of oyle of  
24 rosys, and in doynge as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of synwes  
þat beþ y-woundyde; ffor ofte tymes þe crampe comyth for woundys,  
þat beþ made in þe hed opere ellis<sup>3</sup> in þe synwe: And 3if þat akþe  
were so grete, þat makyth a crampe for þe prikyng off a synwe opere  
28 ellys of a corde, and 3if þou myztest nozt deffende þe crampe, newhere  
wiþ blode letynge, ne wiþ ventosynge, ne wiþ clysterye, ne wiþ sup-  
positorie, ne *with* defensif in anyntyng þe nekke, ne þe grynde, ne þe  
arme holys, þenne yt is necessarie þat þou kytte alle atwo þilke synwe  
32 opere corde þat is y-prikyde, þowþ þat þe ffelynge opere þe meffynge  
of þe lyme, to whom þilke synwe opere corde servyde, in party oper  
in al be loste. Ffor yt is bettyre<sup>4</sup> þat a man lese þe felynge & þe  
meffynge of a lyme þenne þawþ þat he deyze. But yt is bettyre 3if  
36 þat þou coupest kepen a man *with* opere manere medycines, þenne  
þat þe synwe opere corde be y-kutte al atwo. And 3if þat þou were  
nozt at þe bygynnyng, and þou fyndest a man hauynge a crampe  
for a wounde, do þou as y dyde at Melan. þere was a Scolere of  
40 myne þat was a Surgyne þat was y-clepyde Olyfere, whyche þat

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 67 b]

<sup>3</sup> ellis, above line.



Case of a shepherd who had hurt his head.

The wound was closed too soon, and cramp ensued.

Lanfranc found the patient dying.

[\* If. 53, bk.]

He reopened the wound,

anointed

of a wounde þat he hadde in þe heed; & bi pilke wounde þe pannicle  
ouþir þe skyn þat keueriþ þe brayn panne þat is vnder þe fleisch  
was hurt, & neuer-pe-lattere þe brayn panne was not hurt. &  
pilke leche, or þanne he hadde *perfiztlich* purified pilke pannicle,<sup>4</sup>  
sowdide þe wounde wiþoutforþ<sup>1</sup>; & whanne pilke wounde was  
sowdid, þe pannicle þat was not weel heelid hadde a dedein<sup>2</sup> &  
was cause of gendrynge of a crampe in pilke wounde. & at þe  
laste I was clepid to þe sike man, & I foond him hauynge þe  
crampe, & wiþ þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostymes aboute  
his face—& þat is an yuele tokene in þe woundis of þe heed—&  
þanne I demede him for deed / Nepeles at þe instaunce of hise  
freendis I wolde asaie þe worchinge of kynde vpon resoun; I made<sup>3</sup>  
his heed to be schauē,<sup>3</sup> & I kutte azen þe wounde þat was<sup>4</sup> con-  
sowdid wiþ a rasour to þe deppe of þe same wounde, & aftirward I  
fulfillide þe wounde with hoot oile of rosis, & I anoyntide al þe  
heed with þe same oile of rosis & a litil vynegre medlid togidere, & I  
I anoyntide þe nolle & þe necke oonly wiþ oile of rosis, & I dide  
on þe wounde þe zelke of an ey wiþ oile of rosis, and I boond al

<sup>1</sup> *wiþoutforþ*, extrinsecus, from without.

<sup>2</sup> *dedein*, Lat. *panniculus indignatus causa fuit spasmi*. The translator misunderstood *indignatus*, and gives us an "indignant pannicle." *indignatus*, Med. Lat. damaged, hurt. See Tommas. s. v. *indegnare* 3.—Compare þe *ludych lorde*—*hade dedayn of þat dede*.—Allit. Poems, B. 74.

<sup>3</sup> *I made his hed to be schauē*, *abradi caput feci*.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

curyde a schepere of a wounde þat he hadde in the hed; & by pilke  
wounde þe pannycle opere þe skyn þat keueryth þe breyne panne, 20  
þat is vndire þe fflesch, was y-hurt, & nere þe latere þe breyn panne  
was nozt y-hurt. & pilke leche, ere þanne he hadde *perfytyliche*  
y-purified þylke pannycle, soudyde þe wounde *withouten* forth; &  
whanne þat pilke wounde was y-sowdyde, þe pannycle þat was nozt 24  
wel helyde hadde a dedeyne, & was cause of engendrynge of a  
crampe in pilke wounde. And at þe laste y was clepyde to pilke  
syke man, & y fonde hym habbynge þe crampe, & with þe crampe  
he hadde manye smale enpostemes aboute hys face, & þat ys an 28  
yuele tokne in þe woundys of þe hed, and þenne y demyde hym for  
ded. Napeles at þe instaunce of hys frendys y þat wolde assaye þe  
worchyng of kynde vpon resoun, I made hys hed ben y-schauē, and  
y kutte azeyne þe wounde, þat was *consowdid*, with a rasoure to þe 32  
deppe of þe same wounde, & afterwarde y fulfylde pilke wounde  
with hote oyle of rosys, & y anoyntede alle þe hed with þe same  
oyle of roses & a lyteH vynegre y-medlyde togedre, & y anoyntede þe  
nolle & þe nekke only wiþ oyle of rosys, and y dyde on þe wounde 36  
þe 3olke of an eye with oyle of rosys, and y bonde alle þe hed wiþ a

- þe heed wip a boond leiynge þer vndir herdis<sup>1</sup> or tow3 smal I tosid, and band-  
and I openede his moup & putte into his moup þe broþ maad of a head,  
chiken, wip comyn & also wip cleer wyñ medlid wip myche water; on  
4 þe morowe I turnede aȝen & I found þe sike of<sup>1</sup> bettere disposicioun, gave  
& I openede bettere his moup, & he spak bettere; nepeles I found strengthen-  
þe wounde drie, & þanne I dide ofte tymes þe same medicyn & þe ing nourish-  
same oynture. In þe þridde dai þe skyn of þe heed was maad ment,  
8 moist, þe which was bifore as drie as þe skyn hadde be rostid at þe  
fier, & in so miche<sup>2</sup> þe skyn was maad þinne, þat þer was no þing  
bitwene þe skyn & þe brayn panne. & at þe laste þe wounde quyt-  
turide wip contynuaunce of þe same cure tofore seid, & in þis<sup>3</sup> maner [3 lf. 54j]  
12 þe zonge man was heclid boþe of þe crampe & also of þe wounde / and so cured  
But þilke crampe was wipoute feure; for I may not þenke þat I the patient.  
haue seen a feure in þe woundes of þe heed, or ellis of þe senewis If fever occurs  
prickid a crampe, þat nouȝt aȝenstondynge remedie eiper medicyns death ensues.  
16 þe pacient þat hadde þe crampe diede / My beste counseil is to lete  
him blood in þe bigynnyng þat haþ þe crampe, namely, & he be Bleed the  
strong & replete, & if þat he haue not bled ynouȝ at his woundis; patient,  
& anoynte his nolle & his necke wip hoote oynementis as wip oile use oint-  
ments,
- <sup>1</sup> herdis. See Wright Wü. 614. 2. "Stupa, herdes." <sup>2</sup> þat, inserted.

- 20 bonde leggyng þere undyre hurdys opere tow3 smal tosyde, and Add. MS.  
y. opnyde hys mouth & put into hys mouth þe broth of a chyken 12,056.  
y-made with comyn, and also clere wyn y-medlyde with myche  
watyre. On þe morwe y turnyde aȝeyne & y fonde þe syke of  
24 bettyre dysposicioun, & he opnyde bettyre hys mouth, & he spak  
bettyre; & napeles<sup>4</sup> y fonde þe wounde drye, & þenne y dede ofte [4 fol. 68 a]  
sonys þe same medicine & þe same vincture. In þe þridde day þe  
skyn of þe hed was y-mad moyst, whyche þat was to forne as drye  
28 as a skyn hadde be rostyde to þe fyre, and in so myche þe skyn was  
y-made þunne, þat þere was noþyng betwene þe skyn & þe breyne  
panne. & at þe laste þe wounde quytteride wip contynewaunce of þe  
same cure tofore seyde, & in þis manere þe zonge man was helyde  
32 boþe of þe crampe & eke of þe wounde. But þilke crampe was with-  
outen fleure; for y ne may not þynke þat y haue seyn<sup>5</sup> a fleure  
in þe woundes of synwes, opere ellys of þe hed precede a crampe, þat  
not aȝeyne stondynge medeye / opere medycyns þe pacient þat  
36 hadde þe crampe ne deyede. My beste conseyle is to letyn hym blod  
in the bygynning þat haþ þe crampe, namly, & he be stronge &  
replete, and ȝif þat he haue nouȝt bled ynouȝ at hys wounde; and  
anoynte hys nolle & hys nekke wip hote oynementys, as with oyle of

<sup>5</sup> a wounde struck through after seyn.



**Nota.** of nardine, enforbine, oile of rue,<sup>1</sup> lilijs *et cetera* / & also to make  
small cauteries, smale cauteries punctale, pat<sup>1</sup> is to seie as smal as þe eende of a  
bandages. pricke, bitwene ech whirlebon of þe necke, so neuere-þe-lattere pat<sup>1</sup>  
 þe cauterie go not ouer depe / Aftirward bynde long<sup>1</sup> wolle to his 4  
 heed bihynde & to his necke & to hise schuldris, & do þeron hoot<sup>1</sup>  
 oile, & leie him in a soft bed & lete him be in reste & in pees /  
 But þer ben summe pat<sup>1</sup> setten in her bookis medicyns pat<sup>1</sup> pro-  
 uoken þe feueris; for pat<sup>1</sup> ypocras techip in .iiij<sup>to</sup> afforismoris: a 8  
**spasmo<sup>2</sup> vel te<sup>3</sup>tano habito febre<sup>4</sup> superueniente soluit<sup>5</sup> egritudi-**  
**nem** / pat<sup>1</sup> is to seie: if pat<sup>1</sup> a man haue a crampe or ellis a tetane  
 pat<sup>1</sup> is a sijknis pat<sup>1</sup> halt<sup>1</sup> þe membre lich streit<sup>1</sup> on boþe sidis as a  
 crampe halt<sup>1</sup> þe oon side of þe membre & þe feure come on pilke 12  
 crampe eipir pilke tetane, he distrieþ þe crampe eipir þe sijknis; &  
 also þei anynte wiþ to hoot<sup>1</sup> an oynement<sup>1</sup> to prouoke þe feueres, þe  
 which þing<sup>1</sup> I ne apreue not in þe crampe of a wounde þouþ pat<sup>1</sup>  
 pilke oynement<sup>1</sup> myzte be profitable in a crampe wipoute wounde, & 16  
 where pat<sup>1</sup> humouris abounde, namely, if it be fleume.

he is wrong,  
 if the cramp  
 comes from a  
 wound.

Signs (sym-  
 toms) of  
 cramp.  
 General signs.

Summe ben general tokenes & summe ben special of schewynge  
 of þe crampe / General tokenes ben þese: to greet<sup>1</sup> akþe, crokidnes<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> rue, ruta. Turner, *Herbal*, ii. 122 b. Ruta is named in Greke Pega-  
 mon, in English Rue or herbe grace, in French rue de gardin, in Dutch  
 Weinraut.

<sup>2</sup> Cramp and Tetanus. See *Notes*.

<sup>4</sup> febre superueniente, error for febris superueniens.

<sup>5</sup> crokidness, Lat. obliquitas.

Add. MS. 12,056. nardyne, enforbine, Oyle rewe, lylyes &c., and also to make smale 20  
 cauteryes punctales, pat is to sigge as smale as þe ende of a prykke,  
 bytwene euery whirlebone of þe nekke, so neuere þe latere pat þe  
 cauterye go nouzt ouere depe. Afterwarde bynde longe wolle to  
 hys hed be hynde, & to his nekke, & to his schuldres, & do þere 24  
 on hote oyle, & leye hym in a softe bed, & lete hym ben in reste &  
 in pees. But þere be summe pat setten in here bokys medycines,  
 pat provocen þe ffuerys; for pat ypocras techyth in quarto afforismorum: a  
**spasmo vel detano habito febre superueniente soluit<sup>5</sup> egritudinem** pat ys to sigge;  
 28 þif pat a man haff þe crampe, opere  
 ellys a tetane, pat is a syknesse pat halt the membre y-lyche streyt  
 on boþe þe sydes, as a crampe halte þe on syde of þe membre, & þe  
 ffuere come on pilke crampe opere pilke tetane, he distroyeth þe 32  
 crampe opere þe seknesse, and also þey anynte wiþ to hote oynement  
 to prouoke þe ffuerys, þe whyche þynge y ne apreft<sup>1</sup> nouzt in  
 þe crampe of a wounde, þowþ pat pilke oynement myzte be profitable  
 in a crampe withouten<sup>6</sup> wounde, & where pat humores habounde, 36  
 namlye, þif yt be flewme. Somme ben general toknys, & some be  
 special of schewynge of a crampe. General toknys ben þese: to

[<sup>6</sup> fol. 68 b]



- of ȝen, & crokidnes of schewynge, & crokidnes of eeris, of þe nose  
 prillis, & of þe lippis, & whanne þat a man may not speke, & þe  
 cheke be constreyned & difficulte of meuyng, and namely, of  
 4 þe necke, & ofte constreynynge togidere, & a sodeyn schakyng  
 togidere. Special signes maken oon of þre maner of crampis: þe Special signs.  
 toon is clepid amprostonos<sup>1</sup>, þe toþer empistenos<sup>2</sup>, þe .iiij. tetanus / .1.  
.2.  
.3.  
 In þis maner of crampe þat is clepid amprostonos, þe senewis tofore [2 17. 55]  
 8 ben drawe togidere / þe fore partie of þe heed is crokid, þe sike amprostonos  
 man may not heuen it vp, he berip his chyn as it lijþ on his brest,  
 & his mouþ is streit & he may not opene it, & þe fyngris of his  
 hand ben folden into his fist / & in empistonies þe necke is crokid, Empistonos.  
 12 his mouþ is open, hise chekis ben open, & þe fyngris of his hand  
 ben streyned backward / & þe tetane halt þe boþe parties of þe Tetanus.  
 body, so þat he may not turne his necke to no partie but al þe  
 bodi is stif & streyned, as a staf were putt yn at his necke & out  
 16 at his ers / Alle þese tokenes or ellis summe of hem schewip þe  
 disposicioun of him þat haþ þe crampe / And whanne þat þese  
 tokenes fallen in þe wounde of þe heed, or ellis of a senewe þei  
 techen bettere þe leche to fle from þe sike man þan on him to abide  
 20 & cure /

<sup>1</sup> Latin, *Emprosthotonos*.<sup>2</sup> Latin, *Opisthotonos*.

- gret akþe, crokydnesse of eyȝen, & crokydnesse of erys of nose þreth Add. MS.  
 & of lyppes, & whenne þat a man may not speke, & þe chekys ben 12,056.  
 constreyned, & dyficulte of swolwynge, & diffyculte of mevyng,  
 24 namlye of þe nekke, & ofte constreynynge togedre, & sodeyne  
 schakyng togedire. Special signes maken one of þre manere of  
 crampes: þe on ys y-clepyde **Emprostonos**, þe oþere **Empistonos**, þe  
 þridde **tetanus**. In þese manere of crampe þat is clepyde Empros-  
 28 tonos þe synwes tofore be drawen togedire, þe fore party of þe hed  
 ys crokyde, ne þe syke man ne may not heffyn it vp, he berith hys  
 chyn as yt leye on hys brest; hys mouþ is streyte, ne he ne may  
 not opyne yt, and þe ffyngres of hys hande ben foldyde into hys  
 32 fust. And in Empistonos þe nekke ys crokyde, his mouþ is opyne,  
 his chekes bep opyne, & þe ffyngres of hys handys ben streyned  
 bakwarde, and þe tetane halt boþe þe partye of þe body, so þat he  
 may nouȝt turne hys nekke to non partie, but alle þe body is styffe  
 36 & streyned, as a staf were put in at hys hed & out at his ers. Alle  
 þese toknys oþere ellys sum of hem schewith þe disposicioun of hym  
 þat haþ þe crampe. And whanne þat þese toknys fallyn in þe  
 wounde of an hed oþere ellys of<sup>4</sup> a synwe, þey teche bettere þe leche  
 40 to fle from þe syke man, þenne on hym to abyde & cure. The firste

<sup>4</sup> of, above line.

¶ The firste tretis is cendid wip þe help of almyȝt god. Now with þe help of þe same, go to þe secunde /

¶ Cap.<sup>m</sup> j<sup>m</sup> **N**OW bigynneþ þe secunde tretis of particuler 4 woundis of membrs of office from þe heed to þe foot / and first bigynne at anotamie of þe heed /

[1 ff. 55, bk.]<sup>2</sup> Al þing<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>breffly ordeyned aftir my symple wið diuysynge, which þat<sup>t</sup> longiþ to þe firste tretis of þis booke which þat<sup>t</sup> holdiþ certeyn 8 rulis & techinge of surgerie vndir general chapitlis as we han bihiȝt<sup>t</sup> / now we wolen bigynne to treten of curis aftir þat<sup>t</sup> þe lymes ben in mannes bodi. & first<sup>t</sup> I wole bigynne at þe heed & at his anotamie, & so procede forþ to ech membre dyuysynge þe anotamie of ech 12 membre, & in ordeynynge þe curis of woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad in ech sngle membre. I seie þat<sup>t</sup> þe heed is maad of þre parties: of a fleischi partie, of a bony partie, & a brawni partie. þe fleischi 16 partie is aboue þe brayn panne, þe which þat<sup>t</sup> is maad of an hery skyn; & þilke skyn is fulfillid wip braynes in euery partie /

The head consists of three parts.

<sup>2</sup> Heading to this page: *Anotemy off þe hed & woundes off the same.* / Compare Vicary's *Anatomie*, ch. iii. p. 24.

Add. MS. 12,056. tretys y y-edyde wip helpe of almyȝtie god, now with þe helpe of<sup>3</sup> þe same y go to þe secunde.

¶ Now begynneþ þe secunde tretys off particuler 20 woundes of membrs of office from þe hede to þe ffoot, and ffirste y begynne at the Anotamye off the hed.

[1 fol. 69 a] Al thyng breffliche y-ordeynde, aftere þe devysynge of my 24 Symple wytt, whiche þat longith to þe firste tretys of this <sup>4</sup>boke whiche þat holdyth certeyne rulis & techynge off surgerie vndir general chapitelis, as we han byleyȝt. Now we wylle begynne to tretyn of certeyne cures, aftere þat þe lymes ben in mannys body. 28 & firste y wyl begynne at þe hed & at hys anotamye, & so þe processe forþ to eueryche membre devysynge þe Anotamye of euery membre, & in ordeynynge þe cures of woundys þat beþ made in eche sngle membre, I sigge þat þe hed ys made of þre partyes: of a 32 fleschy partye, a bony partye, and a braynie partye. þe flesch partye is aboue þe brayn panne, whiche þat is made of an herye skyn; & þilke skyn ys fulfylde with brawnys in euery place. þe

<sup>3</sup> MS. of twice.

þe heeris of þe heed weren for greet profite ordeyned þat neiþer cold ne hoot, ne schulde not sodeynli entre þe pōris of the skyn, & neuer-þe-lattere þat þe fumosite of þe heed myzte go out bi þe 4 poris þere as þe heer growiþ; & þe heed myzte be þe more semeloker, & þat þe colouris of þe heeris of dyuers men myzte schewen þe complecciouns of þe heedis //

The hair protects the brain, and adorns the head.

[1 lf. 56]

þe skyn þat is<sup>1</sup> aboute þe brayn panne is lacertose, & ful of picke 8 fleisch, þat he myzte wrie þe brayn panne, þat he schulde not fele sodeynliche to greet heete ne to greet cold. þe which skyn is maad of sutil predis of senewis þat comen fro þe brayn, & of veynes & of arteries sotilliche I-maad; & so þe skyn of þe heed is sotilliche 12 ioyned wiþ þe skyn of al þe bodi / & also þe skyn of þe heed is more pickere þan þe brain sculle, þat it schulde ben more rare<sup>2</sup> & more porose, þat is to seie, more ful of hoolis / þe lacertis of þe skyn proceden aftir þat þe goyng procediþ of þe heeris /

skyn.

is muscular, is made of fibrous cords and veins,

is thick and porous.

16 þe brayn panne is maad of manye boonys / þe firste summe,<sup>3</sup> þe whiche þat holdiþ þe prouitis þat longen to þe brayn panne, hap .ij. helpingis; oon helpinge is: pouz þat an hurtyng come to oon boon, neuere-þe-lattere he schulde not falle to alle þe boonys / þe secunde 20 help is, oon boon þat is to hard in oon partie ne schulde not be so

The skull consists of many bones for different reasons, as touching the skull itself.

<sup>2</sup> rare. Lat. rarus.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. Prima nanque summa . . .

herys off þe hed were for grete proffyte y-ordeynde, þat neiþere 12,056. Add. MS. colde ne hete ne scholde nozt sodeynliche entre þe pores of þe skyn, & neuere þe lattere þat þe fumosityte of þe hed myzte go out be þe 24 pores þere as þe here growyþ, and þat þe hed myzte be þe more semlykere, and þat þe coloure of þe herys myzte schewe þe complexioun of þe hed. þe skyn þat is abouten þe breyne panne ys lacertos & ful of þykke flesch, þat he myzte wreyen þe breyn panne, 28 þat he scholde nozt fele to sodeynlyche neiþere to grete hete ne to cold. þe whiche skyn ys made of sotyH predys of synwes þat comeþ from þe brayn & of veynis & of arteryes sotylliche y-mad; and so þe skyn of þe hed ys sotylliche y-Ioyned with þe skyn off 32 alle þe bodye, and also þe skyn of þe hed ys more þykkere þanne þe brayne scolle, þat it scholde be more rare & more porose þat is to sigge more ful of holys. þe lacertes of þe skyn proceden aftir þat þe goyng procedyþ of þe herys, þe brayn panne ys mad of manye 36 bonys. þe fyrste summe, whiche þat wiþholdyþ þe profites þat longyþ to þe brayn panne, hap tweye helpynges; on helpyng ys, þowz þat an hurtyng come to on bon, neuere þe latere he scholde nozt fallen to alle þe bonys; þe secunde helpe is þat on bon þat is 40 to harde in on partye, ne scholde nozt be so<sup>4</sup> hard in an opere

[4 fol. 69 b]



.2.  
the organs  
under the  
skull.

[1 lf. 56, bk.]

The sutures  
of the skull

a.  
form the  
ways for the  
velus,

b.  
let the nerves  
go out

c.  
and the  
fumosity,

d.  
support the  
dura mater  
and pia  
mater.

The brain  
pan is formed  
of two tables,

has seven  
bones.

I, Coronal.

hard in anopir partie. / þe secunde summe, þe which þat wiþhalt þe helpingis þat ben vndir þe brayn panne, haþ wiþinne him. iiij. helpingis; þe whiche helpingis ben ful maad by þe <sup>1</sup>semis þat ben of þe brayn panne; ne þe helpingis myzte not be maad, but if þat <sup>4</sup> þer were manye boonys / þe first<sup>t</sup> help is, þat þe veynes myzten go down bi þe semis of þe brayn panne berynge<sup>2</sup> norischinge to þe same brayn<sup>3</sup> / þe secunde help is, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myzte haue wey in goyng out / þe þridde help is, þat þe <sup>8</sup> fumes of þe brayn myzten haue wey of smokyng out / þe fourþe is, þat neiþer dura mater, ne pia mater, þat as þei ben hangid, ne myzte not greue þe brayn.

So þat þe brayn panne is maad of ij. smeþe lizt<sup>t</sup> tablis, þat oon <sup>12</sup> is aboue, þe toþir is byneþe / & þei ben sumwhat spongiours in þe myddis, & rare þat þe smoke of þe heete myzte bettere passe out & þei ben smeþe þat þei myzten not greue þe brayn / Dyuers men þat maken dyuers anotamie dyuyden þe brayn panne diuerslych / sum- <sup>16</sup> men noumbren mo boonys þan summe opir speken of / but soþenes is, þat þer ben .vj. & oon which þat susteyneþ þe sixte. þe firste boon is clepid, þe boon of þe forheed or ellis coronale, & he bigynneþ from þe browis & lastiþ to þe seem þat departiþ þe heed quarter. <sup>20</sup>

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts *þ*.

<sup>3</sup> panne after *brayn* cancelled.

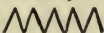
Add. MS.  
12,056.

partye. Secunde summe, whiche þat wiþhalt helpynges, þat bep vnder þe brayn panne, haþ wiþ hym iiij helpynges; þe whiche helpynges bep ful mad be þe semys þat bep of þe breyn panne. Ne þo helpynges ne myzte nozt be mad, but 3if þat þere were manye <sup>24</sup> bonys. þe firste helpe ys, þat þe veynes myzte go down by the semys of<sup>4</sup> þe brayn panne, berynge norosschyng to þe same brayn.

Secunde helpe ys þat þe synwes, þat comyth out of þe brayn, myzte habbe wey in goyng out. þe þridde helpe ys, þat þe fumes <sup>28</sup> of þe brayn myzte habbe wey of smokyng out. þe ffourþe ys, þat neiþere dura mater ne pia mater, þere as þey ben y-hongyde, ne myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Syttle þat þe breyne panne ys made of two smeþe lyzte tablys, þat one ys aboue & þe opere byneþe, & <sup>32</sup> þey be sumwhat spongyouse in þe myddel & rare, þat þe smokys of þe hed myzte þe bettyre passen out, & þey be smeþe þat þey myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Dyuerse men þat makyth dyuerse Anotamie deuydeþ þe breyn panne dyuerslyche. Somme nowmbryth mo <sup>36</sup> bonys, þenne summe opere spekyn of; but soþenesse ys that þere ben sixe; & one whyche þat susteyneþ þo sixe. þe ffyrste bon ys clepyde þe bon of þe<sup>5</sup> fforhed opere ellys coronale, & he bygynneþ from þe browys, & lastyth vnto þe seme þat departyth þe hed <sup>40</sup>

<sup>4</sup> of above line.

<sup>5</sup> þe above line.

- <sup>1</sup> & pilke is clepid coronale / þis boon haþ in sum maner of men a [1 lf. 57]  
 smal seem in foldynge of þe forheed, & þerfore sum men seyn  
 þat þer ben .ij. boonis. ij opir boonys ben ioyned with pilke boon  
 coronable in þe myddis of þe heed ouerþwert ouer; þat<sup>2</sup> þei ben  
 4 bounde togidere bi oon ioynture, þe which þat strecchip from bifore  
 to bihynde to þe lenkþe of þe heed, þe which is clepid sagittales,  
 by as myche as he is schape lik an arowe / & þese .ij. boonys ben  
 clepid nerualia bi-cause þat þe figure of þe seem þat is with þe  
 8 coronable is þe figure of a senewe eiper of a corde / þese boonys ben  
 in þe hizeste coppe of þe heed & byhynde in þe nolle þer is a boon  
 þe which is clepid alauda.<sup>3</sup> & it is maad in þe symilitude of þis : Λ ;  
 which þat is ioyned wiþ þe boones nerualibus tofore seid bi þe mene  
 12 of oon þan I-made to þe lijknes of þe boon tofore seid. & þese þre  
 semes whiche þat ioynen togidere þe .iiij. boonys tofore seid, ben  
 maad as it were two sawis, þe whiche teef ben ioyned, ech of hem  
 in opir in þis maner  / & þis ioynynge togidere of oon  
 16 boon wiþ anopir was maad bi-cause of inuamentis þat I haue told  
 to<sup>5</sup>for; þer is no boon ioyned with anoper as þese boonys ben. [3 lf. 57, bk.]

<sup>2</sup> þat insertion.

<sup>3</sup> Latin : "Quartum os est ex parte posteriori in puppi; et coniungitur cum prædictis nerualibus mediante una commissura ad modum literæ laudæ grecæ." The word *lauda* is a corruption of *lambda*.

<sup>4</sup> *augrim*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s.v. *algorithm*.

The sagittal suture unites the nerval bones (side bones), II, III.

IV. Occipital bone with the lambdoidal suture.  
figure in *augrim* <sup>4</sup>

- twarte offere. And pylke bon is y-clepyde **coronale**: þis bon hath Add. MS.  
 in some manere of men a smal seme in þe ffoldynge of þe fforhed, 12,056.  
 20 & þere fore sum men siggeþ þat þere beþ tweye bonys. Tweye  
 opere bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ pylke bon **coronale** in þe myden of  
 þe hed twarte offere, & þey ben y-bounde togedyre by one Iecture,  
 þe whiche þat strecchip from tofore to byhynde, by the lengthe  
 24 of þe hed, þe whiche ys y-clepyde **sagyttalis** by as myche as he  
 ys schapyde lyke an arwe. And þese tweye bonys beþ y-clepyde  
**Nerualia**, by cause of þe ffigure of the seme þat ys wiþ þe coronale,  
<sup>6</sup>ys þe ffigure of a synwe opere of a corde. And þese bonys ben in [5 fol. 70 a]  
 28 þe heyest coppe of the hed, and behynde in þe nolle þere ys a bon  
 whyche þat is y-clepyde **Alauda**, & ys y-made to þe Symilitude of  
 þis cyffre of Augrym Λ, whiche þat ys Ioynede with þe bonys  
 nerualibus tofore seyde, by þe mene of on 3em y-mad to þe lyknesse  
 32 of þe bon tofore seyde. & þese þre 3emes whiche þat Ioyneth to-  
 gedyre þe foure bonys to fore seyde, ben y-made as yt were tweye<sup>7</sup>  
 3awes, whos teth ioyned eche of hem in opere in thlys manere /  
**WIDOW** & þis ioynynge togedire of on bon with an oper was y-made  
 36 by-cause Iuamentes þat y haue tolde befor; þere nys no bon  
 y-ioynede with an opere as þese bonys ben. Undire þe bon þat ys

<sup>7</sup> MS. *tweye* twice.



V. Tassillus  
(Basilar bone)  
supports all  
the other  
bones.

VI, VII.  
Temporal  
bones (men-  
dosa); one  
portion is  
called os  
petrosuun.

The skull has  
seven bones,

three true  
sutures,  
[3 lf. 58]

Vndir þe boon þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid alauda, þer is a ful hard boon & holid in þe myddil, þe which boon susteyneþ alle þe boonys of þe heed. þe which boon is clepid passillus, & he is ioyned byneþe wiþ þe firste boon of þe nake. þe schap of þe coniunccioun of þe .v. boonis of 4 þe heed is in þis maner **ERM**. Boþe on þe riȝt side & on þe lift side of þe forseid boonys, whiche þat<sup>t</sup> ben clepid nerualia \* [whiche þat<sup>t</sup> beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde.] & þo boonys þat<sup>t</sup> vndir setten ben clepid ossa mendosa. & þese 8 boonys in oon partie ben ful hard þere as þe hole of þe eere passil þoruȝ, & þei ben clepid petrosa; & summen seien þat<sup>t</sup> þer ben .iiij. boonys ij. on eiþir side / & whanne þat<sup>t</sup> alle þe boonys of þe heed ben ioyned togidere, þou schalt fynde in sofastnes þat<sup>t</sup> þer ben but<sup>t</sup> vj. boonys, 12 whanne þat<sup>t</sup> þou rekenest os<sup>1</sup> coronale for oon boon, & .ij. boonys þat<sup>t</sup> ben clepid mendose, ij. & oon þat<sup>t</sup> ben ij, & o boon þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid alauda. & ij. boonys þat<sup>t</sup> ben clepid nerualia þat<sup>t</sup> ben .vj.; & þe .vij. boon is clepid passillare, þe which is not of þe boones of þe 16 heed, but he susteyneþ alle þe opere boonys of þe heed.<sup>2</sup> & ij. maner of semes<sup>3</sup> makilþ coniunccioun of alle þe boonys in þis maner

33

<sup>1</sup> MS. as.

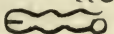
<sup>2</sup> Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*þ he is vnterberyng in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp, or passillus.*"

Add. MS. 12,056. y-clepyde Alauda, þere ys a ful harde bon & y-holyde in þe myddle, þe whyche bone susteyneth alle þe bonys of þe hed. þe whiche 20 bon ys y-clepyde **Passilus**, & he ys ioynede byneþe wiþ þe fyrste bon of þe nekke. þe schappe of þe coniunccioun of þe fife bonys of þe hed ys in þis manere **EWEN**. Bothe on þe ryȝte syde & on þe lefte syde of þe forseide bonys whiche þat<sup>t</sup> beþ y-clepyde nerualia,\* 24 whiche þat<sup>t</sup> beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde\*; þe whiche þat<sup>t</sup> beþ vndiresetterys to þo bonys þat<sup>t</sup> beþ y-clepyde nerualia; & þo bonys þat<sup>t</sup> vndire setten, ben y-clept ossa mendosa. And þese bonys in one partye ben ful 28 harde, þere as þe hole of þe ere passyl þoruȝ, & þey ben y-clepede<sup>4</sup> petrosa & sum men siggen þat<sup>t</sup> þere ben foure bonys, two on eythere syde. & whanne þat<sup>t</sup> alle bonys of þe hed be ioynede togidere þou schalt fynde in sofastnesse, þat<sup>t</sup> þere ben but sixe bonys whanne 32 þat<sup>t</sup> þou reknyste os<sup>5</sup> coronale ffor on bon, & tweye bonys þat<sup>t</sup> beþ y-clepyde mendose tweyne þat<sup>t</sup> beþ þre, and o bon þat<sup>t</sup> ys y-clepyde Alanda, & tweye bonys þat<sup>t</sup> is y-clepyde nerualia—þat<sup>t</sup> beþ sixe, and þe vij bon ys y-clepyde passillare, þe whiche ys nought of þe 36 bonys of þe hed, but he susteyneth alle þe opere bonys of þe hed. And þre maner of semys makylþ coniunccioun of alle þe bonys on þis

<sup>4</sup> MS. petotra.

<sup>5</sup> MS. as.



- & wiþ .ij. semes mendose in þis maner 220. & whanne þat þe crounne of þe heed is perfiȝt, þe heed is maad in þis maner 110 / þis is þe foorme of an heed weel propoussiound, round  þat he 4 myȝte more wiþholde, & þat he myȝte lasse be hurt, & þat he be longe warpid<sup>1</sup>, haunȝe tofore & bihynde eminence: þat is to seie apeiryng, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myȝten haue a porose place of goyng out. & neþeles as ypocras & galion, whiche 8 þat expowneþ ypocras, telliþ<sup>2</sup>, it is possible to fynde oþir in maner of makyng of heedis. Oon maner is, if eminence be not in partie of þe heed tofore, for if þat he be pleyn in partie tofore, bi þat pleynes þe seem is lost, þat is clepid coronalis / þe secunde is, if 12 þat þe heed haue noon eminence bihynde, but þat þe hyndere partie be pleyn, & bi þat pleynes þe seeme is lost þat is clepid alauda / þe þridde is, if þat þe noon eminence bifore ne bihynde in þe heed, but al þe heed is round as a sercle, & þanne þe is but oon 16 seem in þe myddil of þe brayn þanne: for it is vnpossible þe heed to haue ony oþer schap wiþoute lesyng of sum partie of þe brayn, & were contrarious aȝens þe lijf / Bi þe myddil seem which þat is in þe heed, þere discendiþ a ueyne comyng fro þe lyuere bi þe
- <sup>1</sup> *longe warpid*, Lat. oblongus. Comp. Langwyrpe bôc, *Indices Monast.* 12, ed. Kluge.  
<sup>2</sup> *telliþ*, error for *tellen*.

two false  
sutures  
(mendose).

A well-pro-  
portioned  
head is  
oblong with  
openings for  
the nerves,

ypocras, &  
Galion  
enumerate  
peculiar  
forms:

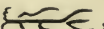

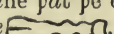
1.  
front part  
flat,  
2.  
back part flat,

3.  
without any  
prominence.

.Nota.

[a 1f. 58, bk.]

A vein and  
artery come  
through the  
basilar bone,

- 20 manere , & with tweye semys mendose in þis manere . Add. MS. 12,056.  
 And whanne þat þe corone of þe hed ys perfyȝt, þe hed 4 ys maad in þis manere . [4 fol. 70 v]  
 þis ys þe forme of an hed wel proporcioneȝde, þat he be ronde because þat he myȝhte þe more wiþholde, & þat he 24 myȝte þe lasse be y-hurt, and þat he be longewarped haunȝe tofore & behynde eminence þat is to sigge aperyng, þat þe synwes þat comyȝh out of þe brayn, myȝhte haue a porose place of goyng out. And napelese as ypocras & galyen, whiche þat expowneþ ypocras, 28 tellyn: it is possible to fynden þre oþere manere makyng of hedys. On manere is, if eminence be noȝt in þe partye of þe hed tofore; for 3if þat he be pleyn in þe partye tofore, bi þat pleynnesse þe seme is y-lost þat is y-clepyde coronalis. Secunde ys 3if þe hed 32 haft non eminence behynde, but þat þe hyndore party be playn, and bi þat playnnesse þe seme ys y-lost þat ys y-clepyde Alauda.<sup>5</sup> þe þridde ys 3if þere be non eminence tofore ne behynde in þe hed, but alle þe hed ys rounde as a sercle. And þenne þere nys 36 but on sem in þe myddel of þe breyn þanne, ffor it is vnpossible þe hed to habben enye oþere schappe wiþouten lesyng of some party of þe brayn; & þat were contrariouse aȝeyne lyf. By þe myddle seme, whiche þat is in þe hed, þere dissendyȝh a ueyne comyng

<sup>5</sup> MS. *Abanda*.

brayn panne of a boon which þat is holid þat is clepid passillarus. & bi þe same weye þer risiþ an arterie comynge from þe herte, & þei ben ioyned togidere, & of þe weuingge of þe tweyne þer is maad an hard pannicle þat is to seie a cloof þat is vndir þe brayn 4 panne; & he is hangid with summe smale ligamentis to þe brayn panne in summe of þe semes. þe which pannicle byndiþ þe boonys and make the dura mater. togidere, & it is clepid dura mater. & it is riztful þat an arterie The blood flows upwards in the artery, schulde arise vpward from byneþe, for þe blood þat is in him is 8 sutil, & his meuyng is pulsatiþ; & he hadde discendid from aboue downwards in the vein. he schulde haue discendid wiþ to greet an hastynes, but pilke ascendynge temperiþ pilke flux. & it is couenable þat þe veyne discende bicause þat þe blood þat is in þe veynes is more pickere, 12 & þe blood þat is in þe veynes goiþ doun sotilli. & boþe þese veynes þat ben pulsatiþ & not pulsatiþ ben ioyned wiþ dura mater / Also þe 1 veyne strecchiþ more lower, & of hem is engendrid pia mater / [1 ff. 59] bring the vital spirit to the brain, and turn it into understanding. Aftr þei discenden doun to þe brayn, & þei bryngen lijf & dewe 16 norischinge & cordialle<sup>2</sup> spiritis, þe which is in þe brayn & þere is defied, & þere resseyueþ naturel foorme of vndirstondynge. Pia mater enuyrouneþ al þe brayn, & departiþ him into iij. celoles þat iij. cellis of þe brayn

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts þe.

Add. MS. 12,056. from þe lyffere, by þe breyn ponne, of a bon which þat is y-holyde. 20 þat is y-clepyde pasillaris. And by þe same weye þere arysith an Arterye comynge fro þe herte, and þey ben Ioyned togedire, & of þe weffynge of þo tweyne þere is y-mad an hard pannycle þat is to sigge a cloth þat is vndir þe brayn panne, and he is hongyde wiþ 24 sum smale ligamentys to þe brayn panne in some of þe semys, þe whych pannycle byndeþ þe bonys togedire, & it is clepyde **dura mater**. And yt is ryztful þat an Arterye scholde arysen vpwarde from byneþyne, for þe blod þat ys in hym þat is sotyht, & hys 28 meffynge þat ys pulsatyff<sup>3</sup>; and he hadde discendyde from aboue dunwarde, he scholde han discendyde wiþ to gret 4an hastynesse, but þe ascendynge temprith pulke flux. And yt is couenable þat þe veyne discende, bycause þat þe blod þat ys in þe veynes ys more 32 pykkore, & þe blod þat is in þe veyne geþ doun softliche. & boþe þese veynes þat buþ<sup>5</sup> pulsatyf & nouzt pulsatyf þeþ y-Ioynede wiþ dura matre. And also þowþ þe veyne strecche more lowere, & of hem ys engendryde pia mater. Afterward þey descenden doun to 36 þe brayn. & þey bryngen lyf & dywe noryschyng & cordyal spiritis, þe whiche is in þe brayn and þere is diffyede, & þere resseyueþ naturel forme of vnderstondynge. Pia mater environeþ al þe brayn, & departyth hym into þe pre celoles<sup>6</sup> þat þeþ chaumbres : 40

<sup>3</sup> MS. *prilsatyff*.

<sup>5</sup> buþ, above line.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *cololes*.



- ben chaumbris : þe firste, þe myddile, & þe laste. & þouȝ þat alle þese ben dyuydid syngulerly bi hem-siluen, it semeþ þat þe celole<sup>1</sup> þat is tofore in þe brayn is departid in two parties ; & bi þat cause
- 4 summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. ventriclis of þe brayn. þe forþere partie of þe brayn is greet & brood, bicause þat he schulde resceyue manye spiritis þat ben sent to him ; for þat place is propre instrument of ymagynacioun þe which resceyueþ þingis þat comprehendip of
- 8 fantasie ;<sup>2</sup> & þo þingis kunnen vndirstonde resceyueþ<sup>3</sup> bi propre instrumentis þat longip. & þouȝ þat al þe brayn, in comparisoun of þe herte & of alle opere membris of þe body, be deemed cold & moist, þis celule hauynge comparisoun to opere celules is deemed
- 12 hoot & drie. & þe myddil part of þe brayn is lasse<sup>4</sup> þan ony opere of þe opere two parties, & her foorme is punat<sup>5</sup> brood twoward þe forþere side of þe heed, & scharpere twoward þe hyndere syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue ymagynatif þingis, & þo
- 16 þingis to zeue to þe ynnere partie, & þo þingis þat ben zeue to wiþholde / þis ventricle is sett bitwene two addiamentis of þe brayn ; þe whiche addiamentis ben lik to tweie buttokkis of a man þat ben ioyned togidere, & þei ben [to]\* þis ventricle as it were a sittynge
- <sup>1</sup> MS. *celose*.  
<sup>2</sup> Lat. : *res a phantasia comprehensas*.  
<sup>3</sup> Read, þo þingis comyn vndirstondynge resceyueþ. Lat. : *quas(res) communis sensus recipit*.  
<sup>5</sup> *punat*, Lat. : *pineatus*.

The foremost cell or Ventricle is the largest one, and contains Imagination,

Nota

[\* If. 50, bk.]

The middle Ventricle has a pineal form,

lies between two addiamentis of the brain (optical lobes),

- 20 þe firste, þe myddle, & þe laste. And þowȝ þat alle þese ben diffyede senglerlyche by hem selffyn, yt semeþ þat þe celele þat is tofore in þe brayn ys departyde in two parties, & by þat cause sum men siggen, þat þere ben foure ventricles of þe brayn. þe
- 24 furþere part of þe brayn ys gret & brod, by cause þat he scholde resseyue manye spirites þat ben y-sende to hym for þat place is propre instrement of y-maginacion, þe whiche resceyueþ þynges þat buþ comprehendide of fantasie ; and þo þynges comen vndirstond-
- 28 ynge resceyueþ by propre Instrementys þat longyth to hym, and þawȝ þat al þe brayn, in comparson of þe herte & of alle opere membres of þe body, be y-demyde colde & moist, þis celule hauynge comparson to opere celules ys y-demyde hot & dryȝe. þe myddel
- 32 part of þe brayn ys lasse þen eny of þe opere two partyes, & here forme ys pyneat, brod towarde þe furþere syde of þe hed and scharpere towarde þe hyndor syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue y-maginatyf þynges & þo þynges to zefe to þe ynnere
- 36 partye & þo þynges þat beþ y-zefe to wiþholde. þis ventricle ys y-sette bytwene tweyne additamentes of þe brayn, þe whiche additamentes ben y-liche þe two buttokkes of a man þat beþ y-ioynede togedre, and þey beþ to \* þis ventricle as yt were a syttinge place

Add. MS.  
12,056.



stretches and contracts during perception,

is smaller than the other Ventricles.

[2 lf. 60]

The third Ventricle is the largest,

from it starts the Spinal Marrow.

The brain is cold and moist,

place eipir a couche vpon þe which he is drawen abroad, whanne þat he resseyueþ ymagynatif þingis; aftirward he is drawe togidere as a worm, whanne þat he resseyueþ ymagynatiþ þingis; & whanne þat þe sentence of pilke ymagynacioun is brougt forþ, þanne pilke ventricle is drawe along, & also þe smallere eende of þe ventricle entriþ into þe ventricle þat is bihynde in þe heed. & þis ventricle is myche lasse þan þe opere tweyne, bicause þat no senewis proceden<sup>1</sup> not out of him, & þat manye þingis myzte be comprehendid [in 8 litel]\* place þat vertu of witt myzte þe sunnere be gaderid togidere to take his<sup>2</sup> counseil; & þis ventricle to comparisoun of opere ventriclis is deemed hoot & drie. & aftir þat þe hyndere ventricle, þe which is grettere & hardere þan þis; þe which [in]\* comparisoun to 12 þe opere tweyne is demed cold & drie, þe which is brood twoward þe fore partie of þe heed & scharp bakward, þe which resceyueþ sentence þat ben schewid & kepiþ hem priuyliche as a cheste kepiþ tresour. & out of him goiþ out nucha þoruþ þe hole of þe boon, 16 þat is clepid passillaris, & pilke nucha is clopid wiþ two pannicles þat goon out of þe brayn.

& al þe brayn is deemed cold & moist, bicause þat he schulde

<sup>1</sup> MS. *procende*.

Add. MS. 12,056. [3 fol. 71 b] opere a couche, vpon þe whyche he ys drawyne abrode, whenne þat he resseyueþ ymaginatyff þynges. And afterwarde he ys y-drawe togedire as a worme, whenne þat he resceyueþ ymaginatyff þynges; and whenne þat þe sentence of pilke ymagynacioun ys y-brought forth, þenne pilke ventricle ys y-drawe alonge. And also þe smallere ende of þis ventricle entriþ into þe ventricle þat ys behynde in þe hed, and þis ventricle ys myche lasse þenne þe opere tweyne bycause þat non synwes procedent not out of hym, and þat manye þynges myghte be endyde in litel\* place, þat vertue of wytt myghte þe sonnere be y-gedryde togedre to taken hys counseyll. And thys ventricle to comparson of opere ventricles ys y-demyde hot & drye. After þat ys þe hyndere ventricle, whiche ys grattere & hardere þenne thys; þe whiche in \*comparson of þe opere tweyne ys y-demyde colde & drye, þe whiche is brod towarde þe fore partye of þe hed & scharpe bachwarde, þe whyche resceyuyth sentense þat beþ schewyde & kepyth hem priuyliche as a chest kepyth tresore. And out of hym goth out<sup>4</sup> nucha<sup>5</sup> þrowe þe 36 hole of þe bon þat ys y-clepyde passillarys. And pilke nucha ys y-clothyde<sup>6</sup> wiþ tweye pannicles þat goth out of þe brayn. And alle þe brayn ys y-demyde colde & moyst. bycause þat he scholde

<sup>4</sup> in þe a, struck through after goth out.

<sup>5</sup> nucha on margin.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *ys y-clothyde twice*.

- atempren spiritual fumosite *pat* comen of *pe* herte, & *pat* he schulde not<sup>1</sup> ben dried for to myche meuyng *pat* he hap in worching of vertues; & *pe* brayn is whijt, bicause *pat* he schulde *pe* bettere
- 4 resseyue resoun & vnderstandyng / For if peyntouris whanne pey schulen peynte a table, first<sup>1</sup> pei maken it whijt, for *per* wole no colour lasten but<sup>1</sup> *poruz* him; & it is neische *pat* *pe* meuyng of vertues myzte *pe* bettere han place; & *pe* brayn is towz *pat* *pe*
- 8 senewis *pat* goon out of hym<sup>1</sup> myzte be *pe* more towz, & *pe* more pei ben enlongid from her bigynnyng & *pe* more hardere pei schulen be, & also *pat* pei schulden be bowable ynowz & nouzt<sup>1</sup> azenstondyng her hardnesse. & it is nessessarie *pat* *pe* brayn be clopid wip
- 12 .ij. panniclis: *pat* is to seie .ij. clopis, *pat* in his meuyng, [as]\* I haue seid tofore, *pat* it schulde not be hurt of *pe* brayn panne. Al *pe* brayn is departid into .iiij. colules<sup>2</sup> with addiamentis of *pe* panniclis of pie matris, *pat* *pe* spiritis myzten *pe* lengere dwelle in *pe* ventricle
- 16 to resseyuen bi ordure of digestioun, foorme & perfeccioun more pan pei hadden first of *pe* herte; & *pat* euery vertu myzte fulfille his accidens<sup>3</sup> in his ventricle, or pan *pe* vois<sup>4</sup> *pat* is comprehendid

white like a painter's table,

soft and tough.

[1 ff. 60, bk.]

The brain is protected by two Pannicles (Membranes);

which divide it into three cells,

where thought is formed.

<sup>2</sup> *cellis*, written above line.

<sup>3</sup> *accidens* for *accioun*.

<sup>4</sup> *vois*, Lat.: "antequam res comprehensa posset ad sequentem ventriculum pertransire."

- atempren spirituel ffumositis *pat* comyth of *pe* herte, and *pat* he
- 20 scholde nozte ben y-dreyzede fforto myche meffynge *pat* he hap in worchyng of vertues. And *pe* brayn is whit bycause *pat* scholde resceyue *pe* bettere resoun & vnderstandyng. Ffor pese peyntores, whenne pey schulle peynten a table, firste pey maken yt whyte, for
- 24 pere nylle none coloure lasten but yt be leyde vpon whyt; & it is penne opere rare, because *pat* vndirstondyng myzte *pe* sonnere passe porwe hym; & yt is nessche *pat* *pe* meffynge off vertues myghte *pe* betyre habbe place; & *pe* brayn ys towz, *pat* *pe* synwes
- 28 *pat* goth out of hym, myzte be *pe* <sup>5</sup>more towzere, and *pe* more *pat* pey ben enlongyde from here bygynnyng, *pe* more hardere pey scholde be; and also that pey scholde be bowable y-nowz nought azeynestondyng here hardnesse. And yt is necessarye *pat* *pe*
- 32 brayn scholde be clopid with tweye clothys, *pat* in hys meffynge as \*y haue seyde tofore he scholde nought ben y-hurt of *pe* brayn panne.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 72 a]

- Also *pe* brayn ys departyde into pre celules with *pe* addiamentes of *pe* pannycles of pie<sup>6</sup> matris, *pat* *pe* spiritis myzt *pe* lengore dwellen in *pe* ventricles, to reseynen by ordre, digestioun, forme & perfeccion, more panne pey hadden fyrst of *pe* hert, and *pat* euery vertue myghte fulfille hys accioun in hys ventrycle, ere

<sup>6</sup> MS. *pie*, twice.



Part of the  
brain is most  
essential to  
life,

Nota

[3 ff. 61]

especially the  
substance of  
the Ven-  
tricles.

myzte passe to þe ventricle þat<sup>1</sup> is sewingge.<sup>1</sup> Not<sup>2</sup> azenstondynge þese proprietes þe brayn haþ sum substaunce of<sup>3</sup> marie þe which fulfilliþ þe voidenes of<sup>4</sup> þe forseid panniclis. & þilke mary enuyroun-  
neþ þe forseid panniclis, of<sup>5</sup> þe which mary þer may sum partie in 4  
hurtyng of<sup>6</sup> þe heed be lost<sup>7</sup>; & not<sup>8</sup> azenstondynge þe goynge out<sup>9</sup>  
of<sup>10</sup> sum partie of<sup>11</sup> þilke mary, a man schal nouzt die. For þis mary  
is not<sup>12</sup> of<sup>13</sup> þe substaunce of<sup>14</sup> þe ventriclis of<sup>15</sup> þe brayn of<sup>16</sup> þe which  
mynde is maad; for þei ben of<sup>17</sup> so greet<sup>18</sup> nobilite, þouȝ þat<sup>19</sup> þer be 8  
neuere so litil infeccioun, or ellis þat<sup>20</sup> þer falle neuere so litil a lesyng<sup>21</sup>  
of hem<sup>22</sup> þei ben deprived of<sup>23</sup> her heelþe, in so myche þat<sup>24</sup> oon colule<sup>25</sup>  
may not<sup>26</sup> be lost<sup>27</sup> & a man be saued, as manye idiotis supposen con-  
trarie / <sup>28</sup>Anotamie of<sup>29</sup> yȝen, eeris, nose, chekelappis, moup, tunge & 12  
teeþ, we deferren to ordeyne in þe þridde tretis, in þe whiche if<sup>30</sup> god  
wole we þenken to treten, & of<sup>31</sup> opere sicknessis, & of<sup>32</sup> opere lymes  
out-cept<sup>33</sup> woundis.

Different  
kinds of  
wounds on  
the head.

& þo hurtyngis þat<sup>34</sup> ben maad in þe heed eiþir þat<sup>35</sup> ben maad 16  
wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde. & wheþer þat<sup>36</sup> þei ben wiþoute  
wounde or wiþ wounde, eiþir þei ben wiþ brekyng of<sup>37</sup> þe brayn

<sup>1</sup> MS. *swingge*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts *ȝ*.

<sup>4</sup> of hem written on margin.

<sup>5</sup> *cellul* written above.

<sup>6</sup> The MS. has a marginal note: *Anotemy off eyen, eres, nose, chekes, mouthe, tounge, teth.*

Add. MS. 12,056. þanne þe foyȝ þat ys comprehendide myghte passe to þe ventricle  
þat ys sywyng. Nowzt azeynestondynge þese propretes, þe brayn 20  
haþ sum substaunce of marie whiche fulfilliþ þe voydenesses of þe  
forseyde pannycleres. And þilke marye envyrounyth þe foreseyde  
pannycles, of þe whyche marye þere may sum partye in þe hurtyng  
of þe hed ben y-lost<sup>38</sup>; and nozt ageynestondynge þe goynge out of 24  
sum partye of þilke marye, a man schal nozt deye. Ffor þis marye  
is nought of þe substaunce of þe ventricles of þe brayn, of whiche  
mynde ys y-mad; ffor þey ben of so grete noblete, ȝif þere be neuere  
so litel infectioun opere ellys þat þere falle neuere so lytel a lesyng 28  
of hem, þey ben depreffide of alle here helthe, in so myche þat on  
celele may nozt ben y-lost, and a man ben saffyde, as manye  
ydyotes supposen. Anothomye of eynen, neose, erne, chekelappes,  
moup, tonge & tē, we deferren to ordeynen in þe þridde tretys, in 32  
þe distyncioun whiche ȝif god wol, we þynkeþ forto treten of opere  
syknesse of þe lymes, outsepte woundes. And þo hurtynges þat  
beþ y-mad in þe hed, opere þey ben mad withouten wounde, opere  
with wounde. & wheþere þat it be wyth wounde opere wiþouten 36  
wounde, opere þey ben with brekyng of þe brayn þanne, opere



panne or wipoute brekyng of þe brayn panne / Or wheþer þat it  
 be maad wip breche of þe brayn panne, or wipoute breche of þe  
 brayn panne, summe ben wip hurtyng of þe brayn, & summe ben  
 4 wipoute hurtyng of þe brayn / & riȝt as pilke hurtis haue differ-  
 ence in tokenes, so þei han difference in perels & pronosticaciouns  
 & maners with þe whiche þei musten ben holpen /

<sup>1</sup> & if þat ony hurt be in þe heed wipoute ony wounde as wip <sup>[1 ff. 61, bk.]</sup>  
 8 fallynge or wip smytyng of a stoon or of a staf or wip sum opir hurt of þe  
 þing þat brusip, & if þat it be wipoute breche of þe brayn panne heed  
 & wip hirtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedip not but schauynge of without any  
 þe heed & anyntyng with hote oilis of rosis & [abofen þe vnature]\* wound or  
 fracture.  
 12 to strawen on þe poudre of mirtillis seed, & streyne þe place wip a <sup>Nota</sup>  
 boond til al þe place be fastned & þe swellynge be vanyschid away / Have the  
 In þis maner þou fastne al þe place þat no þing schal be corruppid, head shaved  
 or ellis þer schal dwelle a litil corrupcioun, & if þat ony þing of and an oint-  
 16 corrupcioun abide, þe place schal be opened wip an instrument, & ment applied.  
 so schal þe quytur be excludid, & he schal be curid riȝt as opere  
 empostymes þat ben woundid.

& if þat þe brayn panne were broke wipoute wounde of þe <sup>Fracture of</sup>  
 20 heed þe which may be knowe bi disposicioun of þe cause & also of the skull,  
 þe sike man, in biholdynge, if þat þat smytip were strong, or ellis without any  
 open wound.

without brekyng of þe breyn panne. And wheþer <sup>2</sup> þat yt be mad Add. MS.  
 wip þe breche of þe brayn panne opere withouten breche of þe breyn 12,056.  
 24 panne, some ben with hurtyng of þe brayn, some without hurtyng  
 of þe brayn. And ryȝte as pilke hurtynges habben dyfference in  
 toknes, so þey hauen differens in pereles & pronosticaciouns & <sup>[2 fol. 72 b]</sup>  
 maners, with þe whiche þey most ben y-holpen. And zif an hurt be  
 28 in þe hed withouten wounde, as with fallynge, opere with smytyng  
 of a ston, opere a staff, opere with sum opere thyng þat brusyþ,  
 and zif þat yt be withouten breche of þe brayn panne, & with outen  
 hurtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedyth nouȝt but schaffynge of þe  
 32 hed, & anyntyng wip hote oyle of roses, and abofen þe vnature\*  
 to strawen on þe poudre of þe seed of myrtylles, & streyne þe place  
 with a band tyl al þe place be y-fastnyde & þe swellynge be y-  
 vanschyd awaye. In þis manere þou schalt fastne al þe place, þat  
 36 noþyng schal be corruped, opere ellys þere schall dwelle a lytel  
 corrupcioun. And zif enye þynge of corrupcion abyde, þe place  
 schal ben y-opnyde with an Instrument, & so alle þe quyter schal be  
 excludyd, & he schal ben y-curyd ryȝt as opere empostemys þat beþ  
 40 y-woundyde. And zif þat þe brayn panne were y-broke withoute  
 enye wounde of þe hed, þe whiche may ben y-knowe by dysposicioun  
 of þe cause & eke of þe syke man, in byholdynge zif þat þat smyt

Symptoms of the fracture: [1<sup>st</sup> 1<sup>st</sup>. 62] as giddiness, vomiting, headache.

*pat* þe sike haue falle from his place, or ellis *pat* he was smyte *with* strong<sup>1</sup> smyting<sup>1</sup>, & also if *pat* he fel & myzte not hastili arise. 1<sup>st</sup> & if *pat* he hadde scotomie,<sup>2</sup> *pat* is to seie a maner sijknese, whanne *pat* þer semeþ as flien or opere smale gnattis fleen tofore his yzen / or 4 ellis he spewþ his mete, or he felip to gret akþe in þe heed, & if *pat* he may not breke a knotte of a straw wiþ hisē teep, & if þe heed be smyte wiþ a liȝt drie staf as of salow or ellis of pinee— & þanne leie þin eere to his heed, & if *pat* þe boon be hool þou 8 schalt here an hool soun aftir þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hool belle, also if þou makist þe sike man to holde bitwene his teep a pred twyned & I-wexid, & þanne bigynne to harpe *with* þi nailis vpon þe pred faste bi þe sike mannes mouþ, & so harpe wiþ þi naylis 12 vpon þe pred alwey streyned & makynge soun to þe eende of þe pred, & pilke pred schal ben on lenkþe fro þe mouþ of a cubite, & so þou schalt harpe ofte tymes, & if *pat* þe pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ not his brayn þanne broke, for if his brayn 16 þanne were broke, þe sike man myzte not susteyne þe soun of þe pred. Alle þese signys, or ellis manye of hem bitokenen *pat* þe brayn þanne is broken / & tweyne 3<sup>of</sup> þe laste signys ben

<sup>2</sup> *scotomie*. Vigo Interpret. "*Scotomia*. They shoulde saye, Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darekenes ryseth, when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

Add. MS. 12 056. were stronge, opere ellys *pat* þe syke haue y-fallen from hys place, 20 opere ellys *pat* he was y-smyte *with* stronge smytinge; and also ȝif *pat* he fel & myght nought hastlye aryse, and ȝif *pat* he hadde scotomye: *pat* ys to sugge a manere seknesse, whenne *pat* þere semyth as flyezes, opere smale blake gnattys vleyzen tofore hys 24 eyzen, opere ellys he spyweþ hys mete, opere he felyth to grete akþe in hys hed, and ȝif *pat* he may nought breken a knotte of a straw; *with* hys teth, and ȝif þe hed be smyten *with* a lyȝt dreyze staff, as

[<sup>1</sup> fol. 73 a] of salwe opere ellys pyne, and þenne leye þyn 4ere to hys hed; & 28 ȝif *pat* þe bon be hol, þou schalt heren an hol soun after þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hol belle & a bloke belle; also ȝif *pat* þou makyste þe syke man to holde bytwene hys tep a prede y-twyned & y-waxed, & þenne begynne to harpen *with* þy naylles vpon þe 32 prede faste be þe seke mannes mouth, & so harpe *with* þyne naylles vpon þe pred alle wey streyned, in makynge soun to þe ende of þe pred, & pilke pred schal ben of lengþe from þe mouth be þe space of a Kubyte; and þou schalt harpe so ofte tymes, & ȝif *pat* þe 36 pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ noȝt hys brayn þanne y-broke; ffor ȝif hys breyn þanne were broke, þe seke man myghte nought susteyne þe soun of þe pred. Alle þese signes opere ellis manye of hem betokne *pat* þe breyn þanne is broken. And to þe 40



- more certeyn þan ony of þe opere. & vnderstonde þat þe brayn panne mai ofte tymes be to-broken, & nepeles þe brayn felip noon harm in þe bigynnyng. But aftirward ofte tymes of hirtyng
- 4 of þe brayn panne, þe brayn is hirt / Galien witnessyng, þe Galien brekyng of boоны in þe heed is dyuers in perels fro brekyng
- of opere boоны in þe bodi, for þe accidens þe which þat fallip ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Neipir is no man ne neuere
- 8 was þat myzte euermore helpe to alle accidentis, whanne þat þe brayn was meued in þe bigynnyng þat not azenstondyng his help,<sup>1</sup> be he neuere so good a leche, þat þe sike ne muste die /
- Euel accidentis þe whiche þat [comyth to þe accidentes of þe
- 12 brayn & of hys]\* pannicle ben<sup>2</sup> alwey dwellyng as constipacioun of þe wombe, or ellis þe flix of þe wombe, or ellis crokidnes, or ellis lokyng asquynt of þe izen, or ellis wepyng of þe oon yze, or ellis an hard scotomie, or ellis febilnes of alle þe vertues & chaungyng.
- 16 Not oonly animal vertues, þat ben vertues of þe brayn, ben<sup>3</sup> I-chaungid, also naturel vertues & liui<sup>4</sup> vertues—sensibles & <sup>5</sup>motifes ;

Fracture of the skull is very dangerous,

the following accidents (symptoms) are frequently mortal.

Evil symptoms: yvel accidentes

If the animal, natural, and vital functions, [5 1r. 63]

<sup>1</sup> help in margin.

<sup>2</sup> One word "*spewinge*" omitted, and *as* erroneously inserted in both MSS. Lat.: "*Mala autem accidentia . . sunt vomitus perseverans constipatio ventris,*" etc.

<sup>3</sup> MS. inserts *nouzt*.

<sup>4</sup> *liui*, Lat. *vitales*.

- laste signes beþ more serteyne þenne enye of þe opere. And vnderstonde þat þe breyn panne may ofte tymes ben to-broke, & napeles
- 20 þe brayn felyth nought in þe bygynninge none hurtyng. But afterwardys ofte tyme of hurtyng of þe brayn panne þe brayn ys y-hurt, Galien wytnessyng; the brekyng of þe bonys of þe hed ys dyuers in perelys from brekyng of oper bonys of þe body, for þe
- 24 accidentes whiche þat fallyth ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Ne þere nys no man, ne neuere ne was, þat myzte euyre more helpen to alle accidentes whenne þat þe brayn was meffye in þe bygynninge, þat nouzt ageynestondyng his helpe, be he neuere
- 28 so gode a leche, þat þe syke ne moste deye. Euyle accidentes whiche þat \*comyth to þe accidentes of þe brayn & of hys pannycle, ben alwey dwellyng: as constipacioun of þe wombe, opere ellys flux of þe wombe, opere ellys crokydnesse, opere ellys lokyng a-
- 32 squynte of þe eyzen, opere ellys wepyng of þat on eyze, opere ellys an hard scotomye, opere ellys ffebylnesse of alle þe vertues & chaungyng. And nozt only anymal vertues, þat beþ vertewys of þe brayn, beþ nozt y-chaungyde, but also naturel vertewys, & lyfy
- 36 vertewys sensyble & motifes; sensible, for þat þey seen nozt

Add. MS. 12,056.



the imagin-  
ation,  
reason,

memory,  
and motor  
power are  
affected.

A strong  
fever pre-  
ceded by a  
cold shiver-  
ing,

blackness of  
the tongue,  
blains, etc.,  
are bad  
symptoms.

sensible, for þei ben<sup>1</sup> not<sup>1</sup> riȝtfulliche; for boþe her heerynge & opere comoun wittis ben troublid; also priuy vertues þat ben troublid as ymaginatif, for þei bileuen þei seen, [þat þey seen nouȝt];\* also resonable vertues, for þei spēken in deuyn<sup>2</sup> & answeren whanne þei 4 ben nouȝt I-askide / also<sup>3</sup> memorial þat þei þenke nouȝt on her owne name / also meuable vertues is so myche greued þat vnneþe þei moun nouȝt meue hem nameliche aboute þe necke. þei syke greuouseleche, & a scharp feuere falliþ, þe which arrigor, þat is to seie a cold schurg- 8 ynge<sup>4</sup> goiþ tofore / Arrigor is no þing<sup>5</sup> ellis, but as it were a prick- ynge of nedelis, or ellis of netlis in þe fleisch, & if þis rigor come wiþ a feuere, or ellis without feuere, it is þe worste signe tokene of deēþ, & if þe crampe folowe it is deedly / Also þese ben yuel accidentis: 12 blaknes of þe tunge, bleyenis aboute þe skyn or þe chekis, or in ony partie of þe heed þanne [in]\* þe wounde, is an yuel signe.<sup>5</sup> & sum- tyme blood comēþ out at þe eeris & noseþrillis. & if þe more partie of þese tokenese or ellis alle comen, þe sike man muste nedis die, 16 [If. 63, bk.] namely, & þe accidentis conteynen<sup>6</sup>; <sup>7</sup>& specialy if þe sike man haue be her-tofore manye daies in good disposicioun, & after þilke

<sup>1</sup> *ben*, error for *seen*. Lat.: quia non recte vident.

<sup>2</sup> See page 102, note 2. <sup>3</sup> MS. *alle*. <sup>4</sup> *schurgynge*, schurien, to shower.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: vel in alia parte capitis quam in vulnere: quod est malum signum.

<sup>6</sup> *conteynen* for *contynnen*.

Add. MS. 12,056. [8 fol. 73 b] also priuy vertues ben y-trublyde as ymagenatyff, ffor þey beleffe þat þey seen, \*þat þey seen nouȝt; also resonable vertue, for 20 þey speken in deveyn, & þey answeren whanne þey beþ nouȝt y-askyde; also memoryal, þat þey þynke nouȝt on here owne name; also meffable vertue ys so myche y-greuyde, þat vnneþe þey mowe nouȝt mefen hem namlyche aboute þe nekke. þey syken greuouselye, 24 and a scharpe ffeuere fallyth, þe whiche a rigoor goth tofore. A rigoor nys nothyng ellys but as yt were a prickynge of nedlys opere of nettlys in þe flesch, and ȝif þis rigoor come with a ffeuyre opere 28 ellys with outen ffeuyre, yt is worst signe, and ȝif the crampe fol- wen, yt ys dedlye. Also þese beþ yuele accidentes: blaknesse of þe tonge, bleynesse<sup>9</sup> aboute þe chyn opere þe chekenesse, opere in enye opere partye of þe hed þenne in\* þe wounde, ys an yuele signe, and sum tyme blod comyth out at þe erys & noseþrylles. And ȝif þe 32 more partye of þese toknys, opere ellys alle comen, þe syke man moste nedys deyzen, namlye & þo Accidentes contynnen, and specialy ȝif þat þe syke man haue y-be tofore manye daies in gode disposicioun, & after þilke disposicioun þese yuele accidentes fallen; 36

**Sygnum  
Mortal.**

<sup>9</sup> *bleynesse*, leady colour. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *bley*; mistake for *bleynes*, blains.

- good disposicioun pilke yuel accidentis fallen; but sumtyme in þe It is a good sign when evil symptoms grow better.
- bigynnyng þese yuel accidentis fallen wickid, & aftirward bi good gouernaile & good help of þe leche pilke yuel accidentis ben
- 4 departid & good cometh, and þanne it is a [good]\* signe, for it bi-tokeneth strenkþe of kynde, hauynge no drede of þe sijknes, & kunnyng of þe leche / O holi goost, al þing fulfyllinge, alle þingis sanctifynge, & alle þingis liztnyng, & alle þingis gouernynge, opene
- 8 þe yzen of hem þat loken & reden on þis book, þat þei moun vndirstonde þat þing þat is weel seid, & þat þei moun demene<sup>1</sup> þoru þi cleernes þat, þat is yuel seid, & specialy in þis caas<sup>2</sup> where þat oonly not I þat am vnwijs & vnkunnyng, but also greete maistris
- 12 & more kunnyng han writen sotilliche, & han sett in þis caas dyuers vndirstondynge. Ne þei ne I ne foond no wey in þis werk þat myzte us make sikir, specialiche in seryuynge of þe brayn panne, in þe whiche cure<sup>3</sup> dyuers men haue<sup>3</sup> I-wrougt dyuersliche. [4 lf. 64]
- 16 <sup>4</sup>I wole bigynne at a symple wounde of þe fleisch of þe heed, in þe which þat þer is noon hurtyng of þe brayn ne brayn panne. // Not a Treatment of a symple wounde.
- Biholde whepir pilke wounde be maad wip a swerd or ony þing sembla[b]le to it, & þanne sowe pilke wounde, & caste aboue þe

<sup>1</sup> demene, O.Fr. "demener," for demen.

<sup>2</sup> in þis caas. Lat.: in isto passu. See below pas.

<sup>3</sup> cure, have, above line.

- 20 ryztfullyche, for boþe herynge & opere comyn wyttes ben y-trublyde; but sumtyme in þe bygynnyng euytle accidentes comyth, afterwarde, Add. MS. 12,056.
- by good gouernayle & by gode helpe of the leche, þese euytle accidentes ben departyde & good comyth, & þenne yt is a good\*
- 24 signe, for it betoknyth strengþe off kynde, hauynge non drede of þe syknesse & konyngnesse of þe leche. O holy gost, al thyng fulfyllinge, al þinge sanctifynge, lytnyng & gouernynge, opyne þe eyzen of hem þat redyn in thys booke, þat þey mowen vndirstonde
- 28 þat þynge þat is wel seyde, & þat þey mowe demen þorwe þy clernesse þat þat<sup>5</sup> y euytle seyde, specyliche in pas where þat only nouzte y þat am vnwijs & vnkunnyng, but also grettere maistryes & more kunnyng han y-writen dotousliche. & hap y-sett in þis cas
- 32 <sup>6</sup>dyuerse vnderstondynge. Ne þey ne y ne fonde non wey in þis [6 fol. 74 a] 7
- werke þat myzte maken vs sykere, specialiche in grefynges of þe breyne panne, in whose cure dyuerse men han wrought dyuerslye; y wyȝ begynne at a symple wounde of þe flesch & of þe hed, in þe
- 36 whiche þat þere ys non hurtyng of þe brayn ne of þe brayn panne. Byholde whar pilke wounde be maad with a swerde opere enye þynge semblable to hit, & þan sowe þylke wounde, & caste abofen þe

<sup>5</sup> MS. at.

<sup>7</sup> Heading of the page: Cure of symple Wounde off þe hed.



wounde þe poudre of lym tofore seid, & do al þing<sup>1</sup> bi ordre, as it is conteyned aboue in þe chapitle of woundis of fleisch /

Treatment  
of a contused  
wound.

Apply  
a maturatif.

& if þat a wounde be maad in þe heed wip brusynge, as wip a mace,<sup>1</sup> or wip a staf, or ony þing<sup>1</sup> þat brusip, þanne it is nessessarie to 4 leie aboue þe brusynge a maturatif<sup>1</sup> maad of .iiij. parties of watir, & oon partie of comoun oile & flour of wheete, þat suffisip to make it pikke,<sup>2</sup> til þat þe mater þat is brusid be maturid; þe which maturatif schal be do abroad vpon a lynnyn clop & leid to þe 8 wounde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde wip oile of rosis & 3elke of an ey, & lynt<sup>1</sup> of an oold lynnyn clop medlid togidere, til þat þe wounde 3eue quytture & þe akþe be aswagid. & aftirward leye in þe wounde drie lynt<sup>1</sup> of old clop, & fille þe wounde of þe same 12 lynet, & leie aboue þe mundificatif<sup>1</sup> of mel roset & barly mele, <sup>3</sup>til þat it be perfiztly clensid; & leie aboute þe wounde, from þe bigymynge til þat þe wounde be parfiztly clensid, a defensif<sup>1</sup> of bole armonyak, þe which I haue told ofte tyme; aftirward incarne 16 it, þat is to seie brynge ouer fleisch, & aftirward consowde.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 64, bk.]  
a mundifi-  
catif,  
and  
a defensif.

Cure of a  
wound which  
touches the  
membrane.

& if þat þis wounde towche þe pannicle þat byndip boonys togidere, þou3 þat þe boon be not to-broken, charge it not litil, but

<sup>1</sup> mace, Lat. macia.

<sup>2</sup> MS. pilke.

Add. MS. 12,056. poudre of lym tofore seyð, and do alle þynge be ordre as yt is 20 conteynede aboue in þe chapiteH off wounde of þe flesch; and 3if þat a wounde be mad in þe hed with a brusynge, as with a mace

Maturatif  
for brosure

opere a staf, oper with enye þynge þat brusyth, þanne it is necessarie to leggen aboue þe brusynge a maturatyf, y-mad of foure partyes of 24 water, & on partye of comyn oyle & floure of whete, þat suffiseþ to maken yt pikke, tyl þat þe matere þat is brusyde be matured; þe whiche maturatyff schal be do abroad on a clop & y-leyde to þe wonde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde with oyle of roses & þe 3olke 28 of an neyze,<sup>4</sup> & lenet of an olde lynne clout y-medlyde to gedre, tyl þat þe wounde 3if quyter & þe akþe be aswagede. & afterwarde leye in þe wounde dreye lynet of lynne cloth, & fille þe wounde fuH of þe same lynet, & leye aboue þe mundificatyff<sup>1</sup> of mel rosat & 32 barlye mele, tyl þat he be perfiltye clansyde, & leye aboute þe wounde fro þe begymynge, tyl þat þe wonde be perfiltie clansyde, a defensyf of bol armonyak, þe whiche y haue tolde of ofte tymes; afterwarde incarne hit—þat is to sigge, brynge ouere flesch, & after- 36 warde consowde yt; and 3if þat þis wounde touchith þe pannicle þat bynde þe bonys togedre, þow3 þat þe bon be nouzt to-broken,

<sup>4</sup> neyze at the beginning of a line.



- take þerof good hede, & do þerynne in þe wounde hoot oile of  
 rosis doun to þe pannicle þat byndiþ boonys togidere, til þat þer be  
 noon akyng in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde as þou woldist'  
 4 kepe opere woundis of þe brayn panne; & kepe þe brayn fro cold  
 & fro heete, for cold is moost greuous to boonys & to panniclis þat  
 ben woundid. þer ben summe maner men þat leien wipout forþ  
 on alle maner woundis of þe heed, wheþer it be wip wounde of þe  
 8 brayn panne or wipoute þe wounde of þe brayn panne, in what  
 maner þat þe heed be hurt, a lynnene cloþ wet in þe oynement þat  
 is maad on þis maner / Take white rosis libram ß, oile of rosis 3 v,  
 whizt wex 3 iij, þei melten alle togidere in an yren panne, & þei  
 12 maken 2 þerof .j. bodi, & boile it aftirward in good wyn bi þe space  
 of an hour; & þei leten it aftirward ny3 colden, & þei weten þer-  
 inne a pece of a lynnene clout, & þei schapen þilke pece wip a schere  
 aftir þat þe wounde is, & þanne þei baþe þilke pece in good wyn, &  
 16 þanne leie þilke pece [on þe wounde]\*, & anoon aftir þei leien vpon  
 þilke pece on eiþir side of þe wounde a plumaciol I-wet in good  
 hoot wyn; & þei leien on a drie pelowe of herdis vpon þo two  
 wete pelowis, þe which drie pelewe of herdis schal comprehende þe  
 20 tweie wete, & bynde hem faste; & þei zeuen to summen to drynke

Apply  
 oilum ro.  
 hoot.

Nota

Some phy-  
 sicians use  
 a general  
 treatment for  
 wounds on  
 the head.

Entreet.<sup>1</sup>

They apply  
 Compresses  
 with an  
 ointment,

[<sup>2</sup> ff. 65]

<sup>1</sup> Entreet. See entreten ne. entreat, Mätzner, *Dict.*

- charge yt nozt litel but take þere of gode hede, & do in þe wounde  
 hot oyle of roses don to þe pannycle, tyl þat þere be non akþe in þe  
 wounde. & kepe þilke wounde, as þou woldiste kepen opere wondys  
 24 of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, fro colde & from hete; ffor colde  
 ys most greuest to bonys & to pannycles þat bep woundyde. <sup>3</sup> þere  
 ben some manere of men þat leggen withouten forth on alle manere  
 wondys of þe hed, wheþere it be wip wounde of þe brayn panne  
 28 opere without wounde of þe brayn panne, in what manere þat þe  
 hed ben y-hurt, a lynnene cloþ y-wett in þe oynement y-made in þis  
 manere: R whit resine lb. ß., oyle of roses 3 v., whyt wex 3 iij.,  
 þey melten all togedres in an erthyne panne, & þey maken þere of  
 32 on body, & þey boyllen yt afterward in gode wyn by þe space of an  
 Oure; & þey leten afterwarde ny3 colden, & þey weten þere ynne a  
 pece of lynnene cloþ, & þey schapen þilke pece with a schere aftre  
 þe wounde ys, & þey baþen þylke pece in gode wyn, & þey leggen  
 36 þilke pece on þe wounde,\* and anon afterwarde þey leggen on þilke  
 pece on eiþere syde of þe wounde a plumacyole, y-wet in good hote  
 wyn, & þey leggen on a drye pylwe of herdes vpon þo tweie wete  
 pylwes, þe whiche dreye pylwe schall comprehende þe tweie wete  
 40 & bynden hem faste; and þey zeuen some men to drynken gode

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 74 v]

Cura  
 Ansellina

and diet with  
wine and  
fowls.

I never dared  
to try this  
treatment.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 65, bk.]

Nota bene.

Wine is  
especially  
dangerous.

Treatment if  
the skull is  
broken:

riȝt<sup>1</sup> good wyn, & to ete good fleisch of hennes & of capouns; &<sup>1</sup>  
pei comaunden to drynke a drope of water; & pei gouernen on þis  
maner alle men þat ben woundid in þe heed differentliche, & pei  
seyen þat mo men ben heelid bi þis maner cure þan dien. But bi as 4  
myche as alle auctouris ben azens þis cure, namely in dietynge, I ne  
was neuere hardi to preue þis maner cure; for in mannys bodi a  
medicyn schal not be preued which þat<sup>1</sup> is not acordynge to resoun /  
For alle autouris acorden þat þer is no ping<sup>2</sup> þat so soone greueþ þe 8  
brayn & þe senewis as wiyn doiþ, & vsynge of fleisch is cause of  
bryngynge yn an hoot enpostyme. Neuere-þe-latter if a man þat  
vsip of custum sich a maner dietynge haue a strong<sup>1</sup> heed, in his  
hele him dredip no wiyn, & þe vertu of him þat<sup>1</sup> is sijk be strong— 12  
in sum manere of folk wiþ þis maner gouernaile, vertu is more  
strenkþid, & þe sunner pei ben heelid. But I ne procede not wiþ  
sich a maner dietynge bi cause of drede lest an hoot enpostyme  
schulde come to þe sore, but I procede in dietynge & worche aboute 16  
þe wounde as I haue seid tofore.

Opere men loke [in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheþer þat]\*  
þe brekynge of þe brayn panne be with a greet wounde, or smal

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: & præcipiunt quod unam guttam aquæ non bibat.

Add. MS. wyn, & to eten gode flessch of capouns & of hennys; & þey 20  
12,056. comaunden to drynken a drope watere; and þey gouernen on þis  
manere alle men þat ben woundyde in þe hed differentlyche, & þey  
sigge þat mo<sup>3</sup> men ben y-helyde by þis manere cure þen dyȝen.  
But by as myche as alle auttours beþ aȝeȝns þis cure, namlyche in 24  
dyetynge, y ne was neuere hardye to preuen þis manere of cure;  
ffor in mannys bodye a medycine schal nouȝt ben preuyde, whiche  
þat is noȝt acordynge to resoun; ffor alle auctores acorden, þat þere  
ys nobynge þat so sone greuyth þe brayn & þe synwes as wyn doiþ, 28  
and vsynge of flesch ys cause of bryngynge in an hot Emposteme.  
Neuere þe latere ȝif a man þat vsith of custome swyche a manere  
dyetynge haffe a stronge hed, & in hys hele he dredyth non wyn,  
[<sup>4</sup> fol. 75 a] & þe vertue of hym þat ys seek <sup>4</sup>be stronge, in some manere of folk 32  
with þis manere of gouernaylle vertue ys more y-streynþed, & sunnere  
þey ben y-helyde. But y ne procede nouȝt wiþ swyche a manere  
dyetynge, by cause of drede leste an hote empostome scholde come  
to þe sore; but y procede in dyetynge & worche aboute þe wounde, 36  
as y haue seyde toform. Opere men loken\* in brekynges of þe  
brayn panne, wheþer þat þe brekynge of þe breyne panne be with a  
gret wounde opere a smal wounde, opere without wounde; and ȝif

<sup>3</sup> MS. no.



- wounde, or *without* wounde. & if *þat þer* be a greet wounde, þei loken *wheþer* þei moun se if ony pece of þe brayn panne be to-  
broken, & þei don it away. & aftirward þei putten bitwene þe  
4 brayn panne & *duram matrem* a pinne clout wet in þe white of an  
ey, & sumwhat þe white compressid out, & þei fulfillen al þe wounde  
of þe brayn panne *with* sich a maner cloop. & þei leyn in þe ouer  
wounde which *þat* is in þe fleisch, lynet wet in þe white of an ey,  
8 til *þat* þe blood be staunchid; <sup>1</sup>& þei leien aboute a plumaciol wet  
in an ey. & whanne þe blood is staunchid, þei leien a dreie cloop  
vndir þe brayn panne in þe wounde, & þei leien aboute þe wounde a  
potage, þe which engendriþ quytture; & whanne *þat* þe quytture is  
12 engendrid, þei leien in þe wounde carp,<sup>2</sup> eipir lynet of a cloute; &  
þei anoynte aboute þe wounde wip vnguento fusco; & at þe laste  
eende þei leien aboute apostolicon.<sup>3</sup>
- & þei asaie in þis maner if *þat* þe brekyng of þe brayn panne  
16 be wip a rimel,<sup>4</sup> *þat* is to seie a chene, eipir a creueis; & if *þat*  
ilke creueis peerse to wipinne, makyng þe sike man to streyne his

Broken pieces  
are removed,wet com-  
presses  
applied to  
stanch the  
blood;

[1 R. 66]

then dry  
compresses,  
a poultice,and an  
ointment,Treatment of  
a fissure of  
the skull:<sup>2</sup> *carp*, Lat. *carpia*, 'charpie.' *oile* struck through after *carp*.<sup>3</sup> *Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelve Drugs, according to the number of the Apostles.—Kersey. 1706.<sup>4</sup> *rimel*, Lat.: *si fractura esset rimalis*. O.Fr. *rimule*, Lat. *rimula*, a small chink.

- þat þere* ben a gret wounde þey loken *wheþere* þey mowe seen zif  
enye pece of þe brayn panne ben to-broken, & þey don yt away.  
20 And afterwarde þey putten bytwene þe brayn panne & *duram*  
*matrem* a þenne clout y-wett in þe whyte of an eyze, & sumwhat þe  
whyte compressyde out, & þey fulfyllen alle þe wounde of þe brayn  
panne *with* swiche a manere cloth. & þey leggen in þe ofere  
24 wounde whiche *þat* ys in þe flesch, lenyt y-wett in þe whyte of an  
eyze, tyl *þat* þe blode be staunchyde; & þey leggen aboute a  
plumacyole y-wet in an eyze. And whanne *þat* þe blode ys y-  
staunchyde, þey leggen a dreie cloth vndire þe brayn panne in þe  
28 wounde, and þey leggen aboute þe wounde a potage, the whiche  
engendryth quytter; & whenne *þat* þe quytter ys engendryde, þey  
leggen in þe wounde carp opere lyneth of a clout; and þey anoynt<sup>5</sup>  
aboute þe wounde *with* oignement fusco; and at þe laste ende þey  
32 leggen aboute Apostolicon. And þey assayen in þis manere: zif *þat*  
þe brekyng of þe brayn panne be *with* a rimele, *þat* ys to seye a  
chyne, opere a creueys; & zif *þat* pilke creveys perse to wipynne,  
makyng þe syke man to streynen hys mouþ & hys nese, & þey

Add. MS.  
12,056.<sup>5</sup> At the end of the line.



Some physicians open the fissure from end to end,

which is entirely wrong.

[<sup>3</sup> *l. 66, bk.*]

Better open only one end of the fissure, make several holes in the skull,

and remove a piece of the bone.

mouþ & his nose, & þei maken him þanne to blowen, & þei loken<sup>1</sup> if ony þing<sup>2</sup> exale out<sup>3</sup> bi þilke rimele,<sup>2</sup>— as blod or ony other mater, þei drede not<sup>4</sup> to perse þilke rimelle. & þanne summe seien þat þilke rimele schulde be to-broke eipir peersid from þe toon eende to 4 þe topir wiþ rinspindel<sup>3</sup>, perischinge þe brayn scolle / A rinspindil is an instrument<sup>5</sup> þat<sup>6</sup> coteleris poudren<sup>4</sup> with her haftis, þe which figure schal be schapen in þis same chapitle folowyng. & þe worste þing<sup>7</sup> þat<sup>8</sup> a man may do is to peerse þe rimele on boþe sidis / 8 But<sup>9</sup> opere<sup>5</sup> men don bettere which þat<sup>6</sup> peerse þe rimele on þe oon eende which is moost<sup>7</sup> hangyng; & þei maken as manye hoolis, oon biside anoþer, as it<sup>8</sup> is nessessarie to make an hole in þe brayn panne, bi þe which hole if<sup>9</sup> ony þing<sup>10</sup> be fallen vpon, duram matrem<sup>12</sup> myzte be clenid; & þese, in as myche as touchinge trepanacioun<sup>6</sup> worchþ best / & whanne þat<sup>7</sup> þei han maad manye hoolis, þei kutten from oon hole to anoþer hole wiþ an instrument, þat<sup>8</sup> þei moun drawe out<sup>9</sup> þe boon þat<sup>10</sup> is bitwene þe ordure of holis þat<sup>11</sup> was 16 maad & þe rimele, & þei casten him away, & aftirward þei proceden

<sup>1</sup> þanne struck through after loken.

<sup>2</sup> as blod or ony oper mater. þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle, this is as a note at the bottom of the page.

<sup>3</sup> rinspindil, see mod. Germ. Rennspindel, f., upright drill, pump drill. Trépan.—Rumpf, *Technology. Diet.*

<sup>4</sup> poudren for boren, under the influence of 'pore.' Lat. porus.




<sup>6</sup> Lat.: quantum est ad trypanacionem.

Add. MS. 12,056. maken hym þenne to blowen, & þey loken 3if enye þynge exale out by þilke rymele. \* & 3if þat enye þynge exale out by þylke rymele, as blod ore enye opere matere, þey drede nozt to perce þilke rymele; 20 and þenne some sigge þat þilke rymele scholde be to-broke opere y-perced. from þat one ende to þat opere. with Rynspyndles, persynge þe braynscolle. 7 A rynspyndeH ys an Instrument þat Cutlers poudren wiþ here heftes, whose ffigure schal be schappyde<sup>8</sup> in þe 24 same chapitle ffolwyng. And þe worste þynge þat a man may do, ys to perce þe rymele on boþe sydes. But opere men don bettyre whiche þat persen þe rymele at þat one ende, whyche is moste hongyng; and þey maken as many holys on bysyde an opere, as 28 þeþ necessarye to maken an hole in þe brayn panne, be þe whiche hole 3if enye þynge þeþ<sup>9</sup> fallen vpon þe duram matrem myzte ben y-clansyde; & þese in as myche as towchlynge trepanacioun worchith best. And whenne þat þey haue made manye holys, þey kutten 32 from on hole to an opere with an spatymyne,<sup>10</sup> þat ys an Instrument, þat þey mowe drawyne out þe bon, þat ys betwene þe ordre of holys þat was y-made & þe rymele, & þey casten hym aweye, afterwarde


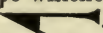

<sup>8</sup> MS. *scharpyde*. *rp* for *pp*, like *lk* for *kk*. See p. 120.

<sup>9</sup> þ above line.

<sup>10</sup> Lat.: cum spatumine.

- forþ in opere maner þingis as it is seid tofore / For whanne þou  
 desirist way of<sup>1</sup> trepaninge [þis manere trepanynge]\* sufficiþ to  
 þee in þe rimelis of þe brayn panne. þis schal be þe foorme of a  
 4 trepane [with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ]\*  
. & þis is þe foorme of a spatina, wiþ þe which a man  
 schal kutte from oon hole to anoþer hole . & þou schalt  
 smyte wiþ a mal<sup>2</sup> eiþer an hamer on þe greet eende; & whanne þou  
 8 hast remeued of þe boon þat schal be remoued, euene þe brynkis  
 with schauynge, þat þou mowe not leue no maner scharpnes in þe  
 brynkis. þis is þe maner of þe schap , <sup>3</sup> & þis schauē schal [f. 17. 67]  
 kutte on þe side þat foldiþ ynward, & it schal be blunt on þe oon  
 12 side þat is outward. & þei fulfillen þe wounde þat is wiþinne þe  
 fleisch wiþoutforþ, as I haue seid, with þe cloof expressid of þe  
 white of an ey & lynet, til þat þe wounde be ful, & also til þat  
 þe kynde haue regendrid a repeirement, þe which schal fulfille  
 16 þe place þere as þe boon was don away. Aftirward þei curen  
 þe wounde aftir comoun cure of woundis / Alle opere maner of  
 trepanacioun is comprehendid vndir o summe, þouȝ þat summen  
 ordeyne particuler aftir her dyuyse, diuers maners.
- 20 But bi as myche as I haue not seen in þis caas no way þat

<sup>1</sup> þe struck through after of.    <sup>2</sup> mal, Lat. malleus.

- þey proceden forth in opere manere thynges, as yt is seyde tofore. Add. MS.  
 And whenne þat þou desiriste þe wey of trepanynge, \*þis manere 12,056.  
 trepanynge suffiseþ to þe in þe rimeles of þe brayn panne. þis schal  
 24 ben þe forme of a trepane, \*with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be  
 trepaned wiþ . And þis is þe forme off a spatimene, with  
 þe whiche a man schal kutte with from on hole to an opere hole  
. And þou schalt smyten with a Mal opere an hamere  
 28 vpon þe gret ende; and whenne þou haste remefed of þe bon þat  
 schal be remeffyde, euene þe brynkes wiþ schauynge, þat þere mowe  
 noȝt lefe non manere scharpnesse in þe brynkes. þis ys þe manere  
 of þy schafe , and þis schafe schal kutten on þe syde þat  
 32 feldyȝ inwarde, & schal be blunt on þe syde þat ys outwarde.  
 And þenne fulfyllen þe wounde þat is in þe flesch, wiþoutforþ as y  
 haue seyde tofore, with clof expressyde of þe whyte of an eyȝe, &  
 lynet to þat þe wounde be ful, and also tyl þat þe kynde haue  
 36 regeneryd a repeyrement, þe whiche schal fulfille þe place where  
 þat þe bon was don away. <sup>4</sup>Afterwarde þey cure þe wounde aftere  
 comyn cure of wondys. Alle opere manere of trepanacioun ys  
 comprehendyde vndire on Somme, þowȝ þat sum men ordeynen  
 40 partyklerleche aftere here devyse, dyuerse maners. But be as  
 myche as y haue noȝt seyne in þis place no wey þat myȝte remefe

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 76 a]



Trepanning  
is dangerous.

Galien

and

Auicén

used medi-  
cines instead  
of operating.

[3 lf. 67, bk.]

Nota.

I operate if  
the broken  
piece

1.  
gets under  
the healthy  
bone,

2.  
or hurts the  
dura mater,

causing a  
tumour,

then cramp,

myzte remeue me from doute, bi as myche as I haue saied bi longe  
tyme, bope bi summe auctouris experimentis, & also bi myn experi-  
ment, & þat wei is not certeyn / þerfore here þei Galien, þat seiþ:  
if we mowe remeue quytture wiþoute doynge awei of boonys þat<sup>4</sup>  
schulde be do awey, it is good / And auicén & serapie<sup>1</sup> acorden to  
þe same sentence of cure of heed akþe þat comeþ of smytynge or  
ellis of fallynge, where þat he towchip<sup>2</sup> þe worchinge of hurtis of  
þe brayn<sup>3</sup> panne, not bi trepanacioun, but bi emplastris & medicyns / 8  
& also I took good hede þat manye mo men ben heelid bi maner  
of medicyns & emplastris, þan ben heelid bi trapanes, þat ben  
peersynge or þrillynge / For I ne vse not instrumentis to remeue  
the boon but in two causis / þe oon cause is if þat þe brayn panne 12  
be so myche I-slend<sup>4</sup> þat þe part þat is broke, entre vndir þe partie  
þat is hool / þe secunde caas is, if ony pece be departid from þe  
brayn panne, þe which þat prickiþ duram matrem / In þe firste  
caas dura mater is compressid. In þe secunde caas dura mater is 16  
prickid, which is cause of akþe, & akyng is cause of drawynge  
humouris, þere engendriþ an empostyme vpon þe same pannicle, þe  
which is cause of a crampe, & of opere accidentis tofore seid; &

<sup>1</sup> Serapie, probably Ser. the Elder, an Arab physician, cc. 900.

<sup>2</sup> towchip for techip.

<sup>4</sup> islend, Add. MS. yslend. See slent, to tear, to rend (Dorset).—Halliwell.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

me fro doute, by as myche as y haue assayed longe tyme bope by 20  
sum auctores experyment, & also by myn experyment, & þat wey  
is nozt certeyn, þerefore here þey Galien, whiche þat seiþ: 3if we  
mowe remywe quyter without doynge awey bonys þat scholde be  
do awey, hyt is good. And Auisene & Serapio acorden to þe same 24  
sentence of cure of hed-akþe, þat comyþ off smytynge opere ellys of  
fallynge, where þat he techith þe worchyng of hurtynges of þe  
brayn panne & of þe brayn, nozt by trepanacioun, but by emplastres  
& by medicines. And also y toke gode hede þat manye mo men 28  
ben y-helyde by manere medicines & emplastres, þenne ben y-helyde  
by trapanes þat beþ persynge opere þrillynge. Ffor y ne vse nozt  
Instrumentes to remywe þe bon, but in tweye cases—þat on cas ys  
3if þat þe breyn panne be so myche y-sleud, þat þe part þat ys 32  
y-broke entre vndire þe partye þat ys hol, þe secunde cas ys 3if þat  
enye pece be departyde from þe brayn panne, whyche þat pryketh  
duram matrem. In þe firste cas dura mater ys compressede. In þe  
secunde cas dura mater ys y-prikyde, þe whiche ys cause of akþe, 36  
& akyng ys cause of drawynge of humoures, the whiche engendriþ  
a posteme vpon þe same pannicle, the whiche is cause of a<sup>5</sup> crampe,  
& of opere accidentes tofore seyde, & at þe laste þey bryngen dep

<sup>5</sup> a, above line.



at þe laste þei bryngen deef to þe pacient / In þese .ij. causis finally death.  
 I leue hem<sup>1</sup> constreynd to remeue a boon wip handely<sup>2</sup> instru-  
 mentis. In alle opere maners of brechis eiper in creuicis, in what  
 4 maner þat þei happen, þow3 þat I be not siker of þe pacientis lijf, In all other  
 neþeles I procede in þis maner with more trist, bisekyng alwey cases I use  
 help of god, þe which þat<sup>3</sup> haþ heelid mo men bi myn hondis, þat medicine,  
 am his instrument, þan haue ben deed, nouzt azenstondyng alle  
 8 my cautels & helpinge. For soþe þat I haue biholde sopliche resonis [3 lf. 68]  
 & þe proces of opere auctouris, I holde þis wey lasse dredeful þan and by God's  
 ony opere / for I folowe þe sentence of Galien, which þat seiþ: help I have  
 if þat a man haue but o wei to his hele,<sup>4</sup> it is good þat he holde generally  
 12 pilke wey, þow3 þat it be yuel. been suc-  
 cessful.

& whanne þat I come to a man þat is woundid in þe heed, & I Treatment of  
 knowe þat þe brayn panne be broke, bi tokenes tofore seid, first I fractures of  
 considere þe vertu of him þat is pacient, & also his age & alle the skull,  
 16 opere particuler þing, & nameli vertu, & gladliche I leue þe cure, without  
 if þat I se ony deedly tokenes, but if it so be þat I be preied wip trepanning:  
 þe grettere instaunce of þe freendis of þe sike man. & not azen-  
 stondyng her preier I telle hise freendis þat bi wey of resoun þe

<sup>1</sup> hem for am; leue is erroneously added in margin.<sup>2</sup> handely ne. handy.<sup>4</sup> MS. ixele.

20 to þe pacient. In þese tweye causes y am constreynde to remefe a Add. MS.  
 bon with handly instrumentes. In alle opere manere of breches 12,056.  
 opere of crefeys, in what manere þat þey happen, þow3 þat y be  
 24 more trest, by sechyng alweye help of god, þe whyche þat haþ  
 y-helyde mo m<sup>en</sup> be myn handys, þat am hys Instrument, þenne  
 han be ded, nouzt azeynestondyng al my cauteles & <sup>6</sup>helpyng. [6 fol. 76 b]  
 Ffor sytthe þat y haf beholde sotelyche þe resouns & þe processes  
 28 of opere auctouris, y holde þis wey lesse dredful þenne enye opere.  
 Ffor y folwe þe sentence of galien, which þat seiþ: 3if þat a man  
 hath but o wey to hys hele, hyt ys gode þat he holde pilke weye,  
 þow3 þat pilke wey be eueH. And whanne þat y come to a Man  
 32 þat is woundyde in the hed, & knowe þat hys breyn panne ys  
 to-broke, by þe tokenys tofore seyde, ffirste y considere þe vertu of  
 hym þat ys pacient, & also hys age & alle oper<sup>7</sup> partyclere thyng,  
 & namly vertue. And gladliche y leue þe cure, 3if þat y se enye  
 36 dedly signes; but 3if þat so be þat y be preyde wip the grettere  
 Instance of þe frendes of þe seke man. And nouzt azeynestondyng  
 here preyere, y telle hys frendys þat by resoun þe pacient scholde

<sup>5</sup> MS. m, en cut away.<sup>7</sup> oper, above line.

If there are  
no mortal  
symptoms  
and if the  
wound is  
large,

[1 li. 68, bk.]

I shave the  
head and  
apply  
Olium  
Rosarum,

a defensif  
ointment,

compresses,

and band-  
ages.

pacient schulde die, & þanne I worche aboute him as in a man in  
whom yuele accidentis appere. & if þat þe signys ben not  
deedliche, & þe breche of þe brayn þanne be with a greet wounde  
of þe heed, & þat a greet partie of þe brayn þanne be do away al 4  
togidere, so þat I mowe <sup>1</sup>haue a good wey to leie medicyns vpon  
duram matrem / First I do schauē his heed, afterward I leie on an  
eeld lynnē clout & a þenne,<sup>2</sup> wett in .ij. parties of oile of rosis  
swete smellynge, & oon partie of mel roset colat, bitwene þe duram 8  
matrem & þe brayn þanne slizly & softli, þat dura mater be not  
compressid wip þe cloof þat is wet tofore seid; & I fulfille þe  
wounde of þe fleisch wip lint of oold lynnē cloof wett in þe zelke  
of an ey, & oile of rosis, boþe liche myche; & anoynte aboute þe 12  
wounde wip a defensif of bole armoniak ofte tymes I-seid, & leie  
aboute þe wounde a plumaciol, þe which þat schal keuere al þe  
wounde; & þanne aboute al-togidere I leie a greet plumaciol, wett  
in good hoot wiyn. & aftirward I bynde þe wounde wip a boond, 16  
byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe heed wip þe lynet & þe cloof, þe  
which þat is in þe wounde & aboute þe wounde myzte not slide to  
no partie, & bynde þe wounde in þat maner þat dura mater bi no

<sup>2</sup> MS. þanne, error for a þenne. Lat.: pannum lineum vetustum et  
subtile. See below.

Add. MS. deyzē, & þenne y wirche aboute hym, as y worche in a Man in 20  
12,056. whom yuel accidentes apere. And ȝif þat þe signes be nought  
dedlyche, & þe breche of þe breyn þanne be with a gret wounde of  
þe hed, & þat a grete partye of þe breyn þanne be don aweye alle  
togedre, so þat y mowe han a gode wey to legge medycynes vpon 24  
duram matrem. ffirste y do schaffe hys hed, afterwarde y legge an  
olde lynnē clout & a þenne, y-wett in two partyes of oyle of rosys  
swote smellynge, & on partye of mel rosat colat bytwene þe duram  
matrem and þe brayn þanne, slyzlye & softlye, þat dura mater be 28  
nozt compressyde with þe cloth þat ys y-wett tofore seyde, & y  
fulfille þe wounde of þe flesch with lynt of olde lynnē clof wet in  
þe ȝolke of an eyze & oyle of roses, of boþe y-lyche myche; & y  
anoynte aboute þe wounde with deffensyfe of bol armonyak ofte 32  
tymes seyde, & y legge abouen þe wounde a plumacyole whiche þat  
schal keuere alle þe wounde, and þenne <sup>3</sup>abouen alle togedre y  
legge a grete plumacyole in-wet in gode hot wyn. And afterwarde  
y bynde þe wounde with a bande, in byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe 36  
hed, þat þe lynet & þe clof whyche þat is in þe wounde & aboute  
þe wounde myzte nozt slyde to non partye, and y bynde þe wounde  
in þat manere þat dura mater be no weye be compressyde. þe

[3 fol. 77 a]



- wey be compressid. þe heeris of þe heed schulen be remeued away How to shave the head.  
on þis maner: clippe hem first *with* scheris, afterward take .ij. parties of water cold, & oon partie of oile <sup>1</sup>of rosis in somer, & [1 ff. 69]  
4 make hoot þe same water & oile in wyntir, & waische þe heed softliche, takynge hede þat no water ne oile entre into þe wounde, & þanne schaue it wip a rasour / & whanne þat I haue serued þe patient on þis maner, I lete him reste til on þe morowe, & aftirward  
8 I serue þe wounde on þe same maner til þat þe wounde be hool / Neþeles I considere if þat þe patient be ful of blood, & his vertu If the patient is strong,  
be strong, & if he be zongt, & litil blood bled at his wounde, & whanne alle þese þingis acorden, I make him to be leten blood on þe I bleed  
12 coral<sup>2</sup> veyne of þe arme / & but if he mowe go to priuy, I helpe and purge.  
him oonys aday, or wip suppositories or wip clisterie; & I procede in dietyng, as I haue seid in þe chapitle of dietyng / & whanne If pus is discharged  
þat þe wounde makip sufficiently quytture, I leie in þe wounde of  
16 þe brayn panne, & vpon þe brayn panne, as I haue don tofore; & aboue þe wounde I leie a mundificatif of mel roset, colat, & barly I use a mundificatif  
mele, til þat þe wounde be clensid, & þat þe dura mater be sowdid with þe brayn panne / & þanne I caste in þe wounde of þe heed and puluis capitalis.  
20 a poudre maad on þis maner / Take frank encense & ciperi, þat is þe

<sup>2</sup> coral veyne, vena cephalica.

- herys of þe hed schul be remywed away on þis manere: clippe Add. MS. 12,056.  
hem firste *with* scherys, afterwarde take two partyes of colde water & on partye of oyle of roses in somer, & make hot þe same watyr  
24 & þe oyle in wyntere & wassche þe hed softliche, takynge hede þat non watere ne oyle entre into þe wounde, & þenne schaffe yt *with* a rasoure. & whenne þat y haue seruyde þe patient on þis manere, y lete hym resten tyl on þe morwe; and afterwarde y serfe þe wounde  
28 on þe same manere tyl þat þe wounde be hol. Napeles y consydere zif þat þe patient be replet of blod, & hys vertue be stronge; & zif þat he be zonge, & lytel blod haue nouzt go out of hys wounde, & whanne alle þese þynges acorde, y make hym to by leten blod on þe  
32 coral veyne of þe arme; & but zif he mowe schiten, y helpe hym onys a day, opere wip suppositorye opere wip clisterye; and y procede in dyetyng as y haue seyde in þe chapyteH of dyetyng. And whenne makyth susesentlyche quyter, y legge in þe wounde  
36 of þe brayn panne & vpon þe brayn panne as y haue don toform, & aboue þe wounde y legge a mundytiatyff of mel rosat colat & barlye mele, tyl þat þe wounde ben y-clansyde, & þat þe dura mater be y-soudyde wip þe breyn panne; & þenne y caste in þe wounde of  
40 þe hed, poudre y-mad on þis manere: R frank Ensence, ciperi, þe



[1 lf. 69, bk.]<sup>2</sup> note of a cipres, <sup>1</sup>seed of mirtilles, mirre, ana. orobi, 3 j; make pou dre, & leie þis pou dre in þe wounde, & aboue þe pou dre leie þedis of lynnen cloþ, or ellis lynet; & aboue al-togidere leie an entreet maad of .ij. parties of whiȝt rosyn,<sup>3</sup> & oon partie of wex 4 moltun togidere vpon stronge vynegre, & colid þoruȝ a þinne streynour vpon cold water / & whanne þin hondis ben anoyntid wiþ oile of rosis, malaxe<sup>4</sup> it longe tyme togidere. In somer take euene porcioun of whiȝt rosyn & of wex; in wyntir / take .iiij. 8 partis of rosyn,\* & þe .v part of wex, & drawe abrood þat treet<sup>5</sup> on a cloþ, & leie it on þe wounde til þat he be perfiztliche cicatrisid. & if þat þer were ony partie of þe boon þat prickide duram matrem, þanne I aforce me to remeue þilke partie þat 12 prickip wiþ pynsouns,<sup>6</sup> if þat I may; & if þilke partie þat prickip be ioyned so faste to þe hool boon þat he wolde not be remeued away, þanne I remeue him away wiþ rugement<sup>7</sup> from þe partie þat halt,<sup>8</sup> in makynge oon hole or two, or mo, aftir þe quantite of þe 16

Lay over all  
all  
Entreet  
(Plaster)  
made from  
wax and oil  
of roses.

I remove a  
bone which  
pricks the  
membrane,  
with pincers.

<sup>2</sup> At the foot of lf. 69 is this note: R *radicis erios, aristolege, thuris, mer, aloes, sanguis draconis, orobus ana, ffac puluis.*

<sup>3</sup> *whight rosyn*, hardened Terpentine.

<sup>4</sup> *malaxe*, Lat. *malaxo*, mollify.

<sup>5</sup> *treet* = *entreet*. See p. 123, note 1.

<sup>6</sup> *wiþ pynsouns*, cum piccario. See Pynsone, Tenella. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 400.

<sup>7</sup> *wiþ rugement*. Lat.: cum *rugine* *ruginando*, Fr. *rugine*, *ruginer*.

<sup>8</sup> Both MSS. omit to translate the Lat. *si non possum*.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>9</sup> fol. 77 b]

note of cypresse, sede of mirtylles, mirre ana. 3. i., oreby. 3. j., mak pou dre & leye þis pou dre in þe wounde, & aboue þe pou dre leye þe þedis of lynne cloþ opere ellys lynet; and aboffe al togedire y- legge an entrete <sup>9</sup>y-made of two partyes of whyte resyn & on party 20 of wex y-molten togedre, & vpon stronge Vynegre, & y-colyd þorwe a þenne streynoure vpon<sup>10</sup> colde water; & whenne þat þyne hondys ben anoyntede with oyle of roses, & malaxe yt longe tyme togedyre. In somere take euene porcioun of whyt resyn & of wex; in wyntere 24 take foure partyes of —\* & þe fifte partye of wex, & y-drawe abrode þilke tret on a cloþ & legge yt on þe wounde, tyl þat he be perfutliche cecatryse. And ȝif þat þere were anye —\* of a bon. whiche þat prekyde duram matrem, þenne y aforce me to remeffe 28 þilke partye þat prykeþ with pynsones ȝif y may. And ȝif þilke partye þat prikeþ ys y-ioynede so faste to þe hol bon þat he nyl nouȝt be remeffyd away, þenne y remeffe hym aweye wiþ rugenyng. from þe partye þat halt, in makynge an hole, opere two, opere mo, 32 after þe quantyte of þe bon þat scholde be don away,\* þat halt with þe hole bon; & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole

<sup>10</sup> MS. *o pound*.

- boon þat schulde be don away [þat halt *with* þe hole bon & after-  
warde y kutte *with* a spatymene from on hole to anopere tyl al  
þe bon be remeffyde awaye.]\* / & whanne þat þe boon is remeued  
4 awei, I procede in þe cure as it is <sup>1</sup>seid in þis chapitle / But [¶ 11. 70]  
whanne I remeue a boon wiþ instrumentis of þe brayn panne,  
þanne I stoppe þe sijk mannes eeris, þat he mowe not heere þe I stop the  
soun of þe yren þat trepaniþ. & I remeue þe same maner þe partie patient's ears  
8 þat is broke, þe which þat goiþ vndir þe partie þat is hool, & com- during the  
pressiþ þe dura mater. & if þat a gobet eipir a pece of a boon operation.  
holde sumwhat in þe wounde, & myzte not lyztliche be remeued  
away, & he prickiþ not dura mater ne compressiþ not dura mater,  
12 þanne at þe bigynnyng I do on þe boon hoot oile of rosis, & I  
fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & þe zelke of an ey medlid *Nota*  
togidere, til þat þe boon be neischid & may lyztliche be remoued I soften the  
away; þanne I remeue þe boon softliche, & I procede in þe bone before  
16 worching bitwene þe boon & duram matrem, as it is seid tofore removing it.  
& if þat þe breche of þe brayn panne were as a creueis or ellis  
I-slend, & neiþer part of þe boon were lower þan oper, þanne I  
considere if þat ilke slendynge<sup>2</sup> perce al þe brayn panne; & þat  
20 þou schalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid, or ellis þou schalt  
knowe bi þis signe, þat neuere failiþ / Make <sup>3</sup>a plastre of poudre of [¶ 11. 70, bk.]

<sup>2</sup> *slendynge*, see p. 128, note 4.

- to anopere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde awaye.\* And whenne þe bon Add. MS.  
ys remeffyde away, y procede in þe cure, as yt is seyde in þis same 12,056.  
24 chapyteH. But whanne þat y remeffe a bon *with* Instrumentes of  
þe brayn panne, þenne y stoppe þe syke mannys eres, þat he mowe  
nozt here þe soun of þe eyren þat trepanyth. And y remeffe þe  
same manere, þe partye þat is broke, whiche þat goþ vndir þe  
28 partye þat ys hol, & compressyth þe dura mater; and zif þat a  
gobbet opere a pece of a bon helde sumwhat in þe wounde, &  
myzte nozt lyztlye be remeffyde away, and he prikyde nouzt ne  
compressyde nouzt duram matrem, þenne at þe bygynnyng y do on  
32 þe bon hot oyle of rosys, and y fulfille þe wounde *with* oyle of roses  
& þe zolke of an eyze y-medled togedire, tyl þat þe bon be y-  
nesschyde, and mowe lyztlyche be remyweде awaye; þenne y  
remeffe þe bon, & y procede in worchyng bitwene þe bon &  
36 duram matrem, as it is seyde tofore. & zif þat þe breche of þe  
breyn panne <sup>4</sup>were as a cerfes, opere ellys y-slend, & neiþere party  
of þe bon were lower þenne opere, þen y consydere zif pilke  
slendynge parten alle þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe by  
40 þe toknys tofore seyde, opere ellys þou schalt y-knowe by þis signe  
þat neuere failiþ: make a plastre of þe poudre of mastyk & þe

[¶ fol. 78 a]



How to discern by means of a Plaster, whether the fissure pierces the skull or not.

When the skull is pierced,

some physicians use trepanning.

[4 l. 71]

Nota.

mastik & þe white of an ey, medlid togidere as pikke<sup>1</sup> as hony, & distende<sup>2</sup> it vpon a clop, & leie it on þe place þat is hurt fro morowe til euen, or ellis from þe euene til þe morowe / & whanne þat þe plastre is remoued away, if þat þe creueis peerse þoruþ þe 4 brayn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drie azens þe creueis þan in ony oþer place, for þe greet heete þat comeþ fro þe brayn [& 3if þe breyn panne]\* be nouzt I-slend þoruþ, þe plastre schal be nomore drie aboue þe creueis þan on anoþer place / & if þe creueis perse 8 not þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as it is seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle, þere as I tolde of cure of wounde of þe heed, where þat þe brayn panne eiper þe brain is not hurt. For if þat ilke remile peerse þe brayn panne, þer is a greet doute in þe caas, for summen seien þat 12 it is impossible sich a wounde to heele; but if þe remele be trepaned, & a quantite of þe boon be doon away, þat þe superfluyte þat is cast vpon duram matrem may be doon away, or ellis þe dura mater schulde putrifien & be corrupt, & bi þat skil<sup>3</sup> þe pacient schulde 16 die, þe which þat myzte<sup>4</sup> be heelid bi þe remeuynge of þe boon / Neþeles I þat haue seen in trepaninge greet perel, namely whanne

<sup>1</sup> MS. *pilke*.

<sup>2</sup> *distende*, Lat. *distendo*.

<sup>3</sup> *bi þat skil*, Lat. *quare*. *Skil* = *causa*, synon. with 'resoun' occurs frequently in *Polychron*. See Gloss. The same construction in: '& by þe same skile' ea ratione, *ibid.*, iii. 465.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

whyte of an eyze, y-medlyde togedyre as þykke as hony, & distende it on a clop, & leye it on þe place þat ys hurt from morwe tyl euene, 20 oþere ellys from euene tyl þe morwe. And whenne þat þe plastre ys remefyd away, 3if þat þe crefeys persith þorwe þe breyn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drye anonde<sup>5</sup> þe crefeys þen in enye oþer place, for þe gret hete þat comyth from þe brayn; \* & 3if þe 24 breyn panne\* be nozt y-slend þorwe, þe plastre schal be namore rye abouen þe crefeys þenne on an oþere place. And 3if þe crefeysd perse nouzt þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as yt is seyde in þe bygynnyng of þis chapyteH, þere as y tolde of þe cure of wounde of 28 hed, where þat þe breyn panne oþere þe brayn ys nozt y-hurt. Ffor 3if þat þilke ryemele persyth þe breyn panne, þere ys a gret doute in þe cas, ffor some seyne þat yt ys vnpossible swyche a wounde to ben y-helyde, but 3if þe ryemele be y-trepanyd & þat a quantyte 32 of þe bon be y-don away, þat þe superfluyte þat ys y-caste vpon duram matrem mowe be done away, ellys þe dura mater scholde putrefien & be corrupt, & by þat skylle þe pacient scholde deye, whiche þat myzte be helyde by remywyng of þe bon. Naþeles y 36 þat haue y-seye in trepanyngre grete peryle, namlyche whanne þat

<sup>5</sup> Over an erasure,



- þat þe creueis is bisidis þe semys, where þat þe trepaninge is  
 deedlich / & I haue seen manye þat wipoute trepanyng<sup>1</sup> almyzty  
 god hap delyuerid bi myn hondis, wipoute touchinge of ony brayn  
 4 scolle wip ony trepan or wip iren; but I helde in to þe creueis hoot <sup>de vertute</sup>  
 oile of<sup>2</sup> rosis colat, & mel roset colat, medlid togidere affir þe <sup>Olium</sup>  
 doctrine tofore seid, fullillynge al þe wounde with sich maner <sup>Rosarum.</sup>  
 clopis; & aftirward leie aboue þe 3elke of an ey & oile of<sup>3</sup> rosis <sup>I use oil of</sup>  
 8 medlid togidere, & aboute a defensif of bole armoniak tofore seid, <sup>roses,</sup> a defensif  
 til þat þe quytture be engendrid. & aftirward I contynue mel  
 roset & oile of<sup>4</sup> rosis in þe wounde, & aboue a mundificatif of mel <sup>and a</sup>  
 roset & barly mele til þat þe ligament be fully engendrid on þe <sup>mundificatif</sup>  
 12 brayn panne, & þat þou schalt knowe whanne þat þou seest þe <sup>medicaine,</sup>  
 boonys ben<sup>1</sup> ioyned togidere, as it were two bordis weren ioyned  
 togidere with cole<sup>2</sup> or with glu; & þanne I fulfille þe wounde wip  
 drie predys of clene lynnen clop, & aboue<sup>3</sup> a mundificatif, til þat<sup>4</sup> [<sup>3</sup> 1r. 71, bk.]  
 16 þe boon be keuerid. þanne I strowe on aboue þe capitale poudre  
 tofore seid, & I leie on þe schauynge or ellis þe rasure<sup>4</sup> of lynnen  
 clop, & aboue al þis I leie on a treet of whigt rosyn; & I do alle <sup>and a plaster</sup>  
 þese þingis þat I haue seid tofore til þat þe wounde be consowdid / <sup>of terpine.</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ben*, above line.<sup>2</sup> *cole*, Lat.: sicut si essent duo ligna cum glutino in simul incolata.<sup>4</sup> *rasure*, Lat. rasura.

- 20 þe crefeys ys bysyde þe semys, where þat trepanynge ys dedlyche, Add. MS.  
 and y haue seye manye þat wipouten trepanynge almyztie god hap 12,056.  
 delyuerede be myn handys, without touchynge enye brayn scolle  
 with trepane opere with eyren; but y helde into þe crefeys hote  
 24 oyle of roses, and y legge aboue clopes y-wett in mel rosat colat, &  
 oyle rosat colat y-medlyde togedyre after þe doctryne tofore seyð,  
 ffulfyllinge aH þe<sup>5</sup> wounde wip swyche manere clothys, & after-  
 warde y legge aboue þe 3olke of an eyze & oyle of roses y-medlyde [<sup>5</sup> fol. 78 b]  
 28 togedres, and aboue þe wounde a defensiff of bol armonyac tofore  
 seyð, tyl þat þe quytter be engendryd. & afterwarde y contynwe  
 mel roses & oyle rosarum in þe wounde, & aboffe a mundificatyf of  
 mel rosarum & barly mele, tyl þat þe ligament be fullliche engendrede  
 32 on þe breyne panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe whenne þat þou seste  
 þe bonys Ioynede togedre, as yt were tweye bordys Ioynede to  
 gedre wip colle opere wip glew<sup>3</sup>; & þenne y fulfille þe wounde with  
 drye predys of lynnen clop, and abouen a mundificatyf tyl þat þe  
 36 bon be keffride aboue. & þenne y strawe on aboue þe capytale  
 poudre tofore seyde, & y legge on þe schaffynge opere ellys þe  
 rasure of lynnen clop, and abouen al þis y legge on a Tret of resyne;  
 & y do alle þynges þat y haue seyde tofore tyl þe wounde be con-

& if 3e make an obieccioun how þat it myzte, wipoute arerynge of  
 þe boon, þe blood & þe quytture be dried, þe which þat fil doun bi  
 pilke slendynge vpon duram matrem / I answe: ryzt<sup>1</sup> as þe mater  
 of þe frenesie & þe mater of þe litarge<sup>1</sup> þat is more doutes, bi 4  
 emplastris wipoutforþ I-leie is dissolued, & þer is no slendynge of  
 þe brayn panne, ne no wounde in þe skyn, myche more lyztloker &  
 more bettere þe blood, þat is lyzt<sup>1</sup> & able to be resolved, þe which  
 þat wente doun bi þe forseid slending<sup>1</sup>, may bi þe forseid slendynge 8  
 þe bettere be exaled. Ne pilke blood is not viscat<sup>2</sup> in þe substaunce  
 of dure matris, as þe mater is in empostymes, wherfore he is more  
 obeisschaunt\* — — to þe attraccioun of medicyns /

[<sup>3</sup> li. 72] & if þe brayn panne be hurt wipoute wounde <sup>3</sup> of þe skyn, þe 12  
 which þou shalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid / panne summen  
 kutte aboue þe hurtyng in þe maner of a crose, & þei areren þe  
 .iiij. quarters, & þei kutten & fleen þe pannicle þat keueriþ þe  
 boonis. & aftirward þei vsen trapanes & her opere comoun curis, as 16  
 it is schewid tofore / But I kutte not þe skyn in þe maner of a  
 crose, but in þe maner of a scheeld or ellis of a þing<sup>1</sup> þat is triangle  
 in þis maner ◁, & I make but oon quarter, & I vnwrie þe boon  
 þat þe oile of þe rosis may peerse yn, & þat þe vertu of þe medicyn, 20

Some phy-  
sicians use  
trepanning.

I apply oil of  
roses.

<sup>1</sup> *litarge*, Lat. *lethargus*. Lethargy, stupor.

<sup>2</sup> *viscat*, Lat. *inviscatus*, inclosed. See below, *inviscat*.

Add. MS. 12,056. soulded. And 3if me maken an obieccioun how þat yt myzte with-  
 outen arerynge of þe bon, þe blod & þe quyter be dreyede whiche  
 þat fel doun by pilke slendynge vpon þe duram matrem, I answe:  
 ryzte as þe matere of þe frenesie & þe matere of þe litargie þat is 24  
 more doutes, by emplastres withouten forth leyd is desolfed, and  
 þere nys none sclyndynge of þe breyn panne ne no wounde in þe  
 skyn, myche more lyztlokere & more bettere þe blod þat is lyzt &  
 able to ben reselfyde, whiche þat wende done be þe forseide 28  
 slendynge, may be þe forseide slendynge beter ben exaled. Ne  
 pilke blod ys nozt inviscat in þe substaunce of dure matris as þe  
 matere ys in apostemys, wherfore he ys more obeyssaunt to\* þe  
 expulcioun of kynde, & also ys more obeyssaunt to the attracioun 32  
 of medycine. And 3if þe brayn panne be hurte wipout wounde of  
 þe skyn, þe whiche þou schalt y-knowen by þe toknys tofore seyde,  
 þenne sum men kutten aboue þe hurtyng in þe manere of a cros, &  
 þey areryn þe foure quarters, & þey kyttten & flen þe pannycle þat 36  
 keferith þe bonys, & afterwardes þey vsen trepanys & here opere  
 comyn cures, as \*yt ys schewyde tofore. But y kytte nozt þe skyn  
 in manere of a cros, but in þe manere of a Schelde opere ellys of  
 a thyng þat ys tryangle in þis manere ◁, & y make but on 40  
 quartere & y vnwrye þe bon, þat þe oyle of roses may persen yn,

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 79 a]



- pat' is maad of hony of rosis & oile of rosis, may drawe fro byneþe þe brayn-panne / & I do in þis caas al þing' as it' is 'declarid next' aboue. & if' 3e make obieccioun azens me bi costantyne<sup>1</sup> or ellis bi  
 4 opere, pat' seien pat' bi al oure myzt we eschewen pat' neiþer oile  
 ne noon oyntuose þing' falliþ not' wipinne þe brayn-panne / I  
 answe're wip auicen, pat' seiþ: pat' he worchip riȝtfulliche pat' vsiþ  
 teped<sup>2</sup> oilis, & þe same tellen galien & serapion; & also I seiþ pat'  
 8 oile of rosis, þe which pat' schal<sup>3</sup> be maad of grapis of olyue trees  
 pat' ben not' ripe, is not' oyntuose, but' it' is drie, & is clepid oile  
 enfancinum;<sup>4</sup> & namely whanne pat' rosis ben medlid wip þilke  
 oile, þilke oile haþ gete to him a swete smellynge & a drie þing' of  
 12 comfortynge<sup>5</sup> animal spiritis; & also pat' oile haþ a vertu expressif,  
 as galien telliþ in þe book of symple medicyns, bi þe whiche þe  
 brayn is comfortid & akpis ben swagid / & if' þer be maad ony greet'  
 blood, it' is maad sutil with pat' oile; & whanne alle þese þingis  
 16 ben congaderid & leid aboue duram matrem, it' is clensid /
- ¶ Sumtyme þe brayn is meued of sum greet' hurt' eiþer of sum  
 fallynge or of sum smytynge wipoute ony wounde or wipoute ony

Constantyn  
objects,but  
Auicen,Galien,  
Serapion,  
and I use

[3 lf. 72, bk.]

Oleum  
enfancinumas a strength-  
ening  
remedy.

Galien.

Concussion of  
the brain not  
complicated<sup>1</sup> Constantinus Africanus, c.c. 1070.<sup>2</sup> teped, Lat. tepidus.<sup>4</sup> enfancinum, for omfacinum ὀμφάκιον ἐλαϊον, oil made from unripe olives (Diosc. I. 29). Vigo Interpr.: "Omphax in Greke is an vnripe grape. Vigo calleth oyle of omphacyne, that oyle that is made of vnripe Olyves." Compare Tomm. Diet. s. v. onfacino.<sup>5</sup> See below.

- and pat' þe vertue of þe medycine, pat' ys y-mad of honye of  
 20 roses & oyle of roses, may drawe fro byneþe þe brayn-panne; and  
 y do in þis cas al þynge, as yt declarith nexte aboffe. And ȝif  
 men make obieccioun azeyns me by constantine opere ellys by hym,  
 pat' seyth pat' by alle oure myght' we enchewyn pat' neþere oyle ne  
 24 non vncomys<sup>6</sup> þynge falle noȝt withynne þe brayn-panne, I answe're  
 with Auecene, pat' seyth: pat' he wircheþ ryȝtfulliche pat' vsith  
 certeyne oyles, & þe same telliþ galien & serapion, and also y seye  
 pat' oyle of roses, whiche pat' be mad of grapes of Olyue tres pat' beþ  
 28 noȝt ripe, is noȝt vnetuose, but is dreyȝe; & it is clepyde oyle  
 Omfacinum, & namlye whanne pat' roses ben y-medlyde with pat'  
 oyle, þilke oyle hath y-gete to hym a swete smellynge & a dreyȝinge,  
 cumffortynge animal spiritis; and also þilke oyle hath a vertue  
 32 expressif, as galien tellyth in the bok' of symple medicynes, by þe  
 whyche þe brayn ys conffortyde & akpes ben aswagede, & ȝif þere  
 be mad enye gret blod, yt is y-made SotyH; & whenne alle þese  
 þynge ben y-gadryde togedyre & leyde abouen, dura mater ys  
 36 clansed. Sumtyme þe brayn ys meffye of sum gret hurt' opere of  
 sum fallynge, opere of sum smytynge withouten eny wounde ore enye

Add. MS.  
12,056.<sup>6</sup> Corrupt, probably for vnetouys.



by a wound  
or fracture.

*Nota*

A certain  
Canon fell  
from his  
horse,  
and was left  
senseless.

[1 ff. 73]

I thought  
him dying,

*Nota*

but entreated  
by his friends

I anointed his  
head

and laid on  
compresses,

breech of ony boon, þanne do þou as I dide to a chanoun of þe  
ordre of seynt austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lept vpon an  
hiz hors & haue seten in þe satel, þe hors areride vpon hise two  
hyndere feet, & pilke chanoun fel doun backward vpon þe erþe vpon 4  
his heed; & al his bodi was brusid & namely aboute þe heed, þat  
anoon he loste þe meuyng and þe felyng of al his body / þanne a  
lewid leche <sup>1</sup>þat was frend to pilke chanoun was clepid, & he cowde  
not helpen him, for he hadde neuere seen þe same caas, ne he 8  
cowde not no letrure<sup>2</sup> / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I foond him  
neiper heerynge, ne spekyng, ne no þing<sup>1</sup> meuyng, & I deemeðe  
him for deed / & neþeless<sup>3</sup> I seide, & he were my broþer, I nolde not  
for an .C. mark, but I asaiede in him goodnes of þe helpinge of 12  
medicyns / for ofte tyme kynde wip good werkis helpiþ priuylie  
þat semeþ vnpossible to a leche. & þei þanne preieden me with greet  
instaunce / & I made þe heeris of his heed to be schauen & þanne  
I anoyntide al þe heed wip. iij. parties of oile of rosis, & oon partie 16  
of vynegre hoot medlid togidere, & I castide aboue poudre of  
mirtillis, & leide aboue a sotil linnen cloþ þinne, wett in þe same

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: nec sciebat aliquid de scripturis. O.Fr. lettreure. See *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat. Gloss.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: meo tamen addens iudicio quod pro centum marchis argenti non dimitterem, quin adhuc probarem in eo, si meus esset frater, iuvamenta medicinæ inducens.

Add. MS. 12,056. breche of eny bon, þan do þou as dyde y to a Chanoun of þe ordre  
of saint Austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lopyn vpon an hye 20  
hors and haue seten in þe sadyH, þe hors areryde vpon hys two  
[<sup>3</sup> fol. 79 b] <sup>3</sup>hyndere fete, & pilke chanoun fel doun bakwarde vpon þe erthe  
on hys hed; & alle hys bodye was y-brusyde, and namlye aboute þe  
hed þat anon he lost þe ffelyng & þe meffyng of alle his bodye. 24  
þanne a lewyde leche þat was frende to pilke Chanoun was y-  
clepyde, & he couþe helpe hym nozt, for he had neuere seyne þe  
same cas, ne he ne couþe nozt on lettre. And at þe laste y was  
clepte, & y fonde hym nozt herynge ne spekyng ne nothyng 28  
mevyng, I demyde hym for ded, and napeles sauýde, zif þat he  
were my broþer y nolde nozt for an hundrede mark, but y sayede  
in hym þe godnesse & þe helpyng of medycines; ffor ofte tymes  
kynde with gode wekys helpith preueliche þat semyth vnpossible 32  
to a leche. And þenne þey preyede me with gret Instaunce, and y  
made the herys of hys hed to be schaffen and þenne y anoynt aH þe  
hed with þre partye of oyle of roses, & on partye of vyneger hot  
y-medlyde togedyre, & y caste abouen þe poudre of mirtylles, and y 36  
leyde abouen a sotyH þenne cloth y-wet in þe same oyle & vynegre,

- oile & vynegre, & aboue *pat* tow3 smal tosid, & I boond al *pe* heed a bandage,  
 wiþ a boond, & aboue I leide a lambis skyn. & so I chaungide it<sup>1</sup> and a lamb's  
 pries ech day in anoyntyng *pe* nolle & *pe* necke into *pe* myddil<sup>1</sup> skin.  
 4 of *pe* rigge-boon bihynde wiþ hoot<sup>1</sup> oile of camonille / In *pe*  
 ij. day he openede a litil hise yzen, & he bigan to loke aboute On the 2nd  
<sup>2</sup>him as it hadde be a deef<sup>1</sup> man *pat* were in a wondring<sup>1</sup> / & *panne* day he opened  
 summe wolden haue asaied if *pat* he myzte haue ete / & I wolde his eyes.  
 8 not suffre him to ete / & I seide þow3 *pat* he wolde ete *pat* he [2 lf. 73, bk.]  
 schulde not / In *pe* iij. day I spak to him / he answeride me babe- On the 3rd he  
 lyng as a child *pat* bigynneþ to speke, but he myzte forþ wiþ no babbled.  
 word<sup>3</sup> / In *pe* iiij. dai he spak boistousliche<sup>4</sup> / & *panne* I 3af him to On the 4th he  
 12 drynke hoot<sup>1</sup> ypocras<sup>5</sup> *pat* is maad of sugre & of watir / In *pe* v. spoke  
 day he took pikke tizanne<sup>6</sup> / In *pe* vj. dai I 3af him broþ of a boisterously.  
 chicken; and *panne* he bigan to strenkþe litil & litil, & litil & litil From the 6th  
 to meuen / & neuer-*pe*-lattere he myzte not walke not manye daies him strength-  
 16 aftir. & whanne *pat* he myzte take sufficiently mete, I comaundide ening food,

<sup>1</sup> of *pe* myddil, inserted.

<sup>3</sup> See below, note 8.

<sup>4</sup> *boistisliche*. Lat.: balbutiundo, stammering, seems to connect the sense of O.Fr. *boistous*, lame, with boisterous.

<sup>5</sup> *ypocras*, error for *ydrosacre*. See below. "*Hydrosaccharum*, a Syrup made of Water and Sugar." Phillips. *Hippocras*, a kind of "Artificial Wine, made of Claret or White Wine, and several sorts of Spice." *Ibid*.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. *ptisanam* spissam. Matth. Sylv.: "*Tisanna* i. aqua ordeï uel fariola."

- & aboue *pat* tow3 smale y-tosyde, & y bonde alle *pe* hed with a band, Add. MS.  
 & abouen y leyde a lambys skyn, & so y chaungede yt twyes euerye 12,056.  
 day; in anoyntyng *pe* nolle & *pe* nekke into *pe* myddeþ of *pe*  
 20 rygge-bon byhynde wiþ hote oyle of Camamyll. In *pe* secunde  
 day he opnyde a lyte his eyzen, & he hygan to loken aboute hym  
 as it hadde be a deff<sup>1</sup> man, opere ellys a man *pat* were in a  
 wondryng; and *penne* some wolden haue assayed 3if *pat* he wolde  
 24 eten, & y wolde nouzt<sup>7</sup> Suffren hym to eten, & y seyde þow3 *pat* he [7 fol. 80 a]  
 wolde eten he scholde nouzt. In *pe* þridde day y spak<sup>1</sup> to hym, &  
 he answerde me bablyng as a childe *pat* begynneþ to speke, but he  
 myzte formen non worde.<sup>8</sup> In *pe* fourþe day he spak<sup>1</sup> bostynglyche,  
 28 & *penne* y gaf hym to drynke hot ydrosacre, *pat* ys y-mad of Sugre  
 & of watyre. In *pe* ffyfte day he toke pikke<sup>9</sup> tysan. In *pe* sixe day  
 y gaf hym *pe* broth off<sup>1</sup> a chykne, & *penne* he gan to strengþe litel  
 & lytel & lytel, & lytel to meffen, & neuere *pe* latere he myzte nouzt  
 32 walkyn by manye dayes. And whanne *pat* he myzte take Suffi-  
 sauntlye mete, y comaundyde hym to take Pylulas Cochias, for to

<sup>8</sup> Lat.: verbum non potuit formare.

<sup>9</sup> MS. *þilke*.



purgative  
pills,

and brain of  
fowl and kid.

Evil  
symptoms  
[3 lf. 74]

are: cramp,  
immobility  
except of the  
muscles of  
the chest.

Three ways  
of treatment:

1.  
the way used  
by  
Anselme.

2.  
trepanning.

3.  
my own way,

him to take pilulas chochias<sup>1</sup> for to resolue bi euaciacioun þe matere þat I-gaderide togedere in þe heed bi pilke fallinge / & I comaundide him to ete ofte þe braynes of briddis heedis, & of hennys & of smale briddis & kedis / & in þis maner he was hool; nepeles he was 4 neure so sotil of witt as he was tofore /

In þis ben yuel signes as þe face to be to<sup>2</sup> crokid, & þe yzen to loke asquynt<sup>3</sup> eiper crokidliche, apoplexie, crampe, to schite wipoute felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outcept þe lacertis of<sup>8</sup> 8 þe brest þat moun be saaf<sup>4</sup> / He þat rediþ þis book may chese aftir his owne wil oon of iij. weis þe whiche þat ben now vsid / þe toon is þe wey þe whiche þat is seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle, þe which wey manye vsen, & a leche of Ianewe<sup>5</sup> þat is clepid anselme 12 vsiþ þis wey, & þerbi he gate myche money / nepeles I wiste weel þat manye men dieden in hise handis bi þis wey / þe secunde maner is in almaner hurtyng of þe heed to vsen terabracioun<sup>6</sup> eiper remeu- 16 yng of þe boon wip handliche instrumentis / þe iij. is my wey þe 16

<sup>1</sup> *Cochia*. An ancient name for several officinal purgative pills. Dunglison, *Medic. Lex.* κόκκος, a pill. Alex. Trall. Compare Fr. cochée.

<sup>2</sup> be to, added in margin.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. : præterquam lacertorum pectoris qui sallire videntur. The translator evidently read *sallere* instead of *sallire*.

<sup>5</sup> Anselmus de Ianua. A. de Porte, quoted by Guy de Chauliac as Anserinus de Ianua, XIII. cent. Ianua is Genoa, see Eloys Dictionn. historique.

<sup>6</sup> "*Terebration*, a boring or piercing; a Term more especially used in Surgery." Phillips. "*Terebra*, an Awger or Wimble, a Piercer; also an Instrument to engrave on Stones; also a Surgeon's Trepan or Trepaniron." *Ibid.*

Add. MS.  
12,056.

resolue by evacuacioun þe matere þat was y-gadrede togedere in þe hed by pilke fallynge. And y comaundyde hym to eten ofte þe braynes of briddys hedys, as of hennys & of smale bryddes, & also of kyddes; and in þis manere he was hol; napeles he was neuyre 20 so sotyl of wyt as he was tofore. In þis cas buþ yuele signes: as þe face to be crokyde, & þat on eyze to loken asquynt oþer crokydlyche, apoplexie, crampe, to schyte wipout felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outsepte þe lacertes of þe brest þat 24 mowe be saff. He þat rediþ þis bok may chesen after hys owne wyl, one of þre weyes whiche þat beþ now y-vsye, þat on ys þe wey whiche þat ys seyde in þe bygynnyng of þis chapitell, þe whiche weye many vsen, and a leche o Ianewe þat is y-clepyde 28 Anselme vsiþ þis weye, & þereby he gat myche moneye, napeles y wyste wel þat manye men dyzeden in his handys by þis wey. þe 7 secunde weye is in alle manere hurtynges of hed to vsen tere- 32 bracioun, oþere ellys remeffynge of þe bon with handliche Instru- mentes; þe þridde ys my weye whiche þat y haue tolde opynlye in

[7 fol. 80 b]



which þat I haue told openliche in almaner caas / & I bileue, if<sup>where fewer people die.</sup>  
 þat he take hede to alle þese weyes & þat he wole wisely discussen  
 alle þe opynyons of auctouris, þat he schal seen fewere die bi my  
 4 .iij. wey þan bi ony of þe opere .ij. weyes // Almyȝti god lede þe  
 redere of þis werk in þe best wey, þoruȝ whos myȝtis, wordis takis  
 sentencis & also vnderstandinge.

þowȝ þat we han bihoten to tretyn of ano<sup>t</sup>amie of membris [<sup>1</sup> lf. 74, bk.]  
 8 þat ben compound, in þe bigynnyng of eueri chapitle of þis  
 secunde tretis, neþeles we leuen<sup>2</sup> it for þe bettere for to treten of  
 anotamie of þe visage, to þe þridde tretise, where we schulden treten  
 of sijknes þat comen to þese membris, þe whiche syknessis ben non<sup>3</sup>  
 12 woundis // // // <sup>The anatomy of the face is given in the 3rd treatise.</sup>

**T**he secunde chapitle of woundis of þe face & ¶ Cap. ij.  
 anotamie of þe same.

Woundis þat ben maad in þe face, or þei be maad wiþ a swerd  
 16 or wiþ sum dinge<sup>4</sup> ellis þat woundip, or þei ben maad wiþ pricknygo  
 of a knyf, arowe, eiper spere. It is necessarie þat a surgian haue  
 more diligence in þe woundis of þe face, for it is a place þat is  
 myche seen, & it is wel to do make<sup>5</sup> a sotil<sup>6</sup> cicatrice / A wounde  
<sup>Wounds of the face must be treated carefully.</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Lat. relinquimus tamen propter melius.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *now*.

<sup>4</sup> *dinge*, in margin.

<sup>5</sup> Compare: *þis instrument may ȝe do make wiþoute grete cost.* Quinte  
 Essence, p. 62.

<sup>6</sup> *a sotil*, in margin.

20 alle manere of cas; and y beleue ȝif þat he wyl take hede to alle  
 þese weyes, & þat he wyȝt wyslye dyscussen þe opyniouns of  
 Auctores, þat he schal se fewere dyȝe be my þridde weye þenne by  
 enye opere. Almyȝtie god lede þe redere of þis werk in þe beste  
 24 wey, þorwe whose myȝte, wordes takyȝh sentence & echyn vnder-  
 stondyng. þowȝ þat we han behoten to treten of Anotamye of  
 membres þat ben componed, in þe bygynnyng of eueri chapyteȝ  
 of this secunde tretys, neþeles we leuen yt for þe bettere for to treten  
 28 of þe Anotamye of þe vysage, to þe þridde tretys, where we schulle  
 tretyn of seknesse þat comyȝh to þis membres, whyche seknesse  
 beþ non woundes.

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

¶ Cap. off woundes of þe face & Anotamye of þe same.

32 Woundes þat ben made in þe face, opere þey beþ mad with a  
 swerde, ore wiþ sum thyng ellys þat woundep, opere þey ben mad  
 wiþ prikyng of a knyf, arwe, opere spere. Yt is necessarye, þat a  
 surgyne haue more diligence in þe woundes of þe face, for it is a  
 36 place þat is myche y-seyne, & yt ys wel y-do to make a sotyl cic-  
 tryce. A wounde þat ys mad with a swerde opere with sum þynge

There is a lle  
about re-  
placing a nose  
cut off.

[1. 17. 75]<sup>2</sup>

Wounds of  
the nose:  
a longi-  
tudinal cut,

a transverse  
cut, the nose  
still hanging.

Adjust the  
nose, retain  
it in position  
by splints  
of wax,

sew it,

þat is maad wip a swerd or wip sumping<sup>1</sup> semblable þat is alwei in  
lenkþe, a man muste sotilliche sowen & gaderen þe parties of þe  
wounde togidere / & for þat manye men lizen of þe wounde of þe  
nose, þei seien þat oon bar his nose kutt of in his hond, þe which  
nose was afterward sett azen in his owne kynde; þe which is an open  
lesynge / For þe spirit of lijf of felynge & <sup>1</sup>meuynge passip, whanne  
a membre is depertid from þe bodi / I wole bigynne at a wounde of þe  
nose þat is kutt in lenkþe, þe which cure is lizt to hele / Brynge þe 8  
parties togidere of þe wounde & sowe hem, & worche aboute þe wounde  
as I haue seid tofore in þe chapitle of woundis / & if þat þe nose  
were kutt ouerþwert<sup>1</sup> douz to þe ouer lippe, & nepeles þat þe ouer lippe  
& þe nose were kutt al away, but þat it held faste at bope þe eendis 12  
of þe eendis of þe wounde, þanne sette azen þe nose in his propre place,  
þe noseþrillis ech azen opir as þei weren tofore, & make two smale  
tentis of wax & putte on eipir noseþrille aboute þe wounde, if þat þou  
maist, & þanne make a poynt bi þe space of a litil fyngre from þe oon 16  
eende of þe wounde, & anoper poynt at þe opere eende of þe wounde,  
& anopir poynt in þe myddil of þe nose azen þe forheed; and aftir-  
ward a poynt on eipir side of þe nose, aftirward make [a poynt]\*  
bitwene eueri poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntis 20

<sup>2</sup> Heading to this page: *Off wondes off the fface & Anotomy off þe same from the face to the ffote.*

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[fol. 81 a]

semblable þat is alweye in lengthe, a man moste sotylliche sowyn &  
gedre þe parties of þe wounde. And for þat many men lyzen <sup>3</sup> of  
þe wounde of þe nese, þey seyzen þat on bare hys nose y-kytte of in  
hys hande, þe whiche nose was afterwarde y-sette azeyne in hys 24  
owne kynde; þe whiche ys an opyn lesynge, for þe spiryt of lyf of  
felynge & of meffynge passith awaye, whanne a membre is departyde  
from þe body. I wylle begynne at þe wounde at þe nese þat is  
y-kutte in lengthe, wose cure ys lyzt to hele; brynge þe parties to- 28  
gedre of þe wounde & sowe hem, & wirche aboute the wounde as y  
haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of wondes. And zif þat þe nese  
were y-kutte twarte offere down to þe ouere lippe, & napeles þat þe  
ouyre lippe & þe nose were nozt kutte al away, but þat it helde 32  
faste at bope þe endys of þe wounde, þanne sette azeyne þe nose in  
his propre place, þe noseþrellys yche azeyns opere as þey were to-  
fore, & make two smale tentys of wax, & putte in bope þe nose-  
þrellys aboute þe wounde, zif þat þou maist, & þenne make a poynt 36  
by þe space of a litel fyngere from þat on ende of þe wounde,  
& an opere poynt at þe opere ende of þe wounde, and an opere  
poynt in þe myddel of þe nose anentys þe forhede; & after-  
warde a poynt on eipere syde of þe nose, afterwarde make a poynt\* 40  
betwene evry poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntes,



- whanne þei ben ful maad, ix. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seid vpon þe wounde, þat is maad of <sup>1</sup>line, frank encense, & sandragoun / & take þe white of an ey & oile of rosis, & bete hem togidere,
- 4 & wete þerinne a linnen clop & leie aboute þe wounde / Aftirward bynde\* þerto þre plumaciols, oon vndirneþe, anoper on þe oon side, anopir on þe toþir side / & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ two bandis / þe toon schal holde vp þe nose þat he may not discende dounward /
- 8 þe toþir schal be leid aboute þat he mowe kepe þe plumaciols, poudre, & þe sowynge / & pilke boond þat is vnder þe nose þat halt þe nose vpward, schal be knytt<sup>2</sup> aboute vpon þe heed, & aftirward he schal be turned ouertwert<sup>3</sup> ouer þe forheed, þat he mowe holde þe boond, þat
- 12 þe nose decline to neipir<sup>3</sup> side. & þe boond þat is leid aboute þe nose, schal be bounden bihynde in þe nolle / & aftirward he schal turne azen aboute þe nose, holdynge þe plumaciols þat þei moun not wagge to neipir side aboute þe sowynge; & aboute þe forheed, þou schalt leie
- 16 þe defensif of bole, & aftirward þou schalt worche on þe wounde of þe nose, as I haue seid in a wounde of fleisch in þe fourþe<sup>4</sup> tretis /
- þe woundis þat ben maad in opere parties of þe face <sup>5</sup>as wiþ a swerd or ony ping<sup>5</sup> semblable, brynge hem togidere & sowe hem & cure hem, as it is conteyned in general chapitlis of woundis, takynge

throw a powder on the wound,  
[<sup>1</sup> lf. 75, bk.]

apply three pledgets, and two bandages,

one holds the rose in position,

the other the pledgets,

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 76]

Wounds on other places must be carefully stitched,

<sup>2</sup> MS. kutt.

<sup>3</sup> MS. þe neþir.

<sup>4</sup> fourþe for firste.

- whenne þey ben ful mad, .IX. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seyde vpon þe wounde, þat is y-mad of lym, frank ensence, sandragoun, & take whyte of an ey & oyle of roses and bete hem togidere, &
- 24 leye þereynne a lynne clop & leye abouten þe wounde, aftirward [bynde]\* þereto þre plumaciols, one <sup>6</sup>vndireneþe, & on on þat o syde, an opere on þe opere syde; & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ tweye bandys, þat on schalt holden vp þe nose þat he may nouzt discendyn dounward, þat opere schal be leyde aboffe þat he mowe kepyn þe plumacyolus, poudere, & þe sowynge. And pilke bande þat ys vnder þe nose þat halt þe nose vpward, schal be knett abouten on þe hed, and aftirwarde he schal be turnyde twarte offere þe forehed, þat he
- 28 mowe holde þe bande, & þe nose declyne to neipere syde. And þe bande þat ys leyde aboffe þe nose, schal be bounden behynden in þe nolle; and afterwarde he schal turnen azeyne aboffe þe nose, holdynge þe plumacyoles þat þey mowe nozt wagge on neythere syde
- 36 aboute þe sewynge; & aboute þe forhed þou schalt legge þe defensif of bol, and aftirwarde þou schalt worche on þe wounde of þe nose as y haue seyde in a wounde of fleisch in þe firste tretys. þe woundes þat beþ y-mad in opere partye of þe face as with a swerd
- 40 ore opire þynge semblable, brynge hem togidere, sowe hem, & cure hem, as yt ys conteyned in generall chapitle of woundys, takynge

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>6</sup> fol. 81 b]



Nota bene

or brought  
together by  
an adhesive  
plaster.A wound  
made with  
a dart or an  
arrow.  
[<sup>1</sup> lf. 76, bk.]If the arrow  
head is  
hidden,

try to find it,

Add. MS.  
12,056.[<sup>2</sup> fol. 82 a]

hede herto þat þe sowynge þat is maad in þe face schal be more  
sotil & fairer þan in ony opere partie of þe body / & þou maist  
make a sowynge in þe face, if þat þe wounde be not to myche, on  
þis maner / Take mastik, sandragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem  
togidere wiþ þe white of an ey to þe pickenesse of hony, & wete  
þerinne two pecis of linnen cloþ as longe as þe wounde / & leie þe  
toon on þe oon side of þe wounde, & þe oper on þe topir side & lete  
hem drien / & aftirward make þe wounde sumwhat to blede, & 8  
þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togidere; & sowe þilke .ij.  
pecis togidere, & caste aboute poudre of lyme, frankencense, san-  
dragoun tofore seid, & wete a cloþ in þe white of an ey & oile of  
rosis, & leie aboute al togidere, & kepe þe partee wiþ ligature & 12  
prosede forþ in alle þingis as I haue tofore seid /

& if þat þe wounde be maad wiþ a dart or wiþ an arewe & þe  
arowe be drawe out & þe wounde be myche sene, þanne þe cure is  
þe same þat was seid in þe same chapitle or elles in þe firste tretis, 16  
wheþer þat þe be a senewe prickid eiþir noon. But if þe arowe  
heed were entriged in ony priuy place of þe face, so þat it myzte  
not be seen, þanne euery man bisie him to knowe bi his witt how  
þat þe sike man stood, whanne þat he was smyte, & whens þat þe 20  
arowe cam, & to what partie þe wounde strecchip, þat he mowe loke

hede hereto, þat þe sowynge þat ys y-mad in þe face, schal be more  
sotyl & fairere, þanne in enye opere party of þe body. And þou  
maiste maken a sowynge in þe face, 3if þat þe wounde be nouzt to 24  
myche, on þis manere. R mastyk & sandragoun & poudre hem &  
tempre hem togidere wiþ þe whyte of an eyze to þe þyknesse of  
hony, & wete þereynne tweye pecys of linnen cloþ as longe as þe  
wounde, & leye one on þat o syde of þe <sup>2</sup> wounde, & þe opere on þat 28  
opere & lete hem dreyzen, and afterwarde make þe wounde sum  
what to blede, & þenne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togedires;  
& sowe þilke two pecys togedres, & caste aboute þe poudre of lym,  
ffranc ensence, sandragoun tofore seyde, & wete a cloþ in þe whyte 32  
of an eyze & oyle of roses, & leye aboue al togedyre, and kepe þe  
parties with ligature, & procede forþ in alle þynges as y haue tofore  
seyde. And 3if þat þe wounde be y-mad with a dart opere with an  
arwe, & þe arwe ben y-drawe out and þe wounde be myche y-sene, 36  
þenne þe cure ys þe same þat was seyde in þe same chapytell opere  
ellys in þe firste tretys, wheþere þat þe be a synwe prikyde opere  
none. But 3if þat þe arwe-hed were entryged in enye priuy place of  
þe face, so þat yt myzte nouzt ben seyzen, þenne euery man bysie 40  
hym be his wyt, to knowe how þe seke man stod, whanne he was y-  
smete, & whennys þat þe arwe come, & to what party þe wounde  
strecchith, þat he mowe loke 3if þat he mowe fynden enye manere

if þat he mowe fynde ony maner wey how he may drawe out þilke  
 arowe-heed; & þanne drawe him out þe best maner wey þat he  
 may / & if he may not, heelde he in þe wounde oile of rosis & þe  
 4 3elke of an ey togidere medlid; & wip þis medicyn worche in þe  
 wounde, til þat kynde schewe sum maner wey / Manye men han  
 born an arowe-heed in þe parties of her face bi longe tyme; &  
 after longe tyme kynde hap cast out þe arowe heed, or ellis he hap  
 8 schewid sum wey bi þe which wey þilke arowe-heed myzte be taken  
 out. & þou must take hede bi al þi miȝt þat, whanne þat þou  
 sowist þe woundis of þe face, þat þe moup be not crokid, but make  
 so slyȝly þi sowynge þat þilke accident may not fallen; & þat þou  
 12 maist do weel, if þat þou coudist ordeyne weel þi sowynge / & if  
 þat þou canst, kepe weel þi sowynge wip plumaciols and wip  
 byndyngis // // //

and draw  
 it out;  
 if you fail,  
 apply  
 Ollum  
 Rosarum  
 till nature  
 works.

Beware of  
 disfiguring  
 the mouth in  
 making the  
 suture.

[1 ff. 77]

16 **T**he þridde chapitle of þe secunde tretis is of ¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> 3<sup>m</sup>  
 woundis of þe necke & anotamie of the same.

Bi þe necke is conteyned al þe place þat is bitwene þe heed &  
 þe schuldris, þe which anotamie I wole telle as I haue bihiȝt /  
 Summen maken difference bitwene þe necke & þe wesaunt<sup>2</sup> & þe

Anatomy of  
 the neck.

<sup>2</sup> wesaunt gula; wesaunde, ysophagus. Wright W., page 676, XV. cent.  
 See *Vicary*, page 47, note 4.

20 wey, how he may drawen out þilke arwe-hed; and þenne drawe  
 hym out þe beste manere þat he may. And ȝif he may nouȝt, helde  
 into þe wounde oyle of roses, & medle he oyle of roses & þe ȝolke  
 into an eyȝe togedre, & helde into þe wounde, & wip þis medicine  
 24 worche in þe wounde, tyl þat kynde schewe sum manere wey.  
 Manye men han born an arwe-hed in þat parties of here face by  
 longe tyme; and aftere kynde hap cast out þilke arwe-hed, opere  
 ellys hap schewyde sum weye by whom þilke arwe-hed myzte be  
 28 taken out. And þou moste taken hede be al þy myght þat whanne  
 þat þou sowyste þe woundes of þe face þat þe moup be noȝt crokyde,  
 but make so slyȝly þy sowynge þat þylke accident may noȝt fallen;  
 & þat þou maiste do wel, ȝif þat þou coudest ordeyn wel þy sowynge  
 32 & ȝif þou coudest kepen wel þy sowynge wip plumacyolus & wip  
 byndynges.

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

[3 fol. 82 b]

¶ Cap. iij. tretis ij is off woundes of þe nekke &  
 Anotomye of þe same.

36 ¶ **B**y the nekke is contynwede alle þe place þat is bytwene þe  
 hed & þe schuldres, whose Anotamye y wyȝt tellen as y haue  
 behyght. ¶ Some men makyth dyfference bytwene þe nekke & þe  
 SURGERY.

L



In the neck  
are  
vij spondilis,  
or Vertebrae,  
the 1st is  
articulated  
with the oc-  
cipital bone.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 77, bk.]

.1.  
.2.3.  
.4.5.6.  
7

From the  
cervical  
vertebrae  
spring 7 pairs  
of sinews,

prote-bolle, & alle þese ben comprehendid vndir þe name of þe necke. In þe necke þer ben .vij. spondelis þat is to seie whirlboonys / whirlboonys of þe rigge. þe firste of þe boonys is bounde wip a boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare<sup>1</sup> with manye smale feble ligamentis; & þei were feble bi-cause þat þilke ioynt next to þe heed myzte meue many weies. & þe cause whi þat þer were smale ligamentis multiplied in þat ioynt, þat manye smale myzten susteyne a greet burþun as weel as a fewe greete; & if þat þer were a fewe greete, þei weren not so able to be meued / þe firste spondile<sup>2</sup> is bounde to þe secunde / þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe / þe fourþe to þe fifþe, þe fifþe to þe sixte / þe sixte to þe seuene / þe seuene is bounde loseliche to þe firste spondile of þe rigge, þat þe necke myzte more litzliche meuen, which þat is clepid þe .vij. spondile / whanne þat þou rekenest [from þe hed dunwarde]\* Seuene peire of senewis proceden out [by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeth out]\* bitwene þe firste spondilis and<sup>3</sup> þe boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare / þe secunde peire of senewis is bore bitwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passen out bitwene ech spondile / þese senewis ben

<sup>1</sup> See *Vicary*, page 44, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> MS. of. Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*& he is vnterberyng in þe kynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp or pazillus.*"

Add. MS.  
12,056.

wesant & þe prote-bolle, and alle þese be comprehendyde vndire þe name of þe nekke. In þe nekke þere ben vij spondiles—þat is to say, whirle bonys of þe rigge. þe furste of þe bonys ys y-bounde wip a bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare wip manye smale feble ligamentys; & þey weren feble bycause þat þilke Iuncte nexte þe hed myzte meffe manye weyes. And þe cause why þat þere were manye smale lygamentes mutpleyede in þat Iuncte, þat manye smale myzte susteyne a grete burthynē as wel as a fewe grete; & zif þat þere were a fewe grete, þey were nouzt so able to be meffide. The firste spondyle ys y-bounden to þe secunde, þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe, þe iiij. to þe v., þe v. to þe vi., þe sixte to þe sevenþe, þe vij. ys y-bounden loselyche to þe fyrste spondile<sup>4</sup> of þe rugge, þat þe nekke myzte more lyztlyche meffen, whiche ys clepyde þe .vij. spondile, whenne þat þou reknyste from þe hed dunwarde.\* vij. peire off synwes growip out by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeth out\* bytwene þe fyrste spondile<sup>5</sup> & þe bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare; þe secunde peire of synwes ys y-bore bytwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passith out bytwene euery spondile.

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 83 a]

<sup>4</sup> MS. Whenne þat þou reknyst from þe hed, struck through, after spondile.



dyuydid in many weies bi þe heed, þe necke and þe face, & þe brest, schuldris & þe armes; þe braunchis of þe senewis of þe heed in sum place ben conteynued & ioyned with þese senewis / & þese 4 senewis ben clepid meuyng, riȝt<sup>1</sup> as þe senewis þat comen of þe fore partie of þe brayn ben clepid felynge, & þese han also felynge. Of þese senewis þat comen of þe spondilis of þe necke þere ben maad braunnys, þe whiche ben instrumentis of meuyng of þo 8 parties. In <sup>1</sup>þe necke bihynde, þere ben ordeyned open<sup>2</sup> veynes comyng fro þe lyuere þe whiche þat ascenden into þe heed / & vndir þe veynes þer ben arteries priuylliche<sup>3</sup> comyng fro þe herte & goyng to þe heed for notable profitis. & whanne þat þei han<sup>4</sup> 12 doon al her office in þe heed þei discenden down bi þe place þat is bihynde þe eeris & þei bringe partie materie spermatife: þat is to seie mater of sperme, down to þe ballokis / & þefore it is seid if þat þo veynes weren kutt, a man schulde neuere engendre<sup>5</sup> / On þe 16 riȝt side & also on þe lift side of þe necke ben ordeined. ij. nollis<sup>6</sup> whiche<sup>7</sup> ben of ligamentis matire, þe whiche proceden out of þe

communicating with the sinews of the head.

[1 ff. 73]

The neck contains veins and arteries, ascending from the heart,

and bringing spermatic matter to the ballocks,

it contains also ligaments,

<sup>2</sup> open, Lat. manifestæ, superficial. <sup>3</sup> Lat. arterie occulte. <sup>4</sup> MS. ben.

<sup>5</sup> Avicenna quotes Hippocrates as authority for this curious belief: "Et Hip. quidem dixit in suis intentionibus quod plurimum materie spermatis est ex cerebro & quod descendit ex duabus venis que sunt post ambas aures. Et propter hoc abscindit phlebotomia ambarum generationem & facit incurere sterilitatem." Canon Lib. III, Fen XX, Tract. 1, Cap. 3, ed. Ven. 1523, fol. 5.

<sup>6</sup> nollis, Latin cervices, seem to be the transverse processes.

<sup>7</sup> whiche, struck through after nollis.

þese Synwys buþ deuyded manye weyes by þe hed, & þe nekke, & þe face, & þe breste, schuldres, & þe armes; þe brannches of þe 20 synwes of the hed in some place beþ contynwede & Ioynde with þese synwes. And þese synwes buþ y-clepyde meffynge ryȝte as þe synwes þat comyȝh of þe fore partye of þe brayn beþ y-clepyde felynge & þese habbiþ also felynge. Of þese Synwes þat comyȝh 24 of þe spondilis of þe nekke þere beþ mad brawnys, þe whiche beþ instrumentes of meuyng of þe parties. In þe nekke behynde, þere ben y-ordeynde opyn veynes comyng from þe lyffere whiche þat ascendyn to þe hed, and vndir þo Veynes þere ben Arteryes y- 28 hud priuelyche, comyng ffrom þe herte & goyng to þe hed for notable profetes. And whanne þat þey han do al here office in þe hed, þey descenden down by þe place þat beþ behynde þe erys & þey byngen materie spermatice, þat is to say mater of sperme, don 32 to þe ballokes, & þefore it ys y-seyde: ȝif þat þo Veynes weren y-kutt, a man scholde neuere engendre. On þe ryȝt syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe nekke þere ben y-ordeynde tweye nollis, þe whyche beþ of lygamente mater, þe whiche procedep out of þe bonys

Add. MS. 12,056.

to support  
the sinews.

*Gula,*

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 78, bk.]  
gullet run-  
ning from  
the mouth to  
the stomach.

The gullet  
has 2 coats.

The windpipe  
is made of  
gristle,

boonyis of þe heed & of þe spondilis, & þei strecchen down to þe eeris<sup>1</sup> in lenkþe biside þe spin boon, & þei ben a couche & a restyngne place to þe senewis þat comen out of þe nucha. In þe fore partie of þe necke þere is gula, þe which þat strecchiþ from þe chyn<sup>4</sup> down to þe forke of þe brest<sup>2</sup>; & bitwene þe necke & gula wiþinneforþ þere is ordeyned mary,<sup>3</sup> þat is to seie þe wesant; þe which þat discendiþ of<sup>4</sup> a smal skyn enuerounyng<sup>5</sup> al þe mouþ wiþinneforþ & so goyngne down to þe stomak, & he is hool & conteyned wiþ þe stomak, & is of substaunce of þe same stomak, & he discendiþ down bi þe hyndere partie of þe necke cleuyngne to þe spondilis til þat he come to þe fifþe spondile of þe rigge; & þere he is departid from þe spondilis, & he declineth into þe ynnere partie til þat he peerse<sup>12</sup> þoruþ þe mydrif,<sup>6</sup> & is compounned of .ij. panniclis, & in þe ynnere cloþ þere ben braunnys in lenkþe bi þe whiche drauhtis is maad of mete & of drynk, & þe vttere cloþ þere ben brawnys in brede bi þe whiche is castyngne out of superfluytees; & he haþ noon transuersarie, þat is to seie goyngne ouerþwert, for wiþholdyngne is not nedeful to him. & in þe fore partie of þe brest þere is sett þe canne<sup>7</sup> of þe lungis, þe which is compounned of gristil ryngis bounde

<sup>1</sup> *eeris* for *ers*.

<sup>2</sup> *the forke of the brest*, the clavicke.

<sup>3</sup> *mary*, Lat. *meri siue oesophagus*. Arab. *mari*'.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *of*, twice.

<sup>6</sup> *mydrif*, diaphragma. Wright W., *Gloss.*, page 578, l. 22, XV. cent.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *same*. Lat. *canna pulmonis*. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 7.

Add. MS. 12,056. of þe hed & of þe spondiles, & þey strecchen down to þe ers in 20

lenkþe besydes þe spyne bon, & þey ben a couche & a restyngne place to þe synwes þat comyth out of þe nucha. In þe fore partye of þe nekke þere ys gula whiche þat strecchiþ from þe chyn down to þe furcle of þe brest; and bytwene þe nekke & þe gulam wiþynneforþ þere ys<sup>8</sup> ordeyned mery—þat ys to seye þe wesand; þe whiche þat discendiþ of a smal schyn environyngne alle þe mouth wiþynneforþ, & so goyngne down to þe Stomak; & he ys hol & conteynde wiþ þe Stomak, & ys of Substaunce of þe same stomak, & he dissendiþ<sup>24</sup> down by þe hyndere partye of þe nek cleuyngne to þe spondelis; tyl þat he come to þe .v. spondile of þe rugge, & þere he ys departyde from þe spondelis and declyneth into þe Innere partye tyl þat he perce þorwe þe mydryff, & he ys componed of twey pannycles, and<sup>32</sup> in þe Innere cloþ þere ben brawnys in lengthe, by þe whiche drauhte ys made of mete & drynke, and in þe vtter cloþ þere bene brawnys in brede by whom ys made castyngne out of superfluyte; and he haþ non transversarie, þat ys to seye goyngne thwartoffere, ffor wythholdyngne ys nouht nedful to hym. And in þe fore partye of þe brest þere is y-set þe canne of longes, þe whiche ys componed off grustlye

[<sup>8</sup> fol. 83 v]



togidere wiþ pannicleris ligamentis, hauynge in þe ynnere partie a ful smeþe pannicle ioynynge togidere pilke gristili ryngis. & pilke ryngis whanne þei ben ioyned wiþ merie, þei ben defaultif azens þe 4 merie / & þe foorme of þe canne of þe lungis is\* as it were þe foorme of a cane, <sup>1</sup>þat is to seie a rehed,<sup>2</sup> of þe which rehed þe [1 ff. 79] fourþe partie were kutt away in lenkþe, & aftirward pilke caane is wrie with a sotil clooþ þat whanne þat a greet mussel of mete passe 8 doun bi þe merye, he schulde not haue lettinge, but pilke pannicle of merye 3eueþ stede<sup>3</sup> to þe greet mete passynge doun to þe stomak. þe prote-bolle<sup>4</sup> is maad of iij gristlis, & is sett aboute þese two weies. & boþe on þe riȝt side & on þe lift side of þe caane of þe 12 lungis þer ben ij. greete veynes þat ben clepid organice or ellis guydes<sup>5</sup>; & vndir þe veynes þer ben greete arteries, & of þe kuttynge of pilke veynes & arteries þer comeþ ofte tyme greete perels, & sumtyme deep; for þe grete affenite þat þei han wiþ þe herte, 16 and þe greet noyousnes<sup>6</sup> þat þei han to þe lyuere, bi hem sonner<sup>7</sup> blood is euacued, wherfore spiritus exalip, þe whiche þat ben

and gives way to great morsels.

The 2 Vene organice (Jugular Veins) and 2 great Arteries go along the windpipe.

An incision into them is dangerous, for they are near the heart and the liver.

<sup>2</sup> Read *reed*.

<sup>3</sup> 3eueþ stede, Lat. cedere. See *Catholicon Angl.*, page 155, to giffe stede, cedere, locum dare.

<sup>4</sup> prote-bolle. See *Vicary*, page 48, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> guydes, Lat. guidegi, *Ibid.* p. 48, note 3. Compare Arab. wiädäsch, vena jugularis. Matth. Sylv.: "Guedegi sunt vene guides. Alguidegi in collo fibotomantur."

<sup>6</sup> noyousnesse. See *noyous*, *Cathol. Angl.*, page 256. The Latin has: *propinquitatem*, and the translator seems to have been influenced by the preceding *affenite*.

<sup>7</sup> sonner, in margin.

rynges y-bounde togedire wiþ panycleris ligamentes, habbynge in þe Innore partye a ful smeþe pannicle Ioynynge togedire pilke 12,056. grustly rynges. And pilke rynges, whenne þat þey ben ioynede with mery, þey ben defaultif anonde þe mery. And þe forme of þe canne of þe longes [is]\* as yt were þe forme of a cane—þat is to say a reed, of þe whiche reed þe fourþ part were kutt away in lengthe, & after- 24 ward þe canne ys y-wreye wiþ a sotyl cloth, þat whanne þat a grete mosseH of mete passe doun be þe mery, he scholde han non lettynge, but pilke pannicle of mery 3euyth stede to þe grete mete passynge doun to þe stomak. þe protbolle þat is mad of þre grustlys, ys y-sette 28 aboute þese <sup>9</sup>two weyzes. And boþe on þe ryȝte syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe cane of þese longes, þere bep tweye grete veynes þat bep y-clepyde **organice** opere ellys **guydes**. & vndire þe veynes þere ben grete arteryes, and of þe kyttinge of pilke Veynes & 32 Arteries þere comyth ofte tymes gret peryle & sumtyme sodeyne dep; for þe grete afynite<sup>10</sup> þat þey han in þe herte & þe grete noyennes þat þey han to þe lyffer, sennore by hem blod ys euacued, wherfore spiritus exaleþ whyche þat buþ frendys, boþe to þe body &

Add. MS. 12,056.

[9 fol. 84 a]

<sup>10</sup> a, above line.



The muscles,  
nerves, and  
vessels of the  
neck

[<sup>4</sup> If. 79, bk.]  
pass in its  
longitudinal  
direction.

Wounds on  
the neck are  
either longi-  
tudinal or  
transverse.

In the latter  
case staunch  
the blood,

sew the vein,  
and the  
nerve,

and apply a  
preparation

freendis bope to þe body and also to<sup>1</sup> þe soule<sup>2</sup> / þe ligament<sup>3</sup> of þe  
þrote is clepid emanence eipir þe heizþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sidis  
of þe þrote þere is sett gula. &<sup>3</sup> þe goynge of brawnys, senewis  
and cordis, veynes & arteries & her braunchis bi <sup>4</sup>parties of þe heed 4  
proceden aftir þe ordour of eeris,<sup>5</sup> & þei ben ordeyned in þe necke  
& in gula aftir her lenkþe. & herbi þou maist se þat it is necessarie  
a surgian to make hise kuttyngis & hise brennyngis bi lenkþe of þe  
necke & of þe þrote, & þat þe woundis þat ben maad ouerþwert<sup>8</sup>  
ben more perlous, þan þo þat ben in lenkþe /

Now we wolen tretyn of woundis þat ben maad in þis place,  
wiþ a swerd or wiþ sum þing semblable to him, or wiþ an arowe or  
sum þing semblable to him. & if it be wiþ a swerd, eipir it is ouer- 12  
þwert eipir in lenkþe / & if it be ouerþwert & þere be kutt grete  
veynes eiper arteries, it is to dreden. Neþeles þou schalt helpe to  
staunche þe blood & consowde þe veyne, aftir þe techinge tofore  
assigned in þe chapitle of flux of blood. & if þer be a senewe kutt, 16  
þanne brynge boþe parties of þe senewe togidere & sowe þe pelliclis  
of þe senewe wiþ þe sowynge of þe woundis, as I haue tauzt tofore  
in þe place of sowynge of senewis, & leie aboue lumbricus of þe

<sup>1</sup> to, above line.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: qui est inter corpus et animam amicabile ligamentum.

<sup>3</sup> in, inserted.

<sup>5</sup> eeris for heeris.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

eke to þe soule. þe ligamente of þe þrote ys y-clepyd þe<sup>6</sup> eminence 20  
opere þe hekþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sydes of þe þrote þere is y-set  
gula. & þe goynge of brawnys, cordys, synwes, veynes, arteryes &  
here braunchys by parties of þe hed proceden aftyre þe ordre of  
heres, & þey ben ordeyned in þe nekke & in þe gula aftire here 24  
lengþe. And hereby þou maiste ysene, how þat yt is necessarye a  
surgyn to maken hys kuttynges, & hys brennynges by lengþe of þe  
nekke & of þe þrote, and þat þe woundys þat ben y-mad twarte  
offere beþ more perylose, þen þo þat bene in lengthe. 28

**Wonde of þe nekke.** ¶ Now we wyl tretyn of woundes þat  
beþ mad in þis place wiþ a swerd opere with sum þynge semblable  
to hym, opere wiþ an arwe, opere with sum þynge semblable to hym.  
And ȝif it be wyth a swerde, opere yt ys twarte offere ore in lengthe ; 32  
and ȝif it be twart offere, and þere ben y-kutt grete Veynes opere  
arteryes, hit ys gretly to dreden. Napeles þou schalt helpe to  
staunche þe blod & to consoude þe veyne, aftere þe techyng tofore  
asygned in þe chapytle off flux of blod. And ȝif þere be a synwe 36  
kutte, brynge þe parties of þe synwe togedyre, & sow þe pellykles  
of þe synwe with þe sowynge of þe wounde, as y haue tauzt tofore  
in þe <sup>7</sup>place of sowynge of synwes, and leye aboffe lumbricus of þe

[7 fol. 34 b]

<sup>6</sup> þe, above line.

- erþe, þat<sup>1</sup> beth erþe-wormes staumpid & boilid wip oile of<sup>2</sup> rosis, & of earth-  
kepe þe sowynge<sup>1</sup> with byndynge, & so procede forþ in al þing<sup>1</sup> of wormis. [1 lf. 80]  
þe cure, as it is told in þe chapitle tofore schewid / & if<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> þe If the wound  
4 wounde were in lenkþe, it is not<sup>1</sup> necessarie but<sup>1</sup> for to sowe þe al it needs  
wounde & caste aboue þe poudre of lyme, frankencense, & sandra- puluis  
goun, & kepe þe poudre & þe sowynge wip byndynge, til þe wounde  
be ful consowdid / & if<sup>1</sup> þe wounde were maad in þe parties wip an  
8 arowe or wip a knyft, or with a spere or sum þing<sup>1</sup> semblable to hem,  
& if<sup>1</sup> þer be an arowe, drawe him out; & if<sup>1</sup> an arowe be drawe out,  
loke if<sup>1</sup> þer folowe emorosogie,<sup>2</sup> þat is to seie, a greet flux of blood, An arrow  
& þanne staunche it<sup>1</sup> aftir þe doctryne þat is told tofore / & if<sup>1</sup> þer must be  
Emorogie (hemorrhage) ensues, staunch the drawn out,  
12 be no flux of blood, loke if<sup>1</sup> þer be akþe / & if<sup>1</sup> þer be akþe, putte in and if  
þe wounde a litil tent<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> may holde þe wounde open al a day, þat Emorogie  
þou maist<sup>1</sup> seen þat<sup>1</sup> þe woundid man schal haue noon akþe / & if<sup>1</sup> the blood,  
he haue noon akþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it if there are  
16 happiþ, þat<sup>1</sup> an arowe or sum þing<sup>1</sup> semblable passiþ poruþ þe necke paine, tent  
& þe prote, & he touche not<sup>1</sup> þe senewe, arterie, ne veyne, & þanne it the wound.  
nediþ not<sup>1</sup> but<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> þe wounde be<sup>3</sup> consowdid. & if<sup>1</sup> þer were akþe [3 lf. 80, bk.]  
eiper bigynnyng of swellynge, þanne it<sup>1</sup> were necessarie to fulfille If there are  
20 þe wounde wip hote oile of rosis & to putte in a tente not<sup>1</sup> to paine, swelling,  
tent the  
wound and  
apply oil of  
roses.  
<sup>2</sup> Lat. emorosagia. Matth. Sylv.: "Emorogia. Emorosagia .i. sanguis  
fluxus vel discursus."

- erthe þat beþ erthe wormes y-stampyde & boyled wyth oyle of Add. MS.  
roses, & kepe þe sowynge with byndynge, and so procede forþ in alle 12,056.  
þynge in þe cure, as yt is tolde in the chapitle tofore schewyde.  
24 And ȝif þat þe wonde were in lengþe, yt ys noȝt necessarie but  
for to sowe þe wounde & to casten aboue, þe poudre of lym, frank  
ensence & sank<sup>1</sup> dragoun, & to kepe þe sewynge & þe poudre with  
byndynge, tyl þat þe wounde be ful consouded. And ȝif þat þe  
28 wounde were y-mad in þo parties with an arwe opere a knyft, opere  
a spere, opere sum þynge semblable to hem, and ȝif þere be an arwe,  
drawe hym out, and ȝif þe arwe be drawen out, loke ȝif<sup>1</sup> þere folwe  
emorosogie, þat ys to seye, a gret flux of blod, & þenne staunche hym  
32 aftere þe doctryne y-told tofore. & ȝif þere be non flux of blod,  
loke ȝif þere be akþe; & ȝif þere be akþe, put into þe wounde a  
lytel tente þat may holde þe wounde opyn al day, þat þou may se  
þat þe wounded man schal han non akþe. And ȝif he haue non akþe,  
36 lete þe wounde be consoudyde; ffor sum tyme it happiþ, þat an  
arwe, oper sum thyng semblable passith þorwe þe nekke & þe prote,  
& ȝit he touchiþ noȝt veyne, arterye, ne synwe, & þenne it nedip  
noȝt but þat þe wonde be consouded. And ȝif þere were akþe opere  
40 ellys a bygynnyng of swellynge, þan yt were necessarie to fulfille  
þe wounde wip hot oyle of roses & to put in a tente noȝt to grete,



greet, wet in þe 3elke of an ey & oile of rosis hoot, & so holde þe wounde open, til þat he 3eu quytture, & aftir clense him & aftir consowde him / Vndirstonde þe perilis þat comen for [wondys]\* þat ben maad in þis place / þe firste perel is: if þat þe necke be kutt<sup>1</sup> 4 ouerþwert<sup>1</sup> wiþ a swerd, so þat þe necke-boon & þe marie of þe necke-boon be al atwo, it is deedliche. & if þat nucha, þat is mary of þe necke boon, is not kutt al atwo but is hurt, it is perile of lesynge, felynge & meynge,<sup>1</sup> & at þe laste be deed, but if þat 8

**Nota.** The wound is mortal if the Spinal Cord is cut, and generally mortal

medicyns þat I schal telle moun helpe / & if þat ony veyne or ony greet senewe be kutt ouerþwert, I suppose þat he be heeled, þe necke schal neuere haue<sup>2</sup> his free meynge; & if þat ony of þe veynes organik, þe whiche þat ben clepid guydes, or ellis ony of þe 12 arteries þat ben vndir hem be kutt, it is drede of sodeyn deep, for sodeyn exalacioun of þe spiritis & also for affinite of þe herte; & also if þat þe cane of þe lungis be kutt ouerþwert al atwo, for þe more partie it is deedliche / Also it is seid, þat if þe veynes þat 16 ben bihynde þe eeris be kutt al atwo, he ne schal neuere engendre.

**Nota.** Hoarseness follows the cutting of the "reversif nerve" (auricularis posterior).

And also sumtyme it is kutt eiþir prickid þe senewe þat is clepid reuersif, þat is vndir boþe sidis of þe eere, of þe whiche kuttinge or prickynge euermore is maad hosnesse<sup>4</sup> / And if þat þe places 20

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: est periculum amissionis sensus et motus. <sup>2</sup> haue, in margin.  
<sup>4</sup> hosnesse. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 248. "hoorsnesse, Rancor."

Add. MS. 12,056. y-wett in þe 3olke of an eyze & oyle of roses hot, & so holde þe wounde open to þat he 3yfe quytter, & afterwarde clense hym & afterwarde consowde hym. **Nota:** vndirstande þe peryles þat comen from wondys\* þat ben maad in þis place. þe firste<sup>5</sup> Perel ys: 3if 24 þat þe nekke be kutte twarte offere with a swerd, so þat þe nekke-bon & þe marye of þe nekke-bon be y-kut al atwo, yt is dedlyche; and 3if þat nucha, þat ys þe marye of þe nekke-bon, is noȝt y-kut al atwo but ys y-hurt, yt is peryle of leosynge, ffelynge & meffynge, & 28 at þe laste to be ded, but 3if þe medicines þat y schal tellen afterwarde mowe helpen. And 3if þat enye Veynes opere enye gret synwe be y-kut twart offere, y suppose þat he be helyde, þe nekke schal neuere haue hys fre meffynge; and 3if enye of the veynes 32 organyk whiche þat beþ clepyde guydes, opere ellys enye of þe arteries þat beþ vndire hem beþ y-kut, yt ys drede of sodeyne dep, ffor sodeyne exalacioun of þe spiritis & also for Afynyte of þe herte; & also 3if þat þe canne off þe longes be y-kut twarte offere al 36 atwo, for þe more partye it is dedlyche; & so it ys seyde 3if þat þe veynes þat beþ behynde þe eres be y-kut al atwo, he schal nevire engendre. Also sum tyme ys y-kut opere y-prekyde þe synwe þat is clepyde reuersiff, þat ys vndire boþe þe sydes of þe ere, of whose 40 kuttinge opere prekyngue euere more ys mad horsnesse. And 3if



ben peersid *with* an arowe, & þou3 þat trache arteric be peersid or ellis ysophage, so þat nucha be nou3t prickid bi þe mydle, þanne 3itt he may be heelid wiþ gode medicyns & acordynge.

- 4 þou schalt helpe nucha þat is hurt in þis maner: þou schalt helde into þe wounde, in þe bigynnyng, oile of rosis, & aftirward do yn oile of rosis & 3elke of an ey medlid togidere, and þou schalt be bisy in al maner to aswage akþe; & whanne þat quytture is
- 8 maad, þanne leie a mundificatif wiþ medicyns confortatiuis & incarnatiuis maad in þis maner / Take oile of rosis colate 3. iiij., wax, rosyn of ech two dragmis, terbentine .iiij. 3, frankencense, mastik of ech .i. 3, mirre, sarcocol,<sup>1</sup> mummie<sup>2</sup> of ech 3. ß., barly mele 3 ß.,
- 12 streyne it on a clop & <sup>3</sup>leie it on þe nucha þat is hurt. & þei þat hereof<sup>4</sup> pronosticacioun schulde go tofore, þe which schulde schewe to yuel, neþeles bi þis medicyn þer comþ a rectificacioun to þe nucha, & melioracioun of meuyng of lymes, þat ben byneþe þe
- 16 place of þe nucha þat is hurt, more helpinge, þat semeþ possible to þe leche. For þer is no þing vnpossible to stalworþe<sup>5</sup> nature; namely, whanne þat it is holpen wiþ a good leche & wiþ þingis, þat ben

Treatment if the spinal marrow is hurt.

Apply  
Olium  
Rosarum.

R

Modus confortandi & mundificandi vulnera Nuche.

[<sup>3</sup> ff. 81, bk.]

Tho' the prognosis is unfavourable, yet medicine,

Nota

nature and the physician may help.

<sup>1</sup> *Sarcocolla*, Gr. Σαρκοκόλλα, "is the Gumme or liquore of a tre growyng in Persia." Halle, *Table*, p. 109.

<sup>2</sup> *mummie*, *mumia*. See Halle, *Table*, p. 72, and Notes.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *of here*.

<sup>5</sup> *stalworthe*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. *Stalwart*.

- þat place ben y-perced *with* an arwe, & þow3 þat trachea arteria be y-percyde oþere ellys ysophage, so þat Nucha be no3t þrillede be þe mydle, þey mowe ben y-helyde *with* gode medycines & acordynge. þou schalt helpe Nucha þat ys y-hurt in þis manere: þou schalt helden into þe wounde in þe bygynnyng oyle of roses & afterwarde
- 24 leye aboffe oyle of roses & þe 3elke of an ey3e, and þou schalt be busy in alle manere to aswage akþe; & whenne þat quyter ys y-mad, þenne leye a mundificatyff wiþ medicynes confortatyff and <sup>6</sup>Incarnatyfes y-mad in thys manere: R. oyle of rosis colat .3. iiij, *with*<sup>7</sup>
- 28 resyne ana. 3. ij, terbentyne 3. iiij, frank ensence, mastyk ana. 3. i, mirre, sarcocolle,<sup>8</sup> mumie ana. 3. ß, barly mele .5. ß; streyne it on a clop & leye yt on þe nucha þat is hurt. And þaw3 þat hereof euere more pronosticacion scholde go tofore whiche scholde sownen to
- 32 yuele, napeles by þis medicine þere comyþ rectificacioun to þe nuca, & amelioracioun off mevyng of lymes þat beþ beneþe þe place of þe nuca þat ys y-hurt, more helpynge, þenne semyþ possible to þe leche. For þere ys no þyng vnpossible to Stalworth nature; namlyche
- 36 whanne þat yt is holpen wiþ a gode leche & wiþ þynges, þat beþ

Add. MS.

12,056.

[<sup>6</sup> fol. 85 b]

<sup>7</sup> wiþ for *we*.

<sup>8</sup> MS. *sarceticolle*.

helpinge & acordynge to a good intencioun / Here vndirstonde þat  
 Wounds of the brain, the Spinal Cord, al maner wounde þat peersip to þe substaunce of þe brayn or ellis  
 to þe nucha, so þat bi þer hurtynge of þe nucha þe meuyng & þe  
 felynge of summe lymes ben lost, nameliche from þe whirle-boonys 4  
 of þe rigge, of þe reynes vpward, & al maner wounde þat is maad  
 and the principal nerves in þe extremittees of<sup>1</sup> þe lacertis<sup>2</sup> as .iiij. fyngir mele<sup>3</sup> brede vndir þe  
 schuldris, eiper .iiij. fyngir mele brede aboue þe elbowe eiper byneþe,  
 eipir .iiij. fyngir mele aboue þe kne or byneþe / & ech wounde þat is 8  
 [4 lf. 82] in a senewe place with strengest akþe & hardnes, <sup>4</sup>schal be deemed  
 are mortal. deedlich, for þe nobilte of pilke brayn, & for þe affinite of þe nucha  
 wip þe brayn, of þe which nucha passip as a reuere<sup>5</sup> from a welle,  
 & for þe affinite of pilke senewe wip þe brayn bi mene of nucha, of 12  
 þe whiche þei passen out as a flood / Wherfore þou schalt euermore  
 in sich maner woundis pronosteken deth, & euermore fle as miche  
 as þou myzt from vnresonable curis, but if þou be with þe more  
 Avoid such hopeless cases. instaunce y-preied / Nepeles sumtyme nature wip good helpinge 16  
 worchip þat semeþ to þe leche vnpossible, neuer-þe-lattere loue noon  
 sich [cures]\* but if þou be greetliche preied & þanne entermete of  
 þe cure of þe sike man //

<sup>1</sup> MS. *as*. Lat. in extremitatibus lacertorum.<sup>2</sup> *lacertis*, the sinewy part of the arm. See *Vicary*, p. 57, note 1.<sup>3</sup> *ijj fyngir mele brede*. Lat. tribus digitis.<sup>5</sup> MS. *rēuere*.

Add. MS. 12,056. helpynge & acordynge to a gode entencioun. Here vndirstande þat 20  
 alle manere wounde þat persith to þe substaunce of þe brayn opere  
 of ellys to þe nuca, so þat by þe hurtynge of þe nuca þe meffynge &  
 woundes þe ffelynge of some lymes ben y-lost, namlyche from þe whirle-  
 þat ben bonys of þe rugge, of þe reynes vpwarde, & alle manere wounde þat 24  
 dedlich þe schuldres, opere þre fyngre mele brede aboue þe elbowe opere by-  
 neþen, opere þre fyngre mele aboue þe kne opere byneþene, & every  
 wounde þat ys in a synwe place with strengest akþe & hardnesse, 28  
 schal be demyde dedlyche: ffor þe noblete of pilke brayn, & for þe  
 Affynite of nuca wyth þe brayn, of þe whiche nuca passith as þe  
 Ryuere from a welle, & for þe Afynite of pilke Synwes wip þe brayn,  
 by mene of þe Nuca, of whom þey passen out as of a flood, where- 32  
 [6 fol. 86 a] fore þou schalt eyre more in swiche manere woundes pronostiken  
 deþ, and euere more fle as myche as þou mayst from vnresonable  
 cures, but zif þou be wip þe more Instaunce y-preyzede. Napeles  
 sumtyme nature with gode helpinges wrchith þat semeþ to the 36  
 leche vnpossible. Neuere þe latere loue non swiche cures\* but zif  
 þou be greetliche y-preyede, and þenne entyremete of þe cure of þe  
 syke man.



**T**He .iiij. chapitle of þe .ij. tretis is of woundis ¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> .iiij<sup>m</sup>  
 of þe spaude,<sup>1</sup> schuldre, arm, handis, fyngris,  
 brawnys, veynes, & her anotamie /

- 4 þe spawde is oon of þe .iiij. boonys, þe which þat makþ þe  
 foorme of þe schuldre / & þe spawde-boon is pinne & brood two-  
 ward þe schuldris & in hise endis gristly. On þe vpper side of  
 him he hæp an egge sumwhat greet & toward þe arm <sup>2</sup>in þe place <sup>1 The Shoul-  
der-blade.</sup> [2 lf. 82, bk.]  
 8 of þe schuldre he is greet & round; & pilke eende is holowe as a  
 box, & þis boon is lich to a pele<sup>3</sup> wiþ þe whiche men setten breed  
 into þe ouene, & on þe hyndere partie of the schuldre he hæp an  
 eminence. & in þe box of þis boon — <sup>4</sup>þe which is clepd adiu-  
 12 torium; þe which is oon boon sumwhat crokid, greet & holowe / <sup>2 The Ad-  
jutor  
(Humerus)</sup>  
 þis boon is greet for necessite of strenkþe, & of schap holowe, þat  
 he were lizt, þat he schulde not þoruþ his heuynes lette þe worch-  
 inge of lacertis, & þe round extremite of þis boon entriþ into þe  
 16 holownes of þe spawde. & þei ben bounden togidere wiþ a bowable  
 ligament. þe canel-boon<sup>5</sup> of þe brest is in þis maner maad, hauynge <sup>The Cannel  
bone (Clav-  
icle)</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *spaude*, *spatula* = *scapula*, shoulder-blade. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 352.  
 “*spaude* Armus.” O.Fr. *espalde*.

<sup>3</sup> *pele*, Lat. *palla*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 273, note 4.

<sup>4</sup> Some words are wanting in both MSS. (*entriþ þe extremite of a boon*).  
 Lat.: In hac pyside sive concavitate huius ossis, intrat extremitas ossis  
 adiutorii.

<sup>5</sup> See *N. E. Dict.* This is the earliest reference for *canelbone* = *clavicula*.

¶ Capit. .iiij. tretis .ij. is of woundes of þe spaude, Add. MS.  
 schuldre, arme, handis, ffigres, bawnes, veynes, 12,056.  
 20 and here Anotamye.

- þe spawde ys one of þe .iiij. bonys whiche þat makþ þe forme  
 of þe schuldre, & þe spawde-bon is þenne & brode toward þe  
 schuldres & in hys endys grustly. On þe vppere syde of hym he  
 24 hæp an egge sumwhat gret & toward þe arme in þe place of þe  
 schuldre he ys grete & rounde. And pilke ende ys holwe as a box,  
 and þis bon ys lyche to a pele, þe whiche men settyth brede into  
 þe oyne, and on þe hyndere partye of þe schuldre he hæp an  
 28 emynense. & in þe box of þis bon — \* whiche ys y-clepyde ad-  
 iutorium þe whiche ys a bon sumwhat crokyde, gret & holow. þis  
 bon ys gret for necessite of strengthe, & of schappe holwe, þat he  
 were lyzte, þat he scholde nouzt þrowen his hevynesse lette þe  
 32 wirchyng of lacertes, and þe rounde extremite of þis bon entreþ in-  
 to þe holwenesse of the spaude. & þey bep y-bounde togedre with  
 a bowable ligament. þe canel-bon of þe brest ys in this manere



an additament<sup>t</sup> sumwhat<sup>t</sup> round in þe neþer partie, þe which entrip  
 a maner box, þe which is in þe ouer partie of<sup>t</sup> þe ouer boon of<sup>t</sup> þe  
 .vij. boonys of<sup>t</sup> þe brest<sup>t</sup>. Euery extremite of<sup>t</sup> þilke vij. boonys ben  
 ioyned with þe spawde, þat<sup>t</sup> þe schuldre myȝte be þe more strengere, 4  
 & forto make þis place more strengere, þer ben sett<sup>t</sup> .ij. smale boonys,  
 þe whiche ben clepid rostralia<sup>1</sup> to þe lijknys of<sup>t</sup> þe bele <sup>2</sup>of<sup>t</sup> a crowe,  
 & for to fastne þe schuldre, þis boon rostral is putt<sup>t</sup> in maner of<sup>t</sup> a  
 wegge / But<sup>t</sup> þe boon of<sup>t</sup> þe adiutori hap in þe neþer partie twoward 8  
 þe elbowe .ij. eminentis, & þe oon of<sup>t</sup> þe eminence is more hizere þan  
 þat<sup>t</sup> oþer ; & boþe þese eminence ben as þei it<sup>t</sup> were holf<sup>t</sup> a boket<sup>3</sup>  
 wiþ þe which men drawen watir / & þilke .ij. additamentis ben ioyned  
 wiþ þe boonys of<sup>t</sup> þe arm / þe arm from þe elbowe dounward hap .ij. 12  
 bonys ; & þe ouer boon, þe which þat<sup>t</sup> arecchþ fro þe þombe to þe  
 boon þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid adiutorium, is þe smallere boon ; & þe nepir boon  
 þat<sup>t</sup> strecchþ from þe litil fyngir to þe elbowe is þe grettere boon. &  
 he hap in þe ouer ende twoward þe elbowe an additament<sup>t</sup> lijȝ twoward 16  
 a bille or a pike ; & þilke pike makþ þe elbowe scharp whanne þe  
 arm is folden, & it<sup>t</sup> lettþ þat<sup>t</sup> þe arm may not<sup>t</sup> be bowid [bakwarde]\*.

joins with the  
 Os Rostrale  
 (Coracoid),  
 [2 lf. 83]

and has 2  
 eminences.

The Forearm  
 has two bones  
 (Ulna and  
 Radius),

and an "Ad-  
 ditament"  
 (Olecranon).

<sup>1</sup> *rostralia*. Coracoids. "*Rostriformis Processus*, a Process of the Shoulder-blade, and of the lower Jawbone."—Phillips.

<sup>3</sup> Compare *Vicary*, p. 49, l. 18, where the word *polly* is substituted for bucket.

Add. MS. y-made, habbynge an additamente sumwhat <sup>4</sup>rounde in þe neþere  
 12,056. partye, þe whiche entryth a manere box, þe whiche ys in þe offere 20  
 [4 fol. 86 b] partye of þe ovyre bon of þe vij. bonys of þe brest<sup>t</sup>. And euerye  
 extremyte of þilke vij. bonys beþ y-ioyned wiþ þe spawde, þat<sup>t</sup> þe  
 schuldre myghte be þe more strengere ; and forto make þis place þe  
 more strengere, þere beþ sette two smale bonys whiche beþ y-clepyde 24  
**rostralis** to þe lyknesse of þe byle of a crowe, & forto fastne þe  
 schuldres, þis bon rostrale ys y-put in þe manere of a wegge. But  
 þe bon of þe adiutorie hap in þe neþere partye towarde þe elbowe  
 tweye emynences, and þe on of þe emynence ys more herre þenne 28  
 þe oþire ; and boþe þese emynence beþ as yt were half a bokett<sup>t</sup>  
 wiþ þe whiche men drawþ water ; and þilke tweye Additamentis  
 beþ y-ioyned with þe bonys of þe arme. þe Arme from þe Elbowe  
 dunwarde, hap two bonys, and þe offere bon whiche þat<sup>t</sup> strecchþ 32  
 from þe þowmbe þat<sup>t</sup> ys clepyde adiutorium is smallere bon, and þe  
 neþere bon þat<sup>t</sup> strecchith from þe lytel fyngere to þe elbowe is þe  
 grettere bon. & he hap in þe offere ende towarde the elbowe an  
 additament like to a byle oþere a pyk<sup>t</sup>, and þilke pyk<sup>t</sup> makyth þe 36  
 elbowe scharpe, wheþne þat<sup>t</sup> þe arme ys y-folden, and it lettþ þat<sup>t</sup>  
 þe arme may noȝt ben y-bowyde bakwarde.\* þese tweye bonys beþ

þese .ij. boonys ben so ioyned togidere, þat it' semeþ as þouȝ it  
 were but' oo. boon. & þe nepir ende of þese boonys ben ioyned  
 with þe boonys of þe hand, þe whiche ben clepid rasceta,<sup>1</sup> þat' ben  
 4 .viij. boonys, .iiij. of <sup>2</sup>hem ben ordeyned & ioyned with summe  
 additamentis to þe .ij. boonys of þe arm / & þe opere .iiij. ben con-  
 teyned<sup>3</sup> with þe boonys of þe hand þat' ben clepid pecten<sup>4</sup> / þe  
 firste boon of pecten is ioyned with þe first' boon of rasceta,<sup>5</sup> & þe  
 8 opere .iiij. in þe same maner outaken þe þombe. —<sup>6</sup> þat' haþ .iiij.  
 boonys as þe opere fyngris han, conteyneþ<sup>3</sup> his firste boon wiþ þe  
 extremite of þe ouer fosile,<sup>7</sup> & þe þombe euenliche azenstondiþ þe  
 strenkþe of þe opere fyngris in clicchinge.<sup>8</sup> & alle þese boonys þat'  
 12 menciouen is maad of, þat' ben in ioynturis, as þe schuldris, elbowis,  
 raschet, & þe knottis of alle þe fyngris, ben ioyned togidere bi mene  
 of ligamentis, as it' is seid tofore / & þese boonys ben clopid wiþ  
 symple fleisch & brawnys after þat' þe dyuersite of foorme of lymes  
 16 askiþ /

To the arm-  
 bones are  
 joined the 8  
 hand-bones,  
 the Rasceta.

[2 lf. 83, bk.]  
 The wrist  
 articulates  
 with the 4  
 metacarpal  
 bones.

The thumb  
 has 3  
 phalanges.

& alle þe greete senewis proceden out' of nucha, þe whiche  
 senewis ben compounned wiþ ligamentis & wiþ symple fleisch,  
 makyngē brawnys meuyngē þo parties; of þe whiche brawnys  
 20 summe ben open to a mazzyns sizt, & summe ben hid; for þei ben  
 departid in two <sup>9</sup>þe leeste parties<sup>10</sup> / þere ben .iiij. brawnys open in  
 þe fleischy partie of þe arm, bitwene þe schuldre & þe elbowe: oon  
 on þe ynnere half, anopir on þe vttre half, anopir on þe lowere  
 24 half, anopir on þe hizere half. Whanne þe ynnere brawn is drawe  
 togidere þanne is þe arme foldid ynward, & þe contrarie brawn on

The Sinews,  
 Ligaments,  
 and simple  
 flesh form  
 the Muscles.

[9 lf. 84]

The Upper  
 Arm has 4  
 Muscles.

When the  
 inner Muscle  
 contracts,

<sup>1</sup> *Rasceta*, Arab = carpus. Castelli, *Lexicon medic.*, p. 139. See Littré: "rachette," and Devic Suppl. to Littré, *Dict.*

<sup>3</sup> *conteyned*, *conteyneþ* for *contynued*, *contynueþ*.

<sup>4</sup> *pecten*, Latin, *pecten manus*. See Halle, *Treatise of the Anatomye*, p. 62 (A.D. 1562). "And after these bones Rasceta, are constitute the bones of the palmes of the hands, called *Ostea metacarpis*. i. *Postbrachialia*, *Palma*, vel *manus pectus*." The corrupt form *Patinis* occurs in *Vicary*, p. 50, l. 9.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *pasceta*.

<sup>6</sup> Two words (*þe þombe*) are wanting. Latin: *Nam pollex tria habens ossa*. . . . He counts the metacarpal bone of the thumb as a phalanx.

<sup>7</sup> *fosile*, Latin: *facile*. See *Vicary*, p. 49, note 3.

<sup>8</sup> *in clicchinge*, Latin: (*pollex*) *ut sit solus ex opposito comprehendens cum aliis firmitus, et firmitus retinens apprehensum*.

<sup>10</sup> Lat. in tres partes minimas diuiduntur.

so y-ioynede togidere, þat it' semyth as on bon. And þe nepere ende  
 of þese bonys beþ y-ioyned wiþ þe bonys of þe hande, whiche beþ  
 28 y-clepyde rasceta þat beth viij bonys.

*Here the Add. MS. ends.*



the outer ex- tends. þe vttere half<sup>1</sup> is maad long; & whanne þat<sup>2</sup> þe vttere brawn of<sup>3</sup> þe<sup>1</sup> arm is maad schort, þanne is þe arm drawe outward & þe ynnere is maad long; & in þe same maner by<sup>2</sup> opere .ij. brawnys, þe arm is houe vp & lete falle down / & whanne þat<sup>2</sup> alle þe brawnys traueilen<sup>4</sup> liche myche, þe arm stant<sup>4</sup> euene ríztliche & deelyneþ to no partie / & þese brawnys,<sup>3</sup> .iiij. fyngir mele from þe ioynture of<sup>4</sup> þe schuldre, ben nakid cordis, & þei ben þe same from þe ioynture of<sup>4</sup> þe elbowe & in þe myddil of<sup>4</sup> þe adiutorie, þat<sup>2</sup> is þe place þat<sup>2</sup> is from þe<sup>8</sup> schuldre to þe elbowe; þe cordis ben multiplied dyuersliche wip fleisch to þe composicioun of<sup>4</sup> þe same brawnys, .iiij. fyngir mele  
 [1. fr. 84, bk.] aboue þe elbowe. & .iiij. fyngir mele by<sup>4</sup>neþe þe elbowe ben nakid cordis; & þere þei maken anopir<sup>5</sup> brawn; & in þis maner ben<sup>12</sup>  
 N maad nakid cordis & generacioun of<sup>4</sup> brawnys, til euery lyme haue his meuyng, after þat<sup>2</sup> it nedip him.

In boþe þe armes ben .iiij. open veynes þat<sup>2</sup> comen from þe lyuere, & ben scharpeled<sup>6</sup> þoruþ þe arm. For þere is a braunchid<sup>16</sup> veyne þe which wexip on þe vttere partie of<sup>4</sup> þe lyuere, & is dyuydid in two parties: oon arisyng, anopir descendyng; þe veyne arisyng comeþ to þe mydrif; & sum partie of<sup>4</sup> hir is sparpoiled<sup>7</sup> þoruþ þe mydrif & þe lymes of<sup>4</sup> þe brest / þat<sup>2</sup> opere partie of<sup>4</sup> þe veyne passip<sup>20</sup> to þe arm-hoolis, & þere he is forkid. & þat<sup>2</sup> veyne passip byneþe the arm to þe elbowe, & þere sche may be seen; & he is clepid basilica<sup>8</sup> or ellis epatica, & aftirward he strecchip bi þe nepir partie of<sup>4</sup> þe arm to þe hond, bitwene þe litil fyngir & þe leche<sup>9</sup> fyngir, & 24 sche is clepid saluatella<sup>10</sup> or ellis epatica in þe rízhond, & in þe lift-hand splenatica. þe topir partie of<sup>4</sup> þis veyne þat<sup>2</sup> is dyuydid fro þis assellari strecchip to þe vttere partie of<sup>4</sup> þe schuldre: & þere is

From the Vena Cava one branch runs to each armplf,

where it di-  
vides into 2.

1. at the el-  
bow called  
Basilica,

In the right  
hand Salva-  
tella,  
in the left  
hand Splen-  
atica;

<sup>1</sup> brawn, struck through after of þe.

<sup>2</sup> MS. ben.

<sup>3</sup> ben, inserted.

<sup>4</sup> corde, cancelled, after anopir.

<sup>6</sup> ben schorpeled, Latin: disperguntur—O.Fr. escharpiller, mettre en pièces. See Godefroy.

<sup>7</sup> is sparpoiled, Latin: dispergitur—O.Fr. esparpeiller. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 351, note 6.

<sup>8</sup> Basilica. See *Vicary*, p. 52, note 5. There is one reference for φλέψ βασιλική given in *Stephanus Thes.*, from Synesius, *De febribus*, which is a translation of an Arab. treatise by Constant. Africanus.

<sup>9</sup> leche fyngir. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 291, note 4. O.E. *læcefinger*, *Leechd.*, vol. i. p. 394. See Notes.

<sup>10</sup> Salvatella. See *Vicary*, p. 53, note 1. Dufresne gives one reference for Salvatella with a different meaning: "Pellicula involvens cerebrum." It occurs frequently in the Latin translations of Arab. authors, and translates Arab. sceilem or osaillemon.



- <sup>1</sup>dyuydid. & þe oon partie goiþ to þe heed & þe oþir partie to þe arm. & þilke is eftsoones dyuydid, & þe oon partie is spred bi þe arm manye weies wiþoute forþ, þat is clepid funis<sup>2</sup>; & þe oþere
- 4 partie strecchiþ euene to þe elbowe, & þere sche is schewid bi þe ouer partie of þe arm; & so sche strecchiþ to þe hand, & þere sche apperiþ bitwene þe fyngir and þe pompe, & is clepid cephalica. ij.
- 8 braunchis þat ben diuided þat comen fro þe schuldre, þe toon is cephalica, þe oþere from assillari,<sup>3</sup> þat is basilica, maken oon veyne þat is clepid mediana eiþer purpurea. & þere ben .iiij. veynys, as it is seid bifore, *scilicet*, finis<sup>4</sup> brachij þat strecchiþ bi þe vtere partie of þe arm, & sephelica þe which þat strecchiþ bi þe ouer partie, &
- 12 basilica þat strecchiþ bi þe lower partie & communis seu mediana seu purpurea seu fusca *quod idem est* is comun veyne eiþir myddil veyne, þe which þat is compounned of basilica & cephalica tofore seid, & sche apperiþ openliche in þe foldyng of þe myddil of þe
- 16 arm. // ¶ Þe veynes þat comen from þe lyuere han manie departingis<sup>5</sup> & dyuers placis, & for to telle alle þe departyngis, it is not profitable for a sirurgian / Saue it suffisiþ for a sirurgian, for to knowe in what place þe grete veynes sitten & þe arterijs, so þat he mowe
- 20 saue him-silf from perel & helpe hem, whanne þei ben kutt / þis þou schalt wite, þat from þe lyuere þer comeþ a veyne to euery lymie bicause of nurischinge. & for to make þe lymes ful of lijf, Arterijs comen þerto also. & þerfore in euery place þere þat ben
- 24 grete veynes, in þe same place ben arterijs.
- ¶ Bi þes þingis þat ben aforseid, þou maist wite wel þat þere comeþ greet perel of woundis, þat ben aboute þe schuldris & vndir þe arme-pittis,<sup>6</sup> & in þe boon of adiutorie, & in þe arm, & in þe
- 28 hondis / for whi: if woundis be maad in adiutorijs & in þe arme ouerþwert, it is greet perel lest þe braun be kutt away, wherby þe arme schulde haue his meuyng; & it is perel of kuttinge of veynes and arterijs, lest þe blood myzte not be staunchid. ¶ And
- 32 if it be maad a wounde with a þing þat prickide, & falle vpon a

[¶ If. 85]  
2. the other runs a. into the head;  
b. one branch, funis, outside the arm;  
another branch, Cephalica, along the arm, between the thumb and the 1st finger.  
The Basilica with the Cephalica form the Mediana.

Besides these 4 chief Veins,

there are many smaller ones,

[¶ If. 85, bk.]  
which a Surgeon needn't know.

With every vein there is an Artery.

Off perelles off woundes an quettes,

If an important muscle is cut

or a blood-vessel,  
if a Cord or Tendon is wounded,

<sup>2</sup> funis, Castelli, *Lexic. Medicum*, p. 351. "Arabes venam Medianam vocasse Funem brachii, testatur Ioh. Zecchius, lect. ii. in sect. 1. *Sph. Hipp.* p. m. 109." On this place funis evidently means not the vena mediana, but one of the recurrent veins.

<sup>3</sup> Vena ascellaris. Matth. Sylv.: "Vena communis nigra purpurea media — dicitur communis quoniam componitur ex assellari et humerali."

<sup>4</sup> finis for funis.

<sup>6</sup> þe arme-pittis. See Wr. W., 627. 3. xv. cent.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 86]  
where cramp  
may arise,

especially if  
it is the ten-  
don of the  
elbow.

Treatment:  
A wound  
along the  
arm is not  
dangerous,

and must be  
sewn.

If nerves or  
blood-vessels  
are cut,

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 86, bk.]

staunch the  
blood,  
join the  
nerves or  
cords

and apply a  
defensive  
medicine.

If the pains  
do not cease,  
open the  
suture,

and fill the  
wound with  
oil of roses

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 87]  
until pus is  
discharged.

corde þat is in þe.<sup>1</sup>ende of þe braun, & is clepid thenantos,<sup>2</sup> þanne  
it is greet drede of þe spasme & aftirward of deef, for þe akyng  
entriþ in þe corde þat is prickid, & so þe akyng arisiþ vp to þe  
brayn, & þanne comeþ spasme. ¶ Also it falliþ many tyme þat a 4  
man is hurt þe brede of iij. fyngris wiþinne aboue þe elbowe, þe  
is þe eende of þe braun & þe ben cordis; & þanne þe wole come  
greet akyng, & þanne þe spasme aftir, & þese woundis ben mortal.

¶ If þat wounde be maad endlongis in þe arme & in adiutorio, 8  
þanne it is not so greet drede, þerof, þerfore it is necessarie for a  
sirugian to knowe þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þis place, &  
wheþer þe wounde be ouerþwert or endelongis. & if þe wounde be  
endelongis, þanne he schal ioyn þe wounde togidere & sewe hem, 12  
& sprynge þeron þe poudre of lyme & of ere þingis, as it is aforeseid,  
for to kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis togidere & alle þingis as it is  
aforeseid in þe wounde of fleisch. ¶ If þe be ony nerues, or  
arterijs, ouþer veynes kutt<sup>3</sup> ouerþwert: þanne þou schalt worche 16  
with þingis þat streyneþ blood, & þou schalt sewe þe hedis of þe  
nerues togidere or of þe cordis. & þe pacient schal be kept from  
akyng wiþ good kepinge & with reste, & he schal ligge in an euene  
bed. & þou schalt leie aboue þe wounde a defensif of bole & of 20  
oile of rosis þat is aforeseid / And þou þis defensif be forþete in  
of ere woundis, in þis wounde it may not in no maner. ¶ þou  
schalt kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis with poudre & lynet, as it  
is aforeseid / Also þis þou must knowe if þou sewist sich a maner 24  
wounde of nerues & cordis, & if þe akyng go not away, þou  
muste rippe þe sewyng azen, & þou þis be contrarie to þe soudynge  
of þe nerues, zitt it is bettere to do<sup>4</sup> þus, þou he lese þe meuyng  
of sum lyme, þat þe nerue seruede þerfore, þan falle in þe spasme; 28  
for þanne it were drede of deef / þerfore it is necessarie for to  
opene þe wounde & fille it ful of oile of rosis & of zelke of an ey.  
& vpon<sup>5</sup> þe wounde leie of þe same medicyn til þe wounde quyt-  
ture, & þanne make þe wounde clene with mundificatiues, & þanne 32  
regendre fleisch as it is aforeseid // If it be so þat þe come ony  
hoot apostymes vpon woundis in þis place: þanne þou schalt  
worche as it is aforeseid in a propre chapitre // If it so be, þat þou  
leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis, & zelke of an ey for to do awei þe 36

<sup>2</sup> thenantos, sinew. Matth. Sylv.: "Tenantos gre. est chorda que in capitibus musculorum aggregatur." It is a corrupt form of Gr. *τένοντες* (Suidas Gloss.).

<sup>4</sup> do above line.



akyngē, & if' *pere* falle a flux of blood, & *panne* if' *pou* leidist' *perto* If oil causes hemorrhage, and styptics pain,  
 ony constreyning *pingis*, *pe* akyngē wolde be *pe* more, & if' *pou*  
 leidist' *perto* *pe* *zelke* of' an ey & oile, *pat'* wole make *pe* flux of  
 4 blood *pe* more—In *pis* caas what' is for to done? *pou* schalt' *brenne* then use the  
*pe* *hedis* of' *pe* *veynes* & of' *pe* *cordis* with an hoot' *yrn*, but' *pou* *cauterium*  
 schalt' not' touche *pe* *lippis* of' *pe* wounde wip *iren* in no maner ; & *actuale*  
*panne* *pou* schalt' leie in the wounde *pe* *zelke* of' an ey & oile of' (red-hot  
 8 *rosis*, til al *pe* *rynde* of' *pe* *brennyng'* falle awei. & *panne* *pou* schalt' *regendre* *fleisch*, and iron).  
 leie *perto* *mundificatiues*, & *panne* *pou* schalt' *regendre* *fleisch*, and  
*panne* *pou* schalt' soude *pe* wounde /

<sup>1</sup>Of woundis of *thoracis* & of *pe* *breſt* & of *pe* [1 ff. 87, bk.]  
 12 *membris* *pat* *ben* *conteyned* in it, & *anothamia*.

**T**Horax is maad of .vij. boonys & euery boon at *pe* eende is ¶ V. Co.  
*cartilagosum* / *pese* .vij. boonys *ben* ioyned togidere in *pis* The Breast has 7 bones with  
 maner *pat'* euery leenē vpon opir, & wip *pese* .vij. boonys *ben* maad gristly ends,  
 16 fast' .vij. ribbis *pat'* *ben* grete ribbis, & *po* .vij. ribbis *ben* maad fast' 7 true,  
 in *pe* rigge boon bihynde, & *pese* ribbis *ben* crokid' / Wipinne<sup>2</sup> *pese*  
 .vij. ribbis *ben* v. ribbis *pat'* *ben* lasse, & *ben* clepid lital ribbis, & 5 false Ribs,  
*ben* maad fast' bihynde with .v. boonys of' *pe* rigge, & in *pe* forside  
 20 of a man *pei* haue no fastnyngē to no boon, saue *pei* *ben* maad fast'  
 with *lacertis*.<sup>3</sup> & bitwixe *pe* .viij. boon & *pe* .ix. boon, *diafragma* is  
 maad fast', for to bigynne tellyngis of' boonys aboueforþ. & *pis*  
*diafragma* departiþ *pe* *spirituals* from *pe* *guttis*. & in *pe* holownes  
 24 *pat'* is aboue liggip *pe* herte & *pe* *lungis* / and the  
 Diafragma,  
 which diuides  
 the Spiritual  
 Members  
 from the  
 guts.

*pe* herte <sup>4</sup>is maad of hard *fleisch* & strong' & of' *lacertes* *pat'* *pei* [4 ff. 88]  
 miȝte be hard, *pat'* it' ne schulde take a greuaunce litzli.<sup>5</sup> & *perfore*  
*summen* *seiden* *pat'* it' is al braun ; but' it' is not' so, for *pe* braun of' The heart is  
 made from  
 muscular  
 fibres,  
 28 a man meueþ whanne he wole, & restiþ, & *pe* herte is alwei meuyngē  
 & not' reste. & *pe* herte is schape aftir a pyne, & hangiþ in *pe* is like a pine,  
 myddil of' *pe* *hizere* holownes, & hangiþ sum-what' to *pe* liftside  
 ward ; & *pe* *hizere* *perof'* is brood, & *pat'* place is medlid wip car-  
 32 tilaginosiſ ligaturis, & is maad fast' in *pe* *lungis*<sup>6</sup> ; & *pe* *lungis*  
 touchiþ not' *pe* herte, saue in *pe* aboue, *pere* it' is maad fast' togidere,  
 is enrounnded  
 by Pannicles  
 (Pericar-  
 dium),

<sup>2</sup> *wipinne*. The Latin has *infra*, which the translator took for *intra*.

<sup>3</sup> *lacertis*. See *Vicary*, page 57, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen XI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Venet, 1527, f. 204 :

“Cor quidem creatum est ex carne forti ut sit longinquum a nocumento.”

<sup>6</sup> *lungis*, a mistranslation of *panniculi*. The pericardium is also called  
 panniculus cordis.



and has  
ij. ventriclis.

Into the right  
one comes a  
Vein from the  
liver,  
[4 lf. 88, bk.]

and fills the  
Heart with  
nourishing  
blood,  
which is  
refined  
into a clear  
spirit between  
body and  
soul.

From the left  
Ventricle  
springs  
arteria  
venalis

and the Aorta  
from which  
all other  
Arteries pro-  
ceed.

[10 lf. 89]

& þe lunge defendiþ þe herte from greuance. & þe herte haþ two ventriclis .i. two holowe placis wiþinne, & þat oon ventricle sittip in þe rihtside of þe herte, & þat oper in þe listside<sup>1</sup>; & þese ventriclis holdip & resseyueþ eir & norischip þe herte / In þe riht ventricle 4 comeþ a greet veyne þat is clepid ramosa<sup>2</sup> þat comeþ from gibbo<sup>3</sup> epatis, & comfortip diafragma, & peersip þoruþ diafragma. & þis veyne is ful of greet<sup>4</sup> norischinge blood & hoot, & it norischip lymes of greet<sup>5</sup> substaunce. & þis veyne goiþ bi þe rihtside of þe 8 herte, & fillip þe herte ful of norischinge blood. & þanne þe blood in þe herte sutillip<sup>5</sup> & fillip ful þe two ventriclis of þe herte, & of þis clene blood þe spirit is engendrid; which spirit is more cleer & more schynynge<sup>6</sup> & more sutil, þan ony bodi þat is maad of þe iiij. 12 elementis. & þerfore it is turnid<sup>6</sup> into heuenly bodies, & it is bitwixe a mannys bodi & his soule a louely byndynge. ¶ And of þe list ventricle þere wexiþ out ij. [arteries]<sup>7</sup> and þat oon þerof haþ a maner coote, & þerfore of summen it is clepid arteria venalis.<sup>8</sup> & 16 þis arterie beriþ sutil blood to þe lungis & norischip þe lungis / And þat opere arterie haþ .ij. cootis. & of þe ilke<sup>9</sup> comeþ alle þe arteries in a mannys bodi, & ben departid in euery lyme of a mannys bodi. & þese arterijs makip alle a mannys lymes to haue lijf & spiritis; 20 & alle þes arterijs & alle þese spiritis þat ben aforeseid; and þese arterijs goiþ to þe brayn<sup>10</sup> & þei goiþ to þe lyuere & zeueþ him vertu ful myche & makip defynge / And þese arterijs goiþ to a mannys ballokis & zeueþ him vertu for to engendre; & in þis place 24 þe vertu of alle þe spiritis of a mannys bodi ben ioyned togidere.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The translator has omitted the following passage: "In medio illorum duorum ventriculorum est quedam fouca: & vocatur a quibusdam ventriculus tertius, super ventriculo dextro et sinistro. Item duo additamenta cartilaginosa fortia et flexibilia quandam habentia concauitatem, et constringuntur & dilatantur, & recipientes & retinentes nutrimentum et aerem ad nutriendum et temperandum cor."

<sup>2</sup> The translation is not correct. Lat.: "ad dextrum nanque ventriculum venit una vena ex ramosa vena." This vein is the vena cava inferior, which gets the blood from the liver by the venæ cavæ hepaticæ. "The seconde veyne is called Vena choele, or Vena concaua, and of some Vena Ramosa." Halle, *Anatomic*, page 78.—1565.

<sup>3</sup> gibbus. See Vicary, page 69, note 1. <sup>5</sup> sutillip. Latin: subtiliatur

<sup>6</sup> MS. turid. Latin: vergit in naturam supracelestium corporum.

<sup>7</sup> arteries, wanting. <sup>8</sup> Arteria venalis. See Vicary, page 58, note 1.

<sup>9</sup> MS. inserts, ij cootis

<sup>11</sup> The translation is corrupt. Lat.: Iste namque spiritus cordialis, qui per viam quæ dicta est a corde sumit originem, sicut omnes virtutes, quarum est instrumentum, cum ad ventriculos peruenit cerebri, aliam ibi recipit digestionem, quæ meretur formam suscipere spiritus animalis, & ita ut ad epar dirigatur, in ipso formam recipit nutritiui, et in testiculis generatiui, donec

- ¶ *pe lungis ben maad of .iiij. substauncis: of fleisch pat is* *pe lungs are made of 3 tissues, flesh, vessels, and ligaments.*  
*recchingē,<sup>1</sup> & braunche of arterijs, & of veynis,<sup>2</sup> & of cartilaginīs*  
*pat ben holow, & pese goþ out of canna pulmonis as it is afore-*  
4 *seid. ¶ pe profit pat pe lungis doip a man is þis: pe lungis drawiþ*  
*eir into pe herte, for to do awei pe fume & pe vntemprid heete of*  
*pe herte, & makip pe herte in tempre hete / And in tyme whanne* *They bring cool air to the heart.*  
*pe herte is constreyned, þanne it is necessarie for to drawe coold eir*  
8 *to pe herte; & if pe lungis myzte not drawe eir to pe herte, pe*  
*spirit of lijf schulde be stoppid, & so a man schulde be deed / &*  
*perfore it is necessarie pat a man haue clene eir, for pe eir passiþ* *The air ought to be clean.*  
*poruþ pe lungis pat ben tendre & goiþ to pe herte; & perfore vnclene*  
12 *eir doip harm to pe lungis & also to pe herte. & perfore pe lungis*  
*ben <sup>3</sup>departid into .ij. placis, & if per falle ony harm to pe oon* [<sup>3</sup> *lf. 89, bk.]*  
*partie of pe lungis, þanne pat opere partie beriþ al his charge //*
- ¶ *Woundis pat ben maad in pe brest. If pe wounde go into pe* *Woundis mad in the brest*  
16 *holownes, þanne it is miche to drede perof, for þanne it mizte falle*  
*pat sum substance of pe herte mizte be harmed, & þanne pe wounde*  
*were mortal //* ¶ *Ouþer if pe wounde zede into pe lungis, þere were* *Wounds of the lungs are dangerous,*  
*greet perel: for pe wounde mai not be helid but if it be soudid*  
20 *anoon //* ¶ *And if pe wounde go poruþ diafragma, it is mortal /* *wounds of the midriff, or the heart are mortal.*  
*And if it be so pat pe herte be hurt, þere lijþ no<sup>4</sup> cure peron, saue*  
*he schal die anoou; for pe herte takip no lijf of no lyme of al pe*  
24 *bodi, saue pe herte 3eueþ lyues to euery lyme of pe bodi; & pe*  
*herte ordeyneþ alle lymes to vertues, & pe herte is pe welle of lijf;* *When the heart, the well of life, is hurt,*  
*& perfor pe herte mai suffre noon harm, saue ioie ouþer sorowe /*  
*perfore if pe herte be kutt wiþ a swerd ouþer ony greet arterie pat*  
*is nyþ pe herte, pe wounde is mortal; for pe arterijs goiþ to pe herte*  
28 <sup>5</sup>*& þanne al pe blood of pe herte & pe spirit passiþ out bi pe arterijs,* [<sup>3</sup> *lf. 89 \**]  
*as þou myzt se bi ensauple of a candel. For if a candel pat* *either the blood rushing to the heart quenches the flame of life,*  
*brenneþ, ouþer a weke, be putt al in oile ouþer in grese, pe fier perof*  
*wole out; in þis same maner is pe spirit of lijf queynt, whanne pe*  
32 *herte is hurt, for pe greet flux of blood, pat falliþ to pe herte &*  
*stoppiþ pe spirit of lijf / Ouþer if per be greet flux of blood com-*  
*ynge fro pe herte, þanne pe spirit passiþ out perwiþ; as þou mizt*  
*se bi ensauple of a candel: whanne pe talow of a candel is doon,*  
36 *or wex, or oile, þanne pe lizt wole passe, & in pe same maner it* *or the blood and the spirit of life flow out from the wound.*

omnis spiritus, omnisque particularis virtutis perfectio cum virtutum operationibus coniungatur.

<sup>1</sup> *recchingē.* Latin: *rara.*

<sup>2</sup> *braunche of arterijs & of veynes.* Latin: *ramis arterie venalis.*

<sup>4</sup> *MS. do.* Lat.: *Cor autem vulneratum curam non recipit.*



When the lungs are hurt the wound must be stitched before it suppurates.

[2 lf. 89\*, bk.]

Medicines reach the lungs by a long way, and therefore the patients get phthisis.

The midriff is to the heart what bellows are to a fire.

Symptoms if the herte be wounded,

[4 lf. 90]

and if the lungs be wounded.

Throw a powder into the wound,

and close the wound when the lungs are healed.

De vulnera dia. diafragma.

Symptoms of a wounded midriff.

fariþ bi a mannis lijf, as it is aforseid. ¶ þe lungis wolen take no souding<sup>t</sup> whanne þei ben hurt<sup>t</sup>, but<sup>t</sup> if þe leche be þe more kunnyng<sup>t</sup> & soude þe wounde or it<sup>t</sup> quytture. For if it<sup>t</sup> qutture, þe lungis moun not<sup>t</sup> be maad clene but<sup>t</sup> wiþ cowzyng<sup>t</sup>, & þe more þat<sup>t</sup> þe 4 pacient cowzeþ, þe more þe wounde wexiþ // ¶ Also þe lungis ben euermore meuyng<sup>e</sup>; & [if] woundis<sup>1</sup> schulen be soudid in lymes, þe lyme 2 mote reste; & þefore for þe contynuel meuyng<sup>e</sup> of þe lungis, þe woundis þerof<sup>t</sup> ben seid incurable // ¶ Also þou<sup>3</sup> a man wolde 8 soude þe woundis of þe lungis wiþ ony medicyne þat<sup>t</sup> is consolidatif, it<sup>t</sup> ne mai not<sup>t</sup> come þerto but<sup>t</sup> bi a long<sup>t</sup> wey as bi þe stomak, ouþer bi þe lyuere, ouþir bi veynes, & so þe vertu of þe medicyne ne may not<sup>t</sup> come to þe lungs, but<sup>t</sup> bi þe forseid weies; & þefore men þat<sup>t</sup> 12 ben hurt<sup>t</sup> in þe lungis falliþ in þe tisik<sup>3</sup> / ¶ If a man be hurt<sup>t</sup> in diafragma, þer is no remedie þerof<sup>t</sup>; for diafragma is alwei meuyng<sup>e</sup>, for þat<sup>t</sup> is an instrument<sup>t</sup> of wijnd to the herte, riȝt<sup>t</sup> as a belowe is an instrument<sup>t</sup> for a fier / For riȝt<sup>t</sup> as a below, whanne he is opened, 16 he takiþ in wijnd, & whanne he is closid, he puttiþ out<sup>t</sup> wijnd & blowiþ þe fier /

¶ If þe herte be woundid, in þis maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe: þe pacient schal swowne, & þe blood þat<sup>t</sup> comeþ out<sup>t</sup> is blak, & he schal 20 size sore, & þanne he is but<sup>t</sup> deed //

¶ If þe lungis ben hurt<sup>t</sup>, þou schalt<sup>t</sup> 4 knowe in þis maner bi cowzyng<sup>e</sup>, & þe blood þat<sup>t</sup> goiþ out<sup>t</sup> of þe wounde wole be spumous & cleer / If þe wounde hereof<sup>t</sup> be streit<sup>t</sup> wiþoutforþ, make it<sup>t</sup> largere, 24 & þanne in þe wounde of þe lungis caste poudre of mastix. & olibani,<sup>5</sup> draganti, gumme arabici, fenigreci ana; & he schal ete no mete saue þat<sup>t</sup>, þat<sup>t</sup> he mai soupe, & penidis<sup>6</sup> medlid þeron, & loke þat<sup>t</sup> he haue sciелence & good reste, & þat<sup>t</sup> he traueile not<sup>t</sup>; & þou 28 schalt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> close þe wounde wiþoute, til þe wounde of þe lungis be sowdid, & þanne soude þe wounde wiþoutforþ //

¶ If þat<sup>t</sup> a wounde be in diafragma, þes ben þe signys þerof<sup>t</sup>: streit<sup>t</sup> secching<sup>e</sup> of breeþ, & greet agreuauunce for to drawe his 32 breeþ, & greet akyng<sup>e</sup> in his side, & greuous cowzyngs; alle þese ben signys of deef, & principali if þese signys be greet & greuous /

<sup>1</sup> þat inserted. Lat.: et vulnerata membra indigent ut quiescant.

<sup>3</sup> "Tisica, Italis et Hispanis Phthisis."—Dufresne. "Tissick, an Ulceration of the Lungs, accompany'd with an Hectick Fever, and causing a Consumption of the whole Body."—Phillips, 1706. *ty syk*, Hampole, 701. "þat man þat hath þe tisik & þe etik," Quintess, p. 17, 7.

<sup>5</sup> *Olibanum*. Thus masculinum. Arab. al-louban (Devic. Dict.). N.E. oliban.

<sup>6</sup> *Penidium*, barley sugar.



- If þese signys ben but litil & not strong<sup>1</sup> greuous, þanne zeue him metis & drynkis þat mowe swage<sup>1</sup> þe cowȝe, & þanne take a tent<sup>2</sup> þat he not to greet, & wete it in þe zelke of<sup>2</sup> an ey & oile of rosis, [ 1f. 90, bk.]  
 4 & þanne cure þis wounde as þou doist ouper woundis /  
 If it so be þat a wounde be in a caua<sup>3</sup> & noon of þe forseid lymes ben not hurt, þanne wete a tent in oile of rosis hoot & putte in þe wounde; & whanne þou remeuest þi medicyne ouper leist<sup>4</sup> If a wound enters into the hollows of the chest  
 8 þerto ony medicyne, be war þat þer passe out noon eir þoruȝ þe wounde, ne entre in noon eir into þe wounde, & þerfore or þou change þi tent, loke þat þou haue þingis þat ben necessarie þerfore redi, þat þe wounde mowe be stoppid anoon, þat þere go no breȝþ  
 12 into þe wounde, ne out of þe wounde / For if þer go ony breȝþ out, it wole afeble þe patient, & if þer go ony breȝþ þere, it wole do harme to þe spaulis. Leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis & þe zelke of an ey, & herwiȝ wete þi tent til þe wounde quytture. & þanne  
 16 euery dai make him to turne vpon his side, & make him cowȝe & spitte out þe quytture, & avoide þe quytture bi þe wounde also. & if þere be myche quytture, & may not be avoidid bi þe wounde, þanne þou schalt make sich a maner waischinge & putte it yn wiȝþ  
 20 <sup>4</sup>an instrument maad lijk a clisterie / R .mel ro. ȝ iiij., mirre, fenigreci, farine lupinorum ana ȝ ß, boile hem to þe consumpeioun of þe .iiij. part in li j. of swete wijn, & li j. of water, & þanne cole hem & putte in þe colature as it is aforseid. Vpon þe wounde  
 24 wiȝþoutforȝ, from þe tyme þat it quytturiȝ, leie þis mundificatif planed vpon a clooȝ.<sup>5</sup> R mel ro. li j., farina ordeï substillissimi. ȝ iiij., mirre, fenigreci ana. ȝ j., be þei encorperat<sup>6</sup> & boilid at esi fier / & whanne þei ben weel boilid, & weel medlid togidere so þat  
 28 it be picke, do hem doun of þe fier, & do þerto ȝ .iiij. of terbentyne waischen & medle hem weel togidere. þis emplastre þou schalt vse, & þe waischingis þat is aforseid, & þou schalt holde open þe wounde with a tent wet in oile, til þe quytture þat is withynne be  
 32 perfitli dried / þis þou schalt knowe bi þe vertu of þe patient & bi þe sauour of his breȝþ, & whanne his cowȝynge goiȝ aweȝ, & whanne

Alley the coughing and apply a tent.

beware that no air passes through the wound.

Make the patient cough out the pus.

[ 4 ff. 91]

a loction for wounds with- in the brest

A cleansing (mundificatif) plaster.

One knows by the odour of the patient's breath

<sup>1</sup> swage. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 372.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *canna*. Lat.: Cum autem vulnus est in cassum penetrans. *Cassus*, Pecten. Semibarbaris ex Arabico. Castellus, Lex. Med. *Casse*, Arab. Kas, cup, calice.—Devic. I would rather trace it from Lat. *cassus* adj. void, hollow, and *cassum*, i = *cassa*, orum sb. the hollows. The latter form *cassa* gave origin to Ital. *cassa* f. See *cassa del cranio*, etc.

<sup>5</sup> &. Lat.: super pannum distensum. O.Fr. *planer*, Lat. *planare*.

<sup>6</sup> *encorperat*. Lat. *incorporatus*, O.Fr. *encorperer*.

if the wound  
is clean.  
[<sup>1</sup> lf. 91, bk.] his vnkyndely heete goiþ awei / If þou doist alle þese þingis to him  
þat<sup>1</sup> ben aforseid, & þe quytture <sup>1</sup>be not wiþdrawe þerwith, & his  
When sup-  
puration con-  
tinues, a weak  
patient dies.  
cowzyng & his akyng be not aswagid, & his vertu be feble, & his  
spirit be nouzt, þanne do þou nomore þerto, saue he schal al turne <sup>4</sup>  
him to goddis merci // ¶ Saue if it<sup>1</sup> so be þat<sup>1</sup> he haue þe cowze &  
If the patient  
is strong,  
make a new  
incision.  
greet<sup>1</sup> quytture in þe wounde, & he be strong, & principali if þer  
wexe ony swellng in his side bihinde bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib,  
þan þere þou schalt make a newe kutting<sup>1</sup> & lete out<sup>1</sup> þe quytture, <sup>8</sup>  
& bi þis place drawe out<sup>1</sup> þe quytture, & holde þe wounde open,  
& lete þe olde wounde close togidere. & if it<sup>1</sup> be nede, caste yn  
þe forseid waischinge bi þis wounde & leie a mundificatif wiþoute  
til þe quytture be al aweie, & þis cure þou schalt folowe / It falliþ <sup>12</sup>  
ofte tyme þat<sup>1</sup> a man is hurt<sup>1</sup> an hiz aboue in þis place, & þanne  
þe blood & þe quytture falliþ vpon diafragma & gaderiþ togidere,  
þanne þou schalt kerue him bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib as it<sup>1</sup> is  
aforseid, for þe blood & þe quytture mai haue no cours to þe wounde <sup>16</sup>  
aboue; & if he is kutt<sup>1</sup> so byneþe, þanne þe blood & þe quytture  
mai be drawe away; <sup>2</sup>& if þou doist<sup>1</sup> not þus þe pacient<sup>1</sup> schal die,  
[<sup>1</sup> lf. 92] & if þou doist<sup>1</sup> þus þe pacient<sup>1</sup> schal be delyuerid wel // Whanne  
woundis ben in thorase ouþer in þe brest, & þe woundis ne goon <sup>20</sup>  
not þoruþ, þanne þou schalt cure him as it<sup>1</sup> is aforseid in opere  
woundis //

Of woundis of þornis<sup>3</sup> ouþer spondilium, & of þo þat  
ben conteyned in him & anothamie /<sup>4</sup> 24

¶ vj. c° /  
B Onys of þe necke, as we haue aforsed, ben .vij, & rigge boonys  
of þe brest ben .xij, & of þe reynes ben .v. riggeboones, &  
vndir þe reynes ben .iiij. riggeboones, & vpon þe place þat is clepid<sup>5</sup>  
—þe boon of þe tail is maad of .iiij. rigge boones, & þere ben .xxx. <sup>28</sup>  
¶ Eueri boon of þe rigge is an hole þoruþ, & þoruþ þe ilke hoolis  
nucha<sup>6</sup> goiþ endelongi þe rigge; & euery boon of þe rigge hap .iiij.  
addiciouns to him, & summe han mo; þis is not necessarie to telle  
to a sirurgian, saue it<sup>1</sup> is necessarie to a sirurgian for to knowe þis : <sup>32</sup>

The spinal  
column is  
composed of  
30 Spondles  
or Vertebrae.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *þorais*. Lat.: De vulneribus spinæ seu spondylium & eorum anatomia. The scribe changed *þornis*, the translation of 'spinæ,' into *þorais*, for *thoracis*, as in the heading to Cap. V. The words: *þ of þo þat ben conteyned in him* are taken from the same Chapter-heading.

<sup>4</sup> See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 74.

<sup>5</sup> One word is here wanting. Lat.: super locum qui dicitur aboratur alahume. *aboratur* is perhaps a corruption for *ab arabis*, *alahume* is the Os sacrum.

<sup>6</sup> *nucha*, Arab. *nukha'*, spinal marrow.



- pat' euery rigt-boon hap a greet' hole, & nucha goiþ þer þoruþ. & þer ben opere smale hoqlis in þe boones bi þe sidis aboutforþ, & þere þoruþ goon nerues for to holde þe lymes faste <sup>1</sup>togidere. & so þese
- 4 .xxx. boones ben bounden togidere wiþ stronge ligaturis, & þei ben so strongeli bounden togidere pat' þei semeþ al oon boon. þese boones bineþe þe necke is clepid þe rigge ouþer spina, & þis is þe foundement' of al þe bodi //
- 8 ¶ Woundis pat' ben maad in þis place. If nucha be kutt' þoruþ ouerþwert', þe wounde is mortal for þe nobilte of nucha pat' comeþ fro þe Brayn riht' as a ryuer comeþ of wellis.<sup>2</sup> ¶ And þouþ nucha be not' kutt' al þoruþ saue hurt, it' is greet' perel þerof, for
- 12 þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng, for þe nerues pat' ben aboute þe boones of nucha ben kutt'. & also þe rigge-boones ben kutt' & herof' cometh greet' perel / And if þe braun pat' sittip ende-longis þe rigge in boþe sidis of þe rigge-boon & durip<sup>3</sup> from þe heed
- 16 adoun anoon to þe tail eende, & if ony of alle þese be kutt' ouþer prickid, it' is greet' perel for þe spasme, for þe causis pat' ben aforseid / þe curis herof' ben lijk to þe curis pat' ben aforseid of opere woundis, saue it' is necessarie for a cirurgian to knowe pronosticatiuis
- 20 of þis <sup>4</sup>place, & also if a man be hurt in pat' place, he mote haue for þe causis aforseid //

Through the  
Vertebrae  
passes the  
Spinal cord.  
[ 1f. 92, bk.]

The Spondles  
form the  
Back-bone.

The Prog-  
nosis is un-  
favourable, if  
the Spinal  
Cord is cut,

or the Spon-  
dles, or the  
Muscles along  
the Spine  
are severally  
injured.

The Treat-  
ment is the  
same as in  
other wounds.  
[ 1f. 93]

Of woundis of þe stomac / & intestinum & wombe, & anothamia /

- 24 **I** Haue seid heretofore in what maner mery<sup>5</sup> goiþ doun þoruþ þe necke wipinneforþ, and goiþ þoruþ diafragma, & is maad fast' with diafragma, & diafragma goiþ aboute þe moup of þe stomak. & þe stomak is schape in þis maner,<sup>6</sup> & in oon
- 28 side he is gibbous, & in þe toper side he is more playn. & þe stomac is maad of .ij. clopis. & pat' oon cloop sitt' wipoute & pat' oper wipinne, & þe cloop pat' sittip wipinne is villosus & neruous, & þe cloop pat' is wipoutforþ is fleischi / ¶ In þe ynner cloop ben longe villis wherof' comeþ drawynge, & þere ben villis ouerþwert', wherof'

The stomach  
is made of 2  
Membranes

with longi-  
tudinal and  
transverse  
fibres.

<sup>2</sup> Rases, Liber ad Almansorem, Tract. I, Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 2.  
"Cerebrum quasi fons sensuum est et motus voluntarii, Nucha vero sicut fluuius magnus ab eo manans."

<sup>3</sup> durip. Lat. distenditur. As to the local sense, compare O.Fr. durer.

<sup>5</sup> mery, oesophagus. Arab. *marijun*, windpipe.

<sup>6</sup> In the margin is a diagram of the shape of the stomach.



comeþ wipholdyng<sup>1</sup> / In þe clooþ þat is wipoutforþ, þere ben longe villis, & þat makip expulcioun. þe ynner clooþ is neruous, þat it mowe fele whanne it is ful; wipoutforþ it is fleischi for to make him hoot & moist, þat he miȝte helpe for to make digestioun. 4 þat skyn þat is wipinne þe stomak is norischid with moisture of mete<sup>1</sup> þat is resseyued into þe stomak / The skyn þat is wipoute þe stomak is norischid of blood, þat comeþ fro þe lyuere in smale reynes & goip al aboute þe stomak. ¶ Also þere comeþ arterijs 8 from þe herte to þe stomak & makip him to haue lijf, & of pese .ij. þingis, þat is to seie vena & arteria, gibbus<sup>2</sup> is maad þat gouerneþ þe stomak & þe guttis wip his fatnes, & makip hem hoot. ¶ In þe botme of þe stomak þere is a mouþ, and þat mouþ is more 12 streit þan þat aboue. & þe firste gutt is maad fast to þe lower mouþ, & þis gutt is clepid duodenum.<sup>3</sup> þis is þe skille whi he is clepid so, for he is of þe lengþe of .xij. ynchis; & þanne þere ben .vj. guttis bineþe him; & þanne þis firste gutt is maad of .ij. cootis, 16 as alle þe opere guttis ben, but þe .ij. gutt is smal & folde togidere. þe .iiij. gutt is clepid ieinum,<sup>4</sup> id est, fastyng, for he is euermore voide,<sup>5</sup> & þat is for he is nȝ þe galle & resseyueþ myche colre<sup>6</sup> for to awoide him, & þere goip to him manye veynes, wherbi he is 20 voidid / Aftir him þere comeþ a gutt þat is clepid orobum<sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup>ouper a sak, & it haþ but oon mouþ, & he resseyueþ alle þe fecis; & þere is fullid þe firste digestioun of þe guttis / Aftir þis gutt þer is a gutt þat is clepid colon, & lijþ ouerþwert þe wombe & resseyueþ 24 feces / And aftir þis gutt comeþ langaon,<sup>9</sup> & is þe eende of alle; & he haþ .iiij. brawnys, & þerof he haþ vertu for to wipholde þe fecis yn. & for to putte hem out whanne a man wole / Euery meuyng of þe guttis is kindly & eueri gutt of pese þat ben 28 afoiseid haþ diuers kynde // ¶ þer ben manye maner causis whi þat guttis ben folde with nerues: þe firste enchesoun is þis, þat a man schulde not as soone as he hadde ete, anoon riȝt go to sege as

Arteries  
bring life to  
the Stomach.

The Entrails  
or Guts:  
duodenum.

Ieinum.

Orobum,

[<sup>8</sup> lf. 94]

where the first  
digestion is  
made

Colon.

langaon.

retains and  
finally evacu-  
ates the  
feces.

The entrails  
are nervous

.1.  
that the food  
may be  
retained

<sup>2</sup> gibbus, mistake for zirbus. See Vicary, page 64, note 2; and page 86, note.

<sup>3</sup> duodenum. See Ibid. page 65, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> jejunum. See Vicary, page 65, note 2.

<sup>5</sup> Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen. XVI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1527, f. 248. "et nominatur hoc intestinum ieinum, quum ipsum inuenitur secundum plurimum inanitum et vacuum."

<sup>6</sup> colre. Lat. cholera. Choler, "Bilis."—Huloet.

<sup>7</sup> orobum. Lat. orbum. The Ileum is here meant.

<sup>9</sup> langaon. See Vicary, page 66, note 5. Lat. longanon, longao = the straight gut.

- doip a beest. þe .ij. cause is þat þe mete miȝte abide in þe stomak  
for to make digestion, & þat þat is not fulfillid in þe stomak is  
fulfillid in þe guttis. þe .iiij. cause is þis, þat it first abide in oon  
4 gutt / & þanne it is sent to anoþer & so forþ. & þanne for to holde  
alle þese þingis / þe stomak & þe guttis is ordeyned a skyn, þat is  
clepid þe siphac<sup>1</sup>; & is a syngle skyn & is not<sup>2</sup> villous, & is engen-  
drid bineþe as is diafragma is aboue, as it is aforeseid, & is maad  
8 fast at þe rigge bihinde, for to holde vp þe stomak & þe guttis / In  
þis partie bineþe þis þer ben engendrid of siphac .ij. þingis þat ben  
clepid dindimi<sup>3</sup> & goiþ adoun al aboute þe ballokis, & is clepid þat  
ynner skyn of þe ballokis; & þoruþ þis dindimi goiþ arterijs &  
12 veynes to þe ballokis, & makip hem haue lijf & norischinge &  
kynde of sperme // ¶ Alle þese þingis þanne ben comprehendid in  
a skyn þat is fleischi & of lacertis maad, & is clepid mirac, & is  
clepid þe vttere wombe in whiche ben lacertis, for to helpe putte out  
16 þe fecis & wijnd & vine /  
þerfore woundis þat ben maad in þe stomac ben perilous, & in  
þe guttis, for manie causis / þe firste cause is þis, for her worchinge  
is necessarie to þe bodi, for þei ben þe firste instrument of digestioun,  
20 & her worchinge is so necessarie to þe bodi, þat it mai in no maner  
be susteyned, ne abide wiþoute hem / þerfore if þere be ony woundis  
in þis place her worchinge is lost, but if þe wounde be soudid  
anoon; & þat is ful hard & sumtyme impossible for þei ben neruous,  
24 & þere is no fleisch on hem, & also for þei ben alwey meuyng, &  
þrincipali whanne woundis ben maad in þe hindere partie of þe  
stomac ouþir in þe smale guttis / For if þe woundis falle in þe  
nepir partie of þe stomac þat is fleischi, ouþer in þe greete guttis  
28 bineþe, if þe leche be kunnyng, þe pacient mai lyue /  
¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in ony of þese placis þat ben  
aforeseid in þe stomak ouþer in þe guttis, þe leche muste knowe  
wheþer þe substaunce of þe guttis or of þe stomak be prickid þoruþ  
32 or no; þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe goyng out of þe fecis at þe  
wounde, & þanne þe wounde is iugid mortal. ¶ If a man be  
woundid in his stomak & þe wounde of þe wombe wiþoutforþ ne  
be not brood, þanne kutte it more & þanne sewe the wounde of þe  
36 stomak wiþ a nedele þat is iiij. squar & wiþ a sutil þreed, & þis þou  
schalt speciali, whanne þe wounde is in<sup>5</sup> a fleischi place of þe stomak, [2 lf. 95, bk.]

2.  
and digested  
in the  
stomach

3.  
and the guts.

[2 lf. 94, bk.]

Siphac  
(Great Omen-  
tum):

it is con-  
tinuous in its  
lower part  
with the  
dindimi  
(Tunica  
vaginalis).

ciffac is þe  
inar aken,

mirac  
the vtter.  
(Peritoneum)

Wounds of  
the stomach  
and the  
bowels are  
dangerous,  
as their func-  
tional activity  
is necessary.

[4 lf. 95]

The patient  
may recover  
if the fleshy  
part of the  
stomach or  
guts is  
wounded.

Nota.  
A wound  
which per-  
forates the  
entrails is  
mortal.

Sew the  
wound in the  
stomach,

[2 lf. 95, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> siphac. See *Vicary*, page 62, note 4.

<sup>3</sup> dindimi, used elsewhere to signify the Testicles.



for if þe wounde be aboue in a place of þe stomak þat<sup>t</sup> is neruous,  
ne traueile þou not þere aboute þanne, for it<sup>t</sup> is an idil / Whanne  
þou hast<sup>t</sup> sewid þe wounde bineþe as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid, þanne springe  
þeron poudre consolidatif & soude þe wounde of þe stomak, & holde  
open þe wounde of þe skyn wipoute, til þe wounde of þe stomak be  
hool // ¶ If it bifalle þat<sup>t</sup> a man be hurt in þe greete guttis bineþe,  
so þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounde be not to greet, þanne þou schalt sewe þe gutt, &  
þe eendis of þe predis schulen hange out, & þe vtter wounde schal  
be holde open, til þe wounde of þe gutt be soudid ¶ If it so be þat<sup>t</sup>  
þe wounde of his wombe wipoutforþ be so brood þat<sup>t</sup> þe guttis falle  
out, putte hem yn anoon while þei ben hote / If it be so þat<sup>t</sup> þe  
guttis be colde, or þat<sup>t</sup> þou come þerto, & þe wounde of þe wombe  
be to swolle, & þe guttis be chaungid wip þe eir, wherfore þe guttis  
wolen not in azen, þanne þou must sutilli make þe wounde of þe  
wombe a litil more, þat<sup>t</sup> þe guttis <sup>1</sup>mowe litzly falle yn azen wipoute  
greuance. Whanne þe guttis ben ynne, sewe mirac & siphac in  
þis maner togidere, so þat<sup>t</sup> þei moun boþe be soudid togidere; for if  
mirac were soudid & not siphac, þanne aftir þe tyme þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounde  
were soudid, þere wolde leue a crepature.<sup>2</sup> þerfore þou must sewe  
in þis maner / Take þat<sup>t</sup> oon side of mirac & siphac togidere so  
þat<sup>t</sup> þei be euene, & loke þat<sup>t</sup> þi nedel be .iij. squar, & þanne make  
oon poynt þoruþ hem ij. togidere, in þe same maner in þe toþer, &  
þus þou schalt make þeron as manie pointis as þou þenkist neces-  
sarie / And whanne þou hast<sup>t</sup> sewid mirac & siphac togidere in a  
good maner, þanne knytte þe predis togidere þat<sup>t</sup> þei vnknytte not,  
as þou seest þat<sup>t</sup> is to doing; & lete þe eendis of þe predis hange  
out, & þanne springe vpon þe sewynge þe poudre consolidatif þat<sup>t</sup>  
is aforseid, and holde open þe wounde wipoutforþ til mirac & siphac  
be perfitli soudid, for in þis maner mirac & siphac moun be soudid  
bi þis cause: Siphac is neruous & hap <sup>3</sup>no fleisch, & mirac is fleisch,  
& bi þe vertu of him siphac is soudid; & þanne do þe cure herof  
aftir as it<sup>t</sup> is tofore // ¶ Summen seien þat<sup>t</sup> þe smale guttis moun  
be sowdid in þis maner: make a pipe of eldre, & putt wipinne þe  
gutt, & þanne soude þe gutt þer vpon. & I seie þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> is not soþ,  
for þis þing, þe smale guttis wolen not soude, & to þe greete guttis  
þis queyntise is nouþt; þerfore triste to þe maner þat<sup>t</sup> is aforseid,  
& take kepe of þe perels þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid.

and keep the  
external  
wound patent  
while the  
stomach  
heals,

When the  
bowels fall  
out from the  
wound, re-  
place them,

[1 lf. 96]

Nota.

sew the  
Siphac and  
Mirac to-  
gether,

and keep the  
external  
wound patent.

[3 lf. 96, bk.]

Some phy-  
sicians put a  
reed-pipe  
into the  
wounded in-  
testine before  
sewing it.

<sup>2</sup> crepature, hernia.



Of woundis of þe lyuere & splen & reynes & þe  
bladdre, and anothamia<sup>1</sup> /

- T**he firste schapinge of þe lyuere is maad of þe .ij. spermes as ¶ viij. Co  
 4 **B**en þe opere principal lymes, saue þe greetnes of þe lyuere is The Liver is  
 principali maad of blood & is in þe hardnes of fleisch. & þe sub- made of  
 stance þerof is fleischi, & it is in þe maner as it were blood runne, blood.  
 & chilus comuneþ fro þe stomac to þe lyuere for to zeue him  
 8 norischynge, & þe lyuere is gibbous wipoute, & wipinne holow þat <sup>[2 lf. 97]</sup>  
 it miȝte be þe more cloyng to þe stomac. & þe heete of þe <sup>2</sup>lyuere The Liver is  
 makip þe stomac to sepe as fier makip a furneis to sepe.<sup>3</sup> ¶ The to the  
 lyuere haþ addicioun, & ben diuers; for in summe ben .iiij. & in Stomach,  
 12 summe ben .v. & in summe ben .iiij. Of sperme þe mater of þe what fire is  
 lyuere wipinne is gaderid. & þerof comeþ a greet veyne & is en- to a furnace.  
 gendrid in sima<sup>4</sup> epatis, & is clepid þe zate of þe lyuere. & of þis lyuer.  
 veyne summen seien þat þere ben engendrid .viij. veynes, & sum- From the  
 16 men seien þat þere ben mo; & þus veynes ben zatis riȝt as rootis spermat-  
 of a tree.<sup>5</sup> & þese veynes ben clepid miseraice / & summe of þese ous part of the  
 veynes ben maad fast wip þe botme of þe stomac, & wip a gutt þat Liver comes  
 is clepid duodeno, & summe wip þe smale guttis, & summe wip þe the Vena  
 20 gutt þat is clepid ieinum, & summe wip orobo ouþir wip þe sak // Porta.  
 ¶ þe lyuere is maad fast to þe riȝt side of þe stomac, & in þe The Mesen-  
 liftside of þe stomac sitt þe splene, & is schape along, & is maad teric veins  
 fast with o partie of þe stomac. & oon partie þerof is maad fast are branches  
 24 twoward þe rigge in þe liftside, & haþ .ij. poris, & þoruþ þat oon of the Vena  
 pore he drawip malancolious blood of <sup>6</sup>þe lyuere, & clensip þe Porta.  
 lyuere of malancolious superfluite, & þerof þe splene is norischid. <sup>[2 lf. 97, bk.]</sup>  
 & þere is anoþer pore þat goip to þe mouþ of þe stomac, & makip and incites  
 28 þe mouþ of þe stomac to haue appetite<sup>7</sup> // Appetite in  
 the Stomach.

<sup>1</sup> See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 68.

<sup>3</sup> "for his heate is to the stomacke as the heate of the fyre is to the Potte or Cauldron that hangeth ouer it."—*Vicary*, p. 69.

<sup>4</sup> *sima*, concavitas hepatis. Matth. Sylv., see Dufr. *σιμός, ἡ, ὅν*, hollow, concave: *τὰ σιμὰ τοῦ ἥπατος*, the bottom of the liver. Poll. 2. 213, Galen. It is used opposite to *κυρτός*, convex, curved, in Galen ad Glauco. 2.—See *Stephanus Thesaurus*.

Sloane 2463, fol. 40: "*Syma of þe lyuer is as it were þe palme oper þe holwenesse of þe hond. The xtilite, whi þat it is of suche forme oper schappe is because þat it schulde ben aplied oper leyen to þe stomak as þe hond lieth to an appull, whan þe appull is in þe hond.*"

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: *venæ quæ sunt ipsi portæ sicut radices arbori*.

<sup>7</sup> *De propr. rer. Trevisa*, Lib. V., Cap. 41, Add. 27,944, fol. 57 b: "*& Constantyn seiþ þat þe melte is i-set in þe lift side, & þe schap þerof is*

The Reynes

þe reynes ben set, þat oon in þe riȝtside & sittip hizere, & þat oon in þe liftside & sit lowere, & ben maad of hard fleisch, & ben sett in two sidis of þe rigge boon. Boþe þe reynes hauen .ij. veynes ouþir .ij. neckis, & þat oon is aboue, & þat opere is bineþe. Þoruȝ 4  
 þe necke aboue of þe reynes is drawe watri blood & comeþ from  
 draw watery blood from the  
 vena ramosa, and transmit urine to the  
 vena ramosa<sup>1</sup>; & þis watri blood is vryne, & from þe reynes it goip  
 to þe necke of þe bladdre þoruȝ a veyne þat is clepid kylym,<sup>2</sup> & in  
 þis maner þe vryne comeþ into þe bladdre / 8

bladdre  
via the  
ureters.The Bladder  
has a neck,  
longer in  
men than in  
women.

[\* If. 98]

galle.

þe bladdre is maad of .ij. pinne skynnes, & boþe skynnes ben neruous, & þe necke of þe bladdre is fleischi. In men þe necke is long, for it passip þoruȝout þe zerde, & in wymmen þe necke of þe bladdre is schort, & is maad fast to the cunte.<sup>3</sup> / þe necke of þe 12  
 bladdre hath oon braun, & is in þe mouþ of þe bladdre<sup>4</sup> & þat  
 makip a man holde his vryne whanne he wole, & putte cut his  
 vryne whanne he wole, wiþ help of þe wombe þat pressip, & of  
 lacertis // ¶ Of þe galle we makip noon anothamie, for al oure 16  
 science makip noon mencion of a wounde in þe galle /

Only small  
and recent  
wounds of  
the Liver can  
be healed.

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þe lymes aforeseid ben euermore perilous / For alle þese lymes, ouþir þei ben principal lymes as is þe lyuere, ouþir þei serueþ principal lymes, wiþoute whiche lymes þe 20  
 bodi ne mai not be susteyned / If þe lyuere be hurt in þe depe  
 substaunce, þanne þe lyuere schal lese al hir worchinge, & al þe blood  
 þerof wole be disturblid þat is matere of þe spirit, & in þis maner  
 þe spirit of lijf is disturblid & þe foundement of alle hise vertues; 24  
 saue if þe wounde of þe lyuere be but litil it may be soudid, so  
 þat þe wounde be freisch & not oold hurt, forwhi a principal lyme  
 mai not suffre longe sjuknes // ¶ Þouȝ a man were hurt in þe splene,  
 zitt he miȝte be wel curid, & þouȝ þere were a gobet þerof kutt 28  
 away, so þat it ne were not to myche and ouerþwert, for þerof  
 ofte tyme fallip þe dropesie; ouþir if þe poris were kutt, it wolde  
 afeble þe stomac. ¶ Woundis þat ben in þe reynes ben not curid,

Even severe  
wounds of the  
splene  
can be cured.  
[\* If. 98, bk.]

*euelong, and is somewhat holouȝ toward þe stomak & bunchinge toward þe ribbis. In þese tweye places he is i-bounde with certeyn smale cloþinge, & me seiþ þat þe mette haþ tweye reynes, by þe on þerof he drawip blak colera of þe blod to þe lyuour, & by þe oþir he sendip what sufficeþ to þe stomak to conforte þe appetite þerof."*

<sup>1</sup> vena ramosa, Vena Cava.<sup>2</sup> Lat.: per venam chylim quæ a quibusdam pori uritides dicitur = Meatus Urinariî = Ureter. *Kylym*, from *χυλός*, juice. See also *Vicary*, p. 72, note 3.<sup>3</sup> 'Hec vulva, cunte.' Wright, *Voc.*, p. 677. 32, xvth cent. O.Fr. *cunne*, Lat. *cunnus*, *cunte* is a diminutive form like *cunetta* of *cuna*.



- for þei ben norischid wiþ watri blood, for þat<sup>t</sup> is *contrarius* to  
soudinge / & for þe reynes ben alwey in meuynge, & also vryne þat<sup>t</sup>  
alwei is bitynge goiþ þoruþ þe reynes. ¶ þe bladdre ne mai not be  
4 souldid if it be kutt, for it is a lyme þat<sup>t</sup> is neruous & hap no fleisch,  
& is alwei meuynge, & for he is alwei resceuynge vryne & also þe  
vryne fretiþ & þat<sup>t</sup> lett iþ þe souding<sup>t</sup> / For ypocras seiþ / If þe  
bladdre be kutt, or þe brayn, or þe herte, þe wounde is mortal. ¶ If  
8 a leche be sent aftir, for to come to a man þat<sup>t</sup> is woundid in any of  
þese forseid / if þe leche be a man of good loos & a kunnyng<sup>t</sup> man,  
he schal, whanne he comeþ to þe pacient, & seeþ þe perel þerof, he  
schal telle þe perel of þe wounde to þe pacientis frendis, & he schal  
12 sei to þe man þat<sup>t</sup> is hurt þat<sup>t</sup> he schal ascape & fare weel; and  
first he schal make him haue hise riȝtis<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> of holy chirche, & lete  
him make his testament, or þat<sup>t</sup> his vertu faile / þanne he schal  
bigynne wiþ his good worching<sup>e</sup>, riȝt as he took no drede þerof /  
16 for ofte tyme kinde worchip, þat<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> semeþ vnpossible to þe leche,  
& principali if he worche wel. Neþeles þouþ þe leche se goode  
signys bi þe pacient, he schal alwei haue his owne pronosticioun  
as it is aforseid, til þe man be al hool, if he schal ascape / for ofte  
20 tyme whanne þe pacient drawiþ toward þe deef, his passioun wole  
aswage; & also þe contrarie þerof is seen, þouþ þe pacient haue  
greet peyne & þe signes of deef, ȝitt he mai ascape / & þerfore for  
þese perels þat<sup>t</sup> ben aforseid, he mot be war of vndirtakyng<sup>e</sup> & of  
24 biheest<sup>2</sup> // ¶ If a leche be in straunge cuntre, he ne schal bi no maner  
wei take sich a cure. & also he schal forsake alle maner of curis  
þat<sup>t</sup> ben harde to do, & also he schal forsake curis þat<sup>t</sup> ben longe for  
to make ony perfeccioun þerof, & he mote be war þat<sup>t</sup> faire biheste,  
28 ne veyn glorie, ne coueitise ne bigile him not /

Wounds of  
the kidney

and bladder  
are incurable,

as ypocras  
says.

The physician  
shall warn  
the patient's  
friends,  
but cheer the  
patient,

[2 ff. 99]

and advise  
him to  
arrange his  
spiritual and  
temporal  
affairs.

nota.

The phy-  
sician must  
never despair,  
and always  
remember his  
first prog-  
nosis.

He must be  
cautious in  
a foreign  
country.

<sup>3</sup> Of woundis of þe ȝerde & of ballokis, & of þe regioun  
of þe bladdre and anothamia.<sup>4</sup>

- 32 **G**Od almyȝti þat alle þingis knewe tofore þe makyng<sup>t</sup> of þe  
world ouþir of man, he knewe þat<sup>t</sup> a man schulde be maad  
of moist substaunce, as of sperme, in which natural hete schal  
worche.<sup>5</sup> & for to resseyue þe mater of sperme, it is necessarie þat<sup>t</sup>  
Man's gener-  
ative organs.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: primo tamen ipsum faciat confiteri.

<sup>4</sup> Comp. *Vicary's Anatomy*, p. 81.

<sup>5</sup> Compare *Auicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. XX., l. 1., ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 279:  
"Sublimis deus creauit duos testiculos," etc.



a man haue ballokis / He made ballokis as it was necessarie, & ȝaf hem schap & complexioun for to engendre / & he ȝaf a man greet delite for to lie bi a womman, so þat a man schulde not haue abhominacioun þerof, saue a man schal do it with greet will & wiþ greet loue, so þat generacioun miȝte be multiplied wiþ greet delite<sup>1</sup> /

The Yard has ¶ Also god almiȝti schop in a man a ȝerde. & in þe bigynnynge þerof ben cartilaginis & ben maad fast to þe laste boon of þe rigboon, & is maad of nerues, veynes & arteries, & is sumwhat holow, 8 þat he miȝte be fulfillid wiþ spirit. & in þe heed þerof is fleisch þat is felynge, & a skyn þat goiþ ouer & is clepid prepucium. & and Prepuce. þe meuyng of þat skyn<sup>2</sup> & of þe fleisch tofore helpiþ for to putte out þe sperme / þe risynge of a mannes ȝerde comeþ of a mannes 12 herte, & witt of þe brayn, wilnyng, & greet desier; & watri humour comeþ of þe lyuer. & haþ .ij. open holis; & þoruþ þat oon hole goiþ out vryne & comeþ fro þe bladdre, & þoruþ þat opir hole comeþ sperme and comeþ fro þe ballokis. & pese .ij. holis ben 16 good for to knowe / And auicen seiþ: þat þere is þe .iiij. hole, & þoruþ þat hole passiþ a maner of superfluite þat a man felip not, as whanne he halsiþ a womman wiþ hise hondis; saue þis þridde hole is not knowen of a cirurgian<sup>3</sup> //

20

The structure of the Testicles. þe .ij. ballokis ben maad of hard fleisch in þe maner as ben wommans brestis, & þat oon ballok of a man is grettere þan þe toþer & stronger, & to þe ballokis comeþ veynes & arterijs, & makip hem haue lijf & norischinge. & superfluite of good blood & clene 24 comeþ þerto of alle þe lymes, & gaderip togidere in a mannes ballokis, & þere it bicometh whijt & turneþ into sperme, riȝt as blood bicometh

They make sperm of the purest blood. <sup>[4 If. 100, bk.]</sup> 4 mylk in a wommans brestis / And þer ben maad fast wiþ þe ballokis .ij. vessels, & ben brode vpon þe ballokis, & narowe toward 28 þe ȝerde, & ben clepid þe vessels of sperme, & ben clepid of auicenne

The Seed passes along the excretory ducts (Vas deferens).

<sup>1</sup> *De propr. rer.*, Lib. V., Cap. 48, Add. 27,944, fol. 60 b: "For as Constante seiþ, to covenable getynges & gendringe of bestis god haþ ordeyned & i-made covenable membres, in þe whiche he haþ i-sette þe cause & mater of generacioun, þe whiche may not come forþ in dede wiþoute affeccoun of loue. ¶ In þe membres genytal god haþ send such an appetite inseperable, þat eueryche beest schulde be comfortid to multeplie beestis of his owne kynde, and þat is i-doo by schewing of god, lest ȝif þe doynge of generacioun were abhominable, generacioun of best were i-lost." This passage is taken from *Constantinus Afric. De morb. cog. et. cur.*, Lib. VI., Cap. I, ed. Basil, 1536, p. 122.

<sup>3</sup> *Avicenna l. c.*, "Et in virga sunt meatus tres, meatus vrinæ et meatus spermatis et meatus alguadi." *Matth. Syle.*: "Alguedi est humor ille qui egreditur, cum aliquis tangit mulierem."

- barbachi,<sup>1</sup> & of þese vessels cometh sperme into þe 3erde, & þoruþ þe 3erde is born into þe matris of wymmen / In þese .ij. vessels sperme is fulfillid, saue þe hete þerof cometh of þe ballokis; & to þe ballokis as it is aforseid cometh veynes & arterijs, & goiþ þoruþ dindimous, þat ben maad fast to þe siþhac as it is aforseid //
- ¶ Þe maris in a womman is maad neruous & is schape as it were a 3erde þat were turned azenheer.<sup>2</sup> & þe necke of þe maris is fleischi, & brawny, & felynge, & gendring; & in þe necke of þe maris ben veynes þat ben to-broke whanne a womman lesiþ hir maydenhode. & þe botme of þe maris is schape as it were þe case of a mannes ballokis / And þe maris haþ .ij. brode ballokis in þe necke, & wiþ þe ilke .ij. ballokis ben maad fast .ij. vessels of sperme, & ben more schort þan a mannes vessels of sperme / And of þese 3 vessels, a wommans sperme goiþ to þe botme of þe maris / And in þe tyme of conseuyunge þe wommans sperme [is] medlid wiþ a mannes /
- 16 And þe maris of a womman haþ wipinne .ij. grete concautees / And þe maris haþ manie veynes, & þoruþ þe ilke veynes, whanne a womman haþ conseyued, cometh blood to<sup>4</sup> þe lyuer for to norische þe child. And whanne a womman is not wiþ childe, þoruþ þe same veynes cometh blood of þe veynes menstrie & is putt out, & in þis maner a womman is purgid of superfluite of blood; & it is maad fast bitwixe þe grete gutt & þe bladdre, & is hizere þan þe bladdre, & is maad fast to þe rigge wiþ ligaturis, & in tyme of child berynge
- 24 þe ligaturis recchiþ, & aftir þat tyme<sup>5</sup> \* — /
- If þere be woundis in ony of alle þese placis, þei ben stronge perilous for her sutil complexioun, & for her nobilte of worching.
- ¶ If it so be þat a man be hurt in his 3erde or ouerþwert in a litil quantite, þou schalt sewe þe wounde, & sprynge þeron poudre, & leie þerto defensiuis, & lete him blood, & diete him with pinne mete, & cure him wiþ good diligence //
- ¶ If it so be þat a mannes 3erde be kutt al off ouerþwert, þanne it is greet drede þerof / for þe veynes þat cometh þerto & þe arterijs & manie nerues, for sumtyme þe pacient mai be deed, or þe blood mowe be staunchid / Saue

Anicaen  
calls them  
Barbachi.

Female  
generative  
organs.

The Matrix  
has two  
ballocks  
(Ovaries),  
and two  
spermatic  
ducts (Fallopian  
Tubes).  
[<sup>2</sup> If. 101]

The Embryo  
is nourished  
by blood from  
the liver.

Menstruation  
removes  
superfluous  
blood.

Wounds of  
generative  
organs are  
dangerous.

Treatment of  
a wounded  
yard.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 101, bk.]

If the yard is  
cut away,  
death from  
hemorrhage  
may ensue.

<sup>1</sup> *barbachi*, Arab. *bārbak*, 'conduit of water, canal of the urine.'

<sup>2</sup> Galen (ed. Kuehn, vol. IV., p. 635) has originated this curious comparison, which has been copied by the Arab. authors. *Aric.*, Lib. III., Fen. XXI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, Ven. 1527, fol. 285 b: "Matrix est quasi conversum instrumentum virorum."

<sup>4</sup> *to*, mistake for *from*. Lat.: per quas sanguis ei venit ab hepate.

<sup>5</sup> Some words are wanting. Lat.: partusque completo tempore constringatur.



in þis cas þou schalt take hede for to do awei þe akyngþe wip oile of  
 rosis, anoynte him aboute þe ers & þe regioun of þe 3erde, & brenne  
 þe 3erde wip an hoot irn for to constreyne þe flux of blood; for a  
 cauterie streyneþ blood tofore alle þingis. ¶ Woundis þat ben in  
 þe ballokis, þei roten hem anon, & þou3 a man be not in perel of  
 deef þoru3 þe hurtyng of hem, 3itt his generacioun is lore / A  
 wounde in þis place schal be curid in þe same maner as woundis in  
 oþere place of þe bodi, & þe cure schal not be chaungid þerof // ¶ If  
 it so be þat a womman be hurt in her marijs wip a swerd, ouþir wip  
 a knyft, ouþer wip a dart, þe wounde is mortal // ¶ If it bifalle þat  
 colon<sup>1</sup> be hurt wip sum scharp þing, ouþir wip hardnes of luumouris,  
 he may wel be curid þe while þe wounde is freisch, with putting  
 of vnguentum album rasis of ceruse distemprid wip ius of arnog-  
 lossa.<sup>3</sup> & if it so be þat þe wounde of þis place be olde, þanne it  
 is for to make a mundificatif þerto, wip castyngþe yn of gotis whay  
 ouþir watir of barly //

Wounds of  
the Testiclescause Impo-  
tence.Wounds of  
the Matrix  
are mortal.Treatment  
of wounded  
Colon.[<sup>2</sup> If. 102]

16

Of woundis in þe haunche and of þe coxe of þe knee,  
 and of boonis of þe feet and of anothomia.

¶ x. c/  
The Haunch-  
boneshave each a  
box (aceta-  
bulum) which  
contains the  
head of the  
thigh-bone.[<sup>6</sup> If. 102, bk.]The thigh-  
bone

BOnys of haunchis ben maad fast wip þe lattere boon of þe  
 rigboon / & rizt as þe rigboon susteyneþ alle þe boones aboue, 20  
 so alle þe boones bineþe ben maad fast to him / þese boones ben  
 cartilaginous & sutil toward þe fore partie, & bineþe þei ben more  
 greet; & eueri of hem haþ a box þat is clepid paxis haunche &  
 vertebrium sit þeron.<sup>4</sup> & þat is þe eende of þe hipe boon. & wip 24  
 this boon is maad fast þat boon þat goiþ ouerþwert vndir þe ars  
 aboue þe 3erde, & is clepid os pectinis. & as summen seien þere ben  
 iiij. partis, saue in cirurgie it is seid al oon. & þe place of þe con-  
 iuncioun of þese boones is clepid þe scie.<sup>5</sup> & sumtyme þese boones 28  
 goon out of þe ioynt, as þou schalt haue a perfit teching<sup>6</sup> herof in  
 þe .iiij. tretis in þe chapter of dislocacioun / þis hipe boon, as it is

<sup>1</sup> Lat. Se si collo vulnus fieri accideret. Phillips. "Collum Uteri, the Neck of the Womb."

<sup>3</sup> *arnoglossum*. Wr. Wü., p. 559. 27 (XIII. cent.) "*Arnoglosa*, i. plauntein," O.E. *wegbrade*, waybread.

<sup>4</sup> Sloane 2463, fol. 42 b: "þei ben cleped ylia other ossa yliorum, and in þe etter partie of þe mydward of hem ben concauytes other holwenesse, þe whiche ben clepid boystes, in þe whiche þe endes of þe bones of þe þizs ben receyved inne."

<sup>5</sup> *scie*, Med. Lat. *scia*, from *ἰσχίον*, it means the hip-joint. Wr. Wü., 610. 11 (xv. cent.), "*Scia* an<sup>ce</sup> the whyrlebon."



- aforseid, is maad fast<sup>t</sup> aboue wip ligaturis & pannyclis & nerues, & it is a greet<sup>t</sup> boon & miche holow wipinne, & is ful of<sup>t</sup> marow ; & it<sup>t</sup> is hollow and is greet<sup>t</sup>, for it<sup>t</sup> schulde be strong<sup>t</sup>; & it<sup>t</sup> is holow, for it<sup>t</sup> schulde be
- 4 lizt. & pis boon is maad fast<sup>t</sup> in<sup>t</sup> pe knee, & pere pe boon of<sup>t</sup> pe hipe is joined with the leg-bone in the knee. & pe boon of<sup>t</sup> pe leg<sup>t</sup> ben ioyned togidere in a box as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid.
- & pese boones ben bounden togidere wip ligaturis & senewis, & vpon pe ioynt<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> pese boones & for to kepe pis ioynture from harm, is
- 8 ioyned peron a round boon & is clepid rotula, & of<sup>t</sup> summen it<sup>t</sup> is Rotula. clepid pe y3e of<sup>t</sup> pe knee, & alle pese boones ben bounden togidere wip strong<sup>t</sup> ligaturis //
- ¶ Vndir pe round boon of<sup>t</sup> pe knee ben ordeyned .ij. boones in<sup>t</sup> pe leg<sup>t</sup>, & pat<sup>t</sup> oon perof<sup>t</sup> is grettere & sittip tofore in The two bones of the leg
- 12 pe leg<sup>t</sup>, & pe toper is smaller & sittip bihynde in<sup>t</sup> pe leg<sup>t</sup>. & in<sup>t</sup> pe neper partie pei ben maad fast<sup>t</sup> wip pe boon of<sup>t</sup> calcanei pat<sup>t</sup> susteyneþ alle pe boones, & with alkarad,<sup>1</sup> & pat<sup>t</sup> is a boon pat<sup>t</sup> fulfillip articulate with the Calcaneus and Astragalus.
- pe ioynture & is <sup>2</sup>ioyned wip pe boon pat<sup>t</sup> is clepid naucula / [2 lf. 103]
- 16 ¶ Racheta<sup>3</sup> of<sup>t</sup> pe foot<sup>t</sup> is maad of<sup>t</sup> .iiij. boonis, & ben bounden Naucula. togidere wip ligaturis. & wip pese boonys ben maad fast<sup>t</sup> pe bonys The Racheta has four bones articulating with the fourteen Phalanges.
- of<sup>t</sup> pe toos pat<sup>t</sup> ben .xiiij., for eueri boon haþ .iiij. boones, saue pe boon of<sup>t</sup> pe grete too, & pat<sup>t</sup> haþ but .ij. boones / to alle pese boones
- 20 comeþ nerues fro pe riggeboones—& wip pese nerues, & with pese ligaturis, & wip symple fleisch pese boones ben maad fast<sup>t</sup> togidere The nerves confer movement and sensation to the leg.
- & 3eueþ to pese lymes meuyng & felynge. & per ben grette bawnes in a mannes leggis & in hise hipis, & ben ful of<sup>t</sup> grete
- 24 veynes & arterijs & senewis, & ben departid into alle pe leggis & to pe feet<sup>t</sup> / & summe of<sup>t</sup> pese veynes comeþ fro a veyne of<sup>t</sup> pe lyuer, The veins of the lower limbs start from the Vena Ramosa (Vena Cava),
- pat<sup>t</sup> is clepid vena ramosa as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid in armys. & perfore pese placis ben swiþe perilous, whanne pei ben woundid, for pe perels pat<sup>t</sup> which divides into the
- 28 ben aforseid. & pese veynes ben departid in<sup>t</sup> pe foot<sup>t</sup>, & .ij. perof<sup>t</sup> ben in<sup>t</sup> pe holow of<sup>t</sup> pe foot<sup>t</sup> wipoutforþ, & pat<sup>t</sup> oon veyne perof<sup>t</sup> is clepid sciatica, & pat<sup>t</sup> oþere is clepid renalis, <sup>4</sup>& pis is þus miche to Sciatica and the Renalis.
- seie : pat<sup>t</sup> oon veyne serueþ for pe scie, & pat<sup>t</sup> oþer for pe reynes / [4 lf. 103, bk.]
- 32 þanne per ben .ij. oþer veynes in<sup>t</sup> pe holow of<sup>t</sup> pe foot<sup>t</sup> withinne, & pat<sup>t</sup> oon is clepid sophena, & pat<sup>t</sup> oþer is clepid vena ventris, id est a Saphena, Vena ventris.
- veyne of<sup>t</sup> pe wombe. ¶ pe veyne pat<sup>t</sup> is clepid renalis scheweth itsilf bitwixe pe list too & pat<sup>t</sup> oþer too next, & pe blood-letyng
- 36 of<sup>t</sup> pis veyne is good for þus manye þingis : for cancrena pat<sup>t</sup> ben in

<sup>1</sup> alkarad, Lat. alchaab, from Arab. *al kab*, a die.

<sup>3</sup> Racheta, Lat. Rasceta, from Arab. *rusgh*, which means the carpus or the tarsus. The Rasceta pedis is not exactly our tarsus, as it comprises only the three Cuneiform bones and the Cuboid bone.

þe hipis & for a mormal<sup>1</sup>, & for varices & for vlcera þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þe hipis ouþer in þe leggis.

Wounds of  
the lower  
extremity are  
dangerous.

Bi alle þese skillis þou myzt wel se, þat<sup>t</sup> woundis þat<sup>t</sup> be maad in þese placis ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> ben swiþe perilous for þe kutting<sup>t</sup> of nerues<sup>4</sup> & of cordis & braun, & of veynes & of arterijs, for alle þese þingis goiþ endelong<sup>t</sup> þe leggis & þe hipis, & þerfore woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> in þis place ben swiþe perilous as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid //

Treatment  
of such  
wounds.

¶ Woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad in þes placis þat<sup>t</sup> ben curable, schulen be<sup>8</sup> curid in þe same maner as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid in curis of armys & of hondis / Saue of o þing þou schalt<sup>t</sup> take kepe, þat<sup>t</sup> woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad iij. fyngris brede wiþinne þe knee, for þe<sup>2</sup> nobilte of þe place & for þe causis þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid, þe wounde is iugid mortal / þerfor<sup>12</sup> woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þese placis þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid & ben curable þou must do good diligence þerto, & be wel war of woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben mortal as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid //

[2 lf. 104]

¶ The techinge of þe .ij. tretis is fullillid þoruþ þe help of god, 16 & now schal bigynne þe techinge of þe .iiij. tretis & schal conteyne .xviij. chapitris /<sup>3</sup>

the þerd  
book con-  
teynes viij.  
c.<sup>4</sup>

Here bigynneþ þe pridde book.

¶ 10. c° /

Of þe engendryng of heeris //<sup>5</sup>

20

**H**eeris ben engendrid of greet fume & of viscous mater, & þe more hoot þat<sup>t</sup> a man is, þe more heer he schal haue<sup>6</sup> / & þer falliþ manie amementis of heeris.<sup>7</sup> ¶ First we wolen speke for to make heer fair, & aftirward of oþere sijknnessis þat<sup>t</sup> falliþ in placis<sup>24</sup> of heeris.

<sup>1</sup> for a mormal, ad malum mortuum, a severe form of leprosy. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 343.

<sup>3</sup> Inserted by the translator; the number of the chapters is incorrect. Lat. Add. 26,106, f. 44 b: "Incipit tractatus tertius, et erit de curis morborum, qui non sunt vulnera, qui possunt accidere diuersis membris a capite usque ad pedes, que veniunt ad curam cyrurgici, qui continet tres doctrinas et est capitulum primum doctrine prime, tractatus tertii de ornatu capillorum."

<sup>4</sup> The marginal note ought to be: þe firste doctrine of the þerd book conteynes VIII. C.

<sup>5</sup> A list of passages on the same subject from works of Lat. and Arab. authors is given by Adams, *Paulus Aegineta*, vol. I., p. 339 (for "Rhases ad Mansor, VI. 1.", *ibid.*, read "Rhases ad Mansor, V. 1.").

<sup>6</sup> De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "And here is i-bred and comep out of fumozite hoot & arie." Compare *Vicary*, p. 24.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: quibus multa accidunt corrigenda.



¶ If<sup>1</sup> pou wolt<sup>1</sup> make longe heeris, ouper if<sup>1</sup> pou wolt<sup>1</sup> make heeris wexe long, dissolue a litil mustard in water of<sup>1</sup> decoccioun of<sup>1</sup> *bletarum*<sup>1</sup> & waische perwith ofte, & panne anynte with comoun oile.

A wash to make the hair grow long.

4 ¶ If<sup>1</sup> pou wolt<sup>1</sup> make heeris 3elow, pou schalt<sup>1</sup> do in þis maner. R. mirre ʒ iiij., *lupinorum amarorum* 3 vj., <sup>2</sup>flos salicis, fecis vini combusti ana 3 .iiij., grinde hem wel togidere & distempere hem wip lie maad of<sup>1</sup> askis of<sup>1</sup> vinis, & herwith anynte þe heeris aftir þe 8 tyme þat<sup>1</sup> þei ben wel waissche wip þe forseid lye //

An ointment to dye the hair yellow.

R

[<sup>2</sup> If. 104, bk.]

¶ If<sup>1</sup> pou wolt<sup>1</sup> make hem blac<sup>3</sup> R. *stercus irundinum*, & *enulam siccam*, & *orobum*,<sup>4</sup> *semen raphani* & *sulphurus*, & *florem capillaris*<sup>5</sup> succus, grinde alle þese wip a galle of<sup>1</sup> a bole ouper of<sup>1</sup> an oxe & 12 tempere hem wip vinegre, & herwith anynte hise heeris, & first pou schalt<sup>1</sup> fumie<sup>6</sup> hem wip sulphur, & þus pou schalt do ofte. & pou schalt<sup>1</sup> anynte him with oile of<sup>1</sup> sambuci, þat<sup>1</sup> is maad of<sup>1</sup> whit flouris of<sup>1</sup> ellern, & leid in oile rizt<sup>1</sup> as me makip oile of<sup>1</sup> rosis.

R

An ointment to dye the hair white.

16 ¶ If<sup>1</sup> pou wolt<sup>1</sup> kepe þe eendis of<sup>1</sup> þe heeris fro fretynge, kutte hem alle euene & ʒeue þe pacient<sup>1</sup> good mete, & anynte ofte his heed with oile & watir medlid togidere, & anynte herwith ofte / & anynte it<sup>1</sup> with muscillage *seminis lini* & *psillij*<sup>7</sup> //

A treatment to keep the ends of the hair from splitting.

20 ¶ If<sup>1</sup> pou wolt<sup>1</sup> make heeris crisp R. *farinam fenigreci*, & mirre, & *semen raphani gallarum*, *gummi arabici*, *calcis abluti*, & wynde alle þese þingis & frote þe heeris, and þei<sup>8</sup> wolen bicomme crisp.

R

An ointment to make the hair crisp.

[<sup>8</sup> If. 105]

¶ If<sup>1</sup> pou wolt<sup>1</sup> kepe heeris þat<sup>1</sup> þei schulen not<sup>1</sup> falle awei. 24 *ladani*<sup>9</sup> .ʒ j, & resolute it<sup>1</sup> in ʒ iiij of<sup>1</sup> oile of<sup>1</sup> *mirtilles* & herwip anynte þe rootis of<sup>1</sup> þe heeris / ¶ If<sup>1</sup> pou wolt<sup>1</sup> saue heeris fro hoornes so þat<sup>1</sup> þei bicomme not<sup>1</sup> whit, panne it<sup>1</sup> is necessarie for to kepe him fro al maner þingis þat<sup>1</sup> engendriþ fleume, & fro greet<sup>1</sup> 28 studiynge,<sup>10</sup> & fro fisch þat<sup>1</sup> is rotid, & fro roten wijn, & he mote ofte

An ointment to keep the hair from falling off.

R

Feed well in order to prevent the hair from getting gray.

<sup>1</sup> *bleta*, *Alphita*, p. 22, "*Beta major*, uel *bleta* uel *bletis*, *atriplex agrestis* uel *domestica*."

<sup>3</sup> *blac*, O.E. *blác*, *albus*.

<sup>4</sup> *Lat.*: *orobum*, qui appellatur in gallico *uicia*.

<sup>5</sup> *Lat.* *florum cappa*; *capillaris* is a mistake for *cappar*, the caper plant. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *Caper* l.

<sup>6</sup> *fumie*, *Lat.* *suffumigare*. Compare *Maccer. Engl. Translat.*, xvth cent., *Sl.* 2527, f. 251: "*make therof a suffumygacyon*."

<sup>7</sup> *psillie*, *Wr. Wü.*, p. 559. 6 (XIII. cent.), "*psillium*, i. lused." Cooper, "*psyllion*, the herb called fleawort."

<sup>9</sup> *Ladanum*, *Laudanum*, *Labdanum*. "A gumme that runneth from the hearbe *Lada*, and is much used in *Pomanders*."—Cooper.

<sup>10</sup> *fro greet studiynge*, *Lat.* a *fastidio*. The correct explanation is given in *De propr. rer. lib. VII. Cap. 44.* Add. 27.944. fol. 91<sup>b</sup>: "*And fastidium is enskilful abhominacioun & wlatsonnes of mete & drinke and most greueþ þe vertu of fedinge and of norischinge, for as Isidir seiþ, fastidium is i-seide as it were makinge noye & disese, for a man þat hap abhominacioun hap noye and disese in þing þat anothir hap solas in & lykinge*."



R purge fleume with turbit, and vse strong<sup>t</sup> wijn & a litil, & vse sutil sauce, & vse of þese þingis: R. mirabolanorum,<sup>1</sup> kebulorum indorum, emblicorum, & bellicorum<sup>2</sup> ana,<sup>3</sup> & grinde hem alle with oile of almondis longe, & þanne tempere hem vp with wijn & hony, & eueri 4 morowe he schal take þerof þe quantite of a note / And þow schalt die hise heeris if þei ben white, wiþ tincture þat ben forseid //

A hair-dye.

¶ If a man desirij for to haue blac heeris as doiþ greuis<sup>4</sup> & spaynardis, þanne make þis tincture. R foliorum mirti, foliorum 8 papaueris rubij, capilli, ciperi, spice, seminis bletarum, apii, ana 3 j., sepe hem in iiij li of watir, til þei come to o pound, & þanne cole<sup>5</sup> hem & do þerto li. j. of oile of violet<sup>6</sup> & boile hem in a double vessel til al þe watir be waistid away; þanne caste into þe oile 3 fi 12 of acacie, & make aischis of pyne applis, whanne þe kirkels ben taken out þerof, & medle hem alle togidere, & kepe þis oynement. & herwiþ anoynte heeris þat þou wolt make blake.

Of allopucia þat is namys of fisik þat signifief 16  
diuers passiouns /

¶ ije

The falling  
off of the hair  
called Alo-  
pecia is a  
sort of  
Leprosy.

Namys of phisice þat signifief diuers passiouns vnder oon name ofte tyme bigilij a leche, & bringij him into greet errour / For comouzli al maner lesing<sup>t</sup> of heer is clepid allopucia<sup>7</sup>; saue for 20 to seie þe soþe, allopucia is a maner spice<sup>8</sup> of lepre þat comef of rotid fleume / Saue in þis chapitre I wole speke of allopucia þat fallij oonli in þe heed. Allopix in grew, is seid a fox in latin, for a fox in sum tyme of þe 3eer his heer pilij awei, & þerfore falliing<sup>t</sup> 24 awei of heer is clepid allopucia / ¶ Tinea<sup>9</sup> is as miche to seie as a

The disease  
is called

<sup>1</sup> *Mirobolans*, a kind of Plums.—Phillips.

<sup>2</sup> *Chebuli*, *Emblici*, and *Bellirici* are different kinds of Mirabolans. See Tommaseo Diz.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. ana partes equales.

<sup>4</sup> Greeks.

<sup>5</sup> *cole*, Lat. colo, strain through a sieve.

<sup>7</sup> De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "And if suche fumosite failþ nouzt, but is infect or i-lette by som opir humore, þan failinge and lak of heer is nouzt propirliche ballidenes, but a special yuel þat phisicians clepen allopiciam. ¶ By þat yuel þe nurtur of heer is corrupt & failþ, & þe heer falleþ & þe ferþe partye of þe heed is bare, and þe furþer skyn of þe heed is þe foulere. ¶ Soche men faren as foxes, for þe heer of hem fallij happiliche for inmoderat and passinge hete. ¶ Alopes in grew, vulpes in latyn, a fox in englishe."

<sup>8</sup> *spice*, Lat. species. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 355, "a Spyce; species." As to the pleonastic use of *spice*, compare: a maner kynde of sponges (leaf 109).

<sup>9</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid.*, fol. 80: "Also þe heed is ofte disesid wiþ an famuler passioun, þat children haue oft, and by constantin þat yuel hatte squama, skalle, & we clepiþ þat yuel tynea, moppe, for it fretiþ & gnawþ þe ouer partie of þe skyn of þe heed as a moppe fretiþ cloþ & cleueþ þerto wiþoute departinge & holdinge þe skyn wel faste."

reremous, for þe heeris of a reremous ben alwey aboute þe heed, & þerfore cirurgians makip difference bitwixe allopuciam & tineam, for þei clepid tineam þere þat þere is corrupcioun in þe skyn wip harde crustis & quytture / Saue allopucia is whanne þe heeris fallip awei wipoute ony wise of þe skyn.<sup>2</sup>

Tinea when attended by corruption of the skin.

[1 ff. 106]

¶ Allopucia þat is wipoute comeþ of þe skyn,<sup>3</sup> & sumtyme it comeþ in þe eende of a siknes for defaute of norischinge of þe bodi þat schulde helpe to norische þe heeris, oupir it comeþ, for þe poris openeþ to myche / In þis cas it is necessarie for to augmente norischinge of þe bodi wip good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & frote wel þe heeris of his heed wip þin hond & anoynte it wip oile of mirtillorum / If þis suffice not, frote wel þe heeris of his heed with þin hond til þe skyn of his heed bicomereed; & þan frote it wip ryndis of an oynoun til it bicomereed, & þanne þere wole arise þere vpon, as it were, bladdris, & þanne anoynte þe place wip grece of a maulard. & whanne þe heeris wexen azen, lete schauwe hem ofte, for miche schauynge is good þerfore /

Alopecia arises from want of nourishment.

Treatment of this disease.

If it so be þat allopucia comeþ of vijs<sup>4</sup> of humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe teching<sup>5</sup> þat is aforseid in allopucia þat comeþ of long<sup>6</sup> sijknis; for if it come of vijs of humouris, þanne vlcera wole be in þe skyn. þan þou must loke of what humour it come, þat þou miȝt knowe bi disposicioun of al þe bodi & bi þe colour of þe place, as if þe pacient be fleischi & wel colourid, & if þe fleume of his mouþ be swete, & þe pustulis þat ben in his heed be reed, & if his vryne be picke & reed, & if he be zongt, & if he etip metis þat engendriþ miche blood, & if vlcera be in þe skyn, & if al þe skyn be reed & ful of quytture, alle þes ben signys of aboundaunce of blood. If it so be þat his bodi be leene, & þe colour of þe place be rufus ouþer zelow, & vlcere be drie, it is signe þat colre is þe cause / If his bodi be sumwhat whijt, & if he haþ smale veynis, & if he haue miche moisture in his mouþ, & if his vryne be whijt & picke, & if he þirstip not, & if þe place be whijt & neische and miche moisture þeron wipouten ony brennyng, it is a signe of fleume / If þe colour of his bodi be derk ouþer blac, & if he be leene, & if his vryne be pale & þinne, & if he haþ greet appetit, & if his blood be blac, & if he vsip miche for to ete beef & caul, &

The skin is ulcerated, [5 ff. 106, bk.]

if the disease is caused by bad humours.

Signs for telling

whether it is caused by superabundance of blood, by choler,

by phlegm,

[5 ff. 107]

<sup>2</sup> withoute ony wise of þe skyn, Lat. absque cutis vitio apparente; of riis of humouris, Lat. propter humorum malitiam.

<sup>3</sup> Mistranslated from the Lat. alopecia quæ sine cutis est vulnere.

<sup>4</sup> See note 2.



or by melan-  
choly.

opere pingis þat engendriþ malancolie, & if þe place of þe siknes be ledy & hard, þat<sup>1</sup> is a signe of malancoli, saue þis passioun comeþ ful seelde of malancoli, but if it be of greet corrupcioun, & þanne it is worse þan ony oper aforseid /

4

First remove  
the cause of  
the disease.

*Galien.*  
a generale  
rulle off  
galyen.

Whanne þou knowist of what humour it comeþ, first þou must auoide<sup>1</sup> þat humour, for þis is a general rule of .G., for as .G. seiþ / First, þou must do awei þe cause, & I woole teche þee to auoide þe matere with fewe medicyns þat ben approued & ben 8 laxatiuis, profitable, & ben necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe alle þe maner of purgaciouns, for ellis he schal neuere wel worche in sich maner causis / If it sq be þat a man be ful of humours, þou must first bigynne for to lete him blood, if he be strong & in age, 12 þat is, & not to 3ong ne to oold. & þan lete him blood, ouþer garse him, & þan afterward purge him, saue it is bettere to purge him first, & þanne wiþinne a few daies lete him <sup>2</sup>blood / If it so be þat blood be oonli þe cause, þanne it suffisþ ynow for to lete him 16 blood / ¶ If it so be þat þou dissoluest þe water wiþ a laxatif, & if þou letist not him blood tofore ne aftirward, þanne þou art not sure; for ofte tyme þe medicyne laxatif wole engendre a feuer, & principali if it be hoot /

20.

To purge  
coler

R̄

¶ Colre schal be purgid in þis maner / R̄ violarum ʒ j., prunorum ʒ j & ß, sebesten .xv. in noumbre, iuiubas .xx., seþe hem in iij li of water, til þei come to li j, & cole hem, & resoluþ peron cassia fistula<sup>3</sup> ʒ j., thamarindorum, manne ana ʒ ß., & boile hem a 24 litil togidere, & þan cole hem, & aneuen do þer on poudre of mirabolani citrini ʒ. j., & of rubarbe, & amorowe cole hem, saue chaufe it a litil first, & distempere it with ʒ ß of sugre rosarum, & lete him drynke it<sup>4</sup> / ouþer wiþ þese pelottis<sup>5</sup> / R̄ aloes cicotri<sup>6</sup> ʒ. j., 28 mirabolani citrini, rosarum rubearum ana .ʒ ß., scamonie quintam

<sup>1</sup> *auoide*, Lat. *evacuare*. See *N. E. Dict.*, *avoid*, 1.

<sup>3</sup> *cassia fistula*, see *Alphita*, p. 35, and *Adams l. c.*, vol. III., p. 429. It is *Cassia fistula* L., the pudding-pipe tree.

<sup>4</sup> The following prescription is omitted in the text, but written in a different hand at the bottom of lf. 107 bk.: *pro colera R̄ cantaridarum, mane, medulle cassia fistule ana ʒ ß, myrbol, cytri[ni] ʒ ij, boylle in li ß watir, to the halfe put therto ʒ j sugre & ß 3, & drenk yt.*

<sup>5</sup> *pelottis*, Lat. *pillis*, Fr. *pelote*, a little ball. Phillips. "Pellota (in the *Forest Law*) the ball or round fleshy part of a Dog's Foot." *Charta de Foresta*, 1225: in *Annales de Burton. Annales Monast. Inuard*, vol. I., p. 233: "Talis autem sit expeditio [canum] per assiam comitatum, quod tres ortilli abscondantur siue *pelota* de pede anteriori."

<sup>6</sup> *aloes cicotri*, Lat. *sucotri*, for *socotri*, so called from the island Socotra.



- partem .3. j., þat<sup>t</sup> is to seie þe .v. part<sup>t</sup> of 3., & make þerof<sup>t</sup> pelottis  
with sirupo violaceo. & þis is good to ȝeue to a strong<sup>t</sup> man / Also  
þese ben good pelottis for to purge clene colre / R̄ mirabolani R̄  
4 citrini .3. j., scamonie cocte .ḡ ð, masticis<sup>1</sup> grana iij., grinde hem & [1 ff. 108]  
tempere hem vp wip ius of iouis barba,<sup>2</sup> & make þerof<sup>t</sup> pelottis &  
þis ius, but collige on ȝest.<sup>3</sup> ¶ þis þou must wite þat<sup>t</sup> whanne þou  
wolt<sup>t</sup> purge colre, first<sup>t</sup> þou muste make a preparatiȝf<sup>t</sup> tofore with  
8 oxisaera<sup>4</sup> & wip metis þat<sup>t</sup> ben colde & moist<sup>t</sup> & wip reste.  
¶ If<sup>t</sup> þou wolt<sup>t</sup> purge fleume þou schalt<sup>t</sup> to þis medicyne þat<sup>t</sup> To purge  
Maister William of<sup>t</sup> Salerne vside / R̄ turbit<sup>t</sup> albi gummosi .3. j & Flem l. h.  
ḡ j, diaȝinȝiberos .3. ij., & medle hem togidere & make herof<sup>t</sup> a gobet<sup>t</sup>, A prescrip-  
12 & medle þerwip a litil of sirupe of<sup>t</sup> rosis. ¶ It<sup>t</sup> is good forto medle tion of Wil-  
ȝinȝiberos wip turbit<sup>t</sup> for þat<sup>t</sup> wole comforte þe stomac & defie ham of Sa-  
fleumatik humouris, & also it is good for to ete euery dai fastyng<sup>t</sup> lerne  
wipouten ony medlynge of<sup>t</sup> ony laxatif<sup>t</sup> / R̄ ȝinȝiberis albi .3. j., R̄  
16 liquericie rase .3. iij., gariofili cardamoni, nucis muscati, granorum  
paradisi .3. ij., ȝucare albissime .li. ij., & make herof<sup>t</sup> a letuarie not<sup>t</sup>  
to hard soden; oupir wip þese pelottis: pulueris pigre,<sup>5</sup> turbit<sup>t</sup> electi  
ana .3. x, pulpe coloquintide .3. iij & ḡ j, grynde all þese & sarce hem,<sup>6</sup>  
20 & tempere hem vp wip oile of<sup>t</sup> almondis & make þerof<sup>t</sup> pelottis, &  
herof<sup>t</sup> þou myȝt<sup>t</sup> ȝeue at<sup>t</sup> oonys 3. ij. ¶ þe poudre of<sup>t</sup> pigre þat<sup>t</sup> goiþ [7 ff. 103, bk.]  
to þese pelottis is good þouȝ it were bi it-silf.<sup>8</sup> & it<sup>t</sup> is swiþe A powder  
comoun, & Rasis & A. acorden þeron, & hali abbot<sup>t</sup> & serapion<sup>9</sup> / R̄ used by  
24 rosarum rubearum, masticis, xilobalsami, spice, cassie lignie, azari R̄  
ana,<sup>10</sup> aloes þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> be good, double to alle. ¶ If<sup>t</sup> fleume be medlid wip  
R̄

<sup>2</sup> iouis barba, med. L. for Sempervivum tectorum. Add. 15,236, fol. 4 :  
“Iouis barba. semperuiua idem. G. Iubarbe A. siluegrene.”

<sup>3</sup> zest, Lat. et sit dosis una. “Zest, a chip of orange . . . it is also some-  
times taken for a short afternoon sleep or Nap : as to go to one's zest.”—  
Phillips. Zest (chip of orange), Fr. zeste, Lat. schistus—zest (nap), Esp.  
siesta, Lat. sextus.

<sup>4</sup> oxisaera—Oxysaccharum, a Composition of Sugar and Vinegar.—  
Phillips.

<sup>5</sup> pigre, πικρός, ἡ, ὀν, sharp, bitter. Matth. Sylv. : “Pigra Gal. in dina-  
midis .i. amara, quæ amaritudine sua morbos & humores expellunt.”

<sup>6</sup> sarce hem, Lat. cribellentur. Cathol. Angl., p. 318. “a Sarce, colum.”  
Phillips. “Scarce or Sarce, a fine Hair Sieve.” Lat. serica, Ital. sargia,  
Fr. sarge.

<sup>8</sup> be it-silf. The N. E. Dict. s. v. by 4, gives examples for the early  
occurrence of ‘by oneself’ = alone. The first reference for ‘by itself’ is  
quoted by Shaks.

<sup>9</sup> hali abbot & serapion are not named in the Latin text. Hali abbot,  
also called Hali þe abbot, is Ali the son of Abbas, a Persian physician  
(994), the author of ‘al muluki’ = the Royal. See Sprengel II., p. 412.

<sup>10</sup> Lat. ana partes equales.

colre, þanne do [þerto]<sup>1</sup> þe forseid pelottis of turbit, of scamonie .3 ij. & ð, sticados arabici<sup>2</sup> .3 .v, & þanne þou schalt do þerto turbit .3 .v—& it was aforseid .3 x in þe rēscēit tofore—& þese pelottis ben clepid cochium rasis, & þis is þe beste þing þat mai be 4  
 for to purge dyuers humouris þat ben in þe heed / I ne knewe no medicyn laxatif þat is so good, þat is so profitable for to purge ij. humouris þat ben medlid togidere as þis medicyn is / For þere ben opere medicyns as sure as þis, saue þei ben not so myzty. Also 8  
 þere ben opere medicyns more myzty, saue þei ben not so sure.  
 ¶ þou schalt purge malancoli wiþ þis list medicyn þat is ofte zeue /  
 R̃. epithimi .3 j., & boile it in li j. of gotis whey, saue þou schalt boile it but a while, & lete hem stonde so al nyȝt, & a morowe 12  
 chaufe it a litil & cole it, & zeue it to drynke; ouþer make it wiþ a decoccioun of Epithimi Rasis R̃ mirabolanorum indorum .3 x, pollipodij 3 .v, sene 3 vij, turbit 3 iij, sticados .3 x, seþe alle þes in iij li of watir, til it come to j. li., & þanne do þerto epithimi 16  
 3 .x, & lete it boile a litil, & þan sette it adoun fro þe fier; & whanne it is cold cole it & do þerto sugre ro. 3 j., & zeue it to drynke in diluculo / If þou wolt make a medicyn þat is more stronger, zeue first bi iij. houris þese pelottis. R̃ aloes 3 j., salis 20  
 indi 3 ð., agarici .3 ij., ellibori nigri þe .iiij. part of a 3., & make herof pelottis wiþ hony, ouþer make herof a sirup.  
 Whanne þou hast wel purgid þe mater, þanne þou must go to þe cure in þis maner / Loke if frotyngis and list medicyns þat ben 24  
 seid in þe firste bygynyng of þis chapiter suffise in allopucia þat ben not vlcera, saue oonli fallyng awei of heeris. If þe forseid medicyns wolen not serue, þan þou muste make stronger / R̃ spume maris, þat is a maner kynde of sponges,<sup>4</sup> saue it is more sutil & 28  
 more whit, 3 x. baurac<sup>5</sup> .i. <sup>6</sup>nitrum, in þe stide herof we moun do þerto sal gemme, sulphuris, euforbij ana 3 .ij., staphisagrie, cantaridarum ana .3 j, grynde alle þese togidere & make hem wiþ oile, & anoynte herwiþ his heed. ¶ If þou wolt worche more stronglich 32  
 aboute þe place þat þe heeris ben pilid awei, & princpaly if he be a riche man : R̃ olium de ben.<sup>7</sup> .3 j., cantaridarum & kutte awei þe

cochium  
Rasis.

To purge  
melancole  
R̃

[3 lf. 109]

R̃

A stronger  
medicine:  
R̃

After having  
purged, pro-  
ceed to the  
local cure;  
use rubbing  
and mild  
medicines,  
if necessary—  
stronger ones

R̃

[6 lf. 109, bk.]

R̃

For rich peo-  
ple use an  
ointment of  
Cantharides.

<sup>1</sup> Wanting.

<sup>2</sup> *stecados* or *stickadone*, Cassidone or French Lavender. Minshew.—*Stoechas d'Arabie*. Pharmacopœa Gallica.

<sup>4</sup> See page 179, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> *baurac*, Arab. = nitrum.

<sup>7</sup> "*Ben* or *Behn*, the Fruit of a Tree, like the Tamarisk, about the bigness of a Filberd, which the Perfumers bruise to get the Oil out of it, not so sweet smelling of it-self, but proper to receive any sort of Scent."—Philipps.

- hediz perof<sup>1</sup> & þe wyngis ana .3 j., stampe a litil cantarides & leie hem in oile of violet,<sup>1</sup> & sette þe viol<sup>2</sup> vpon soft colis & lete hem boile, & putte in a smal sticke, and alwei meue hem & it wole
- 4 bicomē al into an oynement, & make it haue a sote smel wip musco, & herwip anynte his heed; & þis wole make bladdris arise peron, & it wole make heeris to growe. Saf<sup>3</sup> þou must take hede, þat in medicyns þat ben cantarides ynnē, þei wolen make a greet
- 8 brennyng, and þat brennyng wole be yuel to take awei. & sumtyme it falliþ þat þoruþ þat brennyng comeþ a feuer. First, þou schalt helpe þis caas<sup>3</sup> in þis maner: þou schalt anynte þe place with vnguentum<sup>4</sup> album þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie /
- 12 ¶ Vlcera þat ben in allopucia ouþer tinearum<sup>5</sup> summe ben curable & summe ben incurable; if it be so þat þe substaunce of þe skyn be not to hard, þanne þou schalt traueile pereaboute. Also if þe skyn be hard & calose,<sup>6</sup> þanne it is seid incurable //
- 16 ¶ If þere ben pustulis þat ben hote & ful of blood, & þe skyn be ful of humouris & neische, þanne it is good for to garce þat skyn, & þanne waische al his heed with þat blood hoot, & þanne hile<sup>7</sup> his heed wip caule leuis. & þanne aftirward anynte al his heed wip oile of notis
- 20 ouþer of camomil hoot, til al þe scabbis perof<sup>1</sup> be wel tobroke. & þanne bigynne for to drie with þese drynge medicyns / R<sup>7</sup>, argillam rubeam þat it be neische & clene wipouten grauēl & wipouten stoonys, & distempere it with strong<sup>1</sup> vinegre, & make it as it were
- 24 an oynement, & perwip anynte his heed //
- ¶ Item, argillam partes ij., sulphuris viui, cineres corticis, cucurbite siccos<sup>8</sup> pulpe colloquintide ana partem j., distempere hem with vinegre<sup>9</sup> & anynte
- herwip. þis is good þing<sup>1</sup> perfore & driep swiþe vlcera þat ben
- 28 hoot, & alle pustulas þat ben in þe heed & in þe face; þis driep & soudiþ //
- ¶ If þe matere be corrupt & swiþe hoot & brennyngē, first þou schalt aswage þe heete wip vnguentum album rasis þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & anynte perwip al his heed, &
- 32 þanne leie þerevpon a linnen cloþ wet in þe iuys of stooncrope,<sup>10</sup>

Inflam-  
matory symp-  
toms, such as  
fever,  
to be treated  
with unguen-  
tum album.

[4 ff. 110]

Ulcers accom-  
panying  
Alopecia or  
Tinea are  
sometimes  
incurable.

Treatment, if  
there are  
blood-pus-  
tules, and if  
the skin is full  
of humours.

R<sup>7</sup>

[2 ff. 110, bk.]

Cool with un-  
guentum  
album

and a lotion.

<sup>1</sup> in oile of violet, Lat. in oleo in fiala.

<sup>2</sup> viol, Lat. fiala. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 129, s. v. fialle.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: Primo casu succurre cum unctione . . . in secundo casu ponas egrum in balneo.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: Vlcerosarum autem allopiciarium seu tinearum.

<sup>6</sup> calose, Lat. callosus. The references in *N. E. Dict.* are later.

<sup>7</sup> hile, O.E. helan.

<sup>8</sup> MS. sicceage.

<sup>10</sup> stooncrope, Wright W., 712. 35. "Hec vermicularis, stoncrope." Lat.: crassula minor Add. 15,236, fol. 175 b.: "*Cassula minor* frigid. sic. teste de soriz. stoncrope."



& lete þis lye þeron til al þe brennyng be aweic, & þanne aftir þis  
 anoynte his heed wip oile of violet. & þanne hele his heed wip  
 leuys of bletarum til al þe skyn bicome moist & neische & wipoute  
 brennyng, & þanne drie it vp & soude it wip þingis þat ben afor- 4  
 seid // ¶ Item, if tinea be<sup>1</sup> newe, þou schalt do þerto anoper  
 maner cure / R̄, abrotani agrestis,<sup>2</sup> fumiterre, lappacij acuti,<sup>3</sup> arte-  
 mesie<sup>4</sup> ana .iiij. j. boile alle þese in oile til þei bicome al drie þeron,  
 & wip þis oile anoynte his heed manye daies, & þanne spryng þeron 8 ;  
 poudre of staphisagre & of elleboro ; wip anoynting of þis oile þe  
 matere schal be<sup>5</sup> taken out of þe skyn, & wip frotyng of þis  
 poudre it schal be dried // ¶ If þe mater be fleumatik þat is in þe  
 skyn, & if þere be<sup>6</sup> myche corrupcioun þeron & if þe skyn be 12  
 crusty,<sup>7</sup> þanne waische his heed wip a decoccioun of malowis in  
 watir, & þanne anoynte his heed wip oile of camomille & oile of  
 notis medlid togidere ; & whanne it is anoyntid, hile his heed wip  
 caule lewis, & þus þou schalt do manie daies til þe skyn be more 16  
 scabbid<sup>8</sup> þan it was. & þan frote it wel wip an oynoun til þe skyn  
 bicome hoot & reed, & þan þou schalt waische his heed wip lye  
 maad wip aschis of a vine, & þeron schulen be dissolved wijn-  
 drastis brent.<sup>9</sup> & whanne þou hast waische his heed herwip, þan 20  
 þou schalt anoynte his heed wip þe oynement þat wole pile awei þe  
 heeris / R̄, calcis vif .3 iij., arsenec 3 j., aloes 3 .iij., & make herof  
 a poudre & tempere hem togidere wip seping hoot water, & herwip  
 take awei hise heeris, & þan waische his heed azen wip þe lye þat 24  
 is aforseid til þe matere be wel dried / þan for to make þe heeris  
 10 wexe & for to regendre skyn & soude it, þou schalt anoynte þe  
 place with an oynement þat is maad þus / Take aischis maad of  
 a mannes heer 3 j, fecis of oile, lynseed ana. 3 iij, mirre 3 j & 3, 28  
 staphisagre .3 .ij., euforbij .3 j., make þerof an oynement // ¶ If  
 þe matere come of malancoli, þou must take hede to make þe matere  
 neische and moist wip waisching of a decoccioun of violet & fumi-  
 terre in water, & anoynte it wip oile of violet til þe matere be 32  
 resolued & þe skyn bicome neische, & þe pacient schal ete moist

Treatment of  
Tinea in an  
early stage.

R̄

[2 If. III.]

Treatment, if  
there is much  
phlegmatic  
(liquid) mat-  
ter in the  
skin.

An ointment  
for removing  
the hair.

R̄

Another for  
restoring the  
hair and skin.  
[10 If. III, bk.]  
to mak heres  
grow

R̄

Treatment, if  
the matter is  
melancholic  
(cold and  
dry).

<sup>1</sup> not, erroneously inserted. Lat. Item fit aliter cura tineæ novæ.

<sup>2</sup> abrotani agrestis; Wr. Wü., p. 544. 20, *superwude*. Add. 15,236, f. 14 bk.: "Abrotanum. gallice aueroy. angliee suthernewode." See *Alphita*, p. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 15,236, f. 17 bk.: "*Lapacium acutum. angliee reddoke*."

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 12: "*Artemisia. A. mugwort*."

<sup>6</sup> be, in margin.

<sup>7</sup> crusty, Lat. crustosus.

<sup>8</sup> scabbid, Lat. ulceratus. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 320.

<sup>9</sup> Lat.: in quo dissoluta sit fex vini combusta.

metis, & þou schalt baþe him in swete watir, & þan þou must drie it vp wiþ medicyns þat drien þat ben aforseid /

þis is a medicyn þat is approued of G. & is good for tineam & A general pre-  
scription of  
Galen  
for skin-dis-  
eases.  
4 vlcera þat ben harde in þe heed, & for pustulis þat ben clepid saphati,<sup>1</sup> & for impetiginem & morpheam,<sup>2</sup> & for fallyng<sup>3</sup> awei of heeris, & for al maner scabbe. R̄, gallarum .3 ij., seminis secute R̄  
3 .ij., baurac .3 j. & þe iiij part of [3 i],<sup>3</sup> sulphuris viſ 3 ij. & ſ.,  
8 arsenec rubij, aristologie rotunde ana 3 ij, salis armoniaci, fuliginis, amigdalorum <sup>4</sup>amarum, colloquintide, eris vsti, venarum [4 lf. 112]  
citrinarum, & in stide þerof þou miȝt take lumbricos terrestres brent, litargirij, capparum foliorum, fice sicce,<sup>5</sup> radices canne siccarum, flos  
12 eris, alumnis sicci, rosarum, mirre, aloes, olibani ana 3 ſ., picis liquide, foliorum oliue, vellis vaccini, ana .3 j., grinde hem sutilly & tempere hem wiþ eyssel, & sette hem in þe sunne in a vessel of glas, ouper in a vessel of erþe glasið<sup>6</sup> wiþinne, & mene hem wel in þe  
16 sunne, til it bicomē al an oynement, & herwiþ anynte his heed, til it be perfitly hool, saue þou muste take kepe of þingis þat ben aforseid þat þe humouris be purgid /

### Of þe fallynge of heeris //

20 **C**Aluiciem is a fallyng<sup>7</sup> away of a mannis heeris tofore, & is as 7  
miche to seie as ballid. & oon cause herof [is]<sup>8</sup> kindly as Baldness is  
caused by  
old age,  
whanne a man is oold for to be ballid, & oon þerof is vnkyndly, as whanne a mannis heeris falliþ awei for sijknes as it is aforseid & by sicknes,  
24 remedijs þerfore in þe nexte chapiter here tofore. & if þis cause come for elde þanne it is incurable // ¶ Also ballidnesse <sup>9</sup>comeþ of [4 lf. 112, bk.]  
humouris rotid þat ben vndir þe skyn as it is in allopucia & tineam, by a cor-  
ruption of the  
humours.  
& þe cure herof is bi avoidyng<sup>10</sup> of humouris as it is aforseid.<sup>10</sup> ¶ þe

<sup>1</sup> *Saphati*, Hebr. Sapathath.—Philipps. "Saphatum, a dry Scurf in the head."

<sup>2</sup> *morphea*, a skin-disease. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 243, s. v. Morfew.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 46 b.: et quartam partem 3 i<sup>ma</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> *fice sicce*, Lat. fisti sicce. Halle Table, p. 87: "Fistakia so named bothe in Greeke and Latine, and vulgarly Fistici, are the frutes of a tree." Fisti-nut, from fistick-nut.

<sup>6</sup> *glasið*, vitreatus.

<sup>7</sup> This paragraph is omitted in the printed editions of Lanfranc's Surgery and in Add. 26,106. It is preserved in Roy. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32, where it forms part of cap. II, but with a separate heading. The translator took it for cap. III, but did not alter the following chapter-numbers. <sup>8</sup> is, wanting.

<sup>10</sup> De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 66, Add. 27,944, fol. 67: "*Ballidnes is prinacioun and defeaute of heer, and comeþ of defeaute of moist fumosite in þe formere partye of þe heed; so seiþ constantyn. . . Ofte þe heer of men*



cause whi þat makip a man ballid ben þese / as whanne þe skyn  
 reechip along, & if his bodi be drie & pinne & his skyn hoot, þan  
 R7 þou must do þis cure / Take olium mirtinum & olium de mastice  
 ouper olium ladani, & anointe þerwith his heed. & if þe tyme of 4  
 þe ȝeer be coold, þou muste anointe him wiþ olium de spica //

Treatment, if  
 the patient is  
 young,  
 if the skin is  
 tender.

¶ Whanne a mannes heeris fallip awei so in vnkyndeli tyme, as þe  
 while he is ȝong, þan make him a baþ & anoynte him wiþ camo-  
 mille & wiþ bittir<sup>1</sup> almondis & wiþ oile maad þerof // If a man 8  
 bicome ballid for cause þat his skyn is to neische, þese ben þe  
 signys þerof as whanne a man haþ fewe heeris & sotil / þanne take  
 olium mirtinum & olium mastice wiþ oilio laurino, & herwith anointe  
 his heed, whanne hise heeris ben schauen awei // ¶ Item, take 12  
 capilli veneris, ladani ana, grinde hem & medle hem with wijn &  
 [2 lf. 118] with olio mirtino / If a mannes heed be waischen <sup>2</sup>herwiþ, it wole  
 make hise heeris longe & make hem sitte faste / Also take water  
 þat bletis ben soden yn & a litil mustard, & þerwiþ waische hise 16  
 heeris & after anointe him wiþ oile // ¶ Also to make heeris þat þe  
 falle not / take leuys of mirte & sette hem in water til þe watir  
 þerof bicome al troublly þan take li .j of þe water & olium infantini  
 or of oile þat is vnripe & medle hem togidere. & þan seþe hem til 20  
 þe water waaste awei, & þanne caste þerto canel & ladanum grounden  
 & resolved in wijn, & make herof an oynement & anointe herwiþ þe  
 rotis of þe heeris /

An ointment  
 for preserv-  
 ing the hair  
 from falling  
 off.

Of litil pustulis þat wexip in a mannes face or in 24  
 children hedis /<sup>3</sup>

¶ iij<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup> / Saphati ben litil pustule þat wexip in a mannes heed & in  
 Saphati, a  
 scab on the  
 head and face.  
 also in mennys facis þat ben moist, & makip sumtyme crustis / For 28  
 Treatment of  
 Galien.

to cure þis passioun, here þou schalt haue a good medicyn of .G.  
 þat is aforseid of aischis of cucurbite & argilla // ¶ Children moun  
 be holpen þerof if her norice absteyne hir fro salt metis & scharpe  
 & fro strong<sup>4</sup> wijn, & þe child schal be bapid in a decoccioun of 32

þat ofte seruen venus fallip and bredip ballidnes litil & litil. . . And if a  
 man is withoute hed-her, he is i-holde þe more vn honest."

<sup>1</sup> MS. butir. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32 bk.: cum amigdalīs amarīs.

<sup>3</sup> Lat., Add. 26,106, fol. 47: "pustule parue que nascuntur in capite fronte et facie puerorum."

<sup>4</sup> Gul. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 2, Sl. 6, fol. 55 b.: "This seknesse is not bred but in children, when þei souken, and it ys clepid a crost, and it ys mad in hem in þe forhed and in þe hede. . . The cure of it ys þat euery



camomile <sup>1</sup> & rosis & fenigreci, & þou schalt anointe þe place wiþ <sup>[<sup>1</sup> lf. 113, bk.]</sup>  
 oile of camomille hoot // ¶ Furfurea ben a maner of squamis .i. <sup>Furfures</sup>  
 schellis þat comeþ of brennyng þat is in þe skyn; if þei be frotid <sup>(dandriff).</sup>  
 4 wel wiþ a manys nailis, þei wolen falle awei, & sumtyme þei ben liȝt  
 & wolen falle awei wiþ þe heeris, whanne þei ben schauē & wiþ  
 waischingis of hoot water / If þis suffise not þerfore, anynte his <sup>Ointment.</sup>  
 heed with an oynement maad of farina ciceris & þe seed of malowe  
 8 uisci temperid with vinegre / If it be not remeued herwiþ, anynte  
 him wiþ þis oynement // Take farine ciceris .ȝ. iij, farine fenigreci, <sup>Ry</sup>  
 sulphuris viui, nitri croci,<sup>2</sup> sinapis ana .ȝ. .iiij., tempere hem wiþ  
 vinegre and watir /

## 12 Of cloop<sup>3</sup> þat is clepid fraclis or goute roset.

**P**Annus is a superfluite þat falliþ in a wommans face, & comeþ <sup>iiij. 00.</sup>  
 ofte in childberyng, & also whanne hir menstrue is wiþholde,  
 & is as it were a maner ledi<sup>4</sup> colour or purpur, & sumtyme it is  
 16 medlid myche wiþ blak, & it comeþ alwei of malancolious matere.  
 & þou schalt first purge þe matere with a decoccioun of epithimi &  
 gotis whey, & þou schalt make þat <sup>he</sup> leue metis þat engendriþ  
 malancoly, & þanne take seed of raphani in a newe lynnen cloop,  
 20 bittir almoundis, mele of benis, seed of melonum & curcubite,  
 stampe hem alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ water & dissolue a litil  
 safron & hony & make þerof an oynement, & herwiþ þou schalt <sup>an ointment,</sup>  
 anynte hir face at euen late, & amorowe þou schalt waische hir  
 24 face with a colature of bran // ¶ If it so be þat þis passioun be  
 oold, þanne þow schalt make a stronger oynement wiþ þe same  
 oynement, & do þerto eruca þe seed þerof, & argentum viuū  
 slayn<sup>6</sup> wiþ spotil, & pepir & mirre,<sup>7</sup> & tempere hem wiþ oximel, &  
 28 sumtyme it is nede to sette vpon þe place watir lechis. & after <sup>and leeches.</sup>  
 þat anynte it wiþ þe poudre of catapucie<sup>8</sup> & staphisagre temperid

day þe place most be anointed with oyle of camomille hoot. And þe noryse  
 absteyne hyre fro flesches, and fro chese, and fro sharp metis."

<sup>2</sup> croci, for crossi.

<sup>3</sup> cloop, translated from Pannus. Lat.: De pannis, cossis et gutta rosacea  
 et de lentiginibus et cicatricibus vulnerum.

<sup>4</sup> ledi, from "lead." Lat. lividus.

<sup>6</sup> slay, Lat. extinguerē, precipitate. Comp. H. G. Niederschlag.

<sup>7</sup> mirre, mistaken from Lat. nitro.

<sup>8</sup> catapucie. Add. 15,236, fol. 74 bk.: "Catapucia, semen spurge, cata-  
 puste, spurge sed." The original meaning "a medicinal preparation" is  
 shown in Aelfr. Gloss.: "Catapodia, a swylfende drenc." Compare N. E. D.  
 s. v. catapuce.

- Auicen.** with hony // ¶ Also a medicyn of A. for þis passioun / Take argenti  
**R̃** viui .5 j. g̃m amigdalarum 3 ij. medle hem togidere & stampe hem  
**vnguntum** til þou se noþing<sup>1</sup> of þe quik siluer, & do þerto seed of melonis  
**amegdala-** maad clene .3 iij., stampe alle þese togidere & anoynte herwip hir 4  
**rum.** face aneue & amorowe ; waische hir face wip watir <sup>1</sup>þat violet hap  
 [1 lf. 114, bk.] leye þeron / Lentigines<sup>2</sup> ben purgid wip a strong<sup>1</sup> purgacioun & wip  
 a strong<sup>1</sup> medicyn þat ben forseid for pannum //
- Cossi** are small pus-  
 tules on the  
 face.  
**dubium**  
**R̃** ¶ Cossi<sup>3</sup> ben litil pustulis & harde þat ben engendrid in þe face, 8  
 & principali aboute þe [nose],<sup>4</sup> & þei makip þe place reed, & þefore  
 þis medicyn is good. R̃, sulphuris viui .3 j, & make it to sutil  
 poudre, & leie it in a pound of watir of ro. in a glasen vessel, &  
 stoppe wel the mouþ þerof, & hange it in þe sunne in þe monþe of 12  
 Iulij & august bi xv. daies, & euery dai þou schalt meue þe vessel, &  
 with þis watir þou schalt anoynte his face þere þat þe passioun is //
- Gutta rosacea**  
 changes the  
 colour of a  
 man's face.  
 ¶ Gutta rosacea,<sup>5</sup> þat is a passioun þat turneþ þe skyn of a  
 mannys face out of his propr colour & makip þe face reed. & þis 16  
 passioun comeþ of humouris brent & abidiþ in þe skyn, & herfore  
 is a good purgacioun þat purgip salt humouris. & þis is þe medicyn /  
 R̃, litargiri, auripigmenti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris ana<sup>6</sup> & poudre of  
 litil meis<sup>7</sup> brent, & of þis poudre half so miche as of alle þe opere. 20  
 [5 lf. 115] & þis schal be poudrid wip .ij. partis of trifolij<sup>8</sup> & þe .iiij. part of  
 swynys grese freisch, & make of alle þese an oynement. & on euen  
 anoynte herwip his face, & amorowe waische his face wip a decoc-  
 cioun of semina frigidorum<sup>9</sup> & wip a litil campher, & þan make his 24  
 face clene, & þan anoynte his face wip olio tartarino,<sup>10</sup> & al þe

<sup>2</sup> "Lentigo, a Pimple, or Freckle; a small red Spot in the Face, or other Part, resembling a Lentil."—Phillips.

<sup>3</sup> Gulielm. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 63, Sl. 277, fol. 12, mentions as skin-diseases: þe ampte, þe teter and þe ryngworm. Dunglison identifies the ringworm with cossi, deriving it from Lat. cossis, or cossus, m., a worm that breeds in wood. The description given by Gul. de Sal. differs entirely from Lanfranc's description of cossi.

<sup>4</sup> nose, omitted in MS., but space left free. Dubium in margin refers to it. Lat. circa nasum.

<sup>5</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 65, Add. 27,944, fol. 100 b.: "And nurphea is al in þe skynne, & lepra in þe fleische & in þe skynne; þis infectionn is but litil diuers from infeccioun þat hatte gutta rosea, þat infectip þe face wip smale pymples, and comeþ of a gleymy & a MS. & bloody & colerik humours, þat ben bytrene felle and fleische." Sl. 563, fol. 17 b.: "þo rose goute." Gutta rosacea vel rosea, Rosy Drop or Wheelk. (Dunglison.)

<sup>6</sup> The dose is omitted, so it is in Add. 16,106, fol. 47 b. Prints: unc. 1.

<sup>7</sup> meis, "mice." Lat. pulveris parvorum suricum. meis is probably an error for miis.

<sup>9</sup> MS. fin.

<sup>10</sup> The translator has omitted the prescription of oleum tartarinum, given



remenaunt<sup>t</sup> herof<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do of þis cure & fulfille wiþ medicyns  
as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid / ad pannum /

¶ Cicatrices vulnorum ben remeued wiþ litargirum nutricum, &  
4 is good for manie maner þingis, for it<sup>t</sup> doip awei wennys, and it<sup>t</sup> doip  
awei scharpnys of þe browis & gendriþ good fleisch in woundis &  
fretiþ awei wickid fleisch, & is maad in þis maner / Take litarge &  
grinde it<sup>t</sup> sotilli in a morter & caste þerto a litil vinegre & þanno  
8 a litil oile of ro., & þus þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do til it<sup>t</sup> come to a perfit<sup>t</sup>  
oynement<sup>t</sup> /<sup>1</sup>

To remove  
the scars of  
wounds.

Ry

### Of icchinge & smertynge<sup>2</sup> and scabbe.

¶ Capo. vo.  
pruritus

12 I Cchinge & scabbe comeþ of salt<sup>t</sup> humouris, & a mannys kynde  
hap abhominacioun þerof<sup>t</sup>, & putteþ<sup>3</sup> hem out of þe skyn,<sup>4</sup> &  
þis falliþ ofte of salt<sup>t</sup> metis & scharpe metis & of <sup>5</sup>wijn þat<sup>t</sup>  
is strong<sup>t</sup>; & it<sup>t</sup> falliþ ofte to hem þat<sup>t</sup> wakip & traueiliþ &  
vsiþ no baping<sup>t</sup> & weriþ no lynnyn cloþis, & þis is oon of þe  
16 siknes þat<sup>t</sup> is contagious, for o man mai take it<sup>t</sup> of anoþer / þis maner  
sijknesse comeþ sumtyme of blood, sumtyme of fleume, sumtyme of  
colre, sumtyme of malancolie / Also scabbe, sum is drie & summe  
is wet / If it<sup>t</sup> be drie, it<sup>t</sup> schal propirli be clepid icche / And if it be  
20 moist, it<sup>t</sup> schal be clepid scabbe / To þe cure herof<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> avoide  
salt<sup>t</sup> fleume, þou schalt<sup>t</sup> defie þe matere wiþ þis sirup / Ry, abstinthij,

Itch and  
scabs arise  
from acid  
humours,  
[<sup>3</sup> lf. 115, bk.]  
and are  
caused by  
salt meat,  
strong wine,  
and filth.

They are  
contagious.

Dry scab is  
called itch.  
Treatment of  
scabs.  
R

in the Lat. Original. It is written by a later hand on the margin of lf. 114,  
bk.: "oylle off tarter. R, tarter off whyt wyn made in powder temperd wt  
venygre as past, bynde yt in a clothe & put yt under embers, to yt be nelle  
brent; þan put yt in a ston pot with an halle benethe. & þis ys oylle off  
tarter."

Two prescriptions, which are not in the Lat. Original, are added on the  
same place:

"aqua pro guta rosacha: R, lytargiri. argenty vini ana ʒ iiij, acety alby  
li. i, boyll yt to conschoun<sup>6</sup> in an erthen veselle, let stande & clere & keep yt."

"R. salt ar. 3 i, saltpeter 3 i, salt comun 3 i, clere water ʒ iiij, mixte  
togeder with y<sup>7</sup> seate part off a 3 off camffer, let colle, put thes ij waters  
togeder."

<sup>1</sup> The following prescription, translated from the Lat. Original, is written  
by a later hand on the margin of leaf 115: "Item gos gres & dow & diaculum,  
alle sycatryues it rectifyes."

<sup>2</sup> smertyng, Lat. pruritus.—Prurigo, emertung, Wr. W., 114. 3.—emertung,  
is probably a mistake for smertung, to O.E. smeortan. <sup>3</sup> MS. putte.

<sup>4</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 62, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "Schabbe is  
corrupcioun of þe skynne, & comeþ of corrupt humours þat bep bytvene felle  
and fleissche, & hurtip & greueþ & defouliþ þe body. For as Constantine  
seip, kynde puttip out eucl humours to þe vtir parties of þe body to cleuse  
and to purge þe inner parties."

<sup>6</sup> consumption.



abrotani, cuscute, fumus terre, ana m .j., & take xx. damascenes & xij. figis, & vj. datis, sene 3 j, thimi, epithimi 3 ß., seþe hem wel in li iij of water & li j. of vinegre til þei come to li j. & di. cole hem & do þerto iuys of fumi terre & sugur li .j. & ß, & make þerof 4 a sirup & herwiþ defie þe matere / & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ þese pelottes, R, aloes optimi, cortices mirabolani, citrini, ana .3 j stampe hem & tempere hem with iuys maad of fumi terre, til þei be picke as it were hony, & lete it drie til þer mai be maad gobetis 8 þerof & maad þerof pelottis, & herof þou schalt zeue þe <sup>1</sup>weizte of ij. 3. at oonys, & þis medicyne mai be rehersed ofte. ¶ Also blood leting<sup>2</sup> is good þerfore, if oþere particlis acordiþ þerfore // ¶ Also gotis whey is good þerfore, in which be leid mirabolani wiþ sugre, & ofte 12 take, for þat clensiþ miche, & is maad in þis maner / In li .j of gotis whey leie 3 j. of mirabolani citrini powdrid an eue, on þe morowe heete hem & cole hem & do þerto 3 j of sugre ro. // ¶ If it be drie scabbe, hoot watir is good for to baþe him ynne, in which is soden 16 fumi terre & enula, lappacij acuti, & in þe baþ anynte him with oile of ro. & iuys of ache & vinegre, & herwith his bodi schal be wel frotid in þe baþ ouþer in a stewe // ¶ Also an oyment þat rasis made for þe scabbe þat is drie / R salis communis, salis gemme, 20 ellebori, nigri costi, 3 .j., picis liquide 3 vj., olum violarum & aceti, & herof make an oynement / & anynte herwiþ in his stewe & frote him wel, & aftir lete him be þerinne by an hour, & aftir baþe him in a decoccioun of bran & lappacij acuti, enule campane<sup>2</sup> & arthe- 24 misie // ¶ If þe scabbe be moist / þan make an oynement of rasis / R, argenti viui extincti, <sup>3</sup> & in þis maner þou schalt sle<sup>4</sup> it: leie it in a peuter disch & spete þeron, & frote it wiþ mannes heeris, & do þerto: whit litarge, elleborum nigrum, alumen<sup>5</sup> vetus, oleandrum ana, 28 grynde alle þese togidere & tempere hem with vinegre,<sup>6</sup> & herwiþ al his bodi schal be anyntid at euen, & at morowe he schal be stewid,<sup>7</sup> and whanne he swetiþ his bodi schal be frotid wiþ vinegre // ¶ Also

Treatment of dry scab.

An ointment made by Rasis.

R

de scabi humida.

R

[f. 116, bk.]

eleborus nygr.

<sup>2</sup> MS. compare.

<sup>4</sup> sle = slay. See p. 189, Note 6.

<sup>5</sup> alumen, on margin.

<sup>6</sup> The following passage omitted by the translator is written on the bottom of f. 116, bk., by a later hand: "*¶ olio communi miscantur de quo totum corpus unguatur in cero, mane intret stupyam et cum sudaueret ffricet corpus cum usne et aceto. vsne i. mosse off the oke.*"

usne, Arab ouchna. See *Littre-Devic*.—"Usnea, a kind of green Moss which grows upon Humane Skulls that have been lying in the open Air for some years, and which is used in Physick."—Phillips.

<sup>7</sup> he schal be stewid, Lat. intret stupham. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, s. v. stew.

azen scabbe & icching<sup>t</sup>, first lete þe pacient blood, & make him þis  
 oynement / R̄, sulphuris viui & t̄m<sup>1</sup> de sale & tartaro, grinde hem R  
 wel togidere til it bicomē in þe maner of an oynement, & wiþ þis  
 4 oynement anoynte þe pacient, & þis wole delyuere him fro icching<sup>t</sup> //  
 ¶ Also if þe pacient haue greet brennyng<sup>t</sup> & greet icching<sup>t</sup>, þanne  
 anoynte al his bodi wiþ oile of ro. þat ben good, & lete him reste  
 so .vij. daies //  
 ¶ Also for þe same cause / R̄ succus affodillorum & R  
 8 distempere it wiþ whit hony & anoynte him herwith, whanne he  
 goiþ out of his stewe; for þis oynement doiþ away filþe of þe skyn  
 and clensip myche /

Of morphue<sup>2</sup> and impetigine<sup>3</sup> //

- 12 <sup>4</sup> **N**OW we han medycyns drawen of .ij. wellis & of manie [41f. 117]  
 maistris, þat is to wite: of Salerne, & of Costantyn, & ¶ vj<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup>  
 Platearij, & of Iohannes de sancto Paulo & of opere manie auctouris, The school of  
 as of Ipocras, Galien, & Serapion, & Isaac, & Iohanne[s] Mesue, and the Arab  
 16 Auicen / Hali þe abbot, & Rasis, & of opere manie auctouris / Alle physicians  
 þese auctouris speciali ȝeue it us, saue þei acorden not in names / differ as to  
 5 Forwhi impetigo, serpigo & morphea ben seid in salerne diuers the names of  
 names, for þat men of salerne clepen albam & arabes clepen im- the diseases.  
 20 petigo morphea / & men of salerne clepen morpheam / men in  
 arabie clepen it albarec /<sup>5</sup> & þerfore I wole in þis book teche þe

<sup>1</sup> MS. t̄m, tantum. This prescription is neither in the prints nor in Add. 26,106, but preserved in Roy. MS. 12 C XIV, fol. 33 b.

<sup>2</sup> *morphue*. See p. 187, Note 2. N.E. morpew, Med. L. morphea, Fr. morphée, Ital. morfea, is probably the Latinized form of an Arab. past part. marfu, connected with marf, 'thin.' See *Lane Lex.*, p. 1132.

The derivation given by Tommas: *μορφή*, is unsatisfactory. Phillips: "Morpew, a kind of white Scurf upon the Body, from the French Word *Mort-feu*, i. e. dead Fire; because it looks like the white Sparks that fall from a Brand extinguished."

<sup>3</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 63, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "And þis eucl hatte impetigo, for it lettij and greueþ þe skyn and þe fleisch, namliche with tiklinge and icchingē. Also þis eucl hatte serpigo, as it were a crepinge eucl, for it crepiþ into þe skynne al aboute as it were a serpent opir an addre, & infectiþ þe skynne and defouleþ it wiþ smale skales astir cracchingē and clawinge."

Lib. VII., cap. 65, fol. 100: "*Morphea* is speckes in þe skynne, and comēþ of corrupcioun of mete and drinke, and what is lepre in þe fleische is morphea in þe skynne. Also som morphea is white & comēþ of fleume, & som is blak & comēþ of malencolia, & som is red & comēþ of colera opir of blood."

<sup>5-5</sup> The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam serpigo, impetigo, morphea sumuntur aliter apud salernitanos aliter apud arabes. Quod enim salernitani vocant SURGERY. O

Serpigo is an acidity of the skin.

Treatment:

[1 ff. 117, bk.]

R

Impetigo, a disease, where the skin gets white.

Morphea, a kind of leprosy confined to the skin.

Albaras.

Nota

[7 ff. 118]

Albaras is a local disease of the flesh and the skin.

difference of euery of hem, & after þat þe curis of hem / & I seie þat serpigo is a scharpnys of a mannes skyn, & it is clepid serpigo, for it passij fro place to place. þou schalt cure it wiþ gumme of cheritrees distemperid wiþ vinegre, ouþer gumme of 4 pluntre & anynte wiþ buttir & turbentyne. & þis oynement is good þerfore / Take gres <sup>1</sup> of a doke clene purid, ysopi humide, olium ro., zelow wex, terbentyne, mussilaginis seminis citoniorum<sup>2</sup> ana, make of alle þese an oynement, & anynte him þerwith amowowe, 8 & þanne waische him in watir þat þer hæþ leie þeron semen melonum & violet. & be he ofte bapid wiþ sich swete water. & good swete mete is good for hem þat engendrij good humouris //

¶ Impetigo is anoþer maner passioun, as whanne a mannys 12 skyn chaungij in oþer colour þan it schulde, & propirli into whit colour & wiþouten ony harmyng of þe skyn. & þer is no þing þeron þat harmeþ a man, saue onoly þe colour of þe skyn chaungij oþir þan it schulde be // <sup>3</sup> 16

¶ Morphea is a passioun þat þe skyn is out of his propir colour & þe skyn is harmed þerbi. & morphea is a spice of lepre þat sitt in þe skyn; for riȝt as lepre sittij in þe fleisch, in þe same maner riȝt so morphea sittij in þe skyn. <sup>4</sup> 20

¶ Albaras.<sup>5</sup> Not onoly þe skyn, saue þe fleisch is harmed þerbi / þis is þe difference of albaras & morphea / In morphea þe vertu of expulcion<sup>6</sup> is strong / & þe mater <sup>7</sup> þerof is but litil, & þerfore it is al putt into þe skyn / In albaras þe vertu of expulcion is but feble & 24 þe matere is corrupt, & þerfor it is boþe in þe fleisch & in þe skyn, & þer is but litil difference bitwixe albaras & lepre, saue albaras abidiþ alwei in oon place, & lepre goiþ into al þe bodi / In boþe þese causis it is nede for to awoide humouris þat ben in þe cause<sup>8</sup>, 28

serpiginem, arabes vocant alunda. Et impetigo apud arabes est morphea, et apud salernitanos aliter et aliter apud nos. Quod autem Salernitani vocant morpheam, arabes vocant albaras.

<sup>2</sup> *Citonia* = *Cydonia*, quince.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. Add. 16,106, fol. 48 bk. : et non peccat ibi nisi color.

<sup>4</sup> Not in the Lat. Origin.

<sup>5</sup> *Albaras*, Arab. al-baras, leprosy. Compare *Avicenna*, lib. 4, fen. 7, tract. 3, cap. 9, and ff.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *expulsif*. Lat. : virtus expulsiva.

<sup>8</sup> *humouris* þat ben in þe cause. Lat. : Conveniunt in hoc quod omnis humoris indigent euacuatione peccantis. *N. E. Dict.* s. v. cause, q. b. gives references for *to be in cause* : to be to blame.—*Littre Dict.* (14th cent.) ils en sont en cause.—Dufr. gives several references for *in causa esse* : to be ill, from *Causa*, morbus.



- saue þat' oon mote haue stronger medicyns þan þat' oper. ¶ Impe- Treatment of Impetigo.  
 tigo muste haue abstynence fro þingis þat' engendriþ fleume, & he  
 muste haue a purgacioun for to purge fleume / Anoynte þe place Purge and use an ointment.  
 4 wip oile of whete þat' is maad in þis maner / Take whete & leie R  
 bitwixe two platis of iren hoot' / & presse hem togidere & þerof  
 wole bicom e oile // ¶ Also in anoþer maner / Take .ij. vessels of R  
 erþe, so þat' þe moup of þe oon vessel go to þe moup of þe toþer Oil of wheat obtained by distillation.  
 8 vessel, & þat' oon vessel schal stonde in þe erþe, & in þe vessel  
 aboue þou schalt do þi whete, & þou schalt stoppe þe moup of þe  
 vessel þat' is aboue þat' þe whete is ynne with a plate of bras ouþer  
 of iren þat' is bettere, <sup>1</sup> & þe plate schal be ful of smale holis. & [<sup>1</sup> ff. 118, bk.]  
 12 þan þe moup of þis pott' schal be ioyned to þe moup of þe pott' þat'  
 is in þe erþe with good lute, þat' þere mowe noon eir out þerof. &  
 þan make a fier aboute þe pott' þat' is aboue þe erþe, & þere wole  
 distille oile into þe pott' þat' is bineþe in þe erþe, & wip þis oile þou  
 16 schalt anoynte þe place ofte, & frote harde. & if þis suffise not,  
 þanne þou schalt sette vpon þe place watir lechis ofte, for to do  
 away þe fleumatik blood / If þis suffise not, leie þervpon a mun-  
 dificatif of cantarides stampid wip whete, til þe place schyne<sup>2</sup>, &  
 20 þan cure it vp wip an oynment of ceruce / Frote him wip an oyn-  
 ment maad of armoniac & with þe sournes of citri, & nitro is  
 good þerfore //

- ¶ þe white morphu is curid wip purgacioun þat' purgiþ roten Treatment of the whyt Morphea.  
 24 fleume, & wip þis special medicyn / R̄, trifere minorum .3. .iiij.,  
 turbit, pulueris pigre .3. .ij., colloquintide .3. .ij., make herof pelottis R  
 wip hony, & he schal take þerof .iiij. pelottis euery wike, & eueri  
 dai bitwixe he schal take .3. .ij. of trifere minorum, & he mote  
 28 absteine him fro metis þat' engendriþ <sup>3</sup> fleume; & þe place schal be [<sup>3</sup> ff. 119]  
 frotid in þe sunne wip an oynment of tapsia, & þe seed of raphani,  
 rubie maioris / elleboro nigro & mustard, & distempere hem wip  
 vinegre / Also froting' wip squillis is good þerfore //  
 32 ¶ þe blac morphe is curid wip ofte purging' of malancoli, wip Treatment of the black morphea.  
 gotis whei, & wip epithimo, & opere medicyns þat' purgiþ malan-  
 colie, þat' be forseid in allopucia; & his dietyng' schal be moist, &  
 he schal absteine him fro metis þat' engendriþ malancolie, & he  
 36 schal be bapid ofte in swete watir, & he schal be anoyntid & frotid  
 as it is aforseid //

¶ Albaras þat' is whit is curid wip þe same þingis & with

<sup>2</sup> til þe place schyne, donec locus excoietur.

Treatment of  
white  
Albaras

stronger medicyns þat' ben aforseid in þe cure of þe white morphu, & miche eastyng' is good for hem, & þou schalt' frote wel þe place with squillis in a stewe, & after þat' spryngþe þeron poudre maad of tapsia, & staphisagre, & þe wombis of cantarides, & seed of eruce, 4 & tordis of a culuere, & þou schalt' anoynte him wiþ blood of a blac serpent, for þat' is bi prop'rtē good þerfore /

Black  
Albaras  
is incurable,  
[¶ If. 119, bk.]  
the attendant  
discoloration  
of the skin  
may be cured.

Albaras þat' is blak is incurable, for it' is a particuler lepre, & but' 1if it' be so þat' it' mowe be take awei wiþ alle rootis, it' schal 8 neuere be curid; saue þe colour of his skyn mai be amendid / R7, aloxanti, þat' is þe flour of þe wipi,<sup>2</sup> mirram, feces of wijn brent, reed cley, & alyme, poudre alle þese, & herwiþ frote þe place til þe pacient' fele prickyng' & brennyng'. þis wole deye þe skyn for 12 manie daies, & whanne þis failiþ reherse it' aȝen.

### // Of lepre and of þe domys of lepre<sup>3</sup> //

¶ vij<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup>  
Leprosy  
arises from  
the corrup-  
tion of the  
melancholic  
humours and  
affects the  
whole body.

**L**Epra<sup>4</sup> is a foul sijknēs þat' comēþ of malancolie corrupt, oupir of humouris þat' ben brouȝt to þe forme of malancolye<sup>5</sup> 16 corrupt. & it' goiþ into al þe bodi, riȝt' as a cancre is in oon lyme of a mannes bodi / For whanne malancolie multipliēþ<sup>6</sup>, & a mannes guttis ben not' strong' for to putte it' out, & þe weies bitwixe þe splene ben stoppid & þe poris of þe skyn closid, þan malancolious 20 blood wole rote wiþinne, & rotiþ complexiouns of þe lymes. & þe bigynnyng' of þe mater myȝte be of blood oupir of fleume, colre, ouper of malancolie, neþeles whanne þe mater is fulfild 7it' is malancolie corrupt'. & þis is oon of the syknessis þat' ben contagious / 24 ¶ In þis place I wole sette curis of lepre þat' ben profitable for a cirurgian to kenne, & also curis þat' comēþ ofte to a cirurgian handis /

[¶ If. 120]

<sup>2</sup> Lat. aloxantum, quod est flos salis. The translator read *salicis* for *salis*. ἀλόσανθον, τό, brine. Matth. Sylv.: "Alosantus i. flos salis et invenitur super petras nili fluminis."

<sup>3</sup> Lat. de lepra et indicis leprosi The translator read *iudiciis*.

<sup>4</sup> Add. 27,944, fol. 99 b.: "*Lepra mesclrye is an universal corrupcioun of membres & of humours.*" Four different kinds of Leprosy are distinguished, "1. the *Elaphantia*; 2. the *Tiria* or *Serpentina*, and haþ þat name of an addre þat hatte tyrys, for as an addre leneth litzliche his skynne and is skalȝ, so he þat hath þis maner lepra is ofte i-strept and i-hulde, & ful of scales; 3. *alopicia* & *vulpina* foxissch; 4. *leonina*, it fretiþ as a lyon & destroyeþ all þe membris."

<sup>5</sup> & inserted.

<sup>6</sup> *multipliēþ*, Lat. *multiplicatur*.—Multiplie, fructificare, multiplicare. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 246.

- Men þat ben leprous,<sup>1</sup> in þe bigynnyng<sup>2</sup> her heeris of her heed falliþ awei, & þe heeris of her browis, & þe heeris of her berd; & her forheed bicomēþ reed & as it were schynnyng. ¶ Also in  
 4 summe þe face wexiþ reed & swellþ & is sumwhat ledi, & principali aboute [þe nose]<sup>2</sup> // ¶ Also her vois is row<sup>3</sup> ouþer suntyme it is wondirly scharp, & þe whit of her izen bicomēþ al deik, & þe  
 8 heeris goon awei of her browis / Her noseprillis bicomēþ smal, ouþer wondirly greet, & her noseprillis ben streit for to drawe yn  
 wijnd, & her nailis bicomēþ ledi / Also her breeþ wole stynke & her sotes / Also her pisce wole be streit<sup>3</sup> & þei schulen haue greet  
 snesyng<sup>4</sup> / Also þei wilneþ myche to comne<sup>4</sup> wiþ wommen / Also  
 12 þei schulen be heuy, & if her skyn be in þe coold eir, it wole bicomē as it were þe skyn of a gaudir<sup>5</sup> þat þat hise feperis weren pilið away / Also þese ben priuy þingis: if þou prickist his leg bihynde,  
 he ne schal not fele it / & if þou waisschist hise lymes in watir, anoon riȝt it wole drie yn // Also þese signes ben comoun: his  
 16 yzen wolen bicomē rounde, & þer wolen wexe pustulis in his tunge, & her nailis wolen bicomē greet, & þer wolen wexe scabbis aboute-forþ. And þe fleisch þat schulde be bitwixe þe þombe & þe nexte  
 20 fyngir þerto schal be wastid away, & if þou prickist him in þe hele he schal not fele it, & if he be lete blood, her blood wole be scharpe & as it were ful of grauel. & if þou waischist her blood, in þe botme þerof wole leue as it were grauel. & þis sijkes aftir  
 24 þe tyme þat it is confemed is incurable, saue in þe firste bigynnyng<sup>6</sup> it mai be curid wel //

Signs of  
Leprosy:  
the hair falls  
off,

the face gets  
red and  
swollen,  
the voice gets  
hoarse,

the nostrils  
are dis-  
figured,

the breath is  
foetid,

[¶ If. 120, bk.]

the legs lose  
their feeling,

pustules grow  
on the  
tongue,

the blood is  
sharp and  
leaves a sedi-  
ment like  
sand.

Treatment of  
Leprosy.

[¶ If. 121]

Strong medi-  
cines are  
dangerous.

<sup>1</sup> The symptoms of leprosy are similarly described by Avicenna, lib. IV., fen. 3, tract. 2, cap. 2.

<sup>2</sup> þe nose, wanting.

<sup>3</sup> her pisce wole be streit, Lat. item accidit eis strictura pectoris.

<sup>4</sup> comne for comune.

<sup>7</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b.: Scias quod in egritudinibus fortibus si fuerint cronice fortes non competunt medicine, nam licet propter egritudinis fortitudinem medicina sit nocciua tamen dari non debet, quia medicinam oportet sepius iterari.



Light purg-  
ing medi-  
cines.

[2 lf. 121, bk.]

Give the pa-  
tient nourish-  
ing food.

A preparation  
made from  
the flesh of a  
black snake

is given, until  
the patient  
becomes  
giddy.

Then let him  
lie down and  
give a re-  
viving medi-  
cine in case  
of collapse.

wole falle for to purge þe humour listli // A medicyn maad of gotis  
whey wiþ epithimo, þis medicyn is riȝt & good, for it purgiþ  
malancolie litil & litil, & also a man schal not be greued þerebi //  
Pelottis þat be maad of epithimo þat ben aforseid in þe tretijs of 4  
allopucia ben good herfore, for þin entent schal be oonly for to  
purge malancolie þat is corrupt, & amende his complexioun wiþ  
good dietyng. Blood letyng is not good þerfore, but if þe cauce  
come miche of blood / If his breeþ be streit, þanne it cometh of þe 8  
veyne þat goiþ to þe herte / Sumtyme it is in þe veyne of þe nose<sup>1</sup> /  
þou schalt ȝeue to men þat ben drie lepre & cometh myche of colre,  
þou schalt ȝeue him gotis whey ofte for to drynke, & <sup>2</sup>þou schalt, in  
as miche as þou miȝt, make his complexioun moist & baþe him in 12  
tempere baþ & lete him swete þerinne; & þan þou schalt anoynte  
him wiþ oile of violet & oile of cucurbita, & þou schalt ȝeue him  
good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & hese metis & hise drinkis  
schulen be in tempere heete, not to hoot ne to coud // ¶ Summen 16  
curiþ hem wiþ þe fleisch of a blac eddre<sup>3</sup> þat ben in drie lond &  
among stones, & þan þei kutten away þe heed & þe tail of þe eddre  
& doiþ awei þe guttis wiþinne / & þan þei doon hem in<sup>4</sup> a vessel of  
erþe wiþ a litil peper & galyngale & salt & vinegre & watir & oile, 20  
& so þei seþe þe eddre til al þe fleisch þerof be dissolved. þanne  
þe broþ herof is ȝeuen to drynke, & þe fleisch for to ete til þe  
patient haue scotomiam<sup>5</sup> & al his bodi to-swolle / Whanne his bodi  
is to-swolle & he haþ had scotomiam, þan leie him in a bed & lete 24  
him ligge; & if þere falle ony þing to him as syncopis, ouþer greet  
cooldnes of hise lymes wiþoutforþ, or if his herte quake, þan ȝeue

<sup>1</sup> Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b: "Flebotomia namque non convenit nisi quum scis lepram esse valde sanguineam cum hanelitus strictura tunc fit de uena cordis et de duabus guides timendo suffocationem: alia fit de venis nasi propter palliandum faciei colorem."

<sup>3</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 100: "To hele opir to hide lepra as plato seiþ, best is a rede adder wiþ a white wombe; ȝif þe venym is awaye & þe tail & þe heed i-smyte of, þanne þe body i-sode in leke, ȝif it is ofte i-take & i-ete; in þe same wise wyne in þe whiche it rotieþ, ȝif þe patient drinke ofte þerof, and þis helpiþ in many iueles, as he telleþ of a blind mannes wif þat wolde slee here housbonde, and ȝaf him an addre with garlek in stede of an ele, þat it myȝte slee hym, & he eet it, and aftir þat by moche swete he recovered & had his siȝt goode & clere." The flesh of vipers is commended by Galen for the treatment of elephantiasis. Lib. II., Simplic. de carne viperæ.

<sup>4</sup> in, in margin.

<sup>5</sup> *scotomia*, σκότωμα, ἀρος, τό, dizziness. Vigo Interpret.: "They shoulde saye Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth before the eyes, and when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

him tiriaca maior wiþ a litil musco ouþer hoot wiþ // In þis maner  
 al his <sup>1</sup>fleisch wole pile & alle hise heeris wolen falle awei & newe <sup>[1 lf. 122]</sup>  
 heeris wolen come vp azen / & þis medicyne schal be rehersed so  
 4 ofte, & kepid wiþ dietyng<sup>t</sup> til he be perfitli hool / Forwhi manie  
 men moun be delyuerid of manye greet sicknessis, if her leche is  
 kunnyng & diligent<sup>t</sup> aboute hem, & bi negligenc<sup>e</sup> & defaute of  
 help manie men ben perischid / Cauterijs herfore þou schalt fynde  
 8 ynowe in þe chapiter of cauterijs, & oynementis þat makip clene &  
 soudip, all þese þingis þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie.

A skilful  
 physician  
 often cures,  
 where a neg-  
 ligent one  
 fails.

### ¶ Of waastyng<sup>e</sup> off membris and bicomen smal /

- 12 **A** Mannes lyme bicomēþ smal wiþ greet streynyng<sup>t</sup> of ligaturis ¶ viij. 00/  
 of ioynt<sup>t</sup> þat enfeblip al þe lyme / þese þingis makip a mannes lymes  
 to bicomē smal // ¶ Also a mannes lymes bicomēþ greet oþer þan  
 þei schulde be,<sup>2</sup> whanne veynes ben feble & matere fallip þerto &  
 16 þe vertu of souding<sup>t</sup> failip, & in þis maner þe lyme swellip, & þe  
 mater is fleumatik, & for defaute of heete it turnep not into  
 quitture <sup>3</sup>saue it abidip in þe lyme & swellip þe lyme / <sup>[3 lf. 122, bk.]</sup>  
 ¶ A lyme þat is bicomē smal, in þis maner þou schalt make it  
 20 greet: if þere be ony þing<sup>t</sup> to take awei þerof as akyng<sup>e</sup> ouþer ony  
 stricture, ouþer ony byndyng<sup>t</sup>, þan remeue away þat first in þe  
 manere as it schal be seid in þe chapiter of ioyntis. Whanne þe  
 akyng<sup>e</sup> is doon awei, þanne waische þe lyme wiþ a decoccioun of  
 24 malowis & violet & rotis of bismalue in watir, saue his lyme schal  
 be in þe water no lenger þan it bigynnep for to bicomē reed & sum-  
 what to swelle, & be war þat his lyme be not so longe in þe water  
 til þat he swete, & þan drie his lyme wiþ a lynnen cloop & frote it  
 28 a litil wiþ þin hond, & þanne take a litil smal 3erde & bete þe lyme  
 þerwiþ til þou drawe blood þerto, & make a plastre þerto in þis  
 maner. R̄, picis naualis, picis grece, resine albe ana, & melte alle  
 þese in a panne. & whanne þei ben molten cole hem þoruþ a cloop  
 32 into coold water, & þanne anoynte þin hondis with oile & þan take  
 it vp of þe watir & tempere it togidere & make þerof gobetis &  
 kepe hem for þin vs<sup>4</sup>, herof þou schalt plane vpon <sup>5</sup>a leþer, & <sup>[5 lf. 123]</sup>  
 leie it to þe lyme þat is forseid, & so lete it ligge adai, & aneuen

Limbs be-  
 come swollen  
 after a  
 straight  
 ligature,  
 they become  
 larger by  
 congestion.

To restore a  
 wasting limb  
 remove the  
 cause of the  
 disease,

apply a wash

and an adhe-  
 sive plaster.  
 R̄

<sup>2</sup> Lat. ingrossatur etiam membrum aliquod ultra debitum. Compare þe  
 colour . . . chaungip oþir þan it schulde be, p. 194, Note 3.

<sup>4</sup> vse.

There is no perfect cure in case of an old dislocation.

If the swelling of a limb is caused by the phlegm,

use a purging medicine,

a bandage and compresses, soaked in lye,

R

[1 lf. 123, bk.]

or in a solution of saltpetre,

R

or bruise lily-leaves, and apply them.

If the swelling arises from melancholic blood, purge and use a softening ointment.

[2 lf. 124]

drawe it away, & so lete þe lyme be til amorowe, & þanne reherse þe waischinge þat is forseid & þe frotinge & þe betinge. þis wiþouten ony drede wole bringe [þe lyme] azen to his greetnes as it schulde be, but if þe lyme be out of ioynct & haue be longe tyme, þan it wole be hard, þan it is yuel to make þe lyme greet azen as it schulde. & þouȝ it mowe not be maad greet as it schulde be, neþeles bi þis maner it may be myche amendid //

¶ If a mannes lyme is gretter þan it schulde be, if þe cause þerof be of fleume þat þou miȝt knowe bi neischenes of þe lyme, for if þou þriste yn þi fyngir, þer wol leue a pitt þerafter, it may be brouȝt azen to greetnes þat it schulde be, if it be purgid ofte wiþ a medicyn þat is clepid trociscus de turbit þat is aforseid, & þe pacient schal kepe him fro alle metis þat engendriþ fleume, & he schal be war of greet replecioun of metis & drinkis, & þan þou schalt cure him wiþ medicyns þat schulen be seid in þe chapitre of apostemes of fleume / Take lye maad <sup>1</sup>of aischis of wijn or of an ook, & leie þeron a double linnen cloof & wete it wel, & þerwiþ folde þe lyme, & þan streyne þe lyme wiþ a boond, & euery dai þou schalt wete it .ij. sapis in þat lie & bynde so his lyme, & in þis maner his lyme schal drie. Ouþer in þis maner / Take sal nitre & distempere it wiþ watir, & þanne take a sponge þat it be so myche þat it mowe hile al þe lyme & þan lete þe sponge drie so þervpon, & þan wete þe sponge azen & leie it on þe lyme azen, & lete it drie azen & alwei bynde wel þe lyme; & þis þou must do manye sapis. Or take þe leues of lile celestie & grynde hem wel and þanne leye it vpon þe lyme, & þanne bynde wel þe lyme, & in þis maner þe matere wole waaste away & þe lyme wole bicomme smal as it schulde / If it so be þat þis greetnes come of malancolious blood or of greet fleume, make him a purgacioun with gotis whey & epithimo, or anopir competent medicyn. & first þou schalt make þe lyme neische wiþ oile of lile, or wiþ oon of þe oynementis þat ben mollificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, þanne go to þe cure þat is forseid. Whanne þe swellyng of þe lyme is doon aweie, if it be in hond or in arme, þat falliþ ofte tyme, or in þe foot & in þe leggis & in þe knee, þanne þou schalt make bitwixe þe fyngiris cauterijs þat ben clepid cauterium cultellare, as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of cauterijs // þe greetnes of a mannes foot þou schalt cure as it schal be seid in elephancia as it is conteyned in his propre chapitre /



pe firste chapiter of engendering of humours & pe  
kindis of hem, & conteyneþ .xviij. chapiters /

- E** Veri enplostym is engendrid of .iiij. humouris, oupir of water,  
or of wijnd. & it is impossible for a cirurgian for to kune  
a cure, but if he knowe pe cause þerof, & þefore me þouzte  
þat it was necessarie for to make a propre chapitre of þe generacioun  
of humouris<sup>1</sup> & alle þe propurtees þerof, þat þe redere of þis book  
mai knowe þe causis of apostyms & þe curis þerof & metis & drinkis  
þat ben necessarie in þis cause for norisching<sup>2</sup> & augmenting<sup>2</sup> of þe  
lymes & for to engendre natural heete // Whanne þe mete fallþ  
into a mannes stomac & þou haddist anothamie þerof, þan in þe  
stomak þe mete is soden, & þan fro þe stomak it goiþ into þe guttis,  
& þerof þou haddist anothamiam, & þan þe mete goiþ anon to þe  
gutt þat is clepid orobum or þe sak. Veynes þat ben clepid  
miseraice & þere ben manie maners þerof as it is forseid, & þei ben  
maad fast wiþ þe botme of þe stomac & wiþ þe gutt þat is clepid  
duodeno, & wiþ þe smal gutt, & wiþ þe gutt þat is clepid ieiumium  
as it is forseid, & wiþ þese veynes bigynneþ þe .ij. digestioun &  
berip a veyne þat is clepid kilus<sup>3</sup> to þe lyuer, & þat veyne goiþ to  
þe stomac fro þe lyuer. & þe .iiij. humouris of .iiij. substauncis ben  
engendrid in þis place of digestioun<sup>4</sup> / For þere is engendrid þere a  
maner spumous substaunce whanne þe digestioun failþ heete; &  
þere engendriþ anoþer partie þat is sutil as it were wijn; & þe  
greet substaunce goiþ adoun & stynkip. If þere be engendrid greet  
fleume<sup>5</sup> & miche, þat is cause for it quenchip þe hete of þe stomac /  
Also in þe same placis is engendrid a subtil substaunce, & scharp  
hete worchip þeron & gaderip him hete & scharpnes, & þis is clepid  
collera rubea; & if humouris wexip to miche, it wole achaufe þe  
lyuer / & causis of engendring of colre ben hote metis & drinkis &

þe .2. doo-  
trine.

¶ 1o. co.

Impostems  
ingendred  
off þe .iiij  
humors.

A disease can  
only be cured  
if the cause is  
known.

[¶ 1f. 124, bk.]

The first  
digestion.

The food is  
sodden in the  
stomach,  
and passes  
through the  
guts.

Inoipit ij  
dyg<sup>o</sup>

The mesaraic  
veins carry  
the chyle to  
the liver.

nota

The four  
humours  
are produced  
in the liver.

1. Phlegm,  
[¶ 1f. 125]

2. the  
Choleric  
humour,

<sup>1</sup> De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 6, Add. 27,944, fol. 33: "Pise fourre humores beþ i-bred in þis manere: whan mete is i-songe in þe place of seeþinge, þat is þe stomak, first þe more sotil partie & fletinge þerof, þat phisicians clepiþ pthis-maria, þat is i-draue be certeyn veynes to þe lyuore, & þerby þe worching of kinde hete it is i-chaungid into þe fourre humoures; þe breeding of hem bigynneþ in þe lyuer, but it endiþ þere atte fulle."

<sup>3</sup> The translator mistook *kilus* for the name of the Vein, perhaps in reference to the *Vena cava*, called *Vena chillis* by the translators of Arab. medical works, from *κωιλη*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: Ita in hepate ex chylo veniente a stomacho quatuor humorales substantie generantur.

3. Blood, traueile & fastyng<sup>1</sup> & stronge saucis // ¶ Also þer is a clene sub-  
stance engendrid þat kyndeli hete worchip þeron, & þat is blood.  
& þe matere herof is good metis & drynkis þat ben swete // ¶ Also  
4. the Melan- þer is engendrid anoþer substance þat is sumwhat<sup>2</sup> stynkyng<sup>3</sup> & is 4  
cholic humour. clepid malancoli & is engendrid in .ij. maners: oon maner is þis of  
greet hete þat is brennyng<sup>4</sup> & of greet cooldnes þat wexiþ hard<sup>1</sup>;  
& þe cause herof ben grete metis,<sup>2</sup> & metis þat engendriþ malancoli /  
And þes .iiij. humouris Sanguis, Colera, fleumtica & Malancolia, & 8  
These four humours have different qualities. euery of hem haþ diuers qualitees, for blood is hoot & moist, fleume  
coold & moost<sup>3</sup>, Colre hoot & drie, Malancoli coold & drie // ¶ Also  
[<sup>3</sup> If. 125, bk.] of þese humouris <sup>4</sup>summe ben kindeli & summe ben vnkyndely, &  
þerfore in þis chapitre we wolen make mencion of alle, ffor bi 12  
gending<sup>5</sup> of þese humouris enpostyms ben engendrid //
- ¶ Of fleume þere ben ij. kyndis, oon is natural & þe toþer  
Phlegm is either natural or unnatural. innatural / Natural fleume is coold & moist<sup>6</sup> & whit<sup>7</sup>, & goiþ sum-  
The natural Phlegm quiets a man's nerves. what<sup>8</sup> to swetnes,<sup>4</sup> of which lordschipe<sup>5</sup> þer folowiþ a litil wilnyng<sup>6</sup> 16  
for to comoun wiþ wymmen, & þe palesie, & [he is]<sup>6</sup> pesible, &  
loueþ wel for to haue reste<sup>7</sup> / Saue þe moost<sup>8</sup> part<sup>9</sup> of fleume is in  
a mannes brayn, & in hise lungis, & in his stomac, & in hise guttis,  
& in hise ioynctes. And þe lordschip of fleume is in þe hynder 20  
part<sup>10</sup> of a mannes heed, & in þe rigbonys. & fleume doiþ þre pro-  
fitis, þe .j. is þis: sumtyme a mannes kynde failiþ blood, & þan  
kinde worchiþ vpon fleume & makiþ blood, & of opere humouris þis  
mai not be do / þe .ij. profit<sup>11</sup> of fleume is þis: for fleume goiþ wiþ 24  
blood for to norische diuers lymes / þe .iiij. profit<sup>12</sup> of fleume is þis,  
þat it acoldiþ þe ioynctis & makiþ hem moist<sup>13</sup>, for ellis in greet  
meuyng<sup>14</sup> þei schulden wexe drie / Of fleume þat is innatural ben  
[<sup>3</sup> If. 126] .iiij. maners <sup>15</sup>as: fleume dulce, fleuma acetosum, fleuma ponticum, 28  
fleuma dulce. fleuma salsum // ¶ fleuma dulce is in .ij. maners. þe firste maner

<sup>1</sup> of greet cooldness þat wexiþ hard. Lat. ex frigiditate ingrossante.

<sup>2</sup> grete metis, Lat. cibi grossi.

<sup>4</sup> swetnes, a mistake for whitnes. Lat. ad paucam tendens albedinem.  
De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 9, *ibid.* fol. 35: "Kyndeliche fleume is coold &  
moist, & white in colour, and fletinge in substance, a litwhat swete in sauour,  
opir al werisch & vnsauoury."

<sup>6</sup> of which lordshipe, Lat. de cuius dominio.

<sup>8</sup> he is, wanting.

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 35 bk.: "a verray fleumatik man is in þe body lustles, heuy &  
slow, dul of wil & of pouzt forzetteful, neissche of fleissche and quarry, bloo<sup>a</sup> of  
colour, whitliche in face, ferdeful of herte, ful of spittinge snyuel & rokeinge,  
ful of slouth & of slepinge, & of a litil appetite & of litil purst."

<sup>a</sup> bloo, MS. bood.



- is pis: as whanne fleume is medlid wip blood, or as whanne hete  
 worchip wip fleume to turne it into blood // ¶ **fleuma acetosum** fleuma  
acetosum.  
 is seid in .ij. maners / as whanne ebullitiun<sup>1</sup> comeþ to fleume dulce  
 4 & makip him to rote, & it [is] herto as it bifallip in opere pingis  
 þat ben swete, as to swete winis whanne sournes comeþ þeron it  
 bicomeþ coold, & in þe same manere fleuma acetosum makip fleuma  
 dulce coold // ¶ **fleuma salsum** is moost drie of alle, & pis is fleuma  
salsum.  
 8 whanne þer is ony part of colre medlid wip fleume, þan it is  
 clepid fleuma salsum, for þe hete of þe colre makip it salt / ¶ **fleuma**  
**vitreum** was liquide fleuma, & wip cooldnes it is congild, or sum  
 partie of malancolie is medlid & congilip it hard // ¶ **Colre sum**  
 12 is natural & sum is innatural / Natural is list & scharp & reed in  
 colour &<sup>2</sup> in substaunce, & þe more hoot þat it is þe more reednes  
 it makip / þanne vertues of colre ben þese / A colerik man schal  
 haue hasti entendement & sotil<sup>3</sup> of witt, & hardi & hasti pouzt, & [¶ It. 126, bk.]  
 16 hasti answe, & listly meued to wrappe<sup>4</sup> / Of colre innatural ben .v.  
 maners, as citrina, [vitellina]<sup>5</sup>, adusta, prassina & eruginosa / **Colera**  
**citrina** is medlid wip subtil fleume / **Colera vitellina**<sup>6</sup> is medlid Colera  
innaturalis.  
Colera  
citrina.  
Colera  
vitellina.  
Colera  
adusta.  
 wip greet fleume / **Colera adusta** is in .ij. maners; oon is pis, þat  
 20 it is to miche brent in<sup>7</sup> þe lyuer; þan wip pis brennyng þe subtil  
 partie departip fro þe grete parties, & in pis maner it takip a spice  
 of malancoly // ¶ In anoþer manere, partijs of malancoli þat ben  
 brent, [ben]<sup>8</sup> medlid þerwip // ¶ And þer is iij. maner of colre  
 24 adust, & is whanne his blood is adust *id est* brent as it schal be seid  
 here after // ¶ þer is anoþer maner of colre þat is clepid **prassina**,<sup>9</sup>  
 þat is swiþe bittir // ¶ **Eruginosa** is lijk þe rust of copur, & pis  
 maner of colre is miche freting & scharp, & G. seiþ þat þis maner Collera  
prassina.  
Colera  
eruginosa.  
Galien.  
 28 colre is engendrid of hoot metis & scharpe as oynouns, garlek,  
 mustard, & opere mo // ¶ Of malancoli þer ben .ij. maners—as **Malancoli**.  
 malancoli natural & malancoli innatural / Malancoly þat is natural The natural  
Melancholy.

<sup>1</sup> *ebullitiun*, Lat. *ebullitio*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *colour*, erroneously inserted.<sup>4</sup> De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 10, Add. 27,944, fol. 36: "And so colerik men beþ generalliche wraþeful, hardy, vnmeke, list, vnstable, inpetuous; in body long, sklenare & lene; in colour broun, in eer blak and crips, hard and stif; in touche hoot, in puls strong & swift."<sup>5</sup> *vitellina*, wanting.<sup>6</sup> *colera vitellina*, called *yellow colera*, in De propr. rer. *ibid*.<sup>7</sup> MS. & for *in*.<sup>8</sup> *ben*, wanting.<sup>9</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid*. fol. 35 b.: "þe þridde maner of colera hatte *prassina*, & is grene of colour and bittir scharp as an herbe þat hatte *prassium*, & *marubium*, & *porrus* in latyn."



[<sup>2</sup> lf. 127] hap þese signis / þe .j. is as it were fecis of blood,<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> & her colour is as it were ledi & blac, & her bodi schal be leene & drie, & þei schulen haue good appetit for to ete, & þei schulen haue good mynde for to kepe þingis in her þouȝt, & þei schulen be dredeful & ful of enuye & gile & sorowe & coueitous / Malancolie innatural comeþ of humours brent & corrupt. Of euery of þese humours ben engendrid diuers maners of enpostyms / & euery maner postyme hap diuers cure as it schal be seid here-after. 8

The un-  
natural  
Melancholy.

### A general word of enpostyms /

¶ ij. cº.

Any swelling  
in a limb is  
called Apos-  
tema.

Auicenn.

It arises from  
the humours,  
[<sup>3</sup> lf. 127, bk.]  
or from water  
or wind in the  
body.

The exciting  
cause is either  
external or  
internal.

A Postyme hap manie diuers names of diuers men, for lewid cirurgians<sup>3</sup> seien, þat þer is noon apostym but þat, þat makip quytture / Saue I seie, & alle auctouris seien þat eueri swellng<sup>4</sup> in 12 a lyme, whepir it be greet or smal, it schal be clepid apostym / For .A. seiþ: litil swellngis schule be clepid litil apostyms, & grete swellngis schulen be clepid grete apostyms / þerfore apostym is seid swellng<sup>4</sup> in lymes, ouþir inflatioun<sup>4</sup> þat chaungip þe lyme oþer 16 þan it schulde be; & þe mater herof comeþ of manie diuers þingis; ouþer it comeþ of humouris, or of watir,<sup>5</sup> or of wijnd / If it comeþ of humouris, þan it comeþ of blood, ouþer of fleume, or of colre, or of malancolie // Also enpostyms þat cometh of humours: summe 20 comeþ of natural humours, & summe of innatural; & summe of sngle humours, & summe of humouris medlid togidere / And summe enpostyms cometh of causis wipinneforþ, & summe of causis withoutforþ / þe causis wipoutforþ is falling<sup>4</sup> ouþer smiting, or of a 24 wounde, or chaunging<sup>4</sup> of eir / Of þe causis wipinneforþ: as of wickidnes of humours, or to ful of humouris, or to ful of water, or of wijnd / or whanne a man is hurt wipoutforþ: or wip greet hete þat brenneþ, or wip greet cooldnes of eir þat constreineþ, or of 28 greet drienes þat constreineþ, for alle þese causis humouris gaderip togidere & makip enpostyms // Also if a man falle vpon a stoon or vpon an hard þing, or if a man be smite wip a stoon or wip a staf, or þoruȝ prickng<sup>4</sup> of a venimous beest: alle þese þingis moun 32 engendre venimous<sup>6</sup> enpostyms / In þis maner þou <sup>7</sup>schalt knowe

[7 lf. 128]

<sup>1</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 36: "þe kyndeliche malencolie is coole and drye, þat is i-bred in blood as drastes in wyne."

<sup>3</sup> lewid cirurgians, Lat. rurales cyrurgici.

<sup>4</sup> inflatioun, Lat. inflatio, O.Fr. inflation. *Vigo* l. c. "Inflatus, Puffed vp, swellng."

<sup>6</sup> a venimous, cancelled.

diuers enpostyms of what humouris þei comeþ / If superfluite of blood drawe to a lyme, as is clepid flegmon,<sup>1</sup> & þes ben þe signes þerof: þe place wole be reed for liknes of blood, akyng for þe greet replacioun þerof, beting<sup>2</sup> for þe greet depnes of mater, or for greet akyng / He may haue greuaunce of a feuer<sup>3</sup> / If þe blood be pinne in substaunce & hoot in qualite, þan it makip herisipulan.<sup>4</sup> & þis is þe signe þerof, þat in þe higest place þerof, it wole be moost reed and hoot; & if þou leist þi fyngir þeron, & whanne þou remeuyst þi fyngir, þe skyn wole be whit þere þi fyngir was, & anon it wole bicomme reed agen, for þe mater þerof is subtil, & þe patient hap greet brennyng þerof & akyng // Blood in his owne substaunce is more gretter & makip more hete, & makip apostym, þat is clepid carbunculus / þis enpostym comeþ to a man whanne he hap haboundance of greet blood, & þerfor whanne he is replete of mete, he schulde baþe him or traueile him-silf, þat þe blood miȝte falle out, & for his greetnes & hardnes it mai not be resolued with hete, & þanne it leueþ in þe skyn & makip apostym.<sup>5</sup> þe signes herof ben þes: þe enpostym is hard for þe þiknes of blood, & þe colour þerof is swart reed for þe greet hete, & þe greet heete<sup>6</sup> herof makip a man sumtime to haue a feuer þerwiþ; & sumtyme it makip a man to haue sincopin,<sup>7</sup> & þis is speciali whanne þe matere is brent, & in þis maner þe matere þerof is turned into venym /

Superfluity of blood causes flegmon.  
Symptoms.

Poverty of blood causes herisipulan.  
Symptoms.

Fullness of blood causes carbunculus.

[4 ff. 128, bk.]  
Symptoms.

<sup>1</sup> Halle. Table, p. 84. "φλεγμονή, id est inflammatio uel collectio, απο του φλεγμου, hoc est a sanguine dicta, written moste commonly hither vnto (with muche rudenes) *Flegmon*, is properly a symple tumore (as Galen sayeth) and an affecte of the fleshie partes, comming of a greater fluxe of bloude then they nede or can naturally susteyne."

<sup>2</sup> *beting*, Lat. pulsatio. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. beat, 13.

<sup>3</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 97 b.: "And somtyme it comeþ of ventosite & of wind, & hatte bubo; somtyme of a symple humour, as of blood, and hatte flegmon; þe tokenes þerof beþ: rede rednes comeþ of þe colour of blood, hardnesse comeþ of multitude of matiere & of hete þat wastip watry matiere, quappinge & lepinge of ventosite & fumosite, schustynge & puttinge, sore ache of þe stretchinge of þe place; hete comeþ of hote matiere, & swellinge comeþ of multitude of matiere."

<sup>5</sup> 26,106, fol. 52 b.: hoc apostema fit cum homo habundat sanguine grosso, et balneatur post ciborum repletionem aut laborat, ita quod sanguis ad extrema movetur et propter suam grossitiam et duritiem non potest a calore resoluti remanens in cuti facit apostema.

<sup>6</sup> *heete*, in margin.

<sup>7</sup> Halle. Table, p. 122. "Syncope. Συγκοπή, id est animi deliquium, uel præseps uirium lapsus, that is the defecte of the mynde, or a sodeine slyding away of the strengthe of the body, and commonly called swoundynge."

<sup>a</sup> MS. by.

<sup>b</sup> Lat. pulsus i. saltus.

<sup>c</sup> MS. ofte.

Natural  
colre  
causes Ery-  
sipelas.

**Natural colre** makip herisipulam,<sup>1</sup> & þe signe þerof is hardnes for þe greet drieness of colre. & þe heed of þe enpostym is schape as it were a pyne, for þe grece þat it hap.<sup>2</sup> & þe colour þerof is reed medlid wiþ zelow //

Phlegm  
causes  
vdimia.  
(oedema).

An enpostym þat comep of fleume, is clepid vdimia<sup>3</sup> or zima,<sup>4</sup> & is a neisch enpostym, & þe colour þerof is sumwhat whizt. & if þou pressist in þi fyngir, þer wole leue þere a pitt for þe gret neischenes; & whanne þi fyngir is aweie, it wole arise vp azen. 8 þis enpostym is wiþout akyng, saue it makip a greuance /

Natural  
malancoli  
causes  
Scliosis.

[<sup>c</sup> 1f. 129]

A watery  
apostema.

¶ Natural malancoli makip an hard enpostym, & is clepid Scliosis.<sup>5</sup> & þe signe þerof is hardnes, & þe colour þerof is as þe colour of malancolie ledi or blac /

Enpostym þat comep of blood & watir medlid togidere. þis is þe signe þerof: if þou settist þeron þi .ij. fyngiris of þi .ij. hondis, & first pressist þat oon fyngir & þanne þat oþer, þou schalt fele þe watri mater remeue fro þat oon fyngir to þat oþer //

These are  
the simple  
Apostemas.

¶ þese ben þe differencis of apostyms þat ben symple, þat comep of oon matere at oonis; & þese ensaumplis ben schewid tofor, for þou schalt þe bettir knowe enpostyms þat comep of double matere //

Apostemas  
arising from  
more than  
one cause:  
Apostema  
flegmonides  
and  
herisipilades

¶ þer comep an empostym of blood & colre; & if þe more partie be of blood, þan þe enpostym schal be clepid flegmonides; & if þe more partie þerof be of colre, þanne he schal be clepid herisipilades. & þe signes herof þou schalt knowe bi þe signes of

<sup>1</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*herisipila, þat is holy fure per antifrasm, þat is contrarie spekinge.*"

<sup>2</sup> Lat. propter igneitatē ipsius.

<sup>3</sup> *vdimia, οἰδήμα*, tumour.—Vigo, Chirurgery. The Interpretation: "Undimia is a barbarouse terme, in greke it is called oedema, in latin tumor. For it is softe swellynge wythout payne."

<sup>4</sup> *Zima*. Sinonoma Barth, "*Zima est apostema flancorum molle sine dolore.*" From *ζῆμα*, that which is boiled, decoction. De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*In þe same manere aposteme comep of fleume, and hatte zimia oþur palus; for rizt as in mures and in mareys is moche superfluyte of slyme & of wose, so in þis posteme is moche superfluyte; and if þou þurstist by fyngre þer vpon, hit dyueþ inne, for þe rennyng matiere wiþdrawiþ & lettþ þe vingre entre, & þanne in þe myddel is a putte as hit were þe bore of an hole; & whanne þe finge is aweye, þe matiere comep azen & filliþ al þe place.*"

<sup>5</sup> Add. 16, 106, fol. 53: apostema quod vocatur scliros ab aliis sephiros vel scliosis. Halle. Table, p. 114. "*Scirrhus Σκίρρος καὶ σκληρότης*, id est durities, written of old *Scliosis*, is (as I gat her of Galen in diuers places) a tumore against nature, and an affecte of harde and thicke partes."



- þe symple apostyms // ¶ Also blood & fleume natural [ben]<sup>1</sup> medlid are caused by  
 togidere, & makip an enpostym þat<sup>2</sup> is vdimia. & þe signe herof<sup>3</sup> the blood and  
 [is]<sup>2</sup> þat<sup>2</sup> þe heed of þis enpostym is reed, & þat<sup>2</sup> opere wole be choler.  
 4 whit<sup>3</sup> / ¶ Also blood is medlid wip greet fleume & malancolie, &  
 engendriþ glandulas & Scrophulas.<sup>4</sup> ¶ Colre medlid with fleume  
 5 makip fleume rennyng<sup>5</sup>, & makip þat<sup>2</sup> fleume goip wip him into [¶ 1f. 129, bk.]  
 ioynetis. & herof<sup>6</sup> þou schalt<sup>6</sup> haue a pleyner teching<sup>6</sup> in þe chapitre  
 8 of ioinctes. ¶ Also greet fleume is medlid with malancoli, & þerof<sup>7</sup>  
 comeþ glandula & Scrophule / Also malancolie & blood, colre & **Glandula &  
 Scrophule.**  
 fleume ben medlid alle togidere & makip an enpostym þat<sup>2</sup> is clepid  
 antrax ; & þe malice þerof<sup>8</sup> is diuers after euery humour. Saue if<sup>9</sup> **Antrax  
 is caused by  
 Melancholy,  
 Blood Choler  
 and Phlegm.**  
 12 blood & colre be feruent<sup>9</sup> togidere & malancolie be malicious, þan  
 þere falliþ manie harde pingis þerto, as quaking<sup>9</sup> of þe herte, &  
 sincopis, & out<sup>9</sup> of hise wittis, & sumtyme deef. & þe signes herof<sup>10</sup> **Symptoms of  
 Anthrax.**  
 ben greet<sup>10</sup> hardnes of þe enpostym, & þe schap þerof<sup>11</sup> as it<sup>11</sup> were a  
 16 pyn, & greet akyng<sup>11</sup>, & sumtyme he schal not<sup>11</sup> fele it<sup>11</sup>. And þerfore  
 .G. seip : hote apostyms, if<sup>12</sup> þei be not<sup>12</sup> felid, ben incurable. & **Galion.**  
 veynes þat<sup>13</sup> ben þeron wolen be of diuers colouris, & vpon þe  
 enpostym þere wole be as it<sup>13</sup> were a litil bladdre,<sup>6</sup> & þe colour þerof<sup>14</sup>  
 20 wole be as aischis, & it<sup>14</sup> semeþ þat<sup>14</sup> it<sup>14</sup> is drawe ynward wip a þreed.<sup>7</sup>  
 & þis enpostym is seid contagious.  
 Of humouris þat<sup>15</sup> ben [in]<sup>8</sup> natural, þese pingis<sup>9</sup> folowip þerof<sup>15</sup> /  
 Of fleume þat<sup>16</sup> is corrupt<sup>16</sup> cometh Bocia & testudines / Of malancolie  
 24 comeþ scrophule & glandule, as it<sup>16</sup> is aforseid. & of alle þese þou  
 schalt<sup>17</sup> haue propre chapitris / Of colre þat<sup>17</sup> is brent<sup>17</sup> & of opere  
 humouris þat<sup>18</sup> ben brent<sup>18</sup> & corrupt<sup>18</sup> þere comeþ manie pustulis, &  
 summe þerof<sup>19</sup> ben ful malicious after þe malice of þe matere / Herof<sup>20</sup>  
 28 comeþ ignis persicus, miliaris, formica, herpes, herpes estiomenus.

<sup>1</sup> ben, wanting.

<sup>2</sup> is, wanting.

<sup>3</sup> Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 53: facit apostema quod videtur vdimia, nisi quia in superficie magis rubet.

<sup>4</sup> Halle. Table, p. 115. "Scrophula (so called by Auicenna, Guidone de Cauliaco, Bruno, Theodorico, Lanfranco, and others a Scrophla, a pregnant soowe: because it or the lyke, is a disease common to hogs) is a harde Scirrhus tumore, in the glandules of the share or arme holes, but chiefly in the necke."

<sup>6</sup> Compare Guilelm. de Salic., I. 59. Sl. 277, fol. 11: "In þe antrax . . . þer been smale bladdres aboute þe copp of it, as þou3 fier hadde touched þe place."

<sup>7</sup> De propr. rer., lib. 7, cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 93: "And also it semeþ þat hit is i-drawe to þe ground þerof wip a maner þrede, i-fastned to þe vltir partye of þe bladder in þe myddel." Not in Guilelm. de Salic.

<sup>8</sup> in, wanting. Lat. De humoribus autem non naturalibus.

**ignis persicus.** Ignis persicus is a signe<sup>1</sup> þat þere ben manie pustule þeron & venymous water. & þe pustule ben reed al aboute & zelow, & occupieþ al þe lyme. & it is wiþ greet brennyng. & þis comeþ of colre brent and pinne / Miliaris haþ litil pustulis, & haþ not so 4 greet brennyng, ne þe place þerof is not so reed. & þis comeþ ofte of fleume medlid wiþ a litil colre // ¶ fformica is a pustula þat is swiþe feruent, & haþ a cruste aboue, & it comeþ of colre brent. & þis is goynge & fretiþ þe lyme aboue, & it hath greet brennyng // 8

**Pruna.** ¶ þe firste<sup>2</sup> is a pustula þat comeþ of malancolie & is blac or ledi, & it comeþ of þe venemous mater of malancoli / <sup>3</sup>Herpes esthiomenus. esthiomenus is as miche to seie as fretyng him-silf, & þis comeþ in manie maners / It comeþ in medlyng of colre þat is brent & 12 malancolie innatural & brent & sutil. & whanne þis falliþ into a lyme, it fretiþ þe lyme for þe greet malice þat it haþ // ¶ Also þer is anoper maner passioun þat haþ manie diuers names, for summen clepen it cancrum, & summen lupum. & men of fraunce clepen it 16 malum nostre domine<sup>4</sup> / And lumbardis clepen it fier of seint antony, & summen clepen it herisipulam. Of alle þese diuers names is no charge of, saue þe signes of þis sijknes ben þese: fretynge & brennyng & blac colour & stynkyng, & þat rizt foul 20 stynkyng. & or þe skyn þerof be to-broke, it wole not stynke, saue þe place þerof wole be ledi. & if þou felist þe place wiþ þi fyngir, þou schalt fynde þe fleisch þerof al corrupt // ¶ Cancer is a postym þat is swiþe corrupt. & is in .ij. maners: as cancer 24 vlceraus, & cancer þat is not vlceraus. ¶ A cankre þat is not

<sup>1</sup> *signe*, probably mistaken for *siknesse*. Lat. ignis persicus est egritudo in qua sunt multe pustule.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. Pruna similiter est pustula. The translator read: prima.—Phillips. "*Pruna*, a burning or live Coal; also a Carbuncle, Plague-sore, or fiery Botch."

<sup>4</sup> *malum nostre domine*; This name, given to *Erisipelas*, is due to the miraculous cures of this disease by intercession of the Holy Virgin. They are first reported by *Hugo Farsitus*, a canon of Saint Jean des Vignes, in Soissons. In his book, *De Miraculis Maria Suessionensis*, he relates the miracles, as seen by himself in the year 1128, and mentions several instances where women suffering from a severe skin-disease have been cured by the help of the Holy Virgin. Further account of a plague known under the name "*mal des ardents*" and of cures by the help of the Holy Virgin, is given by *Gautier de Coincy*. See G. d. C., ed. *Foquet*, p. 138.

The same disease is also called *fuoco di Sant Antonio*. See Tomm. Dict., *Maladie S. Antoine* (Godefr. Dict.). The Saints Germain, Main, Othoine and Verain, have likewise given their names to the *erisipelas*. *Quinte Ess.*, 8. 23: "fire of St. Antony, a brennyng sijknes clepid þe fier of helle."



vleceratus is in .ij. maners: oon comeþ of malancolie rotid, & bi- Cancer non  
vleceratus  
 gynneþ for to wexe in þe mychilnes of a fecche or of a pese. &  
 þanne it<sup>1</sup> wole wexe alwei in a maner brennyng; & euere as þe [1 lf. 131]  
 4 matere wexiþ, so wole þe brennyng<sup>t</sup> wexe forþ. & it wole haue  
 veynes of diuers colour. & sum colour þerof wole be ledi, & sum It has  
variously  
coloured  
veins,  
 wole be purpur, summe þerof wole be grene. & þan pis is ful of  
 colerik matere corrupt. & it haþ greet akyng, & if þou pressist<sup>t</sup>  
 8 it with þi fyngir, þe malice þerof wole be miche more / þis passioun  
 comounly wole wexe in placis þat ben glandule / þis maner en- and chiefly  
affects glandu-  
lous parts.  
 postym comeþ ofte in a mannes pies & in a wommans brest & in  
 opere placis / Cancer vleceratus. Alle þe signes þerof ben tofore  
 12 seid in his propre chapitre /

Now alle þe signes of enpostyms ben seid, go we to þe curis / Treatment of  
apostema.  
 þou must take kepe, wheþer þe enpostym come of causis wiþout-  
 forþ or wiþinne / If þe enpostym comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, Nota.  
 16 þanne þou must purge þe matere or þou leie þerto ony repercussijf<sup>t</sup>  
 or ony maturatif<sup>t</sup> or ony resoluyng<sup>t</sup> þing<sup>t</sup> / forwhi a repercussijf<sup>2</sup> mai  
 not do awei al þe matere, þou; it somewhat aswage þe akyng in þe  
 firste bigynnyng<sup>t</sup> / neþeles itt makip þe matere hard, & aftirward þe  
 20 patient<sup>3</sup> schulde haue þe more penaunce / A resoluyng<sup>t</sup> in an vnclene [1 lf. 131, bk.]  
 bodi drawip more matere þerto þan it resolueþ. ¶ A maturatif<sup>t</sup>  
 makip þe enpostym to wexe more, if his bodi be vnpurgid, & makip  
 þe matere of þe enpostym feruent / In what maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup>  
 24 purge diuers maters, in þe chapitre of allopucia þou schalt fynde it,  
 & in þe chapitre de doloribus iuncturarum, þat schal be seid here  
 aftir / þou schalt worche in enpostyms þat fallip in a mannes bodi  
 wiþoutforþ. If þou wost wel þat his bodi is replet, þis schal alwei  
 28 be þin entencioun, for to drawe þe matere awei in þis maner: / If  
 þe enpostym be in a mannes moup, þan þou schalt make him no  
 gargarisme;<sup>4</sup> & if it be in his ers, þan þou schalt make him no  
 laxatif<sup>t</sup> medicyn / & if it be in a wommans maris,<sup>5</sup> þan þou schalt  
 32 zeue hir no medicyn for to make menstrie; saue þou schalt alwei  
 go to þe contrarie herof: as if enpostyms be in partijs aboue, þan  
 þou schalt zeue catarticum / If þe enpostym be bineþe, þan zeue When the  
causes are  
external use  
a contrarious  
medicine, i. e.  
.Nota.

<sup>2</sup> MS. repercussist.

<sup>4</sup> *gargarisme*, a gargle. Vigo, Chirurgery, Interpretation: "A gargarisme is when we cause water to bubble in our throtes, not sufferynge it to go downe."

<sup>5</sup> *maris*, Lat. matrix, O.Fr. marris. Sloane 2463, fol. 194 bk.: "The moder is a skyn, þat þe childe is enclosed in his moder-wombe. And manye of þe sakenesses that women hauen, comen of greuauces of this moder, that we clepen þe marice."



an emetic,  
when it is in  
lower parts.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 132]

Repelling  
medicines  
must not be  
used in the  
following  
cases:

- .1.
- .2.
- .3. .4.
- .5.
- .6. .7.
- .8.
- .9.
- .10.

In case of a  
blood-apo-  
stema use  
a repelling  
followed by

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 132, bk.]

a solvent  
medicine.

In case of  
suppuration  
apply a  
maturing  
medicine.

Open the  
abscess when  
it is ripe.

.1.  
Take care  
not to cut,  
if the abscess  
is near a  
joint,  
looke  
weH upon  
thes  
Rulles

him medicyns for to caste. ¶ Whanne þe matere is purgid, þan bigynne we curis of hoot enpostyms / þou must<sup>1</sup> be war of reper-  
cussiuis in ten maners. ¶ Þe j. cause is þis, if his lodi be replet /  
as it is aforseid. ¶ Þe .ij. is, greet fume of humours & venymous. 4  
¶ Þe .iiij. is gretnes<sup>2</sup> of humours rotid. ¶ Þe .iiij. cause is, if  
apostym wexe in a noble lyme as in a mannes eere, or in a wommans  
tetis, or in þe rigge abouteforþ. ¶ Þe .v. cause is: if þe enpostym  
be in þe prote, or ny3 þe brayn, or in ony place ny3 þe herte, or ny3 8  
ony lyme þat norischeth / ¶ Þe .vj. cause is in a child. ¶ Þe .vij.  
cause is, if it be in an oold man. ¶ Þe .viij. cause is if it be in a  
man þat risiþ vp of sijknes. ¶ Þe .ix. cause is if it be apostema  
creticum.<sup>3</sup> ¶ Þe .x. cause is, if an enpostyme be in a noble 12  
membre, & be putt fro þat place to anoþer. ¶ In noon of þese .x.  
causis, þou schalt make noon repercussif in hote enpostyms as þou  
schalt fynde þe maner in þe antidotarie of repercussifs / ¶ To  
enpostyms of blood, þou mi3t do medicyns repercussifs & dis- 16  
solutiuis sotilly, so þat þe firste bigynnyng<sup>4</sup> repercussifs ouercome  
þe mater of enpostym myche, & in þe stat<sup>5</sup> of þe enpostym lasse, &  
in þe ende þerof þou schalt<sup>6</sup> vse clene resoluyng þingis / If þou  
mi3t not wiþ repercussiuis do awei þe enpostym ne resolue him, 20  
saue he bigynneb to quytture, þan þou schalt do þerto medicyns  
maturatiuis, til it be wel quytturid. ¶ Of repercussiuis resolutiuis  
maturatiuis & þe manere of worching þerof þou schalt fynde in þe  
antidotarie. ¶ Whanne þe enpostym is quytturid & sufficiently 24  
rotid, þis þou mi3t knowe whanne þe akyng is al aweie, & whanne  
þe matere is neische þerof, & þan opene þe enpostym, þat þou seest  
moost competent // Saue or þou opene ony enpostyms, þou must<sup>7</sup>  
be war of þus manie þinges: ¶ Þe j. is, þou schalt opene noon 28  
enpostym or he be perfilt rotid, but if þe enpostym rotid ony opir  
lyme, or þat he were ny3 ony noble lyme, or ny3 ony ioynct // In  
opere causis þou schalt abide til he be perfilt rotid. & in þe  
kutting þou schalt loke where þe skyn is most þinne and moost 32  
hangyng, & þere þou schalt opene þe enpostym. ¶ Þe .ij. enten-

<sup>2</sup> gretnes, grossities.

<sup>3</sup> creticum, Lat. criticum.

<sup>4</sup> þe firste bigynnyng, determination of tyme denoted by accusative. Add. 10,440, fol. 20: "and be war, þat þe tyme of chaungyng of þis medycyn þou take it not away with violence."

<sup>5</sup> in þe stat, Lat. in statu. Add. 27,944, fol. 98: "whan þe posteme is in state."

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: facias apertionem ubi materia magis dependet, et ubi pellis est magis tenuis.

- cioun is þis, þat þou schalt be war, whanne þou openest<sup>1</sup> an [1 ff. 133]  
 enpostym, þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine ne noon arterie. <sup>2.</sup> not to injure  
 ¶ þe .iiij. cause is, þat þou schalt not avoide al þe mater at oon <sup>3.</sup> a blood  
 4 tyme, & principali whanne þer is myche matere, & þe enpostym is <sup>4.</sup> vessel.  
 greet // ¶ þe .iiij. is þis, þou schalt alwei opene þe enpostym in <sup>5.</sup> to evacuate  
 endelong þe lyme & not ouerþwert. Whanne þou hast opened þe <sup>6.</sup> the pus  
 enpostym, þan þou schalt cure him vp<sup>2</sup> as it is aforseid in þe cure of <sup>7.</sup> slowly.  
 8 vleus virulentum. þan þou schalt fille þe wounde þerof with oold <sup>8.</sup> to cut in the  
 lynnene cloof þat is whizt, anoon to .iiij. daies [wip] mundificatiuis of <sup>9.</sup> the limb.  
 3elkis of eiren & mele, aftir .iiij. daies wip vnguentum apostolorum<sup>3</sup> R  
 & oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, &  
 12 wip regendring pingis & drijng pingis. ¶ A colerik enpostym <sup>10.</sup> Choleric  
 cometh late to rotyng, but if it be rotid wip ony mater leid wipout <sup>11.</sup> apostemas  
 forþ; þou shalt cure þis enpostym in þe same maner as þou schalt <sup>12.</sup> ripen slowly.  
 enpostyms of blood, saue þis mote haue coldere medicyns / Car- <sup>13.</sup> Nota.  
 16 bunculis schulen be curid as antrax, & þe cure herof schal be seid <sup>14.</sup> Carbuncles  
 hereafter. <sup>15.</sup> Vdimia schal not be smiten yn wip repercussiu<sup>5</sup> saue <sup>16.</sup> [4 ff. 133, bk.]  
 it schal be waastid awei in þe firste bigynnyng in þis maner. þou <sup>17.</sup> Udimia  
 schalt purge him with trocis<sup>6</sup> de turbit, or wip anoþer medicyn þat <sup>18.</sup> (Oedema)  
 20 purgip fleume. þan stewe<sup>7</sup> þat lyme wip a decoccioun of absinthij, <sup>19.</sup> shall be  
 abrotane, sticados, & squinanti. & take aischis of a vyne or of an <sup>20.</sup> treated with  
 ook, & make þerof lie & wete þerinne lynnene clopis & leie hem <sup>21.</sup> purging  
 vpon þe place hoot, & binde hem streite þerto þat it hile al þe <sup>22.</sup> medicines.  
 24 enpostym, & in þis maner þe matere þerof schal be drawen awei // <sup>23.</sup> Apply com-  
 If it so be þat þere be ony blood medlid þerwip, or if þer hap be <sup>24.</sup> presses.  
 leid þerto ony maturatif so þat þe mater þerof be rotid, þan opene <sup>25.</sup>  
 it. Whanne it is opened, it mote haue stronger mundificatiuis þan <sup>26.</sup> A softening  
 28 ony oþer for þe hardnes of þe quittance & þe greetnes þerof / þis is <sup>27.</sup> plaster used  
 a mollificatif þat rasis made & A. R. bdellij, galbani,<sup>8</sup> opoponac <sup>28.</sup> by  
<sup>29.</sup> Rasis  
<sup>30.</sup> .Auicen.

<sup>2</sup> cure him vp. Compare Sloane 277, fol. 1 b.: "be it flesched vp wip powdres & oynementes incarnatifes."

<sup>3</sup> Phillips. "Apostolorum Unguentum, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelue Drugs, according to the Number of the Apostles."

<sup>5</sup> Lat. vdimia proprie non repercutitur.

<sup>6</sup> trocisee, Lat. trociscus. Sloane 277, fol. 1 b. (xvth cent.), "a trosce of þe trosces maad azens scrophules." Vigo l. c. "Trochiscos in Greke is a lyttle whele. Amonge the apothecaries, it is a confection made of sondrye pouders and spices, by the meane of some lyquoure. In latine they call it Pastillum."

<sup>7</sup> stewe, Lat. evapora.

<sup>8</sup> "Galbanum, a kind of strong scented Gum issuing out of a Plant call'd Fennel-Giant, which grows in Syria." Phillips.



ana, & make hem neische with oile of lile in a morter, & grinde hem wel togidere. & þan do þerto fenigrecum & lynseed as myche as alle þe opere & medle hem wel togidere, & herof leie an enplastre vpon an hard enpostym wip þis onoly, or medle þerwip fatte <sup>1</sup>figis 4 & leie þis enplastre þerto til it be resolued & maad neische / þis medicyn makip an hard enpostym to bicomme neische & resolueþ him wipout ony swellynge / þer ben opere manye medicyns þat ben mollificatif & resoluyng þat þou schalt finde in þe antidotarie // 8

A watri apostym schal be curid as vdimia, saue it schal haue drier medicyns, & þou schalt cure him in þe same maner as it is seid in þe chapitre, whanne a mannes lyme is to gret, for to make it smal // Ventosum apostema, þat is apostym þat is ful of wijnd. þou 12 schalt cure it wip medicyns þat consumeþ wijnd wipinne & wipoute / wipinneforþ as of vsyng of comyn & carui, & he mote be war of growel<sup>2</sup> & metis þat swellip; wipoutforþ wip oile þat consumeþ wijnd, or with þis oile, R̄. rue, cimini, seminis fenicli, anisi, carui, 16 ameos<sup>3</sup>, apij, ana .ʒ. ʒ. cold oile li. ʒ., do alle þes in a viol. of glas, & do þat glas in a vessel wip water, & make þe water sepe & kepe wel þe glas þeron þat it breke not, & wip þis oile anoynte þe place

R̄ hoot / Item .R̄. calcem and <sup>4</sup>distempere it wip swete wijn, & make 20

R̄ þerof as it were an emplastre & leie þervpon / R̄. olii anetini<sup>5</sup> .ʒ. ij., cere. ʒ. ʒ., ysop þat it be drie & poudrid. ʒ. j., & make herof a plastre. ¶ Herisipilades<sup>6</sup> or flegmonides schulen be curid in þe same maner þat ben herisipulam & flegmon / Of glandulis & scrophulis, 24 we wolen speke in her propre chapitre //

¶ Anthrax schal be curid wip avoiding of noious matere, & wip pinges þat comfortip þe herte & þe vertu. Neþeles at þe firste bigynnyng her vertu failip, & summe þat ben late blood or purgid 28 ben lost / þerfore manie men ben agast for to lete hem blood or zeue hem ony medicyn laxatif / Ech mesel<sup>7</sup> if þe pacient be strong, I wole lete him blood adai, & in þe same nyȝt I wole zeue him a medicyn laxatif // Saue herof þou schalt take kepe if he be feble, 32 & his herte quake, & his pous falle, þan it is folie for to lete him

Treatment of Anthrax.

First remove the evil matter by bleeding and purging,

if the patient is strong,

<sup>2</sup> growel, Lat. legumina. See *Prompt. Parv.*, "Growelle or grewelle, Ligumen."

<sup>3</sup> ameos. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. ammeos.

<sup>5</sup> oleum anetinum, oil of Fennel.

<sup>6</sup> Phillips. "Erysipelatodes, a Swelling like the former [Erysipelas], the Skin being of a darker Colour, and the Symptoms more gentle: a Bastard Erysipelas."

<sup>7</sup> ech mesel, Lat. ego vero. Compare *selwyly*, *Prompt. Parv.*



- blood or zeue him ony medicyn laxatif, saue take þe cure oonly in  
 goddis hand // ¶ I wole telle an ensample þat<sup>t</sup> bifel in þe citee of  
 mediolanensis þat<sup>t</sup> it mowe be ensample to þee & lernyng<sup>t</sup> / þer was  
 4 a man of<sup>t</sup> xxx. wynter oold, <sup>1</sup>& an antrax come vpon him in þe riht-  
 side of<sup>t</sup> his necke, & he was so greet<sup>t</sup> woxe aboute his necke & his  
 prote, & he was so swollen, þat<sup>t</sup> þere was but litil difference bitwixe  
 þe gretnes of hise schuldris & his necke. & nepeles I fond his vertu  
 8 strong<sup>t</sup>. & I wiste what<sup>t</sup> sijknes it<sup>t</sup> was bi a bladdre þat<sup>t</sup> satt<sup>t</sup> þer  
 vpon, & was in þe rihtside of<sup>t</sup> his necke, & þat<sup>t</sup> was þe firste bigyn-  
 nyng<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> his sijknes / & nepeles þer is manye lechis of<sup>t</sup> greet<sup>t</sup> name  
 þat<sup>t</sup> cowde not<sup>t</sup> knowe þat<sup>t</sup> passioun / Also I lete him blood in boþe  
 12 his armis, & drowe out<sup>t</sup> blood ynow. & þo I dietide him as a man  
 þat<sup>t</sup> hadde a feuer agu. & amorowe I zaft<sup>t</sup> þe colature of<sup>t</sup> fruit<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup>  
 mirabolani citrini,<sup>2</sup> þe which þou schalt<sup>t</sup> fynde in þe chapitre of<sup>t</sup>  
 allopucia / Vpon þe enpostym þere þe bladdre was, I leide scabiose  
 16 grounden wiþ grese. I foond neuere bettere medicyns in þis caas þan  
 þese ben / For þe man was al dissolued of<sup>t</sup> his sijknes of<sup>t</sup> þe bren-  
 nyng<sup>t</sup> & of<sup>t</sup> þe akyng<sup>t</sup>, saue þe place þat<sup>t</sup> was to-swoollen, was not<sup>t</sup>  
 þe lasse, & þe man was not<sup>t</sup> þe more feblid for his laxatif, ne for no  
 20 medicyn þat<sup>t</sup> he hadde / & on þe morowe I lete him blood in his  
 oon arm,<sup>3</sup> & zaue him a medicyn laxatif in lasse quantite þan I dide  
 rapere, & þan þe swellynge aswagide niche, & in þe place þere þe  
 bl[a]ddre was I fond a maner cruste as it<sup>t</sup> were a þing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> were  
 24 brent<sup>t</sup> with fier & was of<sup>t</sup> þe brede of<sup>t</sup> iij. ynchis. & wipinne a fewe  
 daies þe cruste was arerid vp, & þe pacient<sup>t</sup> felide no greet<sup>t</sup> greu-  
 aunce. & in þe same place þere þe bladdre was, þere was a deep  
 vlcus. & þoruþ þe greet<sup>t</sup> hole I siz þe prote & þe gret<sup>t</sup> veines, & I  
 28 putte yn myn hond / & I zaft<sup>t</sup> þe pacient<sup>t</sup> good norischyng<sup>t</sup> metis, &  
 I made hool vlcus wiþ mundificatiuis, til he was al hool bi þe help  
 of<sup>t</sup> god //
- ¶ Pustule þat<sup>t</sup> comeþ of<sup>t</sup> humours corrupt<sup>t</sup> as ignis persicus<sup>4</sup> &  
 32 miliaris,<sup>5</sup> & <sup>6</sup>fformica<sup>7</sup> schal be purgid wiþ medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> purgip colre

and leave the  
 cure of a  
 feeble patient  
 in the hands  
 of God.

The author  
 relates how

[1 lf. 135]

he cured a  
 man, who  
 had a big  
 antrax on  
 his neck;

first he bled  
 him,

then he used  
 several  
 medicines.

Nota

[3 lf. 135, bk.]

A scab  
 appeared  
 on the part,

and under-  
 neath a  
 deeply-rooted  
 ulcer, which  
 he cured with  
 cleansing  
 medicines.

Ignis per-  
 sicus, Miliaris  
 and Formica

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts *hinc*, referring to another chapter.

<sup>4</sup> *ignis persicus*, Herpes zoster (Dunglison). Phillips: "a Gangrene, it is also taken for a Carbuncle or a fiery Plague Sore."

<sup>5</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 61, Add. 27,944: "*amonge auctoures þis euil is i-clepid herpes milii oþer graunlesus, an euil ful of graynes. But swiche bleyneþ beþ litil and smale as greynes of mylie.*" Phillips: "*Herpes Miliaris, or Pustularis, a sort of yellow Bladders or Wheals, like Millet-Seed, that seize the Skin, cause much itching, and turn to eating Ulcers.*"

<sup>6</sup> MS. ¶ instead of *s*.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *fformica*. Vigo Interpret. "Formica is a little excreescence, or

are treated  
with purging  
medicines.

[2 lf. 136]

Strengthen  
the patient's  
heart.

herpes esti-  
omēnes cura

Auicēn

Apply a  
medicine  
which pro-  
tects the  
limb from  
corruption,  
and cauterize  
the slough.

[7 lf. 136, bk.]

& malancolie. & þat same medicyn schal purge humours þat be brent, as fumus terre, cuscute, lappacium acutum, cene,<sup>1</sup> absinthium & opere mo / Also þou schalt voide þe matere wiþ medicyns þat comforten þe herte, & kepiþ þat þe venym ne smite not to þe 4 herte; þan þou schalt cure þe place with þingis þat makip cold vpon þe place. & whanne vlcus is þeron þan it is no nede, saue drie it vp as it is aforseid in þe cure <sup>2</sup>of vlcera. Saue abouteforþ þou schalt leie colde þingis til þe cure be perfitli do / & þere come ony 8 bifalling þerto,<sup>3</sup> þan alwei zeue him medicyns for to comforte þe herte, þat ben forseid in antrace // Sumtyme tofore alle þinges pruna<sup>4</sup> ben good / And formicam þou schalt brenne / fforwhi a cauterie drawip out al þe matere þat is corrupt & waastip it awei. 12

¶ Herpes estiomenus<sup>5</sup> is curid after þe purgacioun of þe matere, þat þou schalt algatis take hede for to do / if his vertu be strong. & þou schalt algate aboute þe sjuknes<sup>6</sup> leie a defensif of bole & terra sigillata & oile of ro. & vinegre / þis defensif, as seiþ .A., & I 16 haue ofte preued it, þis defendip eueri lyme fro corrupeioun, & þis wole not suffre þat þe matere schal make noon vlcercioun ne no fretyng. & vpon þe place þat is corrupt & deed, þou schalt leie an hoot iren, & do awei alle þe partis þat ben corrupt. & þis þou myzt 20 do with a medicyne corosif, saue an hoot iren is bettere / Whanne þe rotid matere is aweie, þanne make clene þe place wiþ a mundi- ficatif of iuys of ache, & do þerto a litil mirre. & whanne þe place is wel clensid, þan do þerto a medicin <sup>7</sup>for to regendre fleisch, & 24 þanne drie it vp /

### Of empostyms of þe heed //

¶ iij<sup>o</sup> c<sup>o</sup>

**T**How<sup>3</sup> we han maad a general tale of enpostyms, neþeles apostym in eueri lyme haþ diuers curis / þerfore I wole make to every 28

outgrowynge in the Skynne, somewhat brode aboute the botome, which when it is scratched causeth as it were the styngynge of an ante, or pismare, and therefore it is also called in greke myrmecia."

<sup>1</sup> cene for sene.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. si praua superveniunt accidentia. . .

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: Aliquando super omnia adiuuat prunam et formicam urere. The translator misunderstood *pruna* (name of the disease) for *pruna* (plums). Compare page 208, note 2.

<sup>5</sup> Vigo Interpret. "If the substaunce be grosse, and aygre it vlcereþ the skynne vnto the fleshe, & is called herpes esthiomenos, that is eatynge or gnawynge herpes."

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: sed ponendo supra locum sanum iuxta ægritudinem defensionum. . .



- enpostym a diuers chapiter // ¶ I seie þat in þe skyn of a mannes heed ben diuers enpostyms / If þere be<sup>1</sup> enpostym þerof sutil fleume, ful of fleume as it schal be seid heraftir in þe chapitre of
- 4 *bocium*<sup>2</sup> / þis maner sijknes is engendrid bitwene þe skyn & the fleisch, & it is su[n]what holow<sup>3</sup>, & ben clepid testudines for þe lijknes of a beest þat is clepid so, & ben engendrid of hard fleume, & ben, as it were, hard knottis þat were maad fast to þe scolle, as it
- 8 were hornis / For I seie a man came to me, & he hadde in his heed vij. suche maner þingis in diuers placis, & summe þerof weren as longe & as scharp as it were a gotis horn or þe lenkþe of a mannes pombe, & þei weren greuours to þe man, & I hadde miche wondre
- 12 þat þer were noon vlcera in þe skyn / Whanne I siȝ wel þat þei hadden her bigynnyng of þe scolle boon, I<sup>4</sup> wolde not entermete þerwith of þe cure, & I counseilide him þat he schulde putte him into no mannes cure for to cure him, for it þouȝte to me impossible.
- 16 ¶ þe curis of al þe enpostyms in þe heed, ben þese / If it be of neische matere or of rotid matere, þan þou schalt not take hede for to drie it wiþ mollificatiuis, þouȝ I seide so in enpostyms of fleume in þe general chapitre; for þat myȝte schende<sup>5</sup> þe scolle wiþ
- 20 liquid mater or corrupt matere. & if þe matere þerof is hard, make it neische wiþ maturatiuis, saue lete þou not it rotie to myche. & or it be rotid to miche, opene it in þe maner of a triangle þus; for þis empostym of þe heed for þe gretnes of þe skyn, and for it is ful
- 24 of pooris, it mai not wel be clensid, but if þe woundis were so miche þat þe mundificatif myȝte come to þe botme. Whanne þe enpostym is kutt in þe forseid maner, þanne avoide þe mater & fille þe place al wiþ pecis wet in oil of *rosis*, & sugre molten þeron, &
- 28 alym & leie þis in þe botme þerof til<sup>6</sup> þe place be wel maad clene. Aftirward wiþ *vnguentum apostolorum* & opere þingis þat engendriþ fleisch, cure him as it is forseid in þe cure of vlcers þat ben olde //
- ¶ *Nodus* is curid wiþ kuttyng of þe skyn endelongis vpon
- 32 þe place & drawe him out wiþ alle hise rotis. & if þer leueþ ony rote of him, þan leie þeron þe poudre of *affadillorum*, or of sum

The Testudines are between the skin and the flesh, and are like hard knots.

<sup>3</sup> *reta mirabilis*  
A man came to Lanfranc, with seven such knots situated on his skull.

[4 ff. 137.]

Lanfranc thought the cure impossible.

Treatment of Apostemas on the head.

If the swelling is hard, soften it with maturatives, open it, and cleanse the wound.

*Nodus* must be removed by cutting and by the use of a Corrosive.

<sup>1</sup> *be*, above line.

<sup>2</sup> This passage is corrupt. Lat.: *Nam fiunt ibi apostemata a subtili phlegmate vel ab alia phlegmatis specie ut mucilaginosi et pulnosi et est sicut cancerosi bocii erit dictum.*

<sup>3</sup> *Vigo Chirurgery transl. Traheron, fol. 5*: "The sayde Rhete mirabile is like a nette, and is therefore called Rhete, for thys pannicle is compounded onely wyth Arteries, as Guido hath declared."

<sup>5</sup> *schende*. Lat.: *quia sic posset cranium inficere liquida materia.*



Water in a child's head is fatal, when within the skull;

when outside the skull, it may be cured, with ointments, and caustics.

This affection owing to the

[3 lf. 138]

particular position of the child in the mother's womb.

lizt<sup>r</sup> corosif<sup>r</sup> or vnguentum viride, þat<sup>r</sup> þe rotis þerof<sup>r</sup> mowe frete awei þerwip; & þan regendre & þan drie it<sup>r</sup> vp // Watir þat<sup>r</sup> is gaderid in children hedis,<sup>1</sup> ouþer it<sup>r</sup> is wipinne þe scolle or wipoute þe scolle / If<sup>r</sup> it<sup>r</sup> be withynne þe scole, it semep to me so perilous, 4 þat I wole bitake þe cure to god / If<sup>r</sup> þe watir be withoutforþ, it<sup>r</sup> mai be curid wip anointing<sup>r</sup> of oile of camomille & solfre grounden togidere; & þanne make him .iiij. cauterijs: oon a litil aboute þe forehead, & oon bihinde þe nolle in þe welle<sup>2</sup> þerof<sup>r</sup>, & oon aboute þe 8 hindere celle. þese cauterijs wip þe forseid anoyntingis drieþ & waastip þe matere of þe watir // ¶ þe water þat<sup>r</sup> comep in children hedis, is engendrid in þis manere / whanne <sup>3</sup>þe maris of a womman is watri, & þe child þat<sup>r</sup> lijþ þerine lijþ foldyng<sup>r</sup> adounward his heed 12 vpon hise knees. & þan þe moisture fallip adoun & fyndip a void place in þe childis heed & entriþ þerinne / & þis passion makip a child deed ofte, or he haue ony age for to be holpen /

/ Of enpostyms of þe rootis of a mannes eeris // 16

¶ .iiij. .co

An apostema on the roots of the ear occurs sometimes, when the patient is feeble.

It is often fatal.

[4 lf. 138, bk.]

Begin the cure with mitigatives,

apply oil of bitter almonds.

**A** Postyme þat<sup>r</sup> comep in a mannes eere or in þe rotis of a mannis eeren. & þis comep sumtyme in die cretico, whanne þat<sup>r</sup> a mannes kynde is not so mizti for to putte out<sup>r</sup> þe gretnes of þe mater bi sote ne bi noon oper avoiding<sup>r</sup>, & þan kynde worchip 20 what it<sup>r</sup> mai, & driueþ þe matere an hiz to þe heed & abidiþ in þe rotis of þe eeren, & þere it<sup>r</sup> engendriþ apostym. & in þis place it<sup>r</sup> is perilous, for it<sup>r</sup> is so nyȝ þe heed & veynes & arterijs & neruys / þis manere enpostym ofte sleep a man whanne þe matere comep 24 violently // þe matere of þis enpostym, ouþer it<sup>r</sup> is colre, or blood, or fleume, or malancoli; & alle þe signes herof<sup>r</sup> ben aforseid / þe cure of <sup>4</sup>þis enpostym mai not bigynne with repercussiuus, saue it mote bigynne wip mitigatiuis, & with pingis þat<sup>r</sup> puttip out<sup>r</sup> þe 28 matere / Waische þe place wip a decoccioun of camomille soden þerinne / & þanne aftir þat<sup>r</sup> anoynte þe same place with oile of camomille, & þan wete wolle in þe same oile & leie þervpon, & bi no maner leue þou not þat þou leie in his eere oile of bittir almaundis, 32 for it<sup>r</sup> is a greet<sup>r</sup> help // ¶ If<sup>r</sup> þe mater be deep & it<sup>r</sup> be hard for to drawe it<sup>r</sup> out, þan it<sup>r</sup> were good to sette vpon þe place a drie ventose

<sup>1</sup> Hydrocephalus and its cure is treated at some length by most of the ancient physicians. See *Paul. Aegineta*, ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 250. Our author's description is abridged from *Gulielm. de Salic.*, lib. I., cap. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *nelle*, Lat. fontinella.

- for to helpe to drawe out<sup>t</sup> þe matere, & aftir resoluē þe matere &  
 leie þerto mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akyngē / ¶ If þe matere wole  
 not<sup>t</sup> be resoluē in þis maner, saue it<sup>t</sup> bigynneþ to be quittance þeron, If pus is  
 formed, open  
 the apostema,  
 taking care  
 not to injure  
 a blood-vessel  
 or a nerve.  
 4 þan wiþ tempere maturatiuis þat<sup>t</sup> ben not to hote, make þe enpostym  
 quittance / Whanne þe place is wel rotid abide þou no brekyng<sup>t</sup> of þe  
 enpostym, saue opene þe place sotilly wiþ an instrument<sup>t</sup> þat is com-  
 petent<sup>t</sup> þerto / & þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no veyne, ne  
 8 noon arterie, ne no senewe, for þerof<sup>t</sup> miȝt come <sup>1</sup>myche perel, for [1 lf. 139]  
 þere ben nerues in þe same place, if<sup>t</sup> þei were kutt<sup>t</sup> or prickid, þe  
 pacient<sup>t</sup> miȝte lese his vois for euere / & if<sup>t</sup> þere were ony veyne  
 kutt<sup>t</sup> þerof<sup>t</sup>, þer miȝt come greet<sup>t</sup> perel þerof<sup>t</sup>. & whanne þe place is<sup>t</sup>  
 12 opened, þan make þe place clene wiþ mundificatiuis, þat<sup>t</sup> schulen be Then cleanse  
 the wound.  
 seid in þe antidotarie / & whanne þe place is perfitli clene, þanne  
 make þe fleisch wexe & do þe cure perfitli / For bi yuel curyng<sup>t</sup> in  
 þis place miȝt engendre a festre, þat<sup>t</sup> ofte tyme comeþ of<sup>t</sup> an  
 16 enpostym /

### Apostyms of þe necke and of þe þrote /

- A** Postyms þat ben in þis place, or it<sup>t</sup> is wiþoutforþ in þe ¶ v. c.  
 senewis, or in þe braun, or it<sup>t</sup> is wiþinneforþ bi þe place þat<sup>t</sup>  
 20 a mannes mete goiþ doun, or bi þe þrote, or it<sup>t</sup> is bitwixe þe .ij.  
 placis in a place þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid ismon.<sup>2</sup> & comounli þe enpostyms  
 þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þis place, comeþ of blood, or of fleume, & ful seelden it<sup>t</sup>  
 comeþ of colre, & more lattere of malancoli. þe humours þat<sup>t</sup> ben  
 24 in þe cause,<sup>3</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi signes aforseid / If þe matere be  
 in þe braun of the necke wiþoutforþ, þat þou miȝt knowe <sup>4</sup>bi schew-  
 ing<sup>t</sup> of þe enpostym wiþoutforþ. & bi þese signes þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe  
 whanne þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, if þer is no letting<sup>t</sup> in ysophagus  
 28 þere þe mete schulde go adoun, & if<sup>t</sup> wijnd be not<sup>t</sup> stoppid, þan þou  
 miȝt<sup>t</sup> wite wel þat þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, & also bi þe schew-  
 ing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is outward / And if<sup>t</sup> þe enpostym is wiþinne, þan þe  
 pacient<sup>t</sup> schal not<sup>t</sup> swolowe adoun his mete, ne drawe wel his bleep /  
 32 If þe enpostym þat<sup>t</sup> is wiþinne swelle greetly, his iȝen wolen swelle  
 þerwiþ, & he schal not<sup>t</sup> suffre his tunge in his mouþ, & he ne schal
- Apotemes of  
 the neck or  
 the throat,  
 are either  
 external or  
 internal.
- In the former  
 case, an out-  
 ward swelling  
 will be seen,  
 but the swal-  
 lowing and  
 breathing will  
 not be af-  
 fected.
- If the apos-  
 tema is  
 internal,  
 swallowing  
 and breathing  
 will be diffi-  
 cult.

<sup>2</sup> ismon. *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 26, "Ysinon est inter ysosagum et tra-  
 cheam arteriam." Read *Ysmon*. From ἰσμός, neck, narrow passage. See  
*ισμός* in *Stephanus Thesaur.* De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 24, Add. 27,944,  
 fol. 49 bk.: "ð it happiþ þat þis euēl matere is somtyme al i-gedred wiþ-  
 inne þe skynne þat departiþ þe weye of þe bleep from þe weye of þe mete &  
 drynke, þat hatte isophagus & bredeþ squynancye, þat sleep in on day."

<sup>3</sup> See page 194, note 8.



Some physicians  
'break' this  
apostema  
with a piece  
of wood,  
but that is  
dangerous.

First, bleed  
the patient  
either from  
the Vena

[<sup>3</sup> If. 140]

Basilica or  
Mediana,

on the next  
day from a  
vein under  
the tongue,

then give  
a gargar-  
isme,  
mixed with  
the excre-  
ments of a  
sparrow, hen,  
dog, or a  
child.

The patient  
shall drink  
barley-water  
[<sup>3</sup> If. 140, bk.]

Rx

and eat a pre-  
paration of  
wheat-bran.

not<sup>1</sup> speke, & þer wole go out<sup>1</sup> miche spume of his moup / þanne  
summe lechis þat<sup>1</sup> ben hardi wolen putte a smal tree in his prote &  
breke þe enpostym, & in þat<sup>1</sup> maner þe pacient mai be delyuered ;  
saue þis maner worching<sup>1</sup> is not<sup>1</sup> sure, for in þis maner manie men<sup>4</sup>  
dieþ, & þe deep comeþ not<sup>1</sup> of þe sijknese, saue it is defaute in þe  
leche<sup>1</sup> / þis maner sijknese þat<sup>1</sup> is so hid wiþinneforþ, it mai be helid  
wel in þe bigynnyng<sup>1</sup> in þis maner<sup>2</sup> / If<sup>1</sup> þe enpostym be hoot, þou  
schalt<sup>1</sup> lete him blood in þe veine þat<sup>1</sup> is clepid basilica, & if þe<sup>8</sup>  
patient hap had þe<sup>3</sup> sijknese longe or þou come to him, þan þou  
schalt<sup>1</sup> lete him blood in þe middil veyne of þe arm þat<sup>1</sup> is clepid  
mediana, & he schal blede so longe til he swoone almoost, & prin-  
cipali if he be strong<sup>1</sup> & ful of fleisch / In þe .ij. dai þou schalt<sup>12</sup>  
lete him blood in þe veines vndir þe tunge / & loke þat<sup>1</sup> þou do no  
ping<sup>1</sup> aftir her counseil þat<sup>1</sup> seien þat<sup>1</sup> in þe firste bigynnyng<sup>1</sup> þou  
schalt<sup>1</sup> lete him blood in veines vndir þe tunge, & after þat<sup>1</sup> in þe  
heed veine or in sum opere place. For in þis manere letyng<sup>1</sup> blood, 16  
if his bodi were replet, he miȝt<sup>1</sup> liztli be achekid// ¶ Whanne þou  
hast<sup>1</sup> lete him blood as it is aforseid, þan make him a gargarisme  
wiþ a decoccioun of ro., sumac,<sup>4</sup> balaustiarum, lentium, & galla-  
rum wiþ þe which be distemperid þerwiþ diameron,<sup>5</sup> or tordis of<sup>20</sup>  
a sparrow, or of an hen, or þe tord of an hound þat<sup>1</sup> etip manie  
boonyes & noon opere mete,<sup>6</sup> or a childis tord dried while it is souk-  
yng. ¶ Also take an houndis tord þat<sup>1</sup> etip oonly boonis & of  
hennis, satireye<sup>7</sup> ana, & make þerof poudre & distempere it wiþ<sup>24</sup>  
water & hony, & make þerof a gargarisme, & he schal drinke water  
of barley, & he schal no ping<sup>1</sup> ete, saue a ping<sup>1</sup> maad of wheete-<sup>8</sup> bran  
in þis maner<sup>9</sup> / Take newe bran of whete & caste þeron hoot water  
& hele it & lete it stonde so an hour, & þanne grinde it in a morter<sup>28</sup>  
wiþ a pestel & cole it, & þanne sepe it wiþ a litil salt & ȝeue it þe

<sup>1</sup> it is defaute in þe leche, Lat. medico imputatur.

<sup>2</sup> Much of our author's treatment is borrowed from *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. 19, Cap. 11, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 188.

<sup>4</sup> *sumac*, Fr. Sumac; Arab. Summāq. "*Sumach* or *Sumack*, a kind of rank-smelling Shrub that bears a black Berry, made use of by Curriers to dress their Leather." Phillips.

<sup>5</sup> *diameron*, διαμώρων. *Vigo* Interpretation, "*Diamoron*, a confection made of mulberries."

<sup>6</sup> By this kind of food the *album græcum*, the white dung of a dog is produced.

<sup>7</sup> *satireye*, savory. Wr. Wül. 609, 30 (xv), sauereye.

<sup>9</sup> Lat.: nihilque comedat nisi candarusium factum de fursure in hunc modum. *Matth. Sylv.*: "*Candarus* vel *candarusium*—est ordeum cui non est cortex," from *χόνδρος*, grain, groat.



- patient<sup>1</sup> / & do þeron penidis.<sup>1</sup> & if he mai not swolowe it adoun,  
 þanne sette a lital ventuse in þe welle of his necke<sup>2</sup> with fier & þan  
 he schal swolowe, & anynte al his necke tofore & bihinde wip oile  
 4 of camomille. & vpon þe anyntyng<sup>3</sup> leie wolle vnwaischen,<sup>3</sup> &  
 make a sutil plastre of a nest of irundinis, & is good for þe  
 squinacie,<sup>4</sup> & is maad in þis maner / Take a nest of irundinis &  
 boile it longe in watir, & þanne cole it þoruȝ a seue þat þe grete  
 8 gobetis moun be cast awei / þan take þe rotis of lilie & seþe hem  
 in oþer water & rotis of bismalue, & þe rote of brionie & leues of  
 malue & bismalue, & violet, & peritorie,<sup>5</sup> & whanne þei ben  
 boilid, grinde hem wel, & medle hem wip water of irundinum þat  
 12 is forseil, & do þerto leueyne & mele of fenigreci, & þan do þerto  
 oile or grese, & make herof an enplastre / þis enplastre is good to  
 resolute enpostym & make it quittance, wheþer it be wipinne or wip-  
 16 oute, & make it abroad upon a cloop & leie it vpon hoot. &  
 anointing<sup>6</sup> is good wip oile of camomille medlid wip butter þat it  
 be oold & not salt, & after þe anyntyng<sup>7</sup> leie þervpon wolle  
 vnwaische // ¶ If þe enpostym be wipinne, it is good þat me leie  
 þerto no repercussiuus, saue vse gargarismis maad in þis manere / R,  
 20 ficus siccas, semen malue, semen lini, seþe þese in water & þan cole  
 hem, & make þerof a gargarisme; or water of figis medlid wip  
 butter, þat makip maturatif eueri maner enpostym.

Anoint his neck,

and apply a plaster made from a swallow's nest.

R

Irundines .i.d. est swallows.

How to prepare this plaster.

[c. 11. 141]

In case of an inward apostema use a gargle.

R

<sup>1</sup> *penidis*, Vigo Interpr. "*Penidie* are made of the Apothecaries wyth suggre wrethen lyke ropes." Fr. *penide*; Lat. *penidium*, from *πενιον*: spool on which the woof is wound.—Compare *diapenidion* in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, 1886, II. p. 77, note.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *tofore* inserted but deleted.

<sup>3</sup> *wolle vnwaischen*, *vn*, in margin. Lat. *lana succida*, Lewis, *Latin Dict.*, gives a reference from *App. Apologia*: *recens lana tonsa succida appellata est*.

<sup>4</sup> *squinacie*, Lat. *squinatia*, quinsy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 357, note.

<sup>5</sup> *peritorie*, Lat. *parietaria*; wall-pellitory.

<sup>7</sup> The passage from lf. 141, l. 5 till lf. 141, bk., l. 8 (p. 220, l. 15), is repeated in lf. 143, with some alterations. The corresponding words from the Latin are quoted to show the independent character of the two versions. l. 18, 19. If þe — — manere] It is good if þe enpostym be wipinne or þe more partie be withynne, & if it mai not be resolved ne do awei wip repercussiuus, þan it is good to vse gargarisms, þat ben maturatifs, maad in þis maner. (*Bonum est etiam si apostema fuerit interius, aut maior eius pars, cum tempus prolongatur quod non repercutitur nec resolvitur: uti maturatiuis gargarismatibus ut hoc.*) 20, 21. seþe — — cole hem] putte hem in water & seþe hem in water (*coque in aqua*). 21. or] & medle þerwip. 21, 22. medled wip butter] & butter & wijn. þat makip — — enpostym] þis wole make enpostym þat is withynne in þe þrote maturatif (*maturat omne intrinsecum apostema siue in gutture siue in stomacho siue in intestinis fuerit generatum*).

If this apostema shows itself outwardly, it must be carefully opened and cleansed.

Ranula vnder the toung an apostema that affects the breathing and swallowing.

A Lady had an internal and external swelling on her neck,

Whanne þe enpostym is rotid; þat þou schalt knowe bi þe aswaging<sup>1</sup> of þe akyng, & if þe enpostym schewe wipoutforþ, þanne opene it wip an instrument, & be war þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine, ne noon arterie. & whanne it is opened, make it clene 4 wip mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie / And if þe enpostym be wipinneforþ, þan þou schalt not breke it wip þis gargarisme þat is aforseid, saue þou schalt make a gargarism þat haly vside / Take galle, acacie, psidiarum, balaustie, aluminis 8  
[<sup>2</sup> If. 141, bk.] iamini<sup>1</sup> & sepe hem in water & cole it & make <sup>2</sup>perof a gargarism, for þis gargarism wole breke enpostym / Whanne þe enpostym is broke, þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater wip hoot water, & dissolue þerinne butter & oile of violets, & make perof a gargarism, & 12 lete him vse þis gargarism til al þe matere be drawe out, & þan after þat make him a gargarism of liquiricie,<sup>3</sup> yreos & tamarisci / If þe matere be coold, þan þou muste vse hottere gargarism, & þan þou muste vse mundificatiuis þat per be þerinne mirre, sarcocolle,<sup>4</sup> 16 þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie in þe chapitre of mundificatiuis. ¶ It falliþ sumtyme þat for reume þat falliþ adoun of a mannis heed, þer wexiþ in þe rote of þe tunge a maner round ping<sup>1</sup> in þe gretnes of an almaunde, & lettif a man þat he mai not wel 20 drawe his breeþ ne ete his mete / & in þis maner þou schalt cure him as it is forseid wip þingis þat voidiþ þe matere & wip resoluyngþe þingis. ¶ I wole sette in þis place a cure þat bifel in þe citee of mediolanensis of a ladi þat was .L. wynter oold, & hadde a squi- 24 nacie of fleume þat occupiede al hir necke tofore wipinne & wipoute,

1, 2. þe aswaging] cesing. and if] if. 2. schewe] be seen. 3, 4. be — arterie] be wel war of veynes & arterijs. 4. whanne it is opened] þan. 5. and] om. 6, 8. wipinneforþ — — galle] al wipinne & wole not breke wip þe gargarism þat is aforseid of butter & figis & water & wijn, þan þou schalt breke him wip a medicyn þat haly þe abbot vside as wip a gargarism of gallarum. (*Si fuerit intra, nec rumpatur: cum gargarismate predicto de butyro, ficuum aqua et vino rumpatur cum ingenio subtili Haly ab. scilicet cum gargarismate stypticorum sicut decoctionis gallarum.*) 9. & sepe — — perof a gargarism] om. 10. wole breke] brekiþ þe. 11. þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater] drawe out þe quitture. 11, 12. & — butter] & a litil butter þerinne. 12. & make perof] & herof he schal make. 12, 13. & lete him vse þis gargarism] om. matere be drawe out & þan] quitture be drawen awei after þat. 14. of liquirice — tamarisci] wip liquoris & thamarisci soden in watir.

<sup>1</sup> *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 1, "*Alumen iamem, A. scissum, Alimen de pluma, idem.*"—*Matth. Sylv.* "*Lamen est provincia Iameni uel Aliamen.*"

<sup>3</sup> *liquiricie*, lycoryce, *Pr. Parc.*, p. 303. See *lyquoris* in 2nd version.

<sup>4</sup> *Sarcocolla* "Is the Gumme or liquore of a tree growyng in Persia." *Halle. Table*, p. 109.



- <sup>1</sup>saue wiþoutforþ þe swelling<sup>1</sup> was moost<sup>1</sup>, & þe womman miȝte not<sup>1</sup> [<sup>1</sup> lf. 142]  
speke, ne swolowe in no mete. & þis womman was vndir þe cure of<sup>1</sup> she could  
neither speak  
nor eat,  
a ȝong<sup>1</sup> man þat<sup>1</sup> was my scolur, and he cowde not<sup>1</sup> wel fare þerwiþ,  
4 & þo he was in dispeir of hir lijf<sup>1</sup>, I was sent after & found hir in  
wickide staat,<sup>2</sup> for sche eet<sup>1</sup> no mete in manye daies tofore, & sche nor sleep for  
fear of  
choking.  
durst<sup>1</sup> not<sup>1</sup> slepe for drede, lest sche schulde be achekid. þan I  
tastide hir pous, & it<sup>1</sup> was wondir feble, & I tastide þe place of<sup>1</sup> þe  
8 enpostym, & I knewe wel þat<sup>1</sup> sche schulde be rapere achekid þan  
þe enpostym wolde breke wiþoute or withynne, for þe matere was  
so greet<sup>1</sup> / & þan I took a rasour, & lokide where þe matere was Lanfranc  
opened the  
apostema  
with a razor,  
where it was  
most ripe.  
moost<sup>1</sup> gaderid for to engendre quittance, & it<sup>1</sup> was moost<sup>1</sup> able vndir  
12 þe chyn, & I felide þe place wiþ myn hond & tastide it<sup>1</sup> aboute þat<sup>1</sup>  
I miȝte be war of<sup>1</sup> nerues & arterijs, & þere I made a wounde, &  
þere I drowe out<sup>1</sup> matere þat<sup>1</sup> was corrupt, & it<sup>1</sup> was foul stynkyng  
matere, & al miȝte I not<sup>1</sup> avoide anon. & þo þe pacient<sup>1</sup> hadde The patient  
could breathe,  
[<sup>1</sup> lf. 142, bk.]  
16 bettere hir breep, & hir pous was confortid,<sup>3</sup> for þe lungis miȝte take  
yn eir, & þerwiþ þe herte was confortid, & þan I ȝaf<sup>1</sup> hir broþ, &  
þat<sup>1</sup> ȝede out<sup>1</sup> þoruȝ þe wounde þe moost<sup>1</sup> part<sup>1</sup>. þo I studiede how  
I miȝte best<sup>1</sup> do, & I lete make a pipe of<sup>1</sup> siluir, and putte it<sup>1</sup> in at  
20 hir mouþ & passide forþere þan þe wounde was, þat<sup>1</sup> it<sup>1</sup> miȝte fulfille  
þe place of<sup>1</sup> þe prote. & þan I leide al aboute hir necke mundifi-  
catius & maturatiuis for to quittance þe toþer deel of<sup>1</sup> þe matere, &  
so I kepte it<sup>1</sup> til þer come out<sup>1</sup> of<sup>1</sup> þe wounde a greet<sup>1</sup> gobet<sup>1</sup> of  
24 viscous matere & stynkyng<sup>1</sup>, & was schape as it<sup>1</sup> were a greet<sup>1</sup> gutt<sup>1</sup>.  
& þerinne þe firste matere was engendrid, & whanne þis was oute,  
þe stynking<sup>1</sup> wente awei þerwiþ, & þe womman bigan to be stronger,  
& whanne þe wounde was maad clene I driede it<sup>1</sup> vp & soudide it<sup>1</sup>;  
28 & in þis maner þe pacient<sup>1</sup> was maad hool. ¶ Whanne þou fyndist  
coold matere rotid in þe forseid placis, þou schalt<sup>1</sup> not<sup>1</sup> abide til þe  
enpostym breke him-silf<sup>1</sup>, saue þou schalt<sup>1</sup> opene it<sup>1</sup> as it<sup>1</sup> is aforseid /  
& if<sup>1</sup> it<sup>1</sup> be not<sup>1</sup> rotid, þan make it<sup>1</sup> more maturatif, & opene it<sup>1</sup> as it<sup>1</sup>  
32 is aforseid / And þis þou muste wite þat<sup>1</sup> þou miȝte <sup>4</sup>not<sup>1</sup> abide to  
longe wiþ þe openyng<sup>1</sup>: for þe herte & þe spiritual lymes ne mowe  
not<sup>1</sup> longe endure wiþouten eir. [<sup>4</sup> lf. 143]

<sup>2</sup> in wickide staat, in statu pessimo.



/ Of enpostym of subcilio /<sup>1</sup>

¶ vjo. co.  
If there is a  
hot apostema  
in the arm-  
pit, bleed  
from the  
Vena nigra  
or basilica.  
If the apos-  
tema is cold,  
use mild  
medicines,

and open it,  
when it is  
ripe.

[<sup>4</sup> If. 144]

bubo.  
is difficult  
to heal.

Gation.

THIS maner of enpostym haþ no nede of repercuſſiuis for causis  
þat ben aforſeid, ſaue it is<sup>2</sup> greet nede þat he be avoidid wel  
wiþ purgaciouns / And if þe enpostym be hoot, þou ſchalt lete him 4  
blood in a veyne þat is clepid vena nigra,<sup>3</sup> or in þe veyne þat is  
clepid basilica in þe arm. & if þe matere be coold, þan avoide þe  
matere wiþ medicyns maad of turbit or sum oþer medicyn þat  
falliþ þerfore. & as myche as þou miȝt þou ſchalt take þerto wiþ 8  
medicyns þat haue not to greet drawyng / For if þou leiſt þerto  
þingis þat ben to strong drawyng, þan þe enpostym wole wexe þe  
more / þerfore þou ſchalt anoynte him wiþ oile of camomille, &  
leie þervpon wolle vnwaiſchen. & his dieting ſchal be ſotil. & if 12  
þis ſuffiſe not, þan leie vpon a maturatiþ / & whanne it is rotid þou  
ſchalt opene 4it, & principali if it be of coold matere. Saue if<sup>5</sup>  
þere be glandule þeron, as it falliþ ofte, & it be not our al rotid,  
as in oon place hard anopir place neische, þan þou ſchalt haue þis 16  
in certain, þat þis passioun ſchal be clepid bubo, & þe cure þerof is  
hard.<sup>6</sup> For if þou drawiſt out þe matere þat is neische,<sup>7</sup> þe matere  
þat is hard is yuel to defie. & ofte þer comeþ þerof ſcliroſis or a  
feſtre, & it wole make a man yuel diſpoſid & feuerous, as G. ſeip.<sup>8</sup> 20  
& þerfore aſwage þe akynge & þan make rotyng wiþ maturatiuis;  
for þe matere þat is rotid wole helpe to rotie þe matere þat is hard.  
& whanne it is al neische þanne opene it / If it ſo be þat it breke  
bi it-ſilf or it be ful rotid, þan do þerto mundificatiuis, & vpon þe 24  
place þat is hard leie maturatiuis, & kepe wel þe place þat is open  
fro feſtrynge. Mundificatiuis & maturatiuis þou ſchalt fynde in þe  
antidotarie pleynlier.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: De apostemate sub titillico, id est sub ascellis. The translator made *subcilio* out of *sub ascellis*; *titillicum*, arm-pit, from *titillo*, tickle.

<sup>2</sup> is, above line.

<sup>3</sup> Matth. Sylv.: "Nigra uena, purpurea, media communis." V. media = V. mediana.

<sup>5</sup> save if, Lat. hoc saluo, si esset . . .

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: tunc nullam habes viam tutam, quum tunc est bubo, cuius cura est difficilis.

<sup>7</sup> MS. inserts &.

<sup>8</sup> Lat.: "totum corpus in mala tenet dispositione febris et doloris; tamquam qui ad suam salutem, si nisi unam habuerit viam, ut dicit Galienus velit nolit, per eam, etsi mala fuerit, pertransibit." A more accurate translation of this passage is given in Sl. 2463 (xv. cent.) in a treatise on Surgery compiled from various authors, in which several chapters of Lanfranc's work are embodied. Ib. fol. 110 b.: "And as Galyene seith, he that hath but oone weye to his hele althouȝ þat weye be nat good, he muste holde hit wille he nylle he."

An enpostyme of þe helpers /<sup>1</sup>

- T**his enpostym ift it be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe arm  
 aforzens, & not in þe same side in þe veyne þat is clepid  
 4 basilica, & þan þou muste surely leie þerto repercussiuus, <sup>2</sup> & ift reper-  
 cussiuus suffisen not, þan resolue it & leie maturatiuus þerto, & þan  
 abide til it be perfittli<sup>3</sup> quitturid, but ift þe matere be so violent  
 þat it were in poynt<sup>4</sup> to schende þe lyme, þan opene it & be wel  
 8 war of the braun þat is in þat place / Manie men þat ben vnkun-  
 nyngt & supposen þat place to be fer fro ony noble lyme,<sup>5</sup> makip  
 þeron a deep kuttyngt, & supposip to haue gret worschip þerof; &  
 manie idiotis wolen preise hem<sup>6</sup> wel þerfore. & þan þe lacertis þerof  
 12 ben hurt; & whanne þe lacertis ben soudid azen, þan þe lyme þat it  
 seruede fore schal be contract, wherfore þe mannes arm mai be lost  
 in sum partie or in al / þerfore whanne þou wolt kutte þis en-  
 postym, þou schalt but kutte abouteforþ in þe skyn, & not to depe  
 16 bi no maner wei for drede of þe braun, & of senewis, & of veynes  
 & arterijs, & whanne þe place is opened, þan leie þerto mundifi-  
 catiuus. Ift þe openyngt be nyȝ þe elbowe, & þouȝ þe enpostym be  
 moost quitturid, þere be wel war þat þou opene not þe enpostym  
 20 aboute þe elbowe .iij. fyngris brede, neiȝer <sup>7</sup> wiȝinne ne wiȝoute. & [7 lf. 145]  
 also nyȝ þe poynt of þe elbowe it is perilous, for it is gret hap ift  
 it be euere soudid. & þouȝ it be soudid, þe mouyng of his arme  
 schal be lost. Ift þer falle ony enpostym in þis place, & it come of  
 24 greet matere so þat his bodi be replet, þan he mote haue greet  
 avoidyngt wiȝ laxatiuus, & þan resolue þe matere, and worche as it  
 is aforseid in þe general chapitre. In þe same maner þou schalt  
 cure þe enpostym of his armis & of hise hondis.
- 28 ¶ Panaricium<sup>8</sup> is an enpostym þat is in þe heed of a mannes  
 fyngir aboute þe nail / & is swiȝe hoot, & greuous, & reed, & ful of  
 fier, & sumtyme it makip a man to haue þe feuere, & sumtyme it  
 fretip awei al þe poynt of a mannes fyngir / þe firste cure of þis  
 32 enpostym is, þat first þou schalt lete him blood, so þat alle þingis  
 panaricium,  
 an apostema  
 of the fingers,  
 near the  
 nails.  
 Treatment:  
 First bleed  
 the patient,

<sup>1</sup> Lat. De apostematibus adiutorii.<sup>3</sup> curid, erased.<sup>4</sup> in poynt, Lat.: nisi materia esset adeo violenta quod esset ad corruptionem membri parata. "And in such poynt the body bileueth." Wright, *Popular Treatise*, p. 140.—"Engelond & normandie. in god point he broȝte." *Rev. of Glouc.*, 8868. Compare Fr. embonpoint.<sup>5</sup> MS. inserts &.<sup>6</sup> silf, erased. Lat.: & inde laudantur ab aliquibus idiotis.<sup>8</sup> Vigo Interpret.: "Panaritium is an aposteme about the rootes of the nayles, and it is called in Greke Paronichia; in latyn reduuia." See Dufr. s. v. redubiæ.

if his condition allows, then apply a plaster, compresses or an ointment.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 145, bk.]

falle þerfore as elde & strenkþe & custum. & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre of vinegre & opium, & vpon þe plastre þou schalt leie a lynnene cloof wet in a decoccioun of psillij, or anynte it wip an oynement þat is coold. & in<sup>1</sup> al maner þou schalt<sup>2</sup> take hede to 4 do awei þe greet hēte & saue his fyngir fro corrupcioun / If þe akinge & þe brennyng go not awei in þis maner, & it be in wei for to quittance,<sup>3</sup> þan leie þervpon scabiose grounden wip grese & do þe cure þerto, as þou schalt fynde in þe cure of antrax & carbunculis. 8 & enpostyms þat comeþ in ioynctis þou schalt fynde in her propre place of akyng of ioynctes /

### Apostym wipoutforþ aboute þe spaudis and þe gibbositees<sup>4</sup> //

12

¶ viij<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup>.

If there is an apostema on the shoulders, purge the patient,

and open it when it is ripe.

[<sup>6</sup> If. 146]

If a ripe apostema breaks by itself, a fistula will arise.

Treat this fistula with mundificatives by means of a syringe, after having widened the hole of the fistula by a tent.

¶ A Postym þat comeþ aboute the spaudlis wipoutforþ, leie þou noon repercussif þerto, saue it is better to drawe þe matere outward. First þou schalt purge him, for it is greet nede in þis place, & þan þou schalt leie þerto resoluunge þingis & maturatiuis; 16 & whanne þe enpostym is rotid þou schalt not abide, to it breke it-silf,<sup>5</sup> & principali in a coold cause, saue þou schalt opene þe enpostym & drawe out þe quittance, & þan þou schalt leie þerto mundificatiuis, & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / In þis place þou 20 schalt take<sup>6</sup> hede þat ofte tyme whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & is not opened wipoutforþ, þan it brekip inward bitwene þe .ij. ribbis, & whanne it is to-broke, þe pacient felip but lital greuance þerof, & þan þe quittance leueþ wipinne, & in long tyme herof comeþ a 24 festre. þerfore þou schalt not abide til it breke it-silf outward, saue þou schalt opene it whanne it is quitturid, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & cure it vp, as it is aforseid in opere enpostyms / ¶ If it so be þat þere engendre a festre þeron, or it be maad clene 28 & entre inward, þan he mote vse waischingis þat ben mundificatif, & caste it in wip an instrument maad in þe maner of a clisterie. & if þe hole þerof be streit wipoutforþ, þan þou schalt putt yn a tente of þe pip of eldre, or of a sponge, or of malum terre,<sup>7</sup> or 32

<sup>1</sup> in, above line.

<sup>3</sup> in wei for to quittance, Lat. in via maturationis.

<sup>4</sup> *Gibbositas*, tumour. *Dufr. Gloss.*—"Gibbosity, a bunching or standing out of any part, especially of the Back."—Phillips.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: non expecta crepationem per se.

<sup>7</sup> "*Malum terre*, ciclamen, panis porcinus id. g<sup>e</sup> dilnote and erthenote." *Alphita*, p. 107. mal. t. = galluc. Wr. Wü., 133. 20.



- brionie, or gencian, & putte into þe hole of þe festre. & þis wole make þe hole of þe festre to waxe more wide þan it was, þat þe ende of þe instrument mowe be putt þat schal be schape in þe  
 4 maner of <sup>1</sup>a clisterie. & þanne þou schalt seþe hony & mirre in <sup>[1 lf. 146, bk.]</sup> watir, so þat þer be .x. partis of water, & of hony .ij. partis, & of mirre .ij. partis, & if þou doist þerto ysope & sauge, it wole be þe bettir / Sumtyme it is good for to do wijn in þe stide of watir, &  
 8 principali if þe place be wipouten ony hete. & þis decoccioun þou schalt caste into þe festre wip an instrument as it is aforseid, & make þat þe pacient turne hidir & pidir, vpward & dounward, þat it mowe waische wel þe place þere þe quittance is. & þan make þe  
 12 patient turne & ligge vpon þe hole of þe festre, & make him cowþe þat al þe quittance mai goon out wip þe decoccioun. & whanne it is al oute, þan þou schalt make him a tent & anoynte it in oile þat þe  
 wounde close not tegidere. & þus þou schalt worche, til þou se þe  
 16 waisching come out of þe festre withoute ony quittance. & whanne þe festre is al clene, þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure with oynementis þat wolen regendre fleisch & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / If it  
 so be þat þe wei of þe festre þat goiþ in & out <sup>2</sup>be bicomme hard &  
 20 callous so þat it be a verri festre, þan þou muste hete an hoot yren þat it be as greet as þe hole of þe festre & brenne al þe hardnes þerof, & aftirward make þe cruste falle awei with buttir & opere pingis, & þanne make it clene, & þan drie it & soude it.  
 24 ¶ Also it bifallip þat children han grete bocchis in her brest, & þat comþ of cowþinge þat puttþ out þe matere, & also it comþ of greet wynd þat puttþ out þe matere / þe cure herof in þe firste  
 bigynnyng is in þis maner for to aswage cowþing, as almaundis  
 28 grounden wip penidis & temperid with a decoccioun of fenel, & þis he schal vse / Also take swete almaundis .ij. partis, dragaganti,<sup>4</sup> semen citoniorum<sup>5</sup> ana, oon parti, Iulip quod sufficit. & make herof a souping medicyn,<sup>6</sup> þat it be as picke as hony. & whanne  
 32 þe cowþinge is aswagid, þan make him a baþ wip rotis of altea, &

Keep the wound dilated until it is perfectly cleansed.

When the passage of  
 [2 lf. 147]  
 the fistula is callous, use the hot iron.

Mitigatio<sup>3</sup>  
 Tussis

Children have apostemas in their chest in consequence of coughing and of wind in their body.

Allay the cough,

and apply a lotion.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *Metegacho*.

<sup>4</sup> Vigo Interpr.: "*Dragagantum*. *Tragacantha* is a brode, & a woddy rote appearyng about the earth, wher-oute manye lowe braunches sprynge, spreading themselves al about. There cleaueth to thys rote, a gummy liquour of a bright colour, & somewhat swete in tast, which they cal comunely *dragagantum*."

<sup>5</sup> *citonium* = *Cotonea malus*, *Cydonea*, "Quince." Wr. Wü., 13, 19. "*Citonium*, goodaepel."

<sup>6</sup> a souping medicyn, Lat. *medicina sorbilis*.

leues of<sup>t</sup> malue, & fenigrec, & lyne seed soden in watir, & pis schal be cast vpon þe enpostym wip a vessel holden an hize þere from /  
 [1<sup>o</sup> lf. 147, bk.] þanne aftirward þou schalt<sup>1</sup> dissolue þe matere & make it neische with medycyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid in hard enpostyms, & þan cure it vp 4 as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid in þe enpostyms of<sup>t</sup> wijnd. ¶ A greet boch þat comeþ of þe passioun of þe riggeboon, whanne þei ben of þe ioynct, is incurable whanne it<sup>t</sup> is conformed /

Of an enpostym apperinge in þe mouþ of þe stomac / 8

¶ ix<sup>o</sup> c<sup>o</sup>  
 If there is an Apostema at the stomach, the liver, or the spleen, strengthen the affected part,  
 apply resolving medicines, but beware of repellents.  
 [1<sup>o</sup> lf. 148]

**W**Hanne þere schewip an enpostym in þe mouþ of þe stomac & aboute þe regioun of þe lyuer & of þe splene: þou3 summen wollen take hede to þe contrarie, bi my general rule<sup>2</sup> it<sup>t</sup> is good & profitable to comforte þe place wip oile of mastic, & oile of 12 spica, & oile of lilie, & wip cold enplastris of<sup>t</sup> rosis, & of<sup>t</sup> absinthio, squinanto, cipero, citonijs wip mele of<sup>t</sup> barli & opere pingis. & þou schalt be wel war of<sup>t</sup> repercussiuus, whanne þe enpostym is ny3 ony principal lyme, saue þou schalt leie þerto resoluyng<sup>t</sup> & maturatif 16 pingis. & loke þat<sup>t</sup> þei be not medlid wip no pingis þat<sup>t</sup> ben repercussif; for if<sup>t</sup> þou leidist<sup>t</sup> repercussiuus vpon þe stomak, or <sup>3</sup>þe lyuere, or þe splene, þei wolde be enfeblid þerwip, & to al þe accioun of<sup>t</sup> þe bodi wolde be enpeirid; for þese lymes serueþ principaly for 20 to norische al þe bodi / þerfore þou schalt not vse in þis caas pure maturatiuis, ne pure repercussiuus, ne colde pingis / What schalt þou do in þis caas? þou schalt avoide þe matere, & þou schalt comforte þe place with stiptikis, & tempere attractiuus, & do awei þe 24 matere. & if<sup>t</sup> þou mi3t not, þan resolue þe matere, for it<sup>t</sup> is greet perel<sup>4</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þis enpostym, for it<sup>t</sup> wole liztli turne in to sclirosym, & þan it<sup>t</sup> wole be hard to resolue, & aftirward it<sup>t</sup> wole be cause of<sup>t</sup> þe dropesie / þerfore if<sup>t</sup> þou seest<sup>5</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe enpostym bicomme hard, þan 28 þou muste leie þerto mollificatiuis & wip comfortatiuis. & þou muste be in þis caas ful wijs. & whanne þe enpostym is maturid, þan opene it<sup>t</sup> as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid, & leie þerto mundificatiuis & cure vp þe enpostym as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid. 32

This apostema easily gets indurated, and causes dropsy.

// Of an enpostym þat comeþ in iguine .id est þe gryndis

¶ x. c<sup>o</sup>/ [1<sup>o</sup> lf. 148, bk.] **A**Postym comeþ often time in iguine for vlcers of<sup>t</sup> þe 3erde & of þe feet<sup>t</sup>, for<sup>6</sup> þe place is discending<sup>t</sup> adoun of<sup>t</sup> humours to þat<sup>t</sup> 36

<sup>2</sup> rule, above line.

<sup>4</sup> perel, above line.

<sup>5</sup> seest, in margin.



- place,<sup>1</sup> & þan it is not so greet drede<sup>2</sup> þerof.<sup>3</sup> Saf if his bodi be ful of wickid humours, þan it is greet drede þerof / þis matere þou muste resoluē in þis maner. Take oile of camomille & anointe þer-
- 4 wip þe enpostym, & leie þervpon wolle vnwaische, & if it resoluē not in þis maner, þan leie þerto maturatiuis, as it is aforseide. ¶ If þe matere be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is clepid sophena. & þou schalt sotille<sup>4</sup> his dieting, & leie þerto resolyng-
- 8 þingis þat ben not to strong, & þat þei drawe not to harde. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessiþ, þan leie þerto stronge resolyng þingis. & in þis caas þis is good þerfore: lie of askis & of vryne, & wete þerinne stupis & leie vpon þe enpostym, for þis
- 12 makip maturatif & waastip it sotilly & driep it / If þou myzt not resoluē it, þan leie þerto maturatiuis & opene it, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & hele it vp as it is aforseid /

Apostemas in the groins are caused by ulcers of the yard or the feet.

R7

Apply resolving medicines; if the matter is hot, bleed from the Vena Saphina.

R7

### Of an enpostym of þe haunche & of þe cox.

- 16 **I**N þis place ofte tyme engendriþ an enpostym, & þou schalt fynde<sup>5</sup> þere þe curis þerof in þe chapitre of dolour of ioynetis; saue if þe enpostym be without þe haunche in þe hipe, or in þe leg, or in þe foot, þan þou schalt do þerto þe same cure þat is aforseid
- 20 in þe enpostyms of þe arm. Saf herof þou schalt take kepe, þat oftetyms an enpostym gaderiþ in a mannes hipe al wipinne in þe depnes of it, þat a leche schal not knowe it, but if he be þe more wijs / þerfor ypo[cras] seiþ: in placis þere enpostym is, and þe quit-
- 24 ture schewe not out, it is perilous / þerfor þou muste taste it wip þi fyngris, & loke where it is moost maturid, & opene it, and drawe out þe quitture, þan leie þerto mundificatiuis, & þan fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid /

¶ xj. co.

[3 lf. 149]

Apostema on the legs are treated like those on the arms.

A deep apostema in the hip must be opened.  
ypocras.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: Sæpe provenit apostema in inguine propter vlcerâ virgæ et pedum: propterea quod locus est descensus humorum ad illa loca. The translator mistook "descensus" sb. for descensus part.

<sup>2</sup> drede, above line.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Guiliel. de Salic. I. 42. Sl. 277, fol. 5 b.: "This secknesse is cleped buba or draguncell, or aposteme of þe grynde, & it is maad as ofttest of cold matere whiche is cast out of þe lyuere in þoo places, & oþerwhile it is hoot. It is maad also, when a man is seek in his zerde for filþehede of comen or of oþer cause."

<sup>4</sup> sotille, Lat. attenuare. O.Fr. soutilier. Compare sotilen with the abstract meaning, "argue subtly."—*Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Gloss.

<sup>5</sup> Duf. Gloss.: "Dracunculus, ulceris vel cancri species."



## Apostym of þe 3erde &amp; ballokis /

xij. eo.

A windy apostema of the yard occurs frequently with children.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 149, bk.]

**R** I3<sup>t</sup> as enpostyms comeþ in opere lymes, ri3<sup>t</sup> so þei comen in a mannes 3erde & in hise ballokis, of humours hoot or cold, as bi þese signes þou mi3t knowe. Sumtyme a mannes 3erde swellip 4 with wynd, þat þou mi3t knowe bi enpostyms of wynd þat ben aforseid. & it fallip ofte to 3onge children,<sup>1</sup> & also þis enpostym þou mi3t knowe <sup>2</sup>in þis maner, if þe place be hard & heuy & þer is no difference bitwixe þe colour herof & of þat oper partie of his 8 bodi.

A hot apostema of the yard and the testes is treated with blood-letting, a suitable diet,

**R**  
a hot plaster,

**R**  
and dressings.

¶ In an hoot enpostym of þe 3erde or of þe ballokis, þou schalt lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe .ij. dai lete him blood in þe sophene / Also þou schalt forbede 12 him wijn & fleisch & al maner swete metis þat engendriþ blood or colre. þan þou schalt leie þerto medecyns to putt awei þe mater, þat ben maad in þis maner. R3, cortices granatorum, rosas siccas, & lentes & seþe hem in water til þei dissolue, & þan grinde hem in 16 a morter wip oile of roses & a litil vinegre, & make herof an enplastre & leie it þeron hoot / Also take succi portulace siluestris, & olium rosarum & a litil vinegre, & wete heryn a lynnen cloof & leie it aboute þe 3erde & hise ballokis / Whanne þe cours of þe mater 20 ceessiþ, þan do þerto mele of barley & of benis, or distempere þese wip þe 3elke of an ey & wip iuys of morel & oile of roses, & leie þeron. & whanne þe enpostym goiþ away, þan leie þeron enplastre of mele of benis <sup>3</sup>& of fenigrec & camomille distemperid with gotis 24 talow / If þis enpostym gadere quittance & vlcera, þan cure it as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of vlcers of þe 3erde.

A cold apostema of the testes is treated with an ointment and suppositories.

**R**  
A plaster for an indurated apostema.

¶ A coold empostym þat is in þe ballokis schal be curid wip anynting of þe matere wip medicyns or wip scharpe suppositorijs ; 28 for þis drawip þe mater fro þe ballokis / If it be so þat þe enpostym be woxen hard in þe ballokis, þan leie þerto þis enplastre þat I haue ofte preued / Take bran of whete & grinde it wel in a morter til it bicom al poudre, & þan distempere it wip oximel 32 maad of .ij. partis of vinegre & oon partie of hony, & dissolue þerinne gum armoniac & make herof an enplastre & leie it on hoot, & þis schal be remeued ofte. þis is auicens medicyns.

**R**

¶ If a mannes 3erde be swollen wip wijnd & þe cause be hoot, 36 þan lete him blood ; if it be coold, þan leie þerto enplastris, & in þis caas among alle opere þingis þis is good / Take oile of roses iiij.

<sup>1</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 59 b.: accidit quibusdam iuuenibus calidis.

- partis, of wex o part, melte hem togidere & þan waische hem in  
 coold water til it bicomē as it were a whit oynement, & herwip  
<sup>1</sup>anoynte þe place / If it be hoot, þan þou schalt make him caste, A plaster for  
a cold windy  
apostema.  
 4 & þou schalt ʒeue him agnus castus,<sup>2</sup> & seed of rue & comyn &  
 anise & opere pingis þat waastip wijnd, & make an enplaster of  
 þese pingis þat distrieb wijnd / ¶ An enplaster þat gilbert made  
 for swellynge of a mannes ʒerde & it is mitigatif. R̄, crummis of .R̄.  
A lenitive  
plaster of  
Gilbert.  
 8 whit breed & grinde hem in a morter & tempere hem wip watir, &  
 þan boile hem til þei bicomē picke, & do þerto a litil oile & a litil  
 hony, & þan boile hem togidere & leie it vpon hoot // If a mannes  
 ʒerde be swollen wip hete of liggyng bi a womman, þus þou schalt  
 12 helpe him / Take leues of wipi & seþe hem in water & baþe his R̄  
 ʒerde herynne & binde þerto þe leues // Also seþe lynseed & leues  
 of malue & grynde hem togidere & make herof a plastre /

### The cure of scrophularum & glandulum /<sup>3</sup>

- 16 **C**ure of glandularum & scrophularum is almoost oon, saue ¶ xij.  
 herof is a difference / Scrophule comen þe moost part of  
 malancoli & ben worse to dissolue. & glandule comen þe most  
 part of fleume, & ben lizter to resolue / In boþe causis it is <sup>4</sup>neces-  
 20 sarie to purge þe matere. & þe medicyne laxatijs maad of turbit is  
 good þerfore þat is aforseid in þe chapitre of allopucia, or in þis  
 maner as .A. makip it / R̄ turbit zinzi,<sup>5</sup> zucare .3 .ij, & ʒeue þis  
 ofte, or trociscus de turbit maad wip diarubarbe, & þou must sotile R̄  
 24 his dietyng, & he schal not ete to miche, & he schal drinke no  
 water, & he schal holde his heed an hiz, & he schal kepe him fro  
 wepinge, & he schal not, whanne he is ful, slepe anoon þer vpon, &  
 þou schalt anoynte þe place with oile of camomille, & wip oile of

Scrophula is  
caused by  
Melancholy;  
Glandula by  
Phlegm.

[¶ lf. 151]  
These apos-  
temas are  
treated with  
purgings.

The patient  
shall neither  
drink water,  
nor weep,  
nor sleep on a  
full stomach.

<sup>2</sup> Besides the names given in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. *Agnus castus*, there are:  
 "Agnus castus, frutex est, i. bischopeswort." *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 1. "A. c.,  
 toutsayne." *Wr. Wü.* p. 562, 24 (xvth cent.). "Chastlambe" in *Maplet.* A  
 greene Forest, fol. 39. *De Propr. Rer.* (Add. MS. 27944, fol. 216 a): "Agnus  
 Castus is an herbe hoot and dryue and hap vertu to kepe men & wommen  
 chaste a plinius seiþ. ¶ Perfore wommen of Rome vsede to bere wip hem  
 þe fruyt of þis herbe in dyrige and service for dede men, whanne þey moste  
 nedes lyre chaste for comyn honestee. ¶ Þis herbe is alway grene as dy-  
 ascorides seiþ, and platearius also, and þe flour þerof is naveliche y-cleped  
 agnus castus."

<sup>3</sup> *Sl.* 2463, f. 97 (see p. 222, note 8): "Because þat þe cure of scrophules  
 & glaundules, as who seiþ, is bothe oone, but þer is a difference be as moche  
 as scrophules ben for þe more partie of malancolye . . ."

<sup>5</sup> *MS.* ZZ.



.R̃j. lilie, & wip þis oile þat is apreued / R̃j, radices electerij,<sup>1</sup> radices  
malue visci,<sup>2</sup> & kutte hem smal & leie hem in oold oile of oliuarum  
& do hem in a vessel of glas, & sette þis glas in a vessel of water,  
& make þe water to sepe, & be war þat þou saue þe glas fro breking. 4  
& wip þis oile anointe him, & þan leie þeron wolfe vnwaiche / And  
Use one of the following  
plasters.  
One prepared  
with goat's-  
dung.  
.R̃j.  
[<sup>5</sup> lf. 151, bk.]  
R̃j.  
Another pre-  
pared with  
dove's-dung.  
if þis suffise not, make him a plastre of gotis tordis & oximel, or  
quik lyme & swynys grese þat it be freisch / & oold,<sup>3</sup> or þis  
medieyne / R̃j staphisacre, seminis lini,<sup>4</sup> farini orobi, resine <sup>5</sup>albe & 8  
make herwip an enplastre wip ole & vinegre / Also anoþer þat is  
swipe good. Take radices lilij, & seminis lini, ana,<sup>6</sup> boile hem in  
wijn til þei dissolve, & þan do þerto of culuer tordis & make it a  
þicke plastre, & þou schalt putte þerto culuer toordis more or lesse 12  
as þou seest þat þe mater resolueþ more or lesse, as þou seest þat  
it nedip. ¶ Also diaculon<sup>7</sup> rasis, & diaculon Iohannes Mesue þat  
schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, ben good for to resolue scrophulas /  
Whanne þou resoluest þe mater & sum þerof goiþ awei, & sum 16  
þerof leueþ hard, þan þou schalt do þerto sumtyme mollicatiuis &  
sumtyme resoluyng þingis //  
¶ Glandule & scrophule ben parti of douce fleume or of blood ;  
it is ful hard to make hem clene, for sum partie þerof wole leue 20  
hard & wole not bicomme maturatif. þou schalt [not]<sup>8</sup> haste to  
opene hem saue þou schalt leue if þou miȝt, til it be al rotid, &  
þan open it & leie þerto mundificatiuis / & in þis place it is good  
to leie þerto vnguentum apostolorum & poudre of affodille & opere 24  
lizt corosiuis. & þou schalt in no maner leie þerto realgar,<sup>9</sup> ne noon  
violent<sup>10</sup> þingis, & leie þeron a mundificatif in which be medlid  
rotis of lilie wel soden, for þis mundificatif makip clene & also  
quitturip þe remenaunt of þe matere / þou must take greet dili- 28  
gence for to make clene glandulas & scrophulas, for þei ben ful hard

Glandula and  
Scrophula  
must be  
opened when  
they are quite  
ripe.

[<sup>10</sup> lf. 152]

<sup>1</sup> Lat. elaterium, *ἑλερίδιον*. *Alphita*, p. 53, "Elacterium succus cucur-  
bite agrestis idem. sed *electerides* sunt cucumeres agrestes tam fructus  
eorum quam ipsa herba." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Elaterium is the iuice of a  
wild cocomber."

<sup>2</sup> *malua viscum* = *Althæa officinalis*, marsh-mallow.

<sup>3</sup> Some words omitted. Lat. : cum axungia porcina, sine sale antiquo.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *staphisacre seminis. nitri*.

<sup>5</sup> *partes æquales om.*

<sup>7</sup> "*Diachylon*, a Plaister made of the Mucilages or pappy Juice of cer-  
tain Fruits, Seeds, and Roots, whose Office is to ripen and soften." *Phillips*.

<sup>8</sup> not om. Lat. : Non ergo festines in earum aperta.

<sup>9</sup> *realgar*, Arab. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* *Alphita*, p. 156, *Realgar* vel  
*risalgar* est uena terre." *Vigo Interpret.*, "Realgar is made of brymstone,  
vnslaked lyme, and orpimente. It killeth rattes."



to make clene, & ofte per engendriþ þerof festrif / ¶ If þou desirist to cure glandulas & scrophulas wiþ kuttyng, loke wher glandula or scrophula be neische, & be war of veynes & senewis, & loke þat

Inextricating the apostema take care not to injure a blood-vessel.

- 4 per be no veine þere nyȝ. þan take him vp wiþ þi lift hond & drawe him vp as hiȝe as þou miȝt & kutte þe skyn endelongis þe necke, & be war þou touche not þe cloop þat he is folde þerinne, & þane score<sup>1</sup> him & drawe him out al hool with þe cloop, & if þe  
8 leue ony þing þerof, caste þeron poudre of affodille or sum oþer list corosif, & þanne regendre fleisch & soude it vp / If it so be þat glandula or scrophula be closid with veynes or wiþ arterijs, þan kutte him not in no maner, for þe miȝt come greet þerof.<sup>2</sup>

## 12 // Pe cure of þe cancre not vlcetid & his cure /

- Causis & difference þou hast herd of a cankre<sup>3</sup> & in what  
maner þou schalt cure cancrum þat is not vlcetatus / Rasis  
seip, & it is soop, & I haue seen ofte tyme, þat whanne ony man  
16 touchiþ a cancre wiþ iren or wiþ ony medicyn corrosif, but if þe  
kutte him awei clene wiþ alle his rotis, ellis þe makip þat þe  
cancer is vlcetatus / & for to make a cancre vlcetatum, it ne fallip  
for no goodnes, saue it makip þe patient haste þe fastere to his  
20 deef, & schortip his lijf & bringip him in turment // ¶ þerfore if  
a cancre be in a place þat he mai be kutt awei wiþ alle hise rotis,  
whanne he is kutt awei, þan þou schalt brene þe place wiþ an  
hoot iren or wiþ gold, & þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure as it is  
24 aforseid in þe chapitre of a cancre þat is vlcetatus.<sup>4</sup> ¶ If it so be  
þat þe cancre be perfit & greet, þan þou schalt touche him wiþ  
noon iren ne wiþ no medicyn corrosif, saue þou schalt kepe þe  
patient wiþ good dieting, & he schal ofte tymes haue medicyns for  
28 to purge malancolie wiþ gootis whey & with epithimo, & sumtyme  
lete him blood, & þou schalt anoynte þe place wiþ vnguentum rasis

¶ xliij. co.

[3 lf. 152, bk.]

Rasis

Unless a non-ulcerating cancer is removed thoroughly, it becomes an ulcerating one.

Use the hot iron after cutting.

A large and fully developed cancer shall neither be cut nor cauterized.

<sup>1</sup> score. Lat. discarnare.

<sup>2</sup> Sl. 2463, fol. 98 : "But if þe glandule or þe scrofule be intrikes<sup>a</sup> with reynes, arteries oþer synewes, so þat þe cleue oþer be faste knytte to hem, for noþing þou schall nyȝe hem noþer with Iren noþer with noone other corosyue medecyne."

<sup>4</sup> A different opinion is expressed in Sl. 2463, fol. 115 : "The cure of þe canker is done in two maners. The tone cure is for to kutte away all þe membre þat þe canker is inne, with all þe syknesse; and þis is an yuell cure and may be done, but it is not plesaunt." Ibid., fol. 115 b. : "And yf þe be noon oþer remedie but for to cutte hit away with alle þe rotes, me thenkith hit is more honest to leue hit þanne to do hit."

<sup>a</sup> Lat. intricata.

[1 lf. 153]

Many patients would live a long time if they were not treated by unskilful physicians.

de thutia, þat is <sup>1 2</sup>aforseid in cura cancri vlcerati. & þou schalt leie þeron colde leues, & alwei þis schal be þin entencion, for to kepe þat þe cancre wexe not ne rotie not / I haue seen ful manye lechis þat hadden greet name in cirurgie þat founden cancris in men, and 4 wexe not, & þe cancris were not vlcerati & miȝte ful long tyme haue lyued if he hadde be kept aftir my teching in þis book; saue vnkunnyng cirurgians wenep þat in kutting of a cancre þei schulde finde quittance & ben disseyued, & so disseyuen hem-silf & also þe 8 patient, & þan whanne þei han kutt þei fynde nouȝt saue fleisch corrupt wipout quittance in þe maner of a sponge, wherfore þe lippis of þe wounde wole come aȝen worse þan þei were tofore & more stynking. & wip þe greet stynkinge þe spirit is schent, & makip þe 12 patient þe rapere drawe toward þe deef / & if þe cancre were not vlceratus þe patient miȝte lyue longe þerwith.

### Bocium þat comep of humours corrupt.

¶ xvº cº.

"Bocium" is caused by corrupt phlegm, [3 lf. 153, bk.] or arises from hot apostemas.

**B**Ocium is a postym þat comep of humours, & principali it is 16 engendrid of fleume corrupt / Sumtyme it comep of <sup>3</sup>hote enpostyms, as whanne þei ben rotid & not opened. & þouȝ þe subtil mater be drawen out, þat opere part bicomep hard & leueþ þere longe tyme / & sumtyme a rume<sup>4</sup> fallip adoun of his heed into 20 his necke & makip þe matere wexe more / þis maner enpostym hap manie diuers signes / Sum maner þerof is lijk as it were cley, & summe is lijk schellis. Summe is as it were chese, & summe is as it were drastis of oile, & so þis enpostym in his corrupcioun takip 24 manie diuers colouris /

This apostema is treated with drawing and caustic medicines.

.Ry.

A caustic medicine.

þis enpostym schal be helid wip drawynge þingis & wastynge þat schulen be taken bi þe mouþ & leid to wipoutforþ / þou schalt 3eue him bi þe mouþ a medicyn for to purge fleume, & þan þou 28 schalt 3eue him a medicyn for to waaste þe matere & is maad in þis maner / Ry paruum plantam nucis a terra cum suis radicibus extirpatam id est take a litil plauntein of a note & take it vp of þe ground wip alle hise rotis, & grynde it wip greynes of peper, so þat if þer be 32 of þe notis .3 iiij., þan do þerto of peper 3 j, & þis þou schalt boile

<sup>2</sup> In later hand at the bottom of the page: *contra fletorem cancri. R pulueris corticis quercus farine sileginis ana succi appii mell ana succus & mell inspissentur decoque super ynguem cum puluere farina. Item decoque puluerem corticis quersini in aqua et inde tepide laua canserem a fletore paliando.*

<sup>4</sup> rume, rheum, O.Fr. reume.



in a quart of wyn <sup>1</sup> of paris til it come to þe half, & þanne cole it, [1 ff. 154]  
 & herof þe patient schal take euery dai 3 ij. // ¶ Enplastris þat <sup>A caustic plaster.</sup>  
 wastiþ ben enplastris þat enpostyms of fleume be wastid *perwith* /  
 4 If þou desirist for to cure it wiþ kuttyng, þan þou must loke, wher  
 þe matere þat is wipinne be neische or hard. & wher it be among  
 veynes & arterijs, þou schalt touche it wiþ noon iren in no maner /  
 If it so be þat þe mater be neische & if þou miȝte kutte it for <sup>In extirpating this apostema do not injure the integument wherein the tumour is situated.</sup>  
 8 perels þat þen forseid, þan kutte it & drawe out þe mater, & leie  
 þerto mundificatiuis, & alle þingis as it is aforseid in þe general  
 chapitre / If þe mater be hard & þe enpostym be hangynge & be  
 fro veynes & arterijs, þan kutte þe skyn endelongis aboue, & be war  
 12 þat þou touche not þe bagge þat bocium sittip þeron & scarre<sup>2</sup> it  
 al abouteforþ & drawe him out with al his skyn. & if þer leue  
 þeron ony þing of his skyn, þan caste þeron poudre of affodille, &  
 make it clene wiþ poudre of sum list corrosif *perwiþ*—*vnguentum*  
 16 *viride*,<sup>3</sup> & þan regendre fleisch, & þan drie it vp as it is aforseid /

#### <sup>4</sup>Of þe akyng of ioynctis.

[1 ff. 154, bk.]

**N**OW it is seid pleyulier of alle enpostyms, now speke we of ¶ xvjo. c.  
 passiouns þat comþ in ioynctis. & þis passioun is myche <sup>Diseases of the joints are similar to apostemas,</sup>  
 20 lik to enpostyms in causis & signes & curis, & also it diuersip  
 miche fro opere enpostyms / For þou3 þe place be greet to-swollen,  
 it comþ but late or neuere to quittance. Swellynge & akyng of  
 ioinctis, þis passioun is vnknown to manie kunnynge lechis þat han  
 24 greet name. Bi þe cause þat cirurgians ben clepid algate to þis  
 manere passioun, þerfore I haue studied to make a general chapitre  
 of passiouns of ioinctis. & I haue take miche þerof þe bokis of  
 Rasis & of myn owne working þat I haue proued. ¶ þe causis <sup>Pains in the joints are caused by an evil condition of the limbs or the body,</sup>  
 28 þat makip akinge in ioynctis: or it comþ of yuel complexioun of  
 lymes, or it comþ of hoot complexioun þat hetip, or it comþ of  
 coold complexioun þat cooldip / Drie ligaturis of ioynctis con-  
 streineþ & makip akyng,<sup>5</sup> & moistnes makip neuere akyng wiþ-  
 32 outen opere<sup>6</sup> mater / Mater þat makip akinge of ioynctis is ofte tyme  
 haboundaunce of blood, & ofte tyme it is raw fleume, & moost  
 principali colre or blood medlid with fleume / & it comþ ful seelde  
 of fleume, but if it be medlid wiþ ony opere þing as colre / In what

<sup>2</sup> *scarre*. Lat. *scarnare*.<sup>3</sup> *vnguentum viride*. See Notes.<sup>5</sup> Lat. *sicca* (complexio) *ligamento juncturarum astringendo dolorem aliquando generat*.



and frequently by phlegmatic humour.

The physician can easily be in error, and apply wrong medicines.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 155, bk.]

Treatment, when the illness arises from a bad condition of the body.

If it is caused by the humours, soothe the pain.

**Auicen**

and **Rasis** differ in their treatment.



[<sup>2</sup> If. 156]

Apply first a lenitive plaster or ointment, or give a medicine,

then let blood

maner þou schalt knowe which humour be in þe cause of akyng  
of iointis, þou schalt finde in þe chapitre of allopucia & in þe  
general chapitre of enpostyms, if þou takist good kepe of þe signes  
of þe forseid chapitris, what humour is in cause of akyng of 4  
ioinctis / Saue þis þou muste take hede, þat ofte tyme raw fleumatik  
humouris makij akyng of iointis as it is forseid, & þan þe colour  
of þe lyme schal be but litil<sup>1</sup> chaungid þerfore / & þan a leche but  
if he be þe more expert þeron mai be biglid. & sumtyme a litil 8  
quantite of colre wole schewe vpon þe lyme, & þan þe leche wole  
leie þerto coolde pingis, & þan þe mater of fleume wole bicombe hard,  
& so þe greuance wole be worse þan it was / þerfore it is greet  
nede þat þe leche be kunnyng<sup>2</sup> & knowe wel þe <sup>2</sup>mater of passiouns 12  
of ioyntis.

¶ þe cure of akyng of iointis þat comþ of yuel complexioun  
oonly, þou schalt remeue with pingis þat ben contrarie to þat com-  
plexoun:<sup>3</sup> as if þe mater be hoot, þan þou schalt remeue it with 16  
colde pingis, & if þe mater be coold, þan þou schalt remeue it wiþ  
hoot pingis, & if þe mater be of drienes, þan þou schalt remeue it  
wiþ moist pingis, & wiþ metis & drinkis þat makij fatt, & wiþ rest<sup>4</sup>  
& wiþ gladnes; for as faste as his bodi bicomþ fatt, he schal be 20  
hool of þat passioun / þis passioun þat comþ of humours, is curid  
with mitigacion of þe akyng, & I fynde diuers opiniouns þeron /  
& þerfore I wole schewe hem in þis chapter / Auicen seiþ: þat  
whanne þou wolt worche in þis mater, þi principal entencioun schal 24  
be for to do awei þe akyng / And Rasis forbedij þat þou schalt  
leie þerto no repercussiu, ne noon resolutiu but if þe mater be  
avoidid tofore / For to do away þe akyng: saue awoide þe mater,  
or leie þerto a repercussif or a resolutif. & þan Rasis seiþ þat 28  
þou schalt awoide him, & auicen for<sup>5</sup>bedij þat / In what maner  
schulen we worche þanne, whanne þou fyndist a man þat hap greet  
akyng? / First þou schalt leie a plastre to þe lyme þat it be  
mitigatif or an oynement þat be mitigatif, & þe difference herof 32  
schal be aftir þat þe mater is // Also þou miȝt zeue him sumwhat  
bi þe mouþ for to aswage þe akyng. & þou schalt fynde greet  
plente in þis chapitre of defensiu & mitigatiuis to defende þe  
mater / And whanne þe akyng is perfiȝtli swagid lete him blood 36

<sup>1</sup> A second *litil* deleted.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: Cura doloris iuncturarum quæ ex mala complexionē sola est, non est nisi cum contrariis complexionis malitiam remove.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *rost*.

if þe cause be of blood. & if it be of anoper cause avoide it. & from the  
 if þou letist him blood, þou schalt do it in a lyme aforzens. & if sound limb,  
 þou wolt avoide þere matere, loke þat þou knowe þe cause / for þis or evacuate  
 4 is ful necessarie for a leche to kuzne / Whanne þe mater is avoidid matter:  
 & þe akyngce cessid, þan þou schalt bigynne wiþ resolyunge medi-  
 cyns þat ben forseid. ¶ Also in curis of akyngce in ioyntis be wel and attend to  
 war þat þou feble not his appetit, for þis sijknes cometh moost of the patient's  
 8 humours þat ben vndefied. & þerfore þou schalt in as miche as appetite and  
 þou miȝt make him haue good ap<sup>1</sup>petite & good digestioun / If þou [1 ff. 156, bk.]  
 fyndist oonly þe mater coold, þat makip ful seelde ony gret akyngce,  
 saue it makip þe lyme heuy. þis þou schalt wite þat in a coold  
 12 cause þat makip akingce in ioinctis, þouȝ it be hard to do awei,  
 neþeles þou schalt zeue him no strong medicyn ne he schal not be Therefore do  
 purgid hastili as manie men wenep, saue it schal be do wiþ a propre not give a  
 medicyn þat is sure. & it schal ofte be zeuen, so þat þou mai strong pur-  
 16 algate kepe his appetit, for þer is noon so strong medicyn þat mai gative,  
 avoide þe mater al at oonys / And if þou zeuest him a strong but a mild  
 medicyn it wole afeble hise vertues. & þerfor þou must chese a one in several  
 20 ofte // doses.

¶ Of akyngce of ioyntis þou hast had general rulis; now we  
 mote speke of curis here after. ¶ If þou be sent after to a man  
 þat haþ arteticam,<sup>2</sup> þat is as myche to seie as a goute, first þou Arteticam.  
 24 muste loke wher þe mater be hoot or coold, or wheþer he haue When gout is  
 strong akyngce or lizt akyngce / & if his akyngce be strong, þan <sup>3</sup>leie attended with  
 þerto mitigatiuis / In oon maner þou schalt zeue him medicyns bi [3 ff. 157]  
 þe mouþ þat ben mitigatif for to take away þe akyngce, & enplastris pain, give  
 28 þat ben mitigatif, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ A good medicyn þat lenitive medi-  
 schal be zeue bi þe mouþ: R̄, glandes & leie hem in vinegre adai & cines, and apply  
 anyȝt, & after þat drie hem to þe sunne or in an ouene, & þan kepe R.  
 it / & whanne þou wolt zeue it, grynde it & zeue þerof ʒ .j.; þis  
 32 medicyn makip blood greet & remeueþ þer from / Also take lentes

<sup>2</sup> *artetica*, *arthritica*, gout, *Trevisa De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII, Cap. 56 (Add. MS. 27,944, fol. 96 b.). "Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swelling & sore ache / and whanne hit is in þe fyngres, hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra, if hit is in þe whirlebones and ioyntes it hatte sciatica passio, and cometh of colerik blood & of fleumatik humours, & cometh most ofte of reumatik cause." The author of the Treatise on Surgery, preserved in Sl. 1736, mentions this disease as a hereditary one. Ibid. fol. 122 b.: "also yt ys often tymes sene þat þis arthetica passio gose by erytaunce as fro þe [fadyr] to the childur, and so forth to oðyr."



A medicine  
only to be  
given in great  
need.

excorticatas, semen coriandri, succum glandulum, hermodactulis<sup>1</sup>  
wip sugre & coold watir, saue herof pou must take kepe pat pese  
medicyns schulen not be zeue but in greet nede, & whanne pe  
akyng is so greet pat it mai not be take awei. & pei mai be 4  
moost sotilly zeue whanne pe mater is subtil & scharp / & if pe  
mater be greet & miche, þan þis medicyn schal not be zeue. ¶ If  
R pe mater be coold & of greet akyng, þan take hermodactulis, thuris  
ana xx. partis, cucumeri partes .x, & zeue þerof 3 .iij. vpon pe 8  
[<sup>2</sup> If. 137, bk.] R place / If pe matere be litil & scharp <sup>2</sup> & subtil / R, amigdalas,  
camphore ana, grinde hem & tempere hem wip watir of roses /  
R Also anopir in pe same kinde / R, mirre, panis albissimi & subtilis-  
simi 3 j, opij 3 ʒ, grinde hem wel & tempere hem wip milk of a 12  
R cow, & leie it þeron whanne it is greet nede / Item R, opij, cortices  
mandragorae ana .3 .v, grinde hem & tempere hem wip pe iuys of  
portulacae & oile of roses & a litil vynegre / Also an oynement for  
R to ceesse pe akyng / R, olium rosarum 3 .iij, cere 3 j., melte pe oile 16  
An oynement pat  
sesses  
ache  
& pe wex togidere & waische it with oile of roses, & þan do þerto  
citrini 3 j., opij 3 ʒ / If pe mater be myche & be neiþer more in  
quantite þan in qualite, & pou wolt defende more pe cours of pe  
mater, þan do awei pe akyng.<sup>3</sup> R, cortices granatoris, sandali<sup>4</sup> 20  
albi, & rue,<sup>5</sup> & roses, boli armenici, ferrugine,<sup>6</sup> opij, confice cum  
succo mirtilorum vel foliorum salicis, or with a decocciun of hem in  
watir wip a litil oile of roses & vinegre & make herof an oynement.  
& whanne pe akyng is aswagid, þan dissolue pe mater of blood wip 24  
letyng blood. & pat suffisþ as it is aforseid. ¶ Colre þou schalt  
R dissolue in þis maner / R, mirabolanorum citrinorum .3 vj., <sup>7</sup>grinde  
[<sup>7</sup> If. 158] hem & leie hem al anyzt in li ʒ of sirup of viole, & 3 .iij. of wijn  
of pomegranates pat ben swete, amorowe boile hem altil & do þerto 28  
zuccare .3 ʒ, hermodactylorum .3 ʒ., & zeue it him in pe mornyng.  
& if þou wolt make itt more coold, do þerto .3 .ij. of musilaginis

<sup>1</sup> "*Hermodactyla*, crawanleac." Wr. Wü. 137, 3.—"Hermodactylus," a round-headed Root, brought from Syria, which is of an insipid Taste; and gently purges Phlegm." Phillips.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 63: Si uero materia fuerit multa et times plus de quantitate quam de qualitate, et uis plus prohibere materiae cursum quam extinguere . . .

<sup>4</sup> *sandali albi*, σάνδαλον. The d in sandal is explained by influence of Arab. sandal (Devic). Matth. Sylvat. mentions three sorts of Sandal: album, rufum et citrinum. See *Alphita*, p. 161. *whit saunders* and *reed saunders* are distinguished in Sloane MS. 2463, fol. 155 b (c. c. 1450).

<sup>5</sup> *rue* for *rubidi*.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. *foenugreci*.



- psillij or 3 .j. ¶ This is a good electuarie perfore .R̄, citoniorum li .R̄.  
 13., & make hem to gobettis, & leie hem in vinegre adai & anizt / & A good  
 þan wrynge hem & grinde hem smal, & do þerto scamonie þat it be to purge  
 4 good .3 .j., cardamomi, cubube .3 .iij, spice nardi .3 .j., rosīs .5 .v, cholur and  
 3uccare li 13., make herof a letuarie þat purgij wel colre & comfortij to strengthen  
 þe stomac. þou schalt zeue herof .3 .ij. & þou miȝt scharpe it the stomach.  
 more if þou wolt with a litil hermodactylis. ¶ þese ben good  
 8 pelottis for þe same cause / R̄, aloes .5 .ij, hermodactylos .3 .j, .R̄.  
 scamonie .3 13., rosīs .3 .j, make herof pelottis with sirupo violarum, Pills for the  
 & þou schalt zeue herof .3 .j. Whanne þe passioun bigynneþ to go same pur-  
 awei with þese medicyns, þan þou schalt leie þerto plastris þat ben Resolving  
 12 resolyunge: as of malue & bismalue, camomille, mellilotum, absin- plasters:  
 thium, peratorie, semen caulium, aneti, fenugreci, <sup>1</sup>semen lini, [11. 158, bk.]  
 furfuris, & swynys grese, & gandris grese, & hennis grese, & oile of  
 camfre, & olium aneti. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessiþ,  
 16 þan þou schalt vse oonly resolyunge þingis & make þerof enplastris /  
 Also to do awaye residue of þe akinge, þis is a good medicyn / R̄, .R̄.  
 olium camomille 3 .iij, cere 3 .j., seminis aneti & caulium, florum  
 camomille ana .3 .iij. & make herof an oynement / Also in anoper  
 20 maner / R̄, fenigreci, semen lini, aneti, & tempere hem with iuys of .R̄.  
 caulium. & herof þou must take kepe, þat as ofte as þou wolt vse  
 clene resolutiuis, þou schalt algate waische þe lyme þat is to-swollen A lotion for  
 wip a decoccioun of malue & bismalue, & florum of camomille & the limb.  
 24 melliloti, absinthii & opere mo, & þe lyme schal be waische þerwip  
 til it bicome reed, & þan þou schalt anoynte him / And þis þou  
 schalt wite þat as meuyngt & bapingt greueþ þe passioun in þe firste  
 bigynnyngt, riȝt so þei ben in þe ende riȝt greet helpingt / For  
 28 to stuwe & baþe doiþ awei þe laste part of þe mater & makij  
 a mannys lymes haue her meuyngt as þei schulde haue. & also it  
 is good whanne þe patient goiþ out of <sup>2</sup>his stue, if hise ioinctis  
 akij, þan frote hem wel wip salt grounde / If þe mater be coold þou  
 32 schalt diȝte him wip diaȝinȝiberis þat is aforseid in allopucia. &  
 þan þou schalt dissolue wip trocisco de turbit wip hermodactylis  
 maad in þis maner / R̄, diaȝinȝiberis predicti 3 .j. & 1, turbit electi R  
 .3 .j, hermodactulorum alborum solidorum 3 13., & viij greines of  
 36 anise, & make þerof a gobet wip a litil hony. & þis schal be zeue  
 in þe mornyngt. & þerafter he schal drinke a litil wijn hoot & a  
 litil water; or wip þese pelottis / R̄, hermodactylorum, saturionis<sup>3</sup> R

<sup>3</sup> Saturion, iarus. See *Alphita*, p. 158.

sene ana .3 .v, ierapigre<sup>1</sup> þat entriþ in pululas coehias .3 .x, pulpe coloquintide, centaurie. ana .3 .v, euforbij .3 .ij, turbit<sup>2</sup> .3 .ʒ, cassie,<sup>2</sup> sinapis, piperis, castorij ana .3 .j. & make herof pelottis with hony. & þou schalt ʒeue herof .3 .j. at oonys, & þis medicyn schal be 4 ʒeue manie tymes. & in daies bitwixe he schal take diazinziberum of oure makinge þat is forseid. & if it be in winter, þou schalt ʒeue him diatrion piperion<sup>3</sup> or anoþer hoot eletuarie // ¶ Anoþer electuarie þat dissoluiþ akyng in ioyntis þat cometh of raw mater. 8

.R. Rʒ, camedrios,<sup>4</sup> centaurie minorum ana. 3 .viiij, aristologia longa. 8  
 [5 lf. 159, bk.]<sup>5</sup>gencian. ana. 3 .vj, agarici .3 .ij, vtriusque spice ana .3 .j, make  
 A lectuare þat dysolues hem wiþ hony. þou schalt ʒeue herof þe quantite of a note eerli  
 Ache in Iunnotes & late. Men þat ben lene schulen not take þis medicyn // Whanne 12  
 þe patient is purgid sufficiently, þan þou schalt vse enplastris for to  
 R leie to þe place / Rʒ, oold swynis grese þat it be freisch li j., &  
 medle þerwiþ quyk-lyme & make þerof a plastre & leie vpon þe  
 R place / Also take stercus caprinum & distempere it wiþ vinegre & 16  
 R hony ana, & leie it þeron / Also Rʒ, aristologia, radices yrios, elleborus, & piper, boile hem in oile & do þerto ʒelow wex & make þerof an oynement. ¶ Also diaquilon maad of litarge & oile & iuys of mustard seed. & if þou wolt haue mo remedies, go to þe 20  
 Rasis. book of Rasis, & þere þou schalt fynde in þe chapter of ioyntis, medicyns ynowe þerfore. ¶ Also if þou desirist to comferte þe lyme & do awei þe coold mater wiþ repercussiuus, in þe laste chapter of þis book þou schalt fynde repercussiuus & mollificatiuis ynowe // 24

### / Of sciatica passio<sup>6</sup> /<sup>7</sup>

¶ xvij<sup>o</sup>. 60

[8 lf. 160]

Pain in the haunches

A kynge of haunchis schal be curid wiþ avoidinge of þe mater id est laxatiuis, for repercussiuus ben not þerfore, for þe matere<sup>8</sup> is in þe depnes of þe lyme, &<sup>9</sup> ne mowe not come þerto. Resolutiuis 28

<sup>1</sup> "*Hiera Picra*, a purging Electuary invented by Galen, and made of Aloes, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Honey, &c." Phillips.

<sup>2</sup> MS. cassif.

<sup>3</sup> *diatrion piperion*, a medicine composed of three sorts of pepper.

<sup>4</sup> "*Chamædrys*, the Herb Germander, or English Treacle." Phillips.

Camedreos ance Teterwose. Wr. Wü. 569, 47 (xvth cent.).

<sup>6</sup> MS. *passis*.

<sup>7</sup> *De Propr. rerum*, Lib. VII, Cap. 57 (Add. 27,944, fol. 96 b.): "*Gutta sciatica* is an yuel þat cometh of humours þat falliþ down into þe grete senene þat is bytwene þe grete brawnes of þe hanche as constantyn seiþ. ¶ And cometh ofte of gleymy humours i-gadred togedres in þe holouynes of þe ioyntes & of þe haunche / somtyme of bloddy humours i-medlid wiþ colera & alle þese beþ ofte cause of ache þe whiche ache strecchiþ into þe legges & anon to þe hele & also anon to þe litil [too]."

<sup>9</sup> The subject is : *repercussivis*.



- ben not þerfore, for þei mai not come to þe depnes of þe mater. & for þe mater is so greet, it schulde more drawe to þe place humouris þan dissolue. Saue þou must aswage þe akinge, & þou schalt do
- 4 awei þe akyng with oile & hony & fatnes þat doip awei<sup>1</sup> akinge.
- ¶ If þe mater come of blood, þan lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe secunde dai lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid sciatica, & principaly if þe mater descende
- 8 adoun wipoutforþ toward þe foot, for þan it mai principaly be holpen / If þe mater come of fleuma, þan purge him wip pelottis of hermodactilorum / Saue herof þou schalt take kepe þat bfore his purgacioun bineþe forþ<sup>2</sup> he schal haue a vomet. For if þou make
- 12 him a medicyn laxatif bineþe forþ & no vomet tofore, þan it wole drawe more þe mater toward þe place þan awayward / þerfor first þou schalt make him a vomet, & aftirward a medicyn laxatif / And þerfore medicyns laxatiuis summe ben propre for akyng of þe
- 16 haunchis, as colocuintida, yrios, sarcocolla, <sup>3</sup>centaurea, agaricus, & infusioun of aloes. For infusioun of aloes wole make blood passe fro him at his sege, & þan þe akinge wole go awei & he schal be hool / & whanne he is perfitli maad clene wip medicyns laxatiuis,
- 20 þan þou miȝt leie þerto enplastris maad in þis maner / Rȝ, nastureij,<sup>4</sup> peretri,<sup>5</sup> capparis, grinde hem & tempero hem wip lie maad of askis of a fige tree, & make þerof a picke enplaster as it were hony, & anointe þe place til it be ful of bladdris & þe bladdris ful of water,
- 24 riȝt as þe place were brent wip fier. & þan anoynte þe place wip butter, & leie þeron caule leues þat þe bladdris soude not togideris anon; for þe lenger þat þei leueþ þeron, þe bettir it wole be. Eiper anoynte þe place oonli with mel anacardi,<sup>6</sup> & þat makip
- 28 bladdris. & what maner þou schalt make mel anacardi, þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie þat techip to make medicyns & cauterijs / Saue herof þou must take kepe þat þou schalt not vse þese medicyns þat makip cauterijs, but if his bodi be wel avoidid wip medicyns
- 32 laxatiuis tofore; for if his bodi be not purgid, it wole drawe more

must not be treated with repellent or resolving medicines.

Use blood-letting, if the illness is caused by the blood.

Purge, if phlegm is the cause, and first give an emetic.

[3 If. 160, bk.]

When the patient is well purged, apply plasters.

R  
A blistering plaster.

.Nota.

Purge the patient before applying the blister.

[7 If. 161]

<sup>1</sup> awei, above line.

<sup>2</sup> bineþe forþ, Lat. per inferius. See *N.E. Diet.*, s. v. beneath-forth.

<sup>4</sup> nasturtium, a kind of cress.

<sup>5</sup> peretrum, Lat. piretrum. Anthemis pyrethrum (Dunglison), "Piretrum . . . pelestre."—*Alphita*, p. 145. "Pyrethrum, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot."—Phillips.

<sup>6</sup> "Anacardus. Or after Ruellius *anacardium*: is the frute of a tre, growing in Sicilia, and Apulia, called vulgarly, Pediculus Elephantis. The iuyce wherof is called *Mel Anacardi*, which is a ruptory medicine."—Halle, *Table*, p. 10.



.R.  
A plaster of  
Avicenna.

mater to þe place þan awayward. ¶ Also agens þe sciatica passio here þou schalt haue an experiment preued of *Avicenna*. Take gotis tordis & drie hem, & make hem to pouder, & distempere hem wiþ strong vinegre & made hoot, & make herof a plastre, & leie it vpon as hoot as þou maist suffre, & anoynte þerwiþ his haunche. ¶ Also a medicyn þat is forseid of *camedrios* & *centaurea*<sup>1</sup> is good þerfore, for it wole drawe awei bi vryne / ¶ Item: cauterijs maad in þe nexte welle vnder þe place of þe akinge ben gode þerfor after 8 þe tyme þat his bodi is maad clene with purgaciouns, & tofore þou schalt make him no cauterijs.

Of þe maner of dieting of hem þat han passions in  
iointes /

12

¶ xvij. 00  
A patient  
with a disease  
of the joints  
shall abstain  
from wine,

[¶ If. 161, bk.]

and if there  
is hot matter,  
from meat  
and fish;

and if the  
matter is  
cold he shall  
eat only once  
a day.

**I**N what maner þou schalt diete men þat han passiouns in iointis. þou schalt wite þat þer is no þing so greuous to þis passioun as is wyn, & it is principali forbode in an hoot cause, & so it schal be in a coold cause; for whanne it is 16 take, it persip litli to þe iointis, & makij wei to þe mater for to falle þerto / Saue if þe passion be coold, & þe patient mai not wel <sup>2</sup>defie his mete, þan þou schalt graunte him a litil wijn, & not to miche for þe causis þat ben forseid. ¶ In an 20 hoot cause make him drinke þat is forseid in þe chapiter of dieting of woundis, or he schal vse *vinum granatorum* wiþ coold water. & þe pacient schal absteine him fro fleisch & fisch & vse *lactucis*, *portulacis* / & if he be gretli feble, þan þou schalt zeue him litil 24 chickenys. & lete þou not him drinke wijn bi no maner if his passioun be hoot / & whoso hap þe coold passioun herof, he schal holde him wel apaied<sup>3</sup> for to ete oonys adai & not to miche. & lete him drinke ydromel wel soden / for if he mai suffre hungur & 28 þirst he mai soone be hool. & he schal in no maner ete, but if he haue wil þerto.

¶ The firste teching of *egritudines* of yzen, ouper  
passioun & anothami /

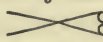
32

¶ 10. 00/

**N**OW wolen we make a tretice of passioun of lymes þat fallij for no woundis, & curis þerof comþ ofte to cirurgians

<sup>1</sup> *centaurea*, written above *cauterie*.

<sup>2</sup> he schal holde him wel apaied, Lat. sit contentus. See *N.E. Diet.*, s. v. apaid. O.Fr. apaier. Compare: je m'en tieng bien paiez. (Littré.)

- handis<sup>1</sup> / I wole bigynne of<sup>t</sup> sijknnes of<sup>t</sup> yzen & to speke of anatho-  
miam perwip<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> was not<sup>t</sup> forseid in þe .ij. book / þou schalt fynde  
in summe bokis of<sup>t</sup> auctoritees pat<sup>t</sup> a mannes izen ben maad of<sup>t</sup> .iiij.  
4 humouris & of<sup>t</sup> .vij. cootis. & in sum bokis<sup>2</sup> þou schalt fynde pat<sup>t</sup>  
þe izen ben maad of<sup>t</sup> .iiij. cotis or of<sup>t</sup> .iiij. or of<sup>t</sup> .vij. or of<sup>t</sup> .x., & alle  
þei seien soop. Saue þe .j. coote pat<sup>t</sup> maketh þe schap of<sup>t</sup> þe ize,  
ben but<sup>t</sup> .iiij. pat<sup>t</sup> scheweth out in þe hole of<sup>t</sup> þe ize, & þerfore me  
8 mai seie .vj. & also pre<sup>3</sup> / And fro þe brain tofore cometh .ij. bind-  
ingis pat<sup>t</sup> ben not<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> nerues, saue þei ben of<sup>t</sup> þe substaunce of<sup>t</sup> brain,  
& pat<sup>t</sup> oon cometh out in þe rihtside, & pat<sup>t</sup> oper in þe listside, & ben  
schape as it were þe hedis of<sup>t</sup> .ij. tetis, wherbi þe witt is take.<sup>4</sup> &  
12 after þese .ij. cometh out<sup>t</sup> .ij. nerues, & ben fast to þe izen, & ben  
schape in þis maner:  þan pat<sup>t</sup> nerue pat<sup>t</sup> wexip in þe  
rihtside of<sup>t</sup> þe brayn, whanne he goip out of þe scolle boon & entrip  
into orbitam, pat<sup>t</sup> is þe holow place pat<sup>t</sup> þe yze sitt on, & goip to þe  
16 ize in þe listside. & bi þes nerues cometh þe spiritis of<sup>t</sup> lijf<sup>t</sup> & of<sup>t</sup> sizt<sup>t</sup>  
to þe yzen / Of<sup>t</sup> þe substaunce of<sup>t</sup> dura matris is engendrid rethina,  
pat<sup>t</sup> is þe pinne skyn pat<sup>t</sup> goip without<sup>t</sup> þe ize, pat<sup>t</sup> is clepid þe vilm  
of<sup>t</sup> þe ize. And þis serueþ of<sup>t</sup> greet<sup>t</sup> seruice, & þis vilm was maad  
20 swipe þinne pat<sup>t</sup> it ne hurte not<sup>t</sup> humouris, & pat<sup>t</sup> it lette not<sup>t</sup> þe  
meuyng of<sup>t</sup> þe ize, and it<sup>5</sup> byndip in al þe ize, & it defendip þe ize  
fro harmynge of<sup>t</sup> þe boon //<sup>6</sup>
- ¶ þere cometh manye sijknnessis in þe izen, & summe cometh of<sup>t</sup>  
24 causis wipoutforþ, & summe of<sup>t</sup> causis wipinneforþ / Wipinneforþ:  
as of<sup>t</sup> yuel complexiouns, or of<sup>t</sup> yuel humouris; wipoutforþ: as of<sup>t</sup>  
greet<sup>t</sup> hete of<sup>t</sup> þe eir, or of<sup>t</sup> greet<sup>t</sup> cooldnes of<sup>t</sup> þe eir, or of<sup>t</sup> poudre, or  
of<sup>t</sup> fume, or of<sup>t</sup> wynd / And þere ben opere maner sijknnes of<sup>t</sup> þe ize,  
28 & pat<sup>t</sup> ben seid contagious: as obtolmia & blere ized, & alle þese  
sijknessis comen to cirurgians handis. & **obtolmia** is clepid a whit  
welke or a reed poynt,<sup>7</sup> & icching & scabbe, sebel, vngula, cataracta,

The anatomy  
of the eyes.The eye has  
three  
[2 lf. 162]humours and  
seven coats.Two pro-  
cesses reach  
from the  
brain to the  
eyes.Two nerves,  
crossing  
each other,enter the  
Orbitam,and confer  
the spirit of  
life.The eye is  
enveloped in  
the Retina  
(film).

[5 lf. 162, bk.]

The diseases  
of the eyes  
have partly  
external,  
partly in-  
ternal causes.Obtolmia.  
Ichinge.  
Scabbe.  
Sebel.  
Vngula.  
Cataracta.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: Volentes tractare de passionibus membrorum particularium, que non sunt vulnera, quæ sæpe veniunt ad manus chirurgi. . . incipiemus ab ægritudinibus oculorum.

<sup>3</sup> The passage is corrupt, and the corresponding Latin phrase differs: Tunica tres quæ in oculi formatione tres præcedunt humores, in ordine causant ex ipsis tres alias, quare dici possunt sex et tres.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: quibus sensus comprehenditur odoratus.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: Facta fuit ergo retina valde subtilis, ne læderet humores: et ne motum ipsorum in dilatatione comprimeret. Et facta fuit sclerotica: ut oculum totum cum cornea ligaret: et defenderet ab ossis oculi nocumento. The translator omits the description of the Anatomy of the eye. See Notes.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: ophthalmia, vlcus, albugo, macula simplex, punctus, rubedo. The

[Dilatacio  
Pulpe.  
15 Inuersacio  
Palpebra-  
rum.  
Ordellus.  
Grando.  
Nodus.  
Pilus.  
fistula la-  
crimalis  
[3 lf. 163]  
iiij maner  
obtalimia

1. Mild  
ophthalmia.  
The eyes get  
red, and feel  
burning, but  
there is no  
swelling.

Treatment.

R<sup>y</sup>  
Apply an  
eye-wash,  
Nota.

a fomenta-  
tion, and if  
necessary  
bleed the  
patient.

[3 lf. 163, bk.]

2. Severe  
Obtalimia.

dilatacion pulpe,<sup>1</sup> inuersacion, palpebrarum, ordelus, grando, nodus, & pilus, fistula lacrimalis. ¶ Also per ben opere manere sijknessis of þe ize: as blind & hurtinge þat mowe not be curid /

It is forseid what ping<sup>t</sup> is enpostym in þe general capitulo of 4 enpostyms. & it is forseid þat euery ping<sup>t</sup> þat gaderiþ humour to-gidere & makij swellunge,<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>schal be clepid enpostym<sup>4</sup> / In þe same maner obtalmia<sup>5</sup> is clepid enpostym of þe ize. & pere ben .iiij. maners of obtalmia: as list<sup>t</sup>, & strenger, & alþer strong<sup>t</sup>. List<sup>t</sup>, as whanne 8 a mannes ize bicomeþ reed & haþ brennyng þerinne & prickinge, & per is no swellunge þeron. & þis mai come of a cause withoutforþ: as of hoot<sup>t</sup> eir or of coold, or of smoke, or of poudre, or of wakinge, or of traueile. & þe cure herof is but list<sup>t</sup>; for þis sijkness mai be 12 curid in þis maner. Take þe white of an ey & scume<sup>6</sup> it, & loke þat þere falle no filþe þeron, & leie it into his ize; for þis is þe best medicyn<sup>7</sup> among alle medicyns þat ben clepid colliries, for it wole make coold his ize & do away þe akyng. & it abidiþ þe lenger in 16 his ize, for it is viscous // ¶ If þe cause be cold,<sup>8</sup> þan þis cure suffisiþ: þanne lete him drynke a litil sutil wijn, & make him a fomentacioun of rosis & flouris of camomille, & fenigrec soden in water. & if þis suffise not, þan <sup>9</sup>þou muste lete him blood, & avoide 20 awei þe humouris. & þou muste caste into his ize a whit<sup>t</sup> collirium, & it is seid in opere spicis of obtolmia.

¶ Obtolmia þat is strong<sup>t</sup>. þese ben þe signes þerof: greet reednes, & þe veynes of þe ize be ful replete, & þe corner of þe 24 ize schal watri, & he schal haue greet akinge & pricking, & sumtyme pere comeþ in þe first bigynnyng vlcera þeron, as it were

translator mistook this list of names of eye diseases for a definition of "ophthalmia." On the other hand he took the words "Dilatacio, Pulpe, Inuersatio, Palpebrarum" as names for four separate diseases.

<sup>1</sup> pulpe, for pupillae.

<sup>2</sup> On the bottom of the page: "contra obtalmia Recipe, the inner rynde off the ceritre, sethe yt in venyger, & hold a sponffulle in thy mothe lucke warme, so do oft in þ<sup>e</sup> day."

<sup>4</sup> Sl. 2463, fol. 84 b.: "As it is sayd of auctores in þe generall Chapter of enpostumes, þat euery flowyng of humore þat swellith a member ouer his kyndely beyng is an enpostume, riȝt so obtalmia is cleped an enpostume of þe eye."

<sup>5</sup> obtalmia, med. Lat. form of οφθαλμία, inflammation of the eye.

<sup>6</sup> scume, despumare. Prompt. Parv., p. 450. "scummyn lycuys, despumo."

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: quod non dicitur vilipendi, quia est nobilior medicina. Sl. 2463, fol. 85: "and sette not listly þerby, for it is þe nobelst medicyne."

<sup>8</sup> MS. hoot. Lat. si causa sit frigida. Sl. ibid.: "and yf þe cause be of colde."



white prickis or reed, & sumtyme þer ben noon sich pointis þeron  
 þat a man mai se, saue al his ize is reed & to-swollen. & he schal  
 haue greet akinge & pricking. & þou þer be noon vlcera þeron, þe  
 4 cure mai be do al in oon maner. ¶ If þe akyng be swiþe greet,  
 þan accesse þe akyng, & þan lete him blood in þe heed-veyne<sup>1</sup> þat  
 sitt in þe arme & in þat same side þat akip. & if he haue passioun  
 in boþe his izen, þan þou schalt lete him blood in boþe his armys.  
 8 & þou schalt lete him blood þe quantite after his elde & after his  
 strenkþe; or sette a ventuse vpon his schuldris, & þat is more better,  
 for þe mater comeþ more<sup>2</sup> of blood þan of colre. & þat þou miȝt  
 knowe bi þe signes of blood þat ben forseid // ¶ And if þe mater  
 12 come of colre, þat þou miȝt knowe bi greet akinge & scharp, &  
 litil swellinge. & þe mater wole be ȝelow aboute hise izen. & he  
 schal haue but litil reednes. & þan þou schalt lete him blood in  
 lasse<sup>3</sup> quantite þan<sup>4</sup> if þe mater come of blood. & blood leting is  
 16 good in þis caas, for þe scharpnnes of colre mai be take awei wiþ þe  
 blood leting. & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ a decoccioun of  
 fruitis with mirabolanis þat ben forseid in þe chapitre of allopucia.  
 & if colre be medlid wiþ ony partie of gret mater, þat falliþ ofte  
 20 tyme, þan þer is no medicyn so good as cochie Rasie. & first he  
 schal do þingis þerto for to accesse þe matere / R<sup>7</sup>, a ȝelke of an eij,  
 & as miche of oile of rosis, & as miche of iuys of verueine, & ȝ j.  
 of saffron, & ȝ j. opij; medle þese togidere, & make þerof an en-  
 24 plastre, & leie it vpon a sotil linnen clooþ, & leie it on þe ize. & in  
 his ize leie collirium album with wommans milk<sup>5</sup> þat noryschip a  
 maide child; for .G. made þis medicyn<sup>6</sup> / Rasis made collirium  
 album in þis maner, <sup>7</sup> & it is good þing, for I haue preued it ofte

The symp-  
toms are  
great pains  
and swelling.

Treatment.  
Soothe the  
pain by  
blood-letting

or by cup-  
ping.

[2 lf. 164]

If choleric  
matter is  
the cause,  
use blood-  
letting and  
purging.

Purging  
Pills.  
Cochie Rasis

R  
Mitigatum  
optimum  
contra dolo-  
rem in oculis

Colirium  
album  
Galion.  
Rasis.

[7 lf. 164, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> vena cephalica.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. maiori.

<sup>4</sup> MS. þat.

<sup>5</sup> The use of woman's milk for an eye-salve is mentioned by Galenus *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, Lib. IV. Cap. 3.

<sup>6</sup> The translator has omitted the following prescription preserved in Sl. 2463, fol. 85 b.: *and he cleped hit helpyng, for he, þat he made hit fore, was holpen by one leyng therto. ¶ Take iiij. 3. of ceruse sarsed, and distemper hit wit water on a marbull stone tenne dayes, and kepe hit euermore couered þat þer falle no powder þerinne; thanne take .ij. 3. and an halfe of gomme arabik and putte hit in þe water, to þat hit be molten in þat water, and þanne cole hit and medele yt as well as þou may wit þi forsayd ceruse; and whan þis medecyne is made liche paste, adde therto these thynges sotilly pondered and sarsed tryes or thryes thoruz a sotyll linnen clothe. Take amidum .iiij. 3. sarcocolle, safran, opium ana þe iiij. partie of a .3. grynde hem all wel togeder longe tyme, and make smale pillules and reserve hem, to þat þou haue nede, and rehanne yt ys nede dystempere one of hem with (fol. 86) womannes mylk and administer yt.*

R  
A Collyrium  
used by  
Rhasis.

'pulis  
citrinus

The patient's  
diet:  
He shall take  
neither meat  
nor wine;

[3 lf. 165]

he shall lie in  
a dark room,

and take a  
bath, when  
the matter  
has gone.

Bathing is  
noxious,  
when there  
is a pustule.  
Maturative  
medicines:  
Collyrium  
thuris

tyme. Take ceruse waische .x. partis, sarcocolle greet .iij. partis, amidi .ij. partis, draganti<sup>1</sup> .j. parti, opij .j. ʒ / Grinde alle pese togidere & tempere hem wip rein water, & make perof<sup>2</sup> pelottis as gret<sup>3</sup> as it were a pese & kepe hem / & whanne þou wolt worche 4 þerwip, tempere oon perof<sup>4</sup> wip wommans milk þat it be as picke as it were must,<sup>2</sup> & leie perof<sup>5</sup> in hise ize þre sipis in þe dai. þis collirie acceessip þe akinge. & in sumtyme it curip obtolmiam in oon dai as I haue preued itt<sup>6</sup> manie tymes. & whanne he hap slepe, if 8 hise ize clene togidere, þan he schal waische hise ize wip water of rosis hoot, & þan leie in þe corner of his ize puluis citrinus, þat is maad in þis maner / R̄, sarcocolle x. partis, aloes, croci, licij ana partes .ij., mirre partem vnam, & make herof<sup>7</sup> sotil poudre, & leie 12 herof<sup>8</sup> a litil in þe corner of his ize /

& whanne þe reednes & swellyng<sup>9</sup> of his ize is aweie, he mote be war of his dieting<sup>10</sup>, for he mai ete no fleisch ne drinke no wijn, saue he mote ete colature of bran wip almaunde milk. & whanne 16 he lieþ in his bed his heed mote lie hiȝe, & he schal ligge <sup>3</sup>vpon þe hool side & not vpon þe soor side / & if boþe his ize ben soor, þan he mote digte him as sutilli as he may.<sup>4</sup> & he mote ofte tyme haue þe sauour of water coold, & þe sauour of wipi & campher, & he 20 mote lie in a derk hous þat he mowe se no lizt. & whanne þe mater goip awei faste & his bodi [is]<sup>5</sup> þan clene, þan sette him in a baþ of swete water, & lete him be þerin but a litil while<sup>6</sup> / If it be so þat þe akyng<sup>7</sup> aswage not wip blood leting<sup>8</sup> & colliries & laxatiuis, 24 þan it is a signe þat þere is pustula woxe þerinne, & it is nede for to make it maturatif<sup>9</sup>; for þe akinge wole not goon awei, til it be maad maturatif<sup>10</sup>. & in þis caas bapinge is ful noious / For if akinge be go sumwhat awei, it wole come aȝen wip baping<sup>11</sup>; þerfore thou 28 schalt attende for to make maturatif.<sup>7</sup> & putte in his ize a collirie

<sup>1</sup> draganti, Lat. dragaganthi.

<sup>2</sup> must, Lat. mustum.

<sup>4</sup> Sl. 2463, fol. 86: "and yef bothe eyen be sore he schal lye vppward, his hodes muste be ryde." Lat.: caputia vestium non sint stricta.

<sup>5</sup> is, omitted.

<sup>6</sup> Sl. ibid.: "And yef it be plesant to hym lete hym abyde therinne, and lete hym foment his eyen and his heuede. And yf he were rixt hoot in þe bathth, lete hym dwell therin not passyng an houre, but þenne þe pacient schal be purged aȝen. ¶ And in þe laste ende of þe obtalmia yt ys good to take hoot salt water, þat rosen haue be enfusyd inne, and lete hit droppe doune fro an hyȝe vpon þe hornes of his heued, þat yt mowe passe doune so by the eyen."

<sup>7</sup> thou schalt attende for to make m., Lat.: ergo in tendas ad maturandum. Compare O.Fr. s'attendre à faire qu. ch.



- of<sup>t</sup> thus wiþ al<sup>1</sup> togidere til þe quittance schauwie, for þan þe akinge  
wole aceesse / For whanne pustula is to-broke, & quittance is gaderid,  
þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> putt<sup>t</sup> þeron a collirie of<sup>t</sup> leed. & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup>  
4 fulfille alle þingis þat<sup>t</sup> schulen be seid wiþ vlceribus / A collirie of<sup>t</sup>  
thus þat<sup>t</sup> is maturatif<sup>t</sup> for <sup>2</sup>pustulis is maad in þis maner / R<sup>y</sup>, thuris <sup>[<sup>2</sup> lf. 165, bk.]</sup>  
albi gummosi grossi, partes .x, antimonij, sarcocolle ana. partes .v. R  
croci partes ij, & tempere hem wiþ muscilage of<sup>t</sup> fenigree; & make  
8 þerof<sup>t</sup> pelottis, & kepe hem for þin vss. & whan þou hast<sup>t</sup> nede  
herof<sup>t</sup>, þan tempere a pelot<sup>t</sup> with þe forseid licour, & make it<sup>t</sup> moist<sup>t</sup>  
& binde it<sup>t</sup> vpon his iȝe, & lete þis ligge til þe akynges go awei; &  
putte in his iȝe colirium de plumbo, þat<sup>t</sup> is maad in þis maner / R<sup>y</sup>, .R.  
12 plumbi vsti, antimonij, zucare, eris vsti, gummi arabic, draganti  
ana partes .viij, opij partem ʒ, & make herof<sup>t</sup> a sutil poudre, &  
þan tempere it<sup>t</sup> wiþ reyn-watir & wiþ water of<sup>t</sup> rosis, & make þerof<sup>t</sup>  
pelottis. & whanne þou wolt<sup>t</sup> vse hem, distempere oon þerof<sup>t</sup> or  
16 tweyne wiþ water of<sup>t</sup> rosis, & binde it<sup>t</sup> vpon his iȝe; for þis collirie  
soudiþ & gendriþ fleisch / Aftir þe tyme þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> is soudid, if<sup>t</sup> þere  
leue a litil ampulle,<sup>3</sup> þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> cure it<sup>t</sup> as þou schalt<sup>t</sup> fynde  
in his propre place. ¶ fleumatik mater makip ful seelden ony  
20 enpostym in þe iȝe, & malancolie myche latter; nepeles we wolen  
telle curis of<sup>t</sup> hem. ¶ Signes of<sup>t</sup> <sup>4</sup>fleum ben þese: greet<sup>t</sup> swellynge  
& manie teeris, & litil reednes ouþer noon; & þe cure herof<sup>t</sup> is to  
purge him wiþ cochijs or wiþ trocisco de turbit<sup>t</sup>, saue cochie ben  
24 more better. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> putte in his eere muscilaginem<sup>5</sup> fenigrec,  
& putte in his iȝe ȝelowe poudre þat<sup>t</sup> is forseid. & vpon his iȝe þou  
schalt<sup>t</sup> leie enplastre maad of<sup>t</sup> aloe, mirra, acacia, & croco ana; &  
distempere hem wiþ mussilagine fenigreci. & in þis caas good wijn  
28 wole do him good, drunken in mesure / If<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> come of<sup>t</sup> malancolie,  
þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi blaknes of<sup>t</sup> al þe bodi<sup>6</sup> & leene, & bi drienes of<sup>t</sup>  
hise iȝen, & ful litil reednes or noon in hise iȝen. & þe cure herof<sup>t</sup>  
is for to purge wel malancolie, & baping<sup>t</sup> & fomentacion wiþ rosis &  
32 violet, & flouris of<sup>t</sup> borage & buglossa. & þis þou schalt<sup>t</sup> wite þat<sup>t</sup>  
in euery maner of<sup>t</sup> obtalmia, in þe ende þerof<sup>t</sup> baping<sup>t</sup> ben good.

Colirium  
plumbe.Apostemas  
in the eyes  
seldom arise  
from phlegm.  
[<sup>4</sup> lf. 166]In this case  
purge and  
apply a  
plaster.  
RTreatment of  
an apostema  
if Melancholy  
is the cause.

Nota.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: cum coto, donec super cotum sanies apparebit. The translator read "toto." Sl. 2463, f. 86: "with cotoun, to þat þe quytture schewe vpon þe cottone."

<sup>3</sup> ampulle, a tumour in the skin of the hands or the feet. See Tomm. Dict., s. v. ampolla. The Lat. has *albula*. Matth. Sylv.: "*Albule* id est macule oculi albe."

<sup>6</sup> MS. & inserted.

<sup>6</sup> Sl. 2463, fol. 87: "All þe body of þe pacient ys blakkyssh."



If pain and swelling follow an injury, apply blood drawn from a living dove.

¶ If þat reednes of þe ize come of smyting<sup>1</sup> & akyng<sup>2</sup>, & swellynge come þerwip, þan it is necessarie for to haue a 3ong<sup>3</sup> culuer quyke, & lete hir blood in a veyne vnder hir wyng<sup>4</sup> wip a nedle, & putte it in his ize as hoot<sup>5</sup> as it comeþ fro þe culuer.<sup>1</sup> þis 4

[<sup>2</sup> 1f. 166, bk.] doip awei <sup>2</sup>þe akyng<sup>2</sup>, & þe reednes & þe brennyng<sup>3</sup>.

de vlcibus  
oculorum.

These ulcers  
are accom-  
panied with  
continual  
pain.

vij maner  
vlcus

The symp-  
toms of an  
ulcer are pain  
and a red  
point in the  
eye.

Treatment:

Apply  
Colirium  
album  
to relieve  
pain;

and if this is  
insufficient,

[<sup>4</sup> 1f. 167]

Colirium  
Eliphur.

R

¶ Vlcera ben engendrid in a mannes ize. & þan þer comeþ greet akinge þerwip & abydyng<sup>2</sup>, & þis mai not be doon awei wip collirium album, ne wip noon mitigatif / And þere ben vij. maner 8 vlcera, & of alle we wolen telle her curis schortli & profitabli, of curis þat I am expert<sup>3</sup> of<sup>3</sup> longe tyme. ¶ The signes of vlcera þat pustula comeþ þerof ben þese: grete akingis þat mai not be swagid wip collirium album, & þer wole in his ize appere a reed poynt<sup>4</sup> or a 12 corn. & if al his ize be reed, þan þe poynt<sup>4</sup> or corn wole be more reed, & þat point<sup>4</sup> wole make greet agreuance, & greet swellinge, & greet betyng<sup>5</sup>, & manie teeris / It is greet nede in þis passioun for to sotille his dietyng<sup>6</sup>, & do þerto þingis for to make mitigatif, as 16 collirium album, & lete him blood, & do al þe cure as it is aforseid / If þou miȝt<sup>7</sup> not defende þe mater wip alle þese remedies ne aswage þe akyng<sup>2</sup>, or þer wexe a corn þeron or vlcus, & collirium de plumbo ne wole suffise for to soude vlcus, þan þou schalt<sup>8</sup> leie þerto mitiga- 20 tiuis for to do awei þe akyng<sup>2</sup>. & do in his ize collirium <sup>4</sup>eliser,<sup>5</sup> for þat wole defende þat þe enpostym schal not wexe, þat is maad in þis maner / R̄, antimonij, emathitis,<sup>6</sup> ana partes .x., acacie partes .iij., aloes partem .j., grinde hem sotilly & tempere hem wip iuys of 24

<sup>1</sup> The use of blood taken from a vein under the wings of a dove is mentioned by Galen: *De Simplicium Medicamentorum medicamentis*, Lib. X., Cap. II. 3. Trevisa translation of *Bart. de Propr.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, (Add. 27,944, fol. 84), "*Also philosophres telleþ as Constant, seiþ þat þe blood i-drave out of þe poynt of þe riȝt wyng of a culcer, oper of a swalwe. oper of a lepwinke, & i-doo in þe bygynnyng eppon þat mole, clensiþ hit miȝtly / for þe blood of þese foules hetþ and dissolceþ strongliche.*"

<sup>3</sup> of curis þat I am expert of, Lat. curam quam sum expertus.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *eliser*, Lat. *elisir*, the form of Arab. *eliksir* as preserved in Ital. *elisire*. It means in its pharmacological sense an alcoholic liquor, in which aromatic substances are dissolved. Devic (*Dict. Ét.*) states, that the Arabic word is merely a transcription of Greek *ξηρόν*, dry. Lanfranc gives a curious explanation of the word in the present passage, which has been omitted by the translator: *collyrium elisir: quod est dicere penetrativum, quod egressum uveae prohibet*. Sl. 2463, f. 87 b.: "*colirium eleser þat is þe seyne persyng, þe whiche defendith þe egression of ruea.*"

<sup>6</sup> *emathites*, hæmatites, bloodstone. Mentioned as a stiptic and an eye-medicine in *Galen* (ed. Kühn, vol. X., 330); in *Bart. De Propr.*, Lib. XVI., Cap. 39 (Add. 27,944, fol. 199 b), "*Emathites is a reed stoon . . . & is good aȝains þe flux of þe bladde and to sore yhen.*"

- corigiole,<sup>1</sup> & make þerof<sup>2</sup> polottis; & dissolue herof<sup>3</sup> wip watir of  
roses, & binde it faste to his ize. þis collirium fastēneþ his ize, &  
makip þat<sup>4</sup> þe enpostym may wexe no ferþere / ¶ Macula<sup>2</sup> is a wem  
4 in a mannys ize, & summe be white þerof<sup>5</sup> & sittip vpon þe sizt<sup>6</sup> of  
þe ize,<sup>3</sup> & summe bisidis þe sizt<sup>6</sup>. & þis comeþ of an oold obtalmiam.  
& herto principali is good collirium album of .G. þat<sup>7</sup> is forseid. &  
þis collirie is good þerfore / R̄, aloes, croci. ana partes viij, eris vsti  
8 waischen, *gummi arabici*, opij, ana partes vj., mirre xij. partis,  
climie<sup>4</sup> partes iiij., thurus partes .iiij, grinde alle þese sotilly & tem-  
pere hem wip swete wijn, & make þerof<sup>5</sup> pelottis, & kepe hem : &  
wip þis collirie I temperid collirium album. Galien & I haue curid  
12 wip þese .ij. colliries, & wip cauterijs, & kuttingis of veynes, manye  
men / & I curide þerwip a man þat<sup>8</sup> was clepid sir Reynold Manesyn.  
& he hadde obtolmiam *id est* postym in his ize longe tyme tofore,  
& þerof<sup>5</sup> came manye wemmys in his ize; summe þerof<sup>5</sup> weren white  
16 & summe þerof<sup>5</sup> weren reed, & maden þat<sup>9</sup> he miȝte not se, &  
anoþer man ledde him. & þouȝ þer were leid mete tofore him vpon  
þe boord, he miȝte not se þerof<sup>5</sup> / & þo I lokide to him; & wipanne  
a monþe he miȝt se to pleie at þe tabler.<sup>6</sup> & I dide awei alle þe  
20 wemmys of his izen, so þat<sup>10</sup> he miȝte se as wel as euere he dide  
tofore / & þere tofore he hadde manie opere lechis, & leiden in his  
izen stronge collirijs, & algate his sijknes was more & more : & so  
his sizt<sup>6</sup> was binome him þre ȝeer. ¶ Collirium .G. is good for  
24 obtolmiam, as I haue apreued manie siþis; & it<sup>11</sup> is good for vlcera  
þat<sup>12</sup> ben newe & not olde, & for wemmis.
- & sumtyme sich a maner pricke comeþ of smytynge, or of greet  
crijnge, or of blood as þoruȝ brekyng of a veyne, & makip a poynt<sup>13</sup>  
28 in a mannes ize, & þerfore blood letyng is good. & do in his ize

Macula is a  
white spot on  
or near the  
pupil of the  
eye.

Galien

Colirium  
album

Galien

A nobleman  
who had lost  
his eye-sight  
[5 lf. 167, bk.]  
was treated  
by Lanfranc,

and after a  
month he  
could play  
backgani-  
mon.

Colirium  
Galien.

If a 'point'  
in the eye  
is caused by  
an injury,  
use blood-  
letting,

<sup>1</sup> "*Corrigiola*. So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas." Halle, *Table*, p. 29.

<sup>2</sup> *macula* as a name for an eye-disease is not used by the Latin authors. It occurs in *Bart. de Propr. rer.*, and is translated by *nebbe*, *mole*. See p. 248, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> *þe sizt of þe ize*, Lat. *cornea*. "The sight of the eye, that is, the hole of the skinne called *Ragoides*, out of which the vertue visible worketh his operation." Cooper. Compare O.E. *séo*, f., O.H.G. *seha*, f., the black of the eye.

<sup>4</sup> *climie*. Matth. Sylv. "*Klimia*. *Cadimia*. *alkimia* *Auicenna*. est fumus seu fuligo adherens superioribus fornacis in purificatione cuiusque metalli. sioria vero est fex descendens ad inferiora."

<sup>6</sup> *tabler*. Lat. : vide ipsum ludentem in vespertis ad tabulas cum taxillis. "*Tabler*, or table of play or game." *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 485.



and apply the blood of a culuer, & waische his ȝen wip wommans milk warm, as it cometh out of þe tete.<sup>1</sup>

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 168]  
Redness of the eyes causes itching and vice versa.  
Both occasion scab and vngula.

Galien

Scabies.  
The eye-lids are full of pimples.

Colirium  
rubeum  
R

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 168, bk.]

Colirium  
viride  
R

¶ Rubedo id est reednes, pruritus id est icchinge, sebel, sca<sup>2</sup>bies, & vngula, goiþ al in oon cours.<sup>3</sup> & oon herof is cause of anoper / 4  
For of long reednes tofore cometh icchinge, & sumtyme icchinge is cause of reednes, & of þese .ij. cometh scabbe in þe ȝe liddis; & if it gadere togidere in þe corner of þe ȝe, þan it is clepid vngula / þerfore þou must first cure hastily þe reednes & þe icchinge of his 8  
ȝen, lest þer come ony oper sjuknes þerof / Reednes may be curid wip þe white of an ey & with collirium album / Galien seiþ: icchinge may be curid wip whit wijn, in which be grounden aloes, & leid in his ȝe wip soft linnen cloof, & bounden þerto. ¶ Scabies 12  
is whanne þe ȝe liddis ben reed & to-swolle, & ful of reed pinplis. & þis passioun maketh greet icchinge & brennynge, & manie teeris / þe cure herof is þis: waische hise ȝen wip wijn in which be resolued grene coperoze, þat is clepid vitriolum romanum.<sup>4</sup> & if 16  
þis suffise not, þan þou schalt make collirium rubeum in þis maner / R̄, emathitis, vitrioli adusti ana partes tres, eris vsti partes duas, mirre, croci, ana partes x., piperis longi partem ʒ; tempere alle þes  
wip old <sup>5</sup>wijn, & make þerof pelottis, & kepe hem; and whanne 20  
þou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wip oold wijn, & do it in his ȝe / If þe mater be greet & strong, þan þou muste vse collirium viride, þat is maad in þis maner / R̄, floris eris partes tres, vitrioli vsti partes .vj., arsenici rubei, baurac, spume maris, ana partes .ij, 24  
& medle hem þerwip also & make þerof pelottis, & dissolue oon

<sup>1</sup> Trevisa l. c., Lib. VII., Cap. 17 (Add. 27,944, fol. 84 a), "Also it happiþ þat blood wooseth out of veynes & of pipes & cometh to þe ȝzen, & veynes brekeþ or be i-hurt in þe kertil þat hatte coniunctivæ, & þan suche vnhygines of þe ȝze cometh of blood þat cometh so to þe ȝze. ¶ Culuir blood or turtil blood dissolveth & departeth þis blood þat is so i-ronne as constantinus seiþ, & so doþ womman melk wip ensens, & so doþ freisch chese i-medlid with hony wip-outen salt, if it be laide þerto."

<sup>3</sup> Trevisa l. c., Lib. VII., Cap. 16, "De lippitudine albugine de panno siue de macula. Another evel of þe ȝzen þat we clepiþ a webbe, & Constantinus clepiþ it albugo, & brediþ in þis manere. ¶ ffirst a rewme rennep to þe ȝzen, & þerof cometh an yvel þat hatte obtalmia, a schrewed blereynges & ache & aposteme; & if it is evel i-kept þerof leveh a litil mole & infection, & longtyme turneth & growiþ into a webbe & picke, & occupieth more place þan al þe blacke of þe ȝze. ¶ This webbe turneth into cloof by more picnes & occupieth more place, for it occupieth al þe blake of þe ȝze, & at þe last it turneth into þe kynde of a naile of þe honde."

<sup>4</sup> Vitriolum Romanum. "The one growyng of it-selfe in the earth by concretion, and is vulgarly called Coppa rosa." Halle, Table, p. 139.



- perof in watir of rue distillid & leid in his ize // ¶ **Sebel**<sup>1</sup> is seid, Sebel, an inflammation of the veins of the eye.  
 whanne þe veynes þat<sup>t</sup> ben ioyned togidere in þe ize,<sup>2</sup> ben ful of blood & wexiþ greet, & sumtyme a cloop þat<sup>t</sup> is in a mannes ize. For  
 4 to cure þis passioun collirium rubeum is good þerfore, or collirium viride þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid // ¶ **Vngula** sittip in þe corner of þe ize þat<sup>t</sup> Ungula, a web in the eye, sometimes covering the whole eye-ball.  
 is next þe nose, & gooþ forþ vpon þe ize til it hile al þe ize; & sumtyme it comeþ of a superfluite of fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> wexiþ in þe corner  
 8 of a mannes ize, & wexiþ forþ abroad as it were a cloop. & þer ben manie maners þerof, & oon is sotil & pinne, & goiþ ouer þe ize. & of sum men þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid a cloop, & þat<sup>t</sup> ofþer maner is more fleischi & picke, & is clepid vngula / þe cure <sup>3</sup>þerof ben collirium viride & [3 lf. 160]  
 12 rubeum, þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid : & if þis suffisiþ not, þan it mote be kutt away wiþ instrumentis as miche as me mai kutte awei þerof, & If Collyriums prove insufficient, cut away the growth.  
 aftirward cure him with collirijs / In þe kuttinge of vngulam be war þat<sup>t</sup> þou kutte not þe fleisch in þe corner of þe ize to depe; for  
 16 if it were kutt to depe, his ize schulde watre, & be ful of teeris al þe while he lyueþ. ¶ Also in scabbe, sebel, & vngula, purgacioun is good, & blood leting; & þe patient schal absteyne him fro alle swete þingis & scharp, for al þese forseid passiouns comeþ of blood  
 20 corrupt. ¶ **Cataracta**<sup>4</sup> is water þat<sup>t</sup> falliþ down bitwixe þe .ij. skynnes of þe ize & abidiþ tofore þe place þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid pupilla, þat<sup>t</sup> is þe poynt of þe ize. & þan it defendiþ þat<sup>t</sup> a man mai not se; & it is clepid cataracta, bi þe liknes of an instrument þat<sup>t</sup> is a Cataracta. Cataract is a water between the two skins of the eye.  
 24 mille / & sumtyme þis passioun bigynneþ, & sumtyme it is conformed / Signes of þe bigynnyng ben þese / It semeþ to þe patient þat<sup>t</sup> he seeþ briht þingis tofore him, & him þinkiþ þat<sup>t</sup> oon þing<sup>i</sup> is .ij. þingis or þre / & sumtyme it semeþ to him þat<sup>t</sup> þing<sup>i</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> he seeþ At the beginning of the disease the patient sees double.  
 28 to be ful of holis / & sumtyme þese þingis <sup>5</sup>mowe come of yuel [5 lf. 160, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> "Sebel idem quod Serasif i. vene rubee que sunt in albo oculorum." *Sinonima Serapionis*, ed. Venet. 1497. Arab. Pers. zabêl, Dung, a dried gourd, basket. (Johnson.) Fr. sêbile, basket.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: Sebel dicitur quando venæ conjunctivæ et cornæ, quæ sunt in earum superficie — — replentur sanguine. The translator mistook 'conjunctivæ' for 'conjunctæ.'

<sup>4</sup> *Cataracta*. The Latin authors used this word for 1. waterfall, 2. flood-gate, sluice of a river (Scheller *Dict.*). In its pathological meaning, it is first found in *Platearius*, xiith cent. (*Practica*, Lib. II., Cap. VII., fol. 209 b, Lugd. 1525, quoted by Hirsch, *Klin. Monatsbl. f. Augenheilkunde*, 1869, p. 284). The explanations vary according to the above-mentioned Latin significations. Lanfranc adopts the meaning 'gate.' Lat.: "et dicitur cataracta per similitudinem illius instrumenti, quod est apud molendina: quod quando eleuatur, currit aqua per canalem: quando deponitur nihil currit." Molendinum, "a mylle." Wr. Wü., *Voc.*, 596, 27.

This irregularity may arise from a disordered stomach, and then it is easily cured.

When the Cataract is developed, a spot on the pupil of the eye is discovered.

disposicioun of þe stomac, & þan it is not so greet drede þerof; for whanne þe stomac is curid, þese signes wolen go awei / In þis maner þou schalt wite wher it come of þe stomac or of þe ize / If þese signes comen whanne þe stomac is ful, & whanne he is fastynge 4 & þei come not, it is a signe þat it cometh of þe stomac / And if it is in hise izen contynuelli, þan it cometh not of þe stomac, but it is sijknes of þe izen / ¶ Also purge him oones wip pululas cochias, & if it is neuer þe bettir, þan þou miȝt wite for certeyn þat þe 8 passioun cometh of þe stomac. And if þis passioun hap longe durid in a man, & if þou miȝt no þing se in his ize, þan þou schalt wite for certeyn þat it is a bigynnyng of cataracta / Whanne cataracta is confermed, it schal not be hid to a mannes witt þat is vsid in þe 12 craft. & in þis manere þou schalt knowe it: þou schalt se a maner colour vpon þe poynt of þe sizt of þe ize, þat wole sumtyme be whit, & sumtyme in þe colour of askis, & sumtyme a litil grene : & þis stoppiȝ al a mannes sizt //

16

[1 ff. 170]

The Cataract can be cured by medicines at its early state.

Regulate the patient's diet, purge and apply a Collyrium prepared with the gall of several animals.

R

þis maner siknes<sup>1</sup> schal be helid wip phisie or it be confermed. & whanne it is confermed, it mote be curid wip a mannes hand. þe patient mote absteine him fro sopers<sup>2</sup> & fro al maner fatte potagis, & from al maner moiste fruitis, & fro al maner fruitis þat 20 engendriȝ moistnes / saue he schal vse hote þingis, & he schal ofte be purgid wip pillis cochie rasis, þat is þe beste þing laxatif þat mai be for izen, & þan make a collirie of gallis of beestis þat is maad in þis maner. R, fellis grue, fellis stelionis, fellis hirci, fellis 24 anticipitris,<sup>3</sup> fellis aquile & perdicis, & alle þese gallis ben drie, & take herof .x. partiȝs, euforbie, colloquintide, ana. partem .j, grinde alle þese & tempere hem wip þe iuys of fenigreci & make þerof pelottis. & whanne þou wolt worche þerwip, resolute oon þerof wip 28 water of fenel distillid, & leie it in his ize twies on þe day ./

R

A Collyrium prepared with lye.

¶ Anoper lizt medicyn þat is preued / Take askis of vynes & sarce hem & make þerof lie with good whit wijn, & lete it stonde in a glasen vessel, & lete it clarifie þerinne. & þis is a good collirie 32 þerfore, for þe more cold þat cataracta is, þe bettir þis medicyn is þerfore / And if cataracta be<sup>4</sup> so confermed þat it stoppe al þe lizt, þan it is incurable wip medicyns, & also þer ben manie opere incurable. ¶ And if it so be þat he se not, þan make him close 36 his izen togidere, & frote al softe vpon þe ize lid þat is soor; & if it be in boþe his izen, þan serue so boþe, & þan lete him opene his

[1 ff. 170, bk.]

Cure of Cataract by operation: Dilate the pupil of the

<sup>2</sup> soper, cena. See Skent, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. supper.

<sup>3</sup> anticipiter, med. Lat. for accipiter. Dufr. Glass.



- izen sodeinli anoon, & loke if þe poynt of þe ize bicom whit,<sup>1</sup> & if it bicom not whit, þan it is of .ij. þingis; ouper it is opilacioun of þe nerue, þat cometh fro þe brain & is holow & defendiþ þe sizt,<sup>2</sup> eye by rubbing the eyelid.  
 4 or it is cataracta þat is greet & stoppiþ þe nerue, & stoppiþ þe weie of þe spirit þat it mai not come to þe poynt of þe sizt þat is clepid pupilla / If þou frotist his ize as it is forseid, þan lete him do vp his ize hastili, & þou schalt se þan vpon his ize a whit þing,<sup>3</sup> It will not dilate, if there is an obstruction in the nerve.  
 8 as it were a peerle, þan þou miȝt sureli worche wiþ instrumentis of cirurgie<sup>2</sup> / First þou schalt make þe pacient sitte vpon a stool tofore þee, & þou schalt sitte a litil hizer þan he, & his ize þat is hool þou schalt bynde faste þat he ne mowe no þing se þerwiþ, & þan þou  
 12 schalt haue in þi mouþ a fewe braunchis of fenel, & þou schalt breke hem a litil with þi teep, & þan þou schalt blowe in his ize .ij. sipis or iij. þat þe fume of þe fenel mowe entre into his ize / þan þou schalt haue an instrument of siluir, schape in the maner of a  
 16 nedle, and it schal sitte in a greet hafte þat þou mai þe bettir hold it wiþ þin hand, & þan þou schalt bigynne aforȝens þe lasse corner of þe ize, & þou schalt putte in þin instrument anoon to þe corn þat is in þe ize, & whanne þou seest þe point of þe instrument  
 20 vndir þe corn,<sup>4</sup> þan lete þe point of þin instrument goon anoon to þe water þat is gaderid tofore þe ize / And whanne þou hast broken þe place þat þe water was ynne, þan presse it adounward, & drawe out al þe watir þerof clene,<sup>5</sup> & if þer come more watir þerto,  
 24 þan þou must reherse þis werk aȝen. & if þer come no more watir þerto, þan þou schalt leie vpon his ize a plastre maad of þe zelke of an eij wiþ þe white, & bole leid vpon lynnen cloof & binde vpon his ize, & lete þe patient be in a derk place, & he schal heere no  
 Then bandage the sound eye,  
 [3 f. 171]  
 and pass a silver needle through the eye-ball until it reaches the white corn and the cataractic water.  
 When you have pressed out this water,  
 apply a plaster to the eye, and let the patient be in a dark room,

<sup>1</sup> *whit* for *wid*, Lat.: vide si pupilla dilatatur.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: quod cum videris manum ullatenus non apponas. This method of testing, whether a cataract is fit for operation or not, has already been proposed by Galen, as mentions *Paulus de Aegina*, Lib. VI., Cap. 21. We find the same in *Hali Abbas*, Lib. IX., Cap. 28, fol. 279, ed., Lugd. 1523. See Magnus H., *Geschichte des grauen Staars*. Leipzig, 1876.

<sup>4</sup> *corn*, a mistake; the translator did not know the meaning of "cornea." Lat.: et impellas instrumentum usque ad corneam: quia tunc videbis illum. Cum autem instrumentum videbis sub cornea illum impellas vsque ad aquam quæ est coram pupilla.

<sup>5</sup> & drawe out al þe watir þerof clene, an insertion of the translator. The operation which he describes is the dislocation of cataract by depression. A fuller and more accurate account of it is given by John Vigo, who begins his description with the following words: "And yf the cataractes cannot be healed, when they are confirmed, then we must turne to handy operation. And though we counseyled to leave it to y<sup>e</sup> tothdrawers, yet we wyl declare y<sup>e</sup> maner therof." Traheron, *Vigo*, fol. 136<sup>b</sup>.



and in perfect rest, for 8 days.

[1f. 171, bk.]

An obstruction of the pupil from internal causes is difficult to cure.

**pigra Rasis**

If the obstruction arises from external causes, let blood

and apply a plaster.

**R**

greet noise, & he schal not traueile wipinne .viij. daies, & he mote be kept so þat he cowȝe not<sup>1</sup> & fro wrappe / Sumtyme þe poynt of þe ize sizt is stoppid wipinneforþ, & þan he schal neuere be curid þerof; ouper it wole be greet maistrie for to cure it. & if it mai be curid, þis is þe cure þerof: þou muste purge him with pigra rasis, & wip pululis cochijs þat rasis made, & þei muste be ofte zeue, & þou muste do in his izen drijnge collirijs & opere driyng medicyns / Ouþer it mai come of causis withoutforþ as of smitynge & þat mai liztli be curid / First þe patient schal be lete blood, if age mai suffre it & opere particlis þat be forseid, for blood letyng wole helpe for to auoide awei þe enpostym, & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre wip oon of þese medicyns, & it schal be bounden 12 þerto softli / R̄, mele of beenis þat be sotil & grinde it wip wipi leeuēs smal / Also take mele of beenys & flouris of camomille & þe rote of altea .3. ij., & also biteine .ḡ. j., absinthium .3. j. & seþe hem in water & make þerof an enplastre & lete þe patient reste, 16 probatum est.

**Hordeolum** is a swelling in the eye-lids,

[2f. 172]

and affects new-born children.

¶ Ordecilus is a litil swellinge, & is long & smal & comeþ to a child whanne it is bore, & þis passioun wole sitte in<sup>2</sup> his ize liddis / þe cure herof is for to lete hem blood & purge him of humours corrupt, & do þerto þis medicyn: medle aloes with licio<sup>3</sup> & make þerof a poudre / Also þou schalt anoynte him wip storax liquida & anointe him þerwip / ¶ Also resolue a litil opoponac in water, and make an enplastre þerof & leie vpon the place, & þe same þing doþ 24 diaquilon, & or þou leie ony plastre þervpon, þou schalt make a fomentacioun wip hoot water.

**Grando.**  
A knot in the eye-lids.

¶ Grando & nodus. Grando is as miche to seie as an hail stoon, & nodus is a knotte, & þus comeþ in þe ize liddis, & sumtyme it 28 wole schewe wipinneforþ, & sumtyme wipoute. & whanne it schewip wipoutforþ, opene it & leie þeron diaquilon & opere þingis for to consume þe mater. & if þis suffise not, þou schalt take it wip þi .ij. fyngris & drawe it harde, & þan kutte þe skyn þeron & drawe 32 him out, & þan þou shalt soude it wip þe white of an eij & opere þingis þat ben soudinge //

**fistula lacrimalis**

¶ fistula lacrimalis,<sup>4</sup> þat is as miche to seie as a feestre wip

<sup>3</sup> "Lycium. Is the Juice of a thorny tree, growing chiefly in Capadocia and Lycia, of three cubites heighth." Halle, Table, p. 63.

<sup>4</sup> Sl. 2463, f. 90: "A ffystule in þe wyke of þe eye, hit comyth of concours of rennyng of humores to þe corner of þe eye besyde þe nose, & because of her multitude & gretnesse þey may nat passen out but abyden there & maken an emynence, as hit were a lupyne; & therfore of sune hit is cleped lupinus."

- teeris / þis cometh in þe corner of þe ize next þe <sup>1</sup>nose, & engendriþ <sup>[1 If. 172, bk.]</sup>  
 pere & makith a þing<sup>a</sup> as greet as it were a pese. & if þese humours <sup>At the inner  
angle of the  
eye a growth  
begins, which  
ulcerates,</sup>  
 leue pere longe þei wolen rotie & þei wolen make vlcus pere, & þer  
 4 wole come manie teeris þerto, and þei mai not be maad drie, & þis  
 mai leue pere so longe þat þer wole engendre a feestre þerof. & <sup>gives rise to a  
fistula and  
finally affects  
the bone.</sup>  
 but if þat feestre be curid while it is freisch, it wole rote þe boon,  
 & þe lenger þat it wexiþ oold, þe worse it wole be for to cure.  
 8 ¶ þe firste biggynnyng of þis cure is for to avoide þe heed wiþ  
 cochijs & wiþ pigra, þan do þeron þis collirium / Rꝛ, aloes, thuris,  
 sarcocolle, sanguinis draconis, balaustie, antimonij, aluminis, ana,  
 floris eris a litil, as miche as wole be þe fourþe part of oon of þe  
 12 forseid. & make of alle þes sotil poudre & distempere hem wiþ  
 reyn water or wiþ water of roses, & caste it in þe corner of his ize,  
 but þe place schal be maad drie first. & þan þou schalt do þerto  
 oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, or  
 16 þis medicyn þat is aproued / Take clene mirre .3. ij. & make þerof <sup>R</sup>  
 poudre & make it picke wiþ þe galle of a boole, þat it be as picke  
 as it were an oynement, <sup>2</sup> & leie it vpon linnen cloof & leie þis þer-  
 vpon, for þis wole soude þe place & make it clene / ¶ If it so be <sup>[2 If. 173]</sup>  
 20 þat it be not curid with þis medicyn, þanne it is a signe þat þe  
 boon is rotid, & þan þou muste opene þe skyn & vnhiþe þe boon,  
 & touche þe boon wiþ an hoot iren as fer as it is rotid / & þanne  
 leie þervpon buttir or grese þat þe scar þer mowe falle awei, & þan  
 24 þou muste rehearse þe cauterie azen. & þanne leie þervpon buttir,  
 & þus þou muste do til þe boon be clene, & þan leie þervpon oile of  
 rosis hoot medlid wiþ zelke of an ey til al þe brennyng falle away.  
 & þan drie þe place with drijng medicyns, & þan regendre fleisch &  
 28 soude it, & þou schalt wite þat þer is noon so good maner medicyn  
 as þis is / For if þou wolt leie þerto ony corosif water, þat wole  
 brenne forþere þan it schulde / & also it were greet perel for þe ize  
 & þefore it is good for to worche as it is aforseid / <sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup> The end of this chapter, omitted by the translator, is given in Sl. 2463, fol. 90 b.: "¶ Also he<sup>a</sup> seyth þat yf þe bone be schauen with Instrumentis þat all þe corrupcion is seldome taken awaye, wherefore þe corrupcion comyth azen bycause of þe partie whiche leuyth behynde corrupt. ¶ He seyth also þat alþouȝ the corrupcion be taken away neuer so well, yet nature departith a litell follikell þerfro aforne þat þe flessch mowe be faste knyt other soudid to þe bone and what tyme þe bone is touchyd with an hoot Iryn, þanne all þat is corrupt disseuerith fro þat ys hoole, and þe complexion of þe place is tempered.

<sup>a</sup> Lanfrank.



## Of þe passioun of eeris.

¶ iij. co.

Nerves go to the ear from the brain.

[1 lf. 173, bk.] The sound is conveyed to the brain through the ear passage.

This passage is curved.

The ear is made of cartilage, that it may both sustain itself and be pliable.

The diseases of the ear belong partly to Surgery, partly to Physic.

[3 lf. 174]

All these diseases may be comprised under "aching of the ear."

Simple aching arising from a hot complexion is treated with oil of roses, and some opium.

If caused by a cold complexion it is treated with hot oil of lilies.

AS it is aforseid þat nerues comen fro þe brain to þe izen / in þe same maner nerues comen from þe brain & goiþ into þe eris & makij heerynge & ben instrumentis of witt. <sup>1</sup>þe hoolis in a 4 mannes eeris ben maad in a deep holowe boon, & it was bi þis skille þat it schulde vndirstonde sownynge, & þat þe sowne schulde not come into þe brayn anoon, but alitil & alitil bi degree, & also for þis skille þat þe coold eire ne þe hoot eire schulde not sodeinly 8 entre yn; & þe wei þat goiþ into a mannes eere, ne goiþ not rizt forþ, but hidir & pidir, for if þe weie were riztforþ, it wolde þe rapere be hurt of al maner þing / þe eere was maad of cartilaginis þat is hardere þan fleisch & neischer þan boon, þat it miȝte be 12 pliaunt. & if þei schulde be maad oonly of fleisch, þei schulde haue noon sustentacioun for to bere hem vp. & if þei hadden be maad oonly of hard boon, þei miȝten not haue be meued, & þerfore itt was moost nede þat þei weren cartilaginous: þat is as miche to 16 seie as maad of gristle þat is neischer þan boon & hardere þan fleisch. To þis lyme þer comeþ manie sijknnessis, & summe þerof falliþ for cirurgie as apostimes & vlcera, & summe falliþ to þisik as greet sownynge in þe eeris & sibillus, & <sup>2</sup>defaute of heeringe & 20 deefnes.<sup>3</sup> Akyng of þe eeris sumtyme is an yuel, & sumtyme harme fallynge þerto / & þerfore it is mi purpos for to speke boþe of sirurge and of þisik in þis chapitre. ¶ Alle þe sijknnessis of þe eeris moun be take in þis maner, as akyng of eeris. Ouper it 24 is apostym & without vlcera, or it is wiþ enpostym & vlcera; þan it is of yuel complexioun & hoot;<sup>4</sup> þat þou miȝt knowe bi scharp akyng & reednes of þe place. & þan þou schalt cure it wiþ castynge into þe eere oile of rosis, boylid hoot as he mai suffre, wiþ þe 28 .iiij. part of vinegre / & if þe akyng go not awei in þis maner, þan þou schalt do þeron a litil of opium / And if it come of yuel complexioun þat it be coold, as coold wynd or of coold eire entrid þeron, þis þou miȝt knowe bi greet cooldnes in þe place, & þan þou 32 schalt cure him wiþ þingis þat schal be cast into þe eere, watir of maiorana, or oile of lillie, þat þou schalt fynde þe composicioun in þe antidotarie. & in þis maner hoot oile schal be putt in his eere &

<sup>3</sup> MS. *desires*.<sup>4</sup> The translation is corrupt. Lat.: aut est sine apostemate vel ulcere aut cum apostemate et ulcere. Si sine apostemate et ulcere: tunc aut est propter malam complexionem calidam — aut propter malam complexionem frigidam.



no coold ping<sup>r</sup>, & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> stuwe þe pacient<sup>1</sup> / Sumtyme it<sup>t</sup> comeþ [1 If. 174, bk.]  
of<sup>t</sup> sum ping<sup>r</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> falliþ in his eere as a worme or a corn or a stoon,  
or watir; þis þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi þe tellinge of<sup>t</sup> þe pacient<sup>t</sup>; for if<sup>t</sup>  
4 þer be ony ping<sup>r</sup> wiþinne, me mai se it<sup>t</sup>. If<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> so be þat<sup>t</sup> þer be  
falle yn ony stoon, þan caste into his eere oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis, or oile of<sup>t</sup>  
almaundis, & if<sup>t</sup> þer be falle yn ony corn, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do noon  
oile in his eere; for it<sup>t</sup> wole make þe corn wexe greet. Make a  
8 litil instrument<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> tree or of<sup>t</sup> sum oper ping<sup>r</sup> & wete it<sup>t</sup> in terbentyn  
& putte it<sup>t</sup> into his eere, & touche þerwiþ þe stoon, oupir þe greyn, &  
þan it<sup>t</sup> wole cleue þerto, & þan drawe it<sup>t</sup> out<sup>t</sup> / ¶ Also smite his eere  
wiþ þe pawme of<sup>t</sup> þin hand, & bi hap it<sup>t</sup> wole falle out<sup>t</sup> þerwiþ / Also  
12 sette a ventuse wiþ fier vpon þe hoole of<sup>t</sup> his eere, for þis sumtyme  
wole drawe out<sup>t</sup> a corn ouþer a stoon.<sup>2</sup> ¶ If<sup>t</sup> þer entriþ ony worme  
into a mannes eere, þan fille his eere ful of<sup>t</sup> flact watir,<sup>3</sup> & þan drie  
it<sup>t</sup> / And if<sup>t</sup> þis suffisiþ not, fille his eere ful of<sup>t</sup> oile of<sup>t</sup> almaundis  
16 þat<sup>t</sup> ben bittir; & if<sup>t</sup> þis suffisiþ not, þan do in his eere iuys of<sup>t</sup>  
calamynte.

Aching  
caused by a  
foreign body  
in the ear:

If it is a  
stone, cast  
hot oil into  
the ear;

if it is a grain  
use an instru-  
ment,

or try the  
cupping-  
glass.

If it is a  
worm, apply  
warm water.

If the pains  
are caused by  
an apostema,

¶ If<sup>t</sup> þe akyng come of<sup>t</sup> humouris gaderid to apostym, þat<sup>t</sup> þou  
4 miȝt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi greet<sup>t</sup> akyng, & akyng of<sup>t</sup> his pous,<sup>5</sup> & bi þe [4 If. 175]  
20 swellynge of<sup>t</sup> þe place, þan þou muste bigynne for to aswage þe  
akyng wiþ oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis, & lete him blood in þe heed veyne in þe  
same side. If<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> so be þat<sup>t</sup> he mai not<sup>t</sup> be lete blood, for sum cause  
þat<sup>t</sup> lettīþ, þan garse him vpon his schuldris, & putte in his eere oile  
24 of<sup>t</sup> rosis wiþ a litil vinegre. If<sup>t</sup> þee pinkiþ þat<sup>t</sup> þe mater comeþ of<sup>t</sup>  
colre, þat<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi signes þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid, þan purge  
him wiþ a decoccioun of<sup>t</sup> mirabolanorum / If<sup>t</sup> þe mater be not<sup>t</sup>  
aswagid, ne þe akinge do aweī, þan bigynne for to leie mussillaginis  
28 of<sup>t</sup> fenigrec & of<sup>t</sup> lynseed, & rotis of<sup>t</sup> altea, wiþ wommans milk, &  
do it<sup>t</sup> flat<sup>6</sup> into his eere / & vpon þe eere leie an enplastre þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup>  
hile al þe eere, maad of<sup>t</sup> lynseed, & barli, & rotis of<sup>t</sup> altea, & of<sup>t</sup>  
lilie, & medle hem with gandrīs grese & grese of<sup>t</sup> an hen. & þis cure  
32 þou schalt<sup>t</sup> contynueli do, til þe quittance come out<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> his eere, & þe

bleed the  
patient from  
the Vena  
Cephalica,  
or scarify his  
shoulders;

If this fails to  
soothe the  
pain, apply a  
poultice and  
a plaster,  
until sup-  
puration  
begins.

<sup>2</sup> The translator has omitted the case when water is in the ear. SL 2463, fol. 83 b.: "And yef þe water enterid into þe ere, doo Galyenys experyment. ¶ Take a rodde of wilowe othyr a twigge of þe ryne and putte þe tone ende in þe patientis ere, & lappe nex aboute þe tother ende and sette hit on fyre, ffor by þe vertu of þe fyre þe water schal be clene dried vppe."

<sup>3</sup> flact watir. Lat. flaccidus. O.Fr. flaccide. N.E. flat water. Compare flaccid. Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, and flaisch, p. 265, note 1, flasch, p. 266, note 3. O.Fr. flasque, Lat. flaccidus, another form of flaccidus.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: per fortem dolorem et pulsationem.

<sup>6</sup> flat, Lat. tepidus. See above, note 3.

akynges accessen.<sup>1</sup> & þan þou schalt cure it riȝt as vlcera of þe eeris  
 ben curid, þat schal be seid here aftir / Also if þe mater þat makip  
 þe enpostym come <sup>2</sup>of cooldnes, & þat fallip ful seelde, but if it  
 come in an old man, & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe akynges & bi þe  
 cooldnes of þe place, þan þou schalt bigynne to avoide him wiþ  
 pillulas cochie & wiþ a clisterie. & caste into his eere oile of lilies,  
 & resoleue in þe same oile 3 .℞. euforbij oupir .3. j. de turbit, &  
 anoynte al aboute his eeris wiþ þe forseid oile of lilies, & leie þe  
 vpon wolfe vnwaischen, & make him a fumigacioun to his eere wiþ  
 hoot water in which schal be soden maiorana & calamynte. & if þis  
 suffisip not, leie þe vpon an enplaster or an oynement, & of garleke,  
 & rotis of lillie soden to-gidere & grounden wiþ butter, & do þerto  
 leuayn, & do þerto oile of lillie or of camomille, & a lital vinegre, &  
 make an enplastre and leie vpon his eere, for þis enplastre rotip  
 coold mater & drawip it out, & if þou miȝt se ony place in þe eere  
 þat quitture is gaderid on, þan it is good to opene þat place &  
 drawe out þe quitture as it schal be seid heraftir. & þan þou schalt  
 cure it riȝt as þou schalt cure vlcera þat schal be seid herafter.

[3 lf. 176]

If the pain  
arises from  
wind in the  
ear,

instil oil of  
rue.

If the pain  
is caused by  
ulcers in the  
ear,  
a stinking  
pus will be  
discharged.

The mundi-  
ficatives.

.Galien.

A noxious  
ointment.

.Galien.

[6 lf. 176, bk.]

Sumtyme akynges of eeris comen of gret<sup>3</sup> wynd & sound in þe  
 eere, & noise & wynd þat comen of þe heed & fallip into þe eeris.<sup>4</sup> 20  
 þis þou miȝt knowe litzly, for wiþ þe akynges he schal haue a maner  
 noise in his eeris & piping / & þe cure herof schal be avoidinge of  
 greet humours, & þou schalt caste into his eere oile of rue, & in  
 þe same oile schal be dissolved a lital castor, & he mote kepe him  
 fro al ping þat engendrip wynd.

¶ Also akynges of þe eeris comen of vlcera þat ben wipinne in  
 þe hoole of þe eere, & sumtyme þei comen of an enpostym goinge  
 tofore. & þe signes herof ben akynges & cours of quitture þat  
 stynkip. & þe more stinking þat þe quitture is & þe more departid  
 fro whit colour, þe worse it wole be to cure / first þou schalt make  
 clene his heed with cochijs & wiþ pigra, & þan þou muste do mundi-  
 ficatiuis to his eere & driȝn pingis. & be war þat þou worche not  
 as .G. seiþ þat summe worchip: þei leide þerto an oynement þat  
 was good for woundis, & alwey þe patient hadde þe more penaunce,<sup>5</sup>  
 & þe sijkenes woxe more & more / & þerfore .G. axip what is good  
 þerfore / And .G. seiþ: who þat seiþ þat it schal be curid wiþ 36

<sup>1</sup> *accessen*, O.Fr. *acesser*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: Fit etiam dolor auris propter grossam ventositatem ad aures de capite descendentem.

<sup>5</sup> *penaunce*, Lat. *dolor*; *penaunce* usually means "penitence."



drijnge pingis, he seip fals ; for drijnge pingis constreineþ, & apostym  
is constreynynge / And summen han now newe rulis : þat wiþ contrarijs contrarie pingis schulen be curid / In þis maner þou schalt

One must not  
apply drying  
remedies.

4 worche. Make poudre of mirre, & of aloe, & olibani, & sanguis  
draco ana, & take oon tent & wete it in hony, & folde þe tent in  
þe poudre, & putte þe tent in his eere anon to þe botme / & if þe  
tent mai not come to þe botme þerof, þan dissolve þe forseid poudre

R<sup>y</sup>  
for vlcers in  
þe eere

A powder  
that is ap-  
plied to the  
ear by a tent.

8 wiþ watir & hony, & caste it yn / If it so be þat vlcus be swipe  
cold, þan þou schalt cure him in þis maner / Take þe rust of iren,  
& grinde it smal, & leie it in an erpen vessel with vinegre, & boile  
hem togidere, til þe rust bicom e drie. & þus þou muste do ofte tyme.

R<sup>y</sup>  
A preparation  
of rust heals  
the ulcer,  
dries the  
moisture and  
allays the  
pain.

12 & þan þou muste poudre it azen, & seþe it in vinegre azen til it  
bicom picke as hony, & þan do þis in his eere, for þis wole hele  
vlcera, & þis wole drie þe moistnes þerof, & þis wole do away þe  
akyng / And take hony .3. .x., vinegre 3. viij., & boile hem listly  
16 at þe fier til it be wel skymed,<sup>1</sup> & þan do þerto 3 .ij. of vert de  
grece, and <sup>2</sup>medle hem wel togidere, & wete herynne a tent, &  
putte it in his eere, & þis is good for vlcera þat ben oold.

R<sup>y</sup>  
An applica-  
tion for old  
ulcers.  
[2 lf. 177]

¶ If a man be deaf, þan it cometh of summe of þe forseid causis,

20 & principali of longe akyng ; also it cometh of child bering, &  
þanne it is incurable / Also if it cometh of humours þat stoppiþ  
nerues, & þe cure herof is for to purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, &  
caste in his eere oile of bittir almaundis & opere medicyns þat ben

Deafness  
resulting  
from child-  
bearing is  
incurable.

24 openynge. & oon þerof is þis / Take pulpe colloquintide .3. .j.,  
castor, aristologia rotunda, succi absinthij ana 3. ß, euforbij .3. j,  
costi grana .xv, & make herof smale pelottis, & dissolve oon herof  
wiþ oile of almaundis þat ben bittir, & do it in his eere ; saue þou

If it is caused  
by the  
humours,  
purge and  
instil open-  
ing medicines  
into the ear.

R<sup>y</sup>

28 schalt make him a fumigacioun tofore wiþ a decoccioun of sanbuci,  
absinthij, sticados / Also take whit oile .3. .j., & grynde hony &  
oile togidere / If þe passioun cometh of defaute of spiritis, þanne  
putte herof in his eere, & þanne he schal be bapid & haue reste, &

a fumyga-  
cio.

R<sup>y</sup>

If deafness  
arises from  
a weakness of  
the spirit,  
strengthen  
the patient,

32 vse metis þat engendriþ good blood, & he schal heere sotil voicis for  
to make him haue heerynge / & summe seien þat þe fatnes of grene  
<sup>3</sup>froggis, þat lyuen among trees ;<sup>4</sup> take hem & seþe hem, & gadere  
þe fatnes of hem & caste in his eere, for þis hap vertu for to make

[2 lf. 177, bk.]  
and apply the  
fat of green  
frogs.

36 men heere. ¶ Also take a litil garlek & make it clene, & do þerto  
þe .iiij. part of tartre, & grinde hem smal togidere, & boile hem in  
vinegre, & whanne it is coold þan coole it, & of þis vinegre leie  
hoot to his eere /

<sup>1</sup> skymed. Compare *scume*, p. 242, note 6.

<sup>4</sup> Some words like *is good* are wanting.



## Of the passioun of the nose &amp; anothamia.

¶ iij. co.  
The nose has  
two holes  
through  
which the  
brain is  
purged.  
Air is  
gathered in  
the "col-  
atorium,"  
and there is  
the seat of  
smelling.  
The nose has  
two bones,

AS we haue bifore seid þat þer ben .ij. hoolis in þe nose þat þe  
brayn is purgid þerbi of superfluite. & þe nose is not neruous,  
& þe nose is a propre instrument for to smelle. & þese .ij. hoolis in 4  
þe nose ben maad fast in þe scolle. & in þat place is ordeyned a  
þing þat is clepid colatorium,<sup>1</sup> & eir is gaderid þerinne þat makip  
vertu of smellynge. & þoruþ þat place þe superfluitees of þe brayn  
ben pourgid, & þer is oon hoole þerof þat goip toward þe moup. & 8  
þe nose is maad of .ij. boones in þe maner of a triangle in þis  
maner. Δ Δ. þe scharpe eendis þat ben aboue ben ioynunge wip þe  
boones of þe izen. & þe boonys of þe nose þat ben bineþe ben  
cartilaginous for þe causis þat ben forseid.<sup>2</sup>

12

## Latin Original.

and three  
cartilages.

[In parte vero inferiori vnum quodque illorum duorum ossium  
habet quandam cartilaginem propter iuuamenta que sciuiti. In medio  
vero habet aliam cartillaginem, quæ nasum in duas partes diuidit, 16  
quæ durior et fortior est duabus aliis, quæ sunt in nasi fine. Iuua-  
mentum vero illius medie cartilaginis est, ut si vni parti nasi nocumen-  
tum acciderit, pars alia totius suppleat iuuamentum. Duo autem ossa  
nasi coniunguntur ad inuicem : & fit nasi forma, quæ cum his quæ 20  
dicta sunt, plures habet vtilitates. Prima, vt sit tutamen & cooper-  
torium superfluitatibus : quæ de cerebro diriuantur. Secunda, vt  
aerem recipiat, qui est ad receptionem odoratus necessarius mediator.  
Tertia, quod quamuis maior pars aeris que attrahitur vadat ad pul- 24  
monem : tamen aliqua eius pars per nasum tendit ad cerebrum.  
Foraminis autem quod est inter nasum & os, iuuamenta sunt tria.  
Primo vt cum os clauditur, possit aeris fieri attractio ad pulmonem.

The nose  
provides the  
brain with  
air.

The nasal  
cavity com-  
municates  
with the  
mouth,  
1. that one  
may breathe  
through the  
nose,

<sup>1</sup> *os colatorium*. I could not find this name in the ancient authors, but  
it occurs frequently in the Latin translations of the Arab authors. The idea  
that it is the function of the nose to purge the brain is an old one. Compare  
A. C. Celsus de Medicina Lib. IV. Cap. V., ed. Daremberg : "Destillat autem  
humor de capite interdum in nares, quod leve est, interdum in fauces, quod  
peius est ; interdum etiam in pulmonem, quod pessimum est." Avicenna men-  
tions the "*os colatorium*" in connection with this theory in his Canon Lib. I.  
Fen. I. Doctr. V. Cap. 1., ed. Venetiis, 1527, fol. 9. "Ossa autem porosa  
facta fuerunt . . propter additionem necessitatis causa, rei aliquius, que  
necesse est ut in ea penetret sicut odor, qui cum aere attrahitur in osse, col-  
atorio simili, et cerebri superfluitates, que per ipsum expelluntur." We find  
the same theory in the French name for a cold : "*rhume de cerveau*," and  
for the same reason "*Hellebore*" is called "*brain-purging*." *N. E. Dict.*,  
s. v. brain.

<sup>2</sup> Three leaves or four are wanting, and I insert the Latin text from the  
*Editio Argellata Ven.*, 1546, f. 239, bk., and Add. 26,106, f. 71.

- Secundo, vt per illud cerebri anterior ventriculus expurgetur. Tertio, ad intercisionem adiuuet literarum, & voces melius explicandas : quoniam cum in loquendo sit necessarium vocem temperare : literas
- 4 incidere : syllabas solidare : ad hoc saepe labia clauderentur & dentes : si non esset alia via, per quam posset aer superfluus exalare apud literarum incisionem totus conculcaretur aer, qui literarum incisionem & syllabarum prolationem sua multitudine impediret : & vocem etiam
- 8 generatam non claram emitteret : facit ergo in verborum & vocis prolatione foramen hoc quod facit foramen fistulae superius,<sup>1</sup> quod in vocum et tonorum modulationem remanet absolutum : quare voces & toni inde magis exeunt absoluti.<sup>2</sup>
- 12 In naso vel naribus plures concurrunt egritudines. Nam ibi fiunt pustulae, vlcera, caro superflua, polypus, cancer, fluxus sanguinis, fetor, & olfactus priuatio.
- Pustulae** fiunt vt plurimum ab adustis humoribus, et sunt cum
- 16 punctura & ardore. Et cura est phlebotomia & corporis euacuatio, et iniectio albuminis oui cum oleo ros. in simul agitatis. Pustulis fractis, fiat vntio cum vnguento albo Rasis.
- Vlcera** quoque si calida fuerint, curantur eodem modo. Si
- 20 frigida, cum lauatione vini et mellis, & cum vnguento apostolorum, et cum vnguento viridi dicendorum.
- Caro superflua** remouetur cum instrumentis chirurgicis ; si non potest tota cum instrumentis remoueri : remouetur residuum cum
- 24 puluere asfodillorum & cum vnguento viridi, & apostolorum, & cunctis mundificantibus : & remotis superfluis cum unguentis solidantibus compleatur.
- Polypus** dicitur a polypo pisce : cuius malitiosa est astutia : quia
- 28 quando vult piscibus saturari, ascendit saxum quod est in litore maris : & ipsi multum assimilatur, pisces fatigati videntes saxum, non aduertunt de polypo propter similitudinem : sed volentes quiescere, sallunt de mari : polypus illos absorbet : & in eius conuertit
- 32 nutrimentum. Sic iste morbus cum naso magnam habet affinitatem : quoniam eius materia est catarrhosa frigida grossa descendens a capite : & in via propter eius grossitiem & tenacitatem haeret naso seu substantiae nasi inuiscata : et humores capitis agitatione moti naturae
- 36 volentes descendere, & exire, materiam ibi recipiunt congregatam :

2. to purge the brain ;  
3. it helps in the articulation of words.

Pustulas and Ulcers are treated with bloodletting and an ointment.

Proud flesh is removed with an instrument.

The polype is a disease, so called for its similarity with the animal.

<sup>1</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 71 b., on margin : gallice flaute.

<sup>2</sup> The whole preceding passage about the utilities of the nose, and especially the utility of the "nares posteriores," i. e. the communication between the nasal cavity and the pharynx, is taken from *Avicenna*, l. c. Cap. 4.

There are  
two kinds of  
polype:

1. The incur-  
able one has  
the nature of  
a cancer.

2. The cur-  
able one may  
be treated  
like proud  
flesh.

quæ humores illos in suam conuertit malam naturam: et ex ipsa  
quotidie augmentatur. Differentia vero est inter polypum & carnem  
superfluam: quoniam caro superflua, non habet profundam tenacita-  
tem cum nasi substantia: nec cum ipso naso nimis assimilatur: 4  
immo potest de facili segregari: polypus vero firmiter adheret cum  
naso: & non sine violentia separatur. Quorum scilicet polyporum  
aliquis est curabilis: aliquis incurabilis. Curabilis est substantiæ  
mollis & tractabilis: nec nasum reddit durum: nec in colore nigrum 8  
seu fuscum: nec est multum supra circa cerebri confinia inuiscatus.  
Incurabilis vero nasum reddit durum, liuidum seu nigrum: &  
magnam profunditatem tenet, quam quanto magis videris maiori  
nigredine maiorque participari duritie, maioremque profunditatem 12  
occupare, tanto plus ab eo existima fugiendum: quoniam naturam  
tunc tenet canceri: quanto plus eum curare niteris tanto plus videbis  
eius malitiam augmentari.

Curabilis vero cura est secundum quod diximus in cura super- 16  
fluæ carnis quæ ibi consurgit cum ablatione sive cum instrumentis  
& cum vnguentis mundificativis: & aliis quæ nouisti: præcedente  
semper corporis et capitis purgatione: sicut multoties est ostensum.  
Cauteria quoque secundum quod audies, multum valent ad polypi 20  
materiam consumendam. Eius vero quem incurabilem diximus,  
non assumas curam. Si tamen rogaris nimis, palliatiuam curam  
adhibe: sicut in cura canceri recolimus ostendisse.

### De anatomia oris, & contentorum in ore, & passionibus doctrinæ 24 tertiæ tractatus tertii Cap. iiii.

The mem-  
brane lining  
the mouth is  
continuous  
with the in-  
tegriment of  
the stomach.

The organ of  
voice is com-  
posed of three  
cartilages.

**T**otam vero oris concauitatem interius circundat panniculus qui  
continuus est cum meri, & cum stomacho: quare accidit quod  
multæ res tangentes palatum prouocant vomitum. Ad oris concaui- 28  
tatem duæ perueniunt viæ: quarum anatomiam superius habuisti;  
in earum summitate est epiglottis: quæ est creata ad perficiendum  
vocem: et ut seruet aliquid de aere attracto ad anelitum. Hæc  
epiglottis ex tribus est composita cartilaginibus: vna est eminens 32  
ante & dicitur clypealis & a laicis dicitur guttur vel nodus gulæ: alia  
est posterius cum osse laudæ continua et uocatur nomen non habens.<sup>1</sup>  
Tertia vocatur cymbalaris siue cooperturalis:<sup>2</sup> & continuatur cum  
nomen non habente: & cooperit clypealem: et ista cymbalaris 36  
mouetur per eius mûsculos: quare cum homo comedit, viam claudit

<sup>1</sup> Cartilago cricoidea.

<sup>2</sup> Cartilagines arytenoideæ.



canne pulmonis: & viam aperit oesophagi. Cum autem homo loquitur, aperit viam canne pulmonis: & claudit viam oesophagi. Quare multoties accidit, quod si homo comedens dicere vellet  
 4 aliquid ignoranter: quod aliquid viam intraret canne pulmonis: quare natura moueretur ad tussendum: nec cessaret, donec quod cannam intrauerat, esset ad extra expulsus.] <sup>[1 lf. 178]</sup> <sup>The mouth contains the epiglottis, the uvula, which helps to make sound,</sup> <sup>the tongue, made of white flesh, nerves and blood-vessels,</sup> <sup>32. teep.</sup>  
 of his prote, saue algate he schal couze til it be oute. & þan aboute  
 8 þis instrument is vuula þat is þe palet<sup>2</sup> of þe mouþ & helpiþ for to make soun / For þe wynd þat comeþ of þe lungis reboundiþ<sup>3</sup> azens þe palet & makip þe more soun. In þe holownes of þe mouþ is maad fast þe tunge, þat is maad of whit fleisch, & neische, & of  
 12 nerues, & veynes, & of arterijs, as it is necessarie þerfore / And in þe prote of þe tunge ben .ij. wellis þat spotil is gaderid þeron, & holdiþ alwei þe tunge moist / Also in a mannes mouþ ben .xxxij.  
 teep, & þerof sittip .xvj. in þe cheke boon,<sup>4</sup> & summen han but  
 16 .xxvij. / And for to hile a mannes teep ben ordeined lippis, & ben as it were þe dore of an hous, & helpiþ forto speke & to pronounce wordis / Now to alle þese lymes þat ben forseid: as þe palet of þe mouþ & a mannes tunge & þe teep & þe gomis & þe lippis, alle  
 20 þei han diuers passiouns.

¶ **Vuula** sumtyme wiþ cours of humouris sumtime gaderip an enpostym, & sumtyme vuula wexip to long,<sup>5</sup> & sumtyme apostym of þe palet comeþ of hoot cause, þat þou schalt knowe bi þe reednes  
 24 of þe place & bi brennyng<sup>6</sup>; & þanne in þe cure herof þou schalt bigynne for to lete him blood in þe heed veyne, & purge colre wiþ a decoccion of fretis,<sup>7</sup> & herof þou schalt make him a gargarisme, & perwiþ he schal ofte waische his mouþ: R̄, lentes, balaustias,  
 28 psidias, gallas, rosas, sumac, & boile þese wiþ .ij. partis of water, & oon part of vinegre, & herof make a gargarisme / Also þou schalt leie to his palet poudre of rosis, & sandalis,<sup>8</sup> & balaustiarum & a litil of camphre / þis is a good help þerfore whanne þe palet is  
 32 woxe long wiþ hoot humouris. ¶ If þer come an enpostym of coold humouris, ouþer þat þe palet wexe long wiþ coold humouris, & þat þou miȝt knowe whanne þe place is not reed, & if þer be

<sup>2</sup> palet, palate. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* The erroneous identification of uvula and palatum is not in the original.

<sup>3</sup> rebound, O.Fr. rebondir. See later references in Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: XVI in utraque mandibula.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: Vuula namque propter humorum decursum aliquando apostematur aliquando solum elongatur.

<sup>7</sup> fretis, fruit.

<sup>8</sup> MS. inserts & rosis.

purge and use  
a gargle.

R

[3 lf. 179]

A powder  
applied by  
a Funnel.

If the uvula  
gets too long,  
remove a  
portion.

Be ware  
not to cut too  
deep.

the tong<sup>t</sup>  
suffers from  
many dis-  
eases.

Ranulam.

In case of an  
apostema in  
the tongue,

[3 lf. 179, bk.]  
bleed from  
the head-vein  
and use a  
wash.

miche spotil in his mouþ, first þou schalt<sup>t</sup> purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, & þan make him a gargarisme wiþ þis decoccioun: R̄, aceti partes duas, mellis partem vnam, boile hem togidere & do þerto poudre of mirtillorum<sup>1</sup> & þe seed of rosis & peletre<sup>2</sup> & zinzibere, & 4 þan make him poudre of pepir<sup>3</sup> & sal armoniac, & make herwith a fumigacioun wiþ enbotum.<sup>4</sup> & if it be greet to-swolle, & þan þou muste make consumynge pingis as diameron & sappa michum<sup>5</sup> / If þe palet<sup>t</sup> be recchid along, & if it be so long þat it lie vpon þe 8 tunge, þan þou muste kutte awei as miche þerof as þee þinkþ good, so þat it be nomore þan it schulde be; & be war þat þou kutte not to myche þerof, for þer miȝte come greet perel þerof: as his vois miȝte be apeirid þe while he lyuede, & contynuely couzinge, & his 12 lungis miȝte be þe worse þefore & also his piys.<sup>6</sup> & þefore it is greet perel for to kutte a mannes palet.<sup>7</sup>

¶ The tunge suffriþ manie sijknessiȝ as pustulas and swellynge & kuttynge, & ofte tyme a mannes tunge bicometh shorter þan it 16 schulde be. And þer is anoþer passioun þat is clepid fili ranulam<sup>8</sup> & spasmum, & sumtyme a mannes tunge wexiþ to long.<sup>9</sup> ¶ The curis of pustulis & vlcera schulen be seid heraftir / If þer come an enpostym or ony swellynge to a mannes tunge, & it come of hoot 20 humours, þanne þou schalt bigynne þe cure þerof in þis<sup>10</sup> maner / first lete him blood in þe heed veine, & þanne make him a decoccioun & a waisching<sup>t</sup> as it is aforseid in apostym of þe palet: & he schal holde in his mouþ þe iys of letuse. & in þe same maner þou 24 schalt cure swellynge of a mannes tunge / If þer come apostym or

<sup>1</sup> MS. over *mirtillorum* is written *mirtelberys*.

<sup>2</sup> *pelletre*, Lat. *pyrethrum*. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot." Phillips. See *Pelleter* Cath. Angl. and Note *ibid*.

<sup>4</sup> *enbotum*, Lat. *embotum*. See *Dufr.* = *infundibulum*. Fr. *embut*, a surgical instrument, a funnel.

<sup>5</sup> *sappa michum*, Lat. *saramitum*.

<sup>6</sup> *piys*, Lat. *pectus*. O.Fr. *pis*.

<sup>7</sup> Gulielmus de Saliceto, Lanfranc's teacher, uses a cautery instead of cutting. I give the quotation from an English translation, MS. Sloane 277, fol. 1 (beginning of 15th cent.): "*Be þe grape cutt wiþ a brennyngre yren heruyngre, & be it putt in by a pipe to þe grape, þe mouþ holden open. Be þe grape receyued in þe hole of þe pipe. Whiche receyued, be putt in þere þe brennyngre yren in þe pipe, & be þe grape cauteried.*"

<sup>8</sup> *Ranula*, a tumor, which forms under the tongue. (Dunglison.) See Vegetius, *De re veterin.* 4, 5, 1. Gr. *βαρπαχος*. Fr. *grenouillette*.

<sup>9</sup> The passage is corrupt. Lat.: *Lingua quoque multas patitur ægritudines, pustulas, inflationem, scissuram, breuiationem fili, ranulam, spasmus et relaxationem.*



- ony swellynge of coold humouris, þan purge him with pillulis þat be forseid of .G[aliens]. makinge. ¶ Ther was a man þat his tunge was so swolle þat it miȝte not be conteyned in his mouþ. & first
- 4 I made him purgaciouns & waischingis, & þan I made him consumynge þingis; & in þis maner he was curid. ¶ Scissure is a passioun in a mannes tunge þat is as it were kutting. & þat schal be curid wip þe iuys of malue soden wip psillium & medlid wip
- 8 sugre & sode, & herwip he schal waische his mouþ. & he schal drinke water of barli, & his mete schal be hoggis feet wel soden, & wip þe nerues of þe feet he schal frote wel his tunge. ¶ Also þer is a preed<sup>1</sup> vndir sum mannes tunge þat he mai not put out his
- 12 tunge as he schulde, & also it lettij him to speke. þe cure herof is for to kutte þat preed, <sup>2</sup> & þan brenne him. & it is better for to make an instrument of goold & brenne it þerwip, & kutte also wip þe same instrument / ¶ Also þer comþ an enpostym vpon a mannes
- 16 tunge of fleume<sup>3</sup> & also of malancolie, saue of malancolie an enpostym comþ but selden / þese ben þe signes if it come of malancolie: þe place wole be ledi oupir blak. & þan do þou no cure þerto / If it come of fleuma, þanne frote wel his tunge wip
- 20 salt, til þe blood come out þerof. & if þis suffise not, þan frote it wel wip vitriol / If þe spasme come in a mannes tunge þat wole constryne þe tunge inward, þe cure herof is for to holde oile of anete in his mouþ & of camomille hoot as he mai suffre, & make an
- 24 enplastre herof medlid wip hoot water, & leie it vpon his heed & vpon his nolle hoot / If his tunge bicomene neische, þan þou muste purge him wip pillulis fetidis,<sup>4</sup> or with trocisco de turbit. & þan do þerto þis medicyn: Rȝ, grana vij. numero, recentis & lucidi
- 28 euforbij,<sup>5</sup> & take vij. figis & pare awei þe ryndis þerof & grynde hem wel togidere, & do þerto as miche raw hony<sup>6</sup> & medle hem togidere, & make herof þe maner of a letuarie; & herof he schal take as miche as a bene, & leie it vndir his tunge, whanne he were

If the apostema is caused by cold humours use the purging pills of Gali.

"Scissure" is a fissure in the tongue.

Use a wash, and let the patient feed on barley-water and hog's-feet.

When the "frenum lingue" extends too far, cut it with a golden instrument.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 180]

When the apostema is caused by melancholy,

try no cure;

if it is caused by phlegm, rub the tongue with salt or vitriol.

Against cramp in the tongue use anet-oil and a plaster.

If the tongue becomes soft, use purging pills and an electuary.

Rȝ

[<sup>6</sup> If. 180, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> preed, Lat. filum. Usually filetum. Fr. filet de la langue.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: Ranula quoque fit sub lingua. Sl. 2463, fol. 93: "Ranula is an emynence vnder þe tunge toward þe forther teth in maner of an enpostume, & whane þe tunge is lift vp þer schewith as it were a nother tunge vnder þe tunge."

<sup>4</sup> pillule fetidæ, pills composed from fetid things.

<sup>5</sup> Halle, Table, p. 35. 'Euphorbium, Εὐφρόβιον': is the gum or teares of a tree called Euphorbia growinge in Lybia, found out (by the testimonye of Dioscorides) in y<sup>e</sup> time of Iuba: and was called by that name (as saith Ruellius) of his Phisicien."

fastynge / Wip þis medicyn þe abbot of seint victor was maad hool; for he miȝte not speke, & herwip his speche come agen.<sup>1</sup>

Toothache

¶ Akinge of teep: sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe teep,<sup>2</sup> & sumtyme of þe gomis, & sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe stomac, & 4 sumtyme it comeþ of hoot mete, & sumtyme of coold mete. & if it come of hoot mete, make him holde coold watir in his mouþ, & þat wole cure him anon. & if it come of coold mete, þan he schal holde in his mouþ hoot oile. & if a mannes teep akip for sour þingis, þan he schal ete chese & portulacas, or he schal gnawe wip his teep hoot wex<sup>3</sup> / If it come of vicis of þe heed or of þe gomis, and þe cause come of hete, þat þou miȝt knowe bi reednes of þe place & bi þe hete þerof, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe heed 12 veine, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is vndir his tunge; & þan he schal holde in his mouþ oile of *rosis*, medlid wip watir, <sup>4</sup>ouper coold watir & vinegre / If þe akyng be so greuous þat it mai not be take awei, þan aswage his akyng wip þis 16 medicyn: R̄, *seminis iusquiami albi*<sup>5</sup> opij ana ʒ .j, *seminis apij* ʒ .j, grinde hem togidere & tempere hem wip vinegre, & make þerof pelottis in þe greetnes of a pece, & leie oon herof vpon þe tooþ, & þis wole do awei þe akinge þerof. & after þe fourþe dai lete him 20 holde in his mouþ oile of *rosis*, in which is dissolued masticis.

[4 ff. 181]

To soothe the pain,

R̄

apply to the tooth a preparation of hyoscyamus and opium.

If the pain is caused by cold humours, purge, use an electuary and instil a medicine into the ear.

R̄

¶ If þe akyng come of coold humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe if þe place be not reed ne to-swollen, þan purge him wip cochijs or wip *pigra*. & aftir þis he schal holde in his mouþ *tiriacam diatesseron*.<sup>6</sup> 24 ¶ Also do þis medicyn in his eere in þe same parti þat akip / R̄, *olium oliuarum* .ʒ ij., *aceti* .ʒ j., *coloquintidae*, *piperis* ana .ʒ j.,

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: cum hac medicina fuit restituta loquela dominæ abbatisse sancti victoris ad ultimum, quæ propter linguæ mollificationem non poterat uerbum intelligibile bene loqui; dedi ei hanc medicinam, et cito locuta est expedite.

<sup>2</sup> of viis of þe teep, dentium vitio. viis is used synonymously with *defaute*. Sometimes both expressions are used. Sloane 277, f. 12 b.: "These seknesses be maad of vice or defaute of þe norischinge strengþe."

<sup>3</sup> This is evidently a way of filling the hole of a tooth.

<sup>5</sup> Halle, Table, 52. "*Hyosciamus*. Henbane is called in Greeke ὕοσκιμος; in Latin: *Hiosciamus*, *Apollinaris*, *Faba suilla* et *Altercum*; of Apuleius: *Symphoniaca*; of others also *Fabidum* and *Fabilonia*, and of some *Cassilago* or *Caniculata*; of the Apothecaries *Iusquiamus*. Of Henbane there are three kyndes: the blacke, the yelow and the whyte."

<sup>6</sup> *diatessaron*, an electuary into the composition of which entered four medicines. "Among Farriers *Diatessaron* is taken for Horse-treacle; ——. Also an Electuary made of Gentian, Bay berries and Birth-wort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to a very fine Powder, and work'd in like manner with two Pounds of Honey in a Stone-mortar."—Phillips.



- & boile hem in a double vessel, & distille it in his eere flaisch<sup>1</sup> /  
 Suntyme a mannes teef ben frete & ben holow, & pis comeþ of humours corrupt þat falliþ to þe teef. & in pis maner þou schalt  
 4 cure it / R̄, olium .ḡ j., sansuci<sup>2</sup> sicci,<sup>3</sup> seminis sicute ana ʒ ʒ. If the teeth  
are hollow  
R̄  
cauterize the  
hole with the  
hot iron.  
[<sup>4</sup> lf. 181, bk.]  
 boile hem togidere, & þan þou schalt haue <sup>4</sup>a cauterie wiþ .ij. pointis, & þou schalt haue þe schap herof heraftir, & þou schalt  
 make þe same instrument hoot in þe fier, & þan putte it in þe for-  
 8 seid oile, & þan putte it in þe hole of his toof, & be war þat þou  
 touche not his gomys wiþ þe iren ne his lippis : & pis medicyn þou  
 muste reherse ofte tymes / þis medicyn wole bringe water out of  
 þe teef, & it wole do awei þe akyng. ¶ If þou desirist to drawe  
 12 out ony mannes toof wiþouten iren : R̄, cortices radicum mori &  
 piretrum ana, distempere hem wiþ vinegre & grinde hem wel  
 togidere, & drie hem in þe sunne, & departe litzli þe toof & þe  
 fleisch of þe gomis & leie of þe medicyn bitwixe þe toof & þe  
 16 fleisch / Also lac titimalli<sup>5</sup> distemperid wiþ flour of amidum / Also  
 make poudre of peletre & lete it lie in vinegre in þe somer tyme, &  
 kepe it ; þis makith neische, þat þe toof mowe be drawe out wiþ-  
 outen ony iren / If a mannes teef ben blac, in þis maner þou schalt  
 20 make hem whit / R̄, farinam ordeï, sal ana, & leie hem in hony, &  
 make þerof past & folde it in paper <sup>6</sup>or in linnen cloof, & brenne  
 it in a furneis. & þan brenne schellis of eiren, & ciperi, aluminis  
 ana partes duas, corticum citri siccorum, camfer ana partem vnam,  
 24 make herof poudre, and frote þerwiþ his teef & hise gomis, & þis  
 wole do awei þe blaknes of a mannes teef /

To draw  
teeth without  
using the  
iron.

R̄

A powder to  
make black  
teeth white.

R̄

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 182]

### Of þe passioun in wommen brestis /

- 28 **G**Od almiȝti made in a womman tetis for þe norischinge of a child. & a wommans tetis ben maad of fleisch þat is glandu-  
 lous, & of veines, & of arterijs, & of nerues, & ben but veines þat  
 comen fro a wommans lyuere to hir tetis & þe maris, as it is seid  
 here tofore, & in what maner blood turneþ into milk it is forseid.<sup>7</sup>

¶ v. c.  
A woman's  
breasts are  
made of  
glandular  
flesh, blood-  
vessels and  
nerves,  
and the blood  
is turned to  
milk in them.

<sup>1</sup> flaisch, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> "Samsucus, maiorana," et cet. *Alphita*, p. 161.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *succi*.

<sup>5</sup> lac titimalli. τισίμαλος, euforbia.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: et ad ubera veniunt venæ concavæ a matrice, per quas, ut scivisti, pars sanguinis attrahitur menstrualis, et sicut chylus camellinus veniens a stomacho, cum a hepate recipitur, colorem recipit rubeum: sic sanguis a matrice veniens rubeus albescit. Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. XII., Cap. 1, f. 209. "Nam epar rubificat chilum album et facit ipsum sanguinem. Et mamilla albeficat sanguinem rubeum et facit ipsum lac."

Egidius.

Apostemas are caused by blood in the breast, which cannot be turned into milk.

Treatment of a hot apostema.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 182, bk.] Use blood-letting and cupping.

In case of retention of the menstrual blood, bleed from the Saphena: use an ointment and a compress, which must be lukewarm.

If suppuration is imminent, apply maturatives, and if they fail there is danger of Mania.

Shave her head,

[<sup>5</sup> If. 183] and let her abstain from wine and meat.

A woman with an apostema in her breast was treated by an unskilful surgeon, with maturatives,

in three days she fell into Mania and frenzy, as I prognosticated.

If it suppurates, open it.

¶ In a wommans tetis comep manie passiouus / ffor, as Egidius seip, pat sumtyme per comep perto apostym of milk, & sumtyme vlcera / And comounly enpostyms comep of blood pat is drawe to be tetis & mai not turne into milk, or if a womman haue to miche 4 blood, & it comep of febilnes of vertu as it is aforseid in þe general chapitre of enpostyms. ¶ þe cure of an hoot enpostym in þe tetis / first þou schalt lete hir blood in Basilica, or sette a ventuse vpon hir schuldris. & if þe cause come of retencioun of menstrie, 8 þan þou schalt zeue hir medicyns for to bringe out þe menstrie, or þou schalt lete hir blood in þe sophene, & anointe þe place wip oile of rosis, & þe fourþe part of vinegre. & if þis suffise not, þan wete a linnen clop in þe iuy of solatri,<sup>2</sup> & whanne þou hast 12 anyntid þe place wip oile & vinegre, þan leie þis clop pervpon. & loke pat alle pingis pat þou leist perto be flasch hoot;<sup>3</sup> for þer schal no coold ping be leid perto for þe place is neruous, for coold ping wolde greue it. If alle þese medicyns suffisen not, saue þe 16 mater bigynneþ to drawe to quittance, þanne leie perto maturatiuis. & if þou mizt not do it awei wip repercussiuus ne wip resolyunge pingis, & þou ne mizt not make it maturatif, þan it is drede lest þe womman bicomme in a passiou pat is clepid Mania.<sup>4</sup> þan hir heed 20 mote be schauē, & zeue hir confortif pingis for hir heed, & zeue hir sotil dietynge, & sche schal drinke no wijn ne ete<sup>5</sup> no fleisch. & þou muste worche ful sotilli, ffor I say a womman pat hadde an enpostym in hir brest & come of blood, & so I tauzte hir for to do<sup>6</sup> 24 as it is aforseid, & þo þer come a lewid cirurgian & repreuede me, & he leide pervpon maturatiuis: & þe more pat he leide pervpon maturatiuis, þe more þe mater wexide greet & þe more brennyng. & þe same cirurgian wolde not heere my counseil / & þe wommans 28 freendis took more hede to þe lewid cirurgian þan to me, & wipinne .iij. daies Mania come to hir and was oute of hir witt, & so þe frenesie fil on hir / & þis pronosticioun I seide in þe bigynnyng, but þei wolde not leue mi wordis<sup>7</sup> / If it so be pat it make quittance, 32 þan opene it & do out þe quittance, & þan leie perto a mundicatif,

<sup>2</sup> Halle, *Table*, p. 119. "Solanum hortense, which doubtlesse Lanfranke meaneth by Solatrum, doth Galen also call Esculentum."

<sup>3</sup> flasch hoot, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> De propr. rer. lib. V. cap. 34. Add. 27,944, fol. 53 b.: "ypocras seip pat in women in þe whiche superfluyte of blood turned to þe pappis, it bodeþ madnes."

<sup>6</sup> do, above line.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: mea tamen prognosticatio multum exaltata extitit.



- & be wel war *pat* pou putte *perinne* no greet tent ne long, as manie foolis doon; for a wommans tetis ben ful of nerues, & if *pe* nerues were pressid wip ony tent, it wolde make gret akyuge, & wolde
- 4 lette *pe* cure *perof*. ¶ Also *per* ben manie foli lechis, whanne *pei* fynden <sup>1</sup>in a wommans tetis fleisch *pat* is glandelous, *pan* *pei* wene *pat* it be wickid fleisch, & ben *peraboute* for to drawe it out, & *pan* *pei* schendip al *pe* substaunce of *pe* brest. pou schalt worche
- 8 wiseli & pou schalt remeue noon herof, for as it is aforseid, al *pe* fleisch of *pe* tetis is glandelous. & whanne *pat* is cleusid wip mundificatiuis *pan* pou schalt regendre fleisch, & *pan* pou schalt drie it / If it be so, *pat* could mater gadere to enpostym in a wommans
- 12 brest, & *pat* comep ful selde, loke if *pis* mater come of fleume, & *pan* anynte *pe* place wip oile of camomille, & oile of lile, & oile of anete, & a litil vinegre medlid *perwip*. & if it be ony nede first make hir a purgacioun, & if it resolue not, *pan* leie *perto* matura-
- 16 tiuis, & *pan* do as it is aforseid / & if it so be *pat* *pe* mater turne to hardnes & blak or ledi, *pan* pou muste be war *pat* pou leie *perto* no medicyns *pat* ben to hoot, for *per* mai engendre a cancre *perof* ful listli. & if it be so, *pan* be pou not *peraboute* for to make it
- 20 maturatif, & do pou no cure *perto*. & summen seien *pat* a woman mai be curid for <sup>2</sup>to kutte off al *pe* brest, & *pat* is al fals. Sauē
- pou schalt kepe *pe* place wip vnguentum de tutia, & sche mote ofte be purgid, *pat* sche mowe lyue *pe* lenger. ¶ I-leue *pe* wordis *pat* I
- 24 seie; pouz I haue curid manie men of diuers empostyms, I miȝte neuere cure a verri cancre, but it were in a fleischi place *pere* I miȝte kut al awei wipouten ony hurtyng of senewis & of veines <sup>3</sup> /
- & a wommans brest is ful of senewis & veynes & arterijs. ¶ Vlcers
- 28 *pat* ben in a wommans tetis schulen be curid as it is aforseid in *pe* general chapitre, saue herof pou muste be war *pat* *pis* lyme may not suffre so harde corosiuis for *pe* greet tendirnes *perof*, saue pou schalt do *perto* medicyns *pat* ben mundificatif & drynge / It fallip
- 32 to summe women *pat* *pe* point of hir tete ne goip not out, but ben al hid in *pe* tete so *pat* a child mai not take it in his mouȝ for to souke / In *pis* maner pou schalt helpe it / Take *pe* cuppe of an acurne, & *pat* is lyk to *pe* point of a wommans tete, & do *peron*
- 36 terbentyn or pich, & make it hoot & leie it vpon *pe* point of hir tete & binde <sup>4</sup>it *perto* faste, & *pis* wole drawe out *pe* point of hir

Be ware  
not to use a  
greet tent,  
as many  
fools do.

Many foolish  
physicians  
[1. f. 183, bk.]  
remove the  
glandular  
flesh, mis-  
taking it for  
corrupt flesh.

If cold matter  
gathers into  
an apostema,

apply an  
ointment

and matura-  
tives.

If the matter  
becomes  
hard, it may  
easily become  
a cancer.  
In case of  
cancer,

[2. f. 184]

operation  
does not help;  
but apply an  
ointment  
and purge  
to prolong  
the patient's  
life.

I have only  
cured a true  
cancer in a  
fleshy part.

Ulcers in a  
woman's  
breast are  
treated with  
mundificative  
and drying  
medicines.

If the nipples  
are hid in the  
breast draw  
them out with  
an acorn-cup.

Ry

[2. f. 184, bk.]

<sup>3</sup> There is no condition mentioned in the Latin original, under which the operation might be performed. Roy. 12. C. XIV. fol. 54 b.: de uero cancro nunquam curare potui, licet pluries cum meis uiribus laborauerim.

In case of enlargement of the breast apply

R<sup>7</sup>  
the powder of a whet-stone and vinegar,

or a plaster of cumin with honey and vinegar.

If the milk becomes hard, anoint the breast with oil and apply a solvent.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 185]

R<sup>7</sup>

tete. ¶ Also it bifallip to maidenen þat her tetis bicomēþ more þan þei schulde be bi resoun, & þou schalt helpe hem in þis maner / Take stonys þat me whettip knyues on, & frote þese .ij. stones togidere in vinegre longe, til þe vinegre bicomē þicke þerof, & make 4 it' hoot' & anoynte þer wiþ hir tetis, & þan binde hem / þis medicyn defendip þat' þei schulen not' wexe, & make hem bicomē litil til þei come to her owne propre schap. ¶ Also take comyn & make poudre þerof, & medle it' wiþ hony & vinegre; and it' worchip þe 8 more strongli if' þou medle þerwiþ bole armoniac & terra sigillata; grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & make a plastre þerof & lete it' lie þeron .iiij. daies, & þan þou schalt' waische it' wiþ coold water / And a womman be war herof þat' sche haue no sich 12 medicyn, if' hir brest' schal wexe ony more.<sup>1</sup> ¶ If' þat' milk be gaderid hard in a wommans brest' for hete, þanne þou schalt' anointe hir brest' wiþ oile of rosis & vinegre, & þou schalt' make an enplastre as <sup>2</sup>of solatri, portulace, for þese herbis han propirte for to 16 dissolue. ¶ þis is a plastre þat' wole dissolue mylk þat' is congelid hard, and it' wole make þe mater of' an enpostym maturatip / R<sup>7</sup>, mice panis, farina ordeï, fenigreci & seminis lini ana. 3 j, radicis malue visci & herbe veruce.<sup>3</sup> ana. ʒ .j.; seþe wel þese .ij. laste, & 20 þan stampe hem wel alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ oile, & make þerof a plastre & leie it' vpon flasch hoot' /

### ffor brekyng of þe siphac & of his laxynge.

¶ vj<sup>o</sup> co/

If the "siphac" protrudes at the navel or the groins,

use a ligature and a plaster.

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 185, bk.]

If the siphac is broken a gurgling sound is heard, on the application of pressure.

**A**Nothamia of' þe siphac is aforseid / & sumtyme siphac is kutt, 24 & sumtyme it' recchip along, & sumtyme it' to-brekij wiþ lepinge, & sumtyme for greet' wepinge, & sumtyme for greet' crijnge, & sumtyme for greet' traueile. ¶ If' siphac be recchid aboute þe nauele ouper aboute þe heeris, þat' þou myzt' knowe in þis maner: þe place 28 wole be to-swolle an hiz as it' were an enpostym. & whanne þou touchist' it' wiþ þi fyngir, it' wole goon yn azen. & sumtyme it' wole come azen, & it' wole make noon gurgulacioun / þe cure herof is but' 32 lizt, & is wiþ a ligature & wiþ enplastre þat' schal be seid in þe brek- inge <sup>4</sup>of' þe siphac. & if' siphac be to-broke, þou myzte knowe bi þe greet' noise, whanne þou lest' þin hond þervpon for to putte hem yn

<sup>1</sup> The translator has omitted the following passage: Caueat etiam illa quæ non vult suas ingrossare mamillas: ne illas tangat vel tangi permittat.

<sup>3</sup> herbe veruce, Lat. *herbæ erucæ*. Brassica eruca L., white mustard. The translator mistook it for Verrucaria.



azen.<sup>1</sup> ¶ þe cure herof is hard in an oold man. þan make him a braccal<sup>2</sup> id est a boond þat it be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris. & it mote be maad of lynnen cloof maniefoold,<sup>3</sup> & þou muste make a plate of iren,  
 4 as brood as þe brekyng<sup>4</sup> is, & þat mote be fooldid manie foold in þe forseid ligature, & it schal not be round, but plain. & þou muste ordeyne þefore fastnyngis tofore & bihinde & in hise flankis, þat it mowe be holde algate in oon place, and þou schalt make an enplastre  
 8 for to leie vpon þe same place vnder þe bindinge in þis maner / R̄, glutinum piscium vel carte .ʒ. .iiij, picis grece .ʒ. .iiij, picis naualis armoniaci ana. ʒ ij, kutte þese alle to smale gobetis, & do hem in ʒ. ij. of vinegre, & ʒ .iiij. of oile of masticis & lete hem lie þeron  
 12 adai & anyzt, & þan melte hem in a panne & cole hem. & heron medle poudre mastic & thus, & boli armoniaci, mummie, sanuinis, draconis, dragaganti, farine fenigreci ana ʒ ʒ. medle hem longe togidere / Oupir take <sup>4</sup>scropholarie<sup>5</sup> þe rynde þerof & grinde it  
 16 wip grese, & make þerof an enplastre, & of þe same rotis make poudre, & ʒeue him þerof eueri dai .ʒ. j. & ʒ. wip wijn / Also ʒeue him euery dai .ʒ. j & ʒ of poudre maad of þe rotis of valarian temperid wip wijn. ¶ And if hise guttis falle adoun into his  
 20 ballok lepir,<sup>6</sup> þe cure þerof schal be seid in þe nexte chapitre //

Apply a bandage and a plate of iron firmly fastened on the place;

and beneath the bandage apply a plaster.

R̄

[\* If. 186]

### Of hernia<sup>7</sup> of þe ballokis //

This siknes mai be seid in manie maners / In oon maner whanne  
 a mannes bowels fallip into his ballokis leperis, & þan it is  
 24 clepid hernia intestinalis / Or þer fallip watir into þe same place as

¶ vij. c<sup>o</sup>/

Scrotal hernias

<sup>1</sup> The distinction made between a simple protrusion and a rupture of the siphac is, in fact, one between a less or more developed hernia. The "gurgling sound" has already been noticed by *Avicenna Canon*, Lib. III, Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 3.

<sup>2</sup> *braccal*, Lat. *brachale* = *cingulum coriaceum* Dufr., from med. Lat. *brace*. See *breeches*, *N. E. Dict.* The use of the "brachale vel lumbare" is mentioned by Gulielm. de Salic, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I, Cap. 43. De crepatura in inguinibus. Engl. transl., Sl. 277, fol. 6 b. "Wipoute cuttyng moost children & opere in whiche þe guttes comen not down to þe ballock codd, & whiche þat hadde but litel scheryng wip a lumbare or a bawdrike, & oure plastre & powdre manye in my tyme I currede þe lumbare or bawdrike over to be maad of lynnen clof þrefold." Sl. 2463, fol. 123 b. says: "The cure without inscicion . . . is don with a gyrdell made for þe rupture, þe whiche a man may fynde to sylle."

<sup>3</sup> *maniefoold*, Lat.: multis duplicationibus facta.

<sup>5</sup> *scropholarie*, *scrophularia*, water betony, *medenwort* written above. See *Wr. Wül. mēdwurt*.

<sup>6</sup> *ballok lepir*, *testiculorum bursa*.—*Cath. Angl.*, p. 211. *Ledyr*; *birsa*. Sl. 2463, f. 123 b.: þe purs of þe ballokes.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *hernio*.

**Hernia**  
**intestinalis,**  
**hernia**  
**aquosa,**  
**hernia**  
**ventosa,**  
**hernia**  
**carcosa,**  
**hernia**  
**varicosa.**  
**.1.**

Either the  
Zirbus or the  
[1 lf. 186, bk.]  
bowels fall  
into the  
enlargened  
Didymus.

2. They fall  
through a  
rupture of  
the Siphac  
into the  
Scrotum.

This latter  
case can only  
be cured by  
operation.

Many unskil-  
ful men dare  
to try these  
cures,

[2 lf. 187]

whereas some  
wise men are  
afraid of  
doing so.

These two  
kinds of  
Hernia must  
be dis-  
tinguished.

1. The bowels  
fall out sud-  
denly  
through the  
broken  
Mirac.

2. The bowels  
descend  
slowly,  
with a gurg-  
ling sound.

[3 lf. 187, bk.]

it were a dropesie, & þan it is clepid hernia aquosa / Ouipir þer  
comeþ wijnd into þe same place, & þan it is clepid hernia ventosa.  
And sumtyme þer wexiþ fleisch aboute & is greet, & þan it is clepid  
hernia carcosa / And sumtyme þer ben veynes þereaboute ful of 4  
malancolious blood & wele be gret as it were notis, & þan it is  
clepid hernia varicosa / The firste cause comeþ in þis maner: Din-  
dimus, þat anathomia þerof is <sup>1</sup>forseid, wexiþ wide for sum moistnes  
þat falliþ þerto, so þat zirbus, ouþer þe bowels falliþ adoun in þe 8  
same place; and þis maner is ofte seen. Ouþer siphac is to-broke  
in þe flank wiþ oon of þe forseid causis in þe chapitre tofore / &  
þoruþ þe same brekinge þe bowels falliþ adoun ouþir zirbus, & bitwixe  
dindimus & mirac þei fallen adoun into þe ballok leperis. & þis 12  
maner falliþ ful selden. þis laste maner is incurable wiþ ony  
medicyns, but wiþ kuttynge it mai be curid & sewid. & who þat  
vsiþ sich maner boondis aforseid, but if it be in children & in newe  
causis, it is al traueile in idil, & þe patient haþ greet penaunce þerwiþ 16  
wiþouten ony profit. ¶ The firste may be curid / & þe .ij. maner  
is ful hard for to cure, & þerfore it is ful necessarie for a cirurgian  
for to knowe alle þe maners herof & anathamiam as it is forseid  
lest he falle in errour. ¶ þer ben manie men þat ben hardi for to 20  
entermete of þese curis þat knowen not þe maner of þe sijknese ne  
þe diffence þerof, & þerfore þei falliþ al dai in errour. & þe lasse  
good þat <sup>2</sup>þat þei kunne, þe rapere þei wole entermete of sich an  
hard cause. & þis cause is ful perilous / I haue seen manie wise 24  
men þat coude do þis cure ful wel, & zitt þei wolde not entermete  
þerof / þerfore þou muste take consideracioun sotilli, where þe  
bowels falliþ adoun þoruþ þe brekyng of siphac ouþir þoruþ dindi-  
mum, & þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: ¶ In þe firste caas þe 28  
bowels or zirbus falliþ doun sodeinli wiþ agreuance, & þan þou  
mizt fele his bowels or zirbum in þe botme of þe ballok leþir, & þan  
þer is but oon skyn to-broke, & þat is mirac. & whanne þou wolt  
putte yn þe bowels azen, þou mizt fele in what place þei goon in. 32  
& whanne hise bowels ben ynne, þan lete þe patient stonde vp, &  
hise bowels wolen falle out sodeinli azen, & þan þou mizt fele in  
what place þei comeþ out / In þe .ij. caas zirbus or þe bowels, or  
þoþe comen adoun altil & altil, & makij miche gurgulacioun, & þe 36  
wei þat þei comeþ out is algate sumwhat greet in dindimo, & þat  
wole not be put yn whanne þe bowels ben putt yn, saue <sup>3</sup>wiþ greet  
penaunce & in longe tyme. & whanne þe bowels falliþ þoruþ dindi-  
mum, he makij þe ballok leþir neuere þe lengere, & þis is a good 40



- knowinge: whanne þou hast take kepe of alle þese priuitees, þan þou miȝt wite wherof þe cause is. ¶ Whanne þe bowels falliþ adoun þoruȝ a fissure, *id est* þoruȝ a brekyng, þan þou schalt not traueile forto worche wiþ plastris & wiþ boondis þat ben forseid, but if it be in children & in causis þat ben newe. & if þe brekyng be but litil, þan þou miȝt make .v. cauterijs vpon þe skyn wiþoutforþ, so þat þe cauterie perse mirac, for þat wole make an hard drowing vpon þe brekinge / & it wole not suffre þat þe bowels schulen not falle adoun þoruȝ þat place, so þat þe brekinge be but litil. If it so be þat þe bowels falle adoun þoruȝ dindimum, þan men haueþ diuers curis. Summen leien a corosif vpon þe ers wiþ dindimum, a medicyn corosif, til þe skyn wiþout be frete, til þou mai se dindimum, & þan aftirward he fretiþ dindimum; & summen drawiþ awei a mannes ballokis, and <sup>1</sup>summen drawiþ not awei, but bi þe wei of þe corosif þe ballokis wolen rotie afterward / ¶ Also summen maken punctual cauterijs in þe maner of a cros vpon dindimum, & þan aftirward heliþ it vp / Summen kutten þe hiȝer skyn wiþ a cauterie,<sup>2</sup> & þei streyneþ dindimum, & þei bindiþ it wiþ spago<sup>3</sup> / Sum worchith in anopir maner: first, þei kuttiþ þe skyn aboue, & þan þei makिþ cauterium aboue vpon dindimum in summe partie, & in sum parti þei leueþ hool. & þis maner is lasse worse þan þe toþer þat ben forseid / Summen ficchiþ .ij. nedlis in dindimum wiþ double þreed & crossiþ þe nedlis togidere, & þan þei takिþ þe þedis & leiþ þervpon martencium,<sup>4</sup> til al þe skyn þat was take wiþ þe nedelis be rerid an hiȝ. & oþer men han diuers werkis þat I hadde not certeyn, for alle maners þat I heere þerof ben disseynable / For sumtyme whanne a man haþ miche traueilid þoruȝ, þing þat he haþ do brekiþ aȝen, & þan it wole be worse þan it was raþer. & amonge alle þe maners þat ben, þat is worst þat is doon wiþ medicyn caustica, for medicyns caustica for þe grete venym & malice þat it haþ, makिþ greet akyng, & is cause to make an enpostym in dindimo, and þoruȝ þe agreuance þat dindimo haþ, siphac mai be agreued & diafragma. & fro diafragma it mai go<sup>6</sup> to þe brayn, þat is þe welle of alle nerues, & so þe man mai falle in a spasme, & þan he is but deed. ¶ O þou wrecchid leche, þat for a litil money
- When the bowels fall through a rupture apply bandages only in case of children.  
If the rupture is small, cauterise the skin above the *Mirac*.  
If the bowels fall through the "*Didymum*," different ways of treatment are proposed. Some physicians use a Corrosive, [¶ It. 188] some remove the testicles, some use cauteries, some tie a string round the *Didymus*.  
All these cures are uncertain, *Nota*. a relapse may occur.  
Caustics are dangerous, [¶ It. 188, bk.] they may affect the Diaphragm and the brain.  
A bad leech, for a little sum

<sup>2</sup> wiþ a cauterie, error for wiþout cauterie. Lat.: *Alii sine cauterio superficialem cutem incidunt.*

<sup>3</sup> wiþ spago, cum spago; med. Lat. spacus, thread. See Diez. s. v. spago.

<sup>4</sup> martencium, Lat. martentinum. Name of a cautery?

<sup>6</sup> go, above line.

endangers a man's life, which is worth more than any gold or silver.

The author's advice is, not to cut, but apply the above mentioned bandage and plaster.

He treated in this way a patient who was sixty years of age.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 189]

He wore the bandage during two years in perfect health.

Another patient who was forty years old, was cured by similar treatment.

The patient shall always [<sup>4</sup> If. 189, bk.] wear his bandage, shall abstain from vegetables and new wine,

shall not leap, cry, or run,

puttist a mannes lijf in perel of deef / for þe lawe seiþ, it is better þan ony gold or siluer, for þou for a litil money makist him in perel of deef / For a man mai lyue vn-to þe tyme of his ende for þis passioun. & þerfore I wole counseile to kutte no man / Saue bi my 4 counseil þei schulen make a ligature as it is aforseid in þe brede of .iiij. fyngris of lynnen cloof or of sendel,<sup>1</sup> as I haue tauzt hertofore. & make þat enplastre þat is forseid, & teche him good regimen & good dietynge / & þouȝ he be not curid wiþ þis medicyn he schal 8 lyue neuere adai þe lenger, ne þe lasse while þerfore / ¶ I say .ij. men þat hadden þe passioun, & þat oon was .lx. winter oold, & his bowels fel out as it is for seid, & it was ful hard<sup>2</sup> to bringe hem in 3 aȝen, & I made him sich a boond as it is aforseid & a plastre, & 12 tauzt in what maner he schulde diete him-silf. & I seide to him if he louede his owne lijf he schulde go to no man to kutte him. & he was glad of my counseil, & he bar þe forseid bond & þe enplastre .ij. 3eer contynueli, dai & nyȝt, & wiþinne þat tyme he was hool, & 16 gitt I wiste not wher he schulde be hool or no / & þat opir man was .xl. wintre oold, & þer fel so greet plente out at his bowels, þat þei miȝte not be putt in aȝen, til þe pacient were sett in a baȝ. & þo I putte hem in aȝen / & I toolde of þe perel of kuttinge, & 20 he bad me make sich a boond, & I made him oon & þe enplastre þat is forseid. & I tauzt him how he schulde kepe him-silf, and how he schulde diete him-silf. & wiþinne a litil tyme he come to me, & seide þat he was almost hool, & þat he wolde were his boond no 24 lenger. & þo I repreuede him, & seide þat he schulde not be hool, but if he weride it lenger / In þis maner þou schalt teche him for to kepe him-silf: he schal algate were his boond & his plastre, saue 28 if he haue greet penaunce <sup>4</sup>þerwiþ whanne he goiþ to his bed an- euen he mai vndo it / And he schal in<sup>5</sup> no maner ete no growel ne raw fruit, ne no mete þat makij inflacioun / And he schal drinke no newe wijn, & he schal ete no greet saule,<sup>6</sup> and whanne he hap ete þan he schal reste him-silf. & he schal not arise, but if his 32 ligature be faste bounden, & he schal not lepe, & he schal not crie ne renne, & he lepe vpon an hors softli. & whanne he sittij at

<sup>1</sup> *sendel*, Lat. *sendon*, *σινδών*, a fine Indian cloth, muslin; *sendel*, O.Fr. *cendal* is derived from *sendon*. See Diez, s. v. *zendale*. See *sendalle*, *sendylle*, in *Cath. Angl.*, p. 329, and note *ibid.*

<sup>2</sup> *hard*, in margin.

<sup>5</sup> *in*, above line.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: *ne comedant ad plenam saturitatem*. *saule*, O.Fr. *saoulée*, from *saoul*, Lat. *satullus*.



pruyn he schal not streyne him-silf to harde, & he schal ete no mete þat wole make him costif. & if he wole ony þing traueile, he schal do it þe while he is fastynge. & if he wole holde alle þes 4 preceptis he mai be hool / & þis medicyne is certeyn, for he schal herfore lyue neuere þe lasse while.

¶ If **hernia** be watri, þis is þe signe þerof, þat his ballok wole be heuy & schynynge, & if þou pressist it wip þi fyngir þou schalt 8 fele watrynes þeron / first þou must loke wher it be litil or myche<sup>1</sup> — — & þan medicyns þat ben consumynge & drynge suffisip / herfore þat þou schalt fynde here aftir in þe chapitre of þe dropesie.

¶ If the <sup>2</sup>mater be greet, þan avoide awei þe mater wip kuttynge & 12 wip cauterijs. But if þou make cauterijs, þe watir wole come azen þerto, & þe cauterijs wolen lette þat þer schal no more mater come þerto. ¶ If þe mater be of wynd: þat þou myzt knowe bi inflacioun þat is not ledi colour<sup>3</sup> & bi felynge wip þi fyngir, if þou felist 16 no watrynes þeron, ne heuynes; þe cure herof is with electuari maad of greynes of lauri & opere þingis þat schulen be said in þe chapitre of þe dropesi in tympanido.<sup>4</sup> ¶ If it be superfluite of fleisch, þat þou miȝte wite wip þi fyngir, it wole be hard,<sup>5</sup> þe cure herof mai not be 20 do, but if þou kutte þe skyn þat is wipoute & drawe out þe mater, & þan soude it, & if it be in þe oon part hard & callous, & in þat oper part neische, þan it is better þat þou sette noon hand þeron, & principali if it be blac & ledi. ¶ Varicosa schal be curid wip 24 gotis whey, & with epithimo, & wip purgaciouns of malancolious blood, & þan leie þerto þingis þat ben wastynge /

and avoid constipation.

Nota

Watery hernia.

The scrotum is heavy and shining,

the water is felt on pressure.

Use drying medicines,

[2 lf. 190]

or evacuate the matter with cutting and cauteries.

Hernia ventosa

is treated with an electuary.

Hernia Carnosa.

Cut the skin and remove the matter.

Varicosa.

### ¶ Of a stoon in þe bladdre & reynis /<sup>6</sup>

28 A stoon in a man is engendrid of plente of grete humouris ¶ viij. co. wipinne a man, as we moun se an ensample wipoutforþ of [7 lf. 190, bk.] opere þingis, in þe maner þat men brennen tilis in a furneis. þei maken first þe tilis of strong cley þat is viscous, & whanne þei han schape it as þei wolen, þan þei leie it in þe sunne to drie / & 32 þan þei doon hem in a furneis wip fier. & þe stronger fier þat þe

A stone in the bladder or the reins arises from a superfluity of the humours and great heat, as tiles get hard in the fire.

<sup>1</sup> Some words are wanting. Lat.: *quæ si sit parua, sufficit tibi medicamen consumens.*

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: *Ventosa cognoscitur per tumorem non lucentem.*

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: in hydropisi tympanite. See p. 282.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: *Signum hernie carnosæ est . . . quod sentis, cum tangis, testiculos dura carne circumvolutos.*

<sup>6</sup> Compare *Celsus Medicina*, lib. VII., cap. 26. The later authors followed more or less closely.

tilis han, þe stronger þei wolen be, & riȝt so in a mannes bodi, whanne a man haþ miche viscous matere in his bodi & mai not be putt out for febilnes of expulcioun, & þan scharp hete specialy in þe reins falliþ to þat mater & makith it hard, & in þis maner <sup>4</sup> engendriþ þe stoon in þe reynes. ¶ Also in children a stoon engendriþ in her bladdre; for þe reynes of a child ben not so hote as a mannes / In þis maner þou schalt knowe wher þe stoon be in a mannes bladdre or in his reynes<sup>1</sup> / If þe grauel of his vrine be <sup>8</sup> whit: þan þe stoon is in þe bladdre / And if þe grauel be reed, þan it is in his reynes<sup>2</sup> / ¶ Summen þat ben hardi wolen assaie for to cure a man wiþ kuttinge þat haþ þe stoon in his reynes; for þei knowiþ <sup>3</sup> not þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þe reynes þat I haue <sup>12</sup> aforseid, & þan þei doiþ no more saue bringe þe pacient to his deef. ¶ Now I wole teche in what maner a man schal kepe him þat is disposid to haue þe stoon, he schal ete no metis þat ben viscous ne to scharpe, & tofore alle þingis hard chese gaderiþ viscous <sup>16</sup> mater & hard. & he schal ete no beef, ne no fleisch of a goos, ne no grete briddis þat swymmeþ in þe water, & he schal ete no fleisch of an hert, & he schal ete no swete breed,<sup>4</sup> & al maner mete þat is maad of swete past, & he schal ete no whete soden, & he schal ete <sup>20</sup> no maner þing þat is maad of milk saue þe whey, & he schal drinke no coold watir, & he schal ete no fruitis þat ben of greet substaunce, as applis, peris, & he schal drinke no newe wijn, ne no wijn of greet substaunce, & he schal ete no þingis þat is to myche <sup>24</sup> salt, & he schal absteyne him fro alle þingis þat engendriþ scharpe humouris & grete, & he schal not ete to greet sauly<sup>5</sup> / In þis maner he schal diete him-silf, he schal ete breed þat is wel leuyned / &

**Nota**

The position of the stone is detected by the colour of the urinary sediments.

[3 lf. 191]

Rules of dietying for a man, who is disposed to get a stone.

He shall abstain from sweet things, milk, cold water, apples, pears,

new wine, salted things.

He shall take well-fermented bread,

<sup>1</sup> Barth. *De propr. Trevisa*, lib. VII., cap. 54, indicates another symptom. Add. MS. 27, 944. fol. 96. "And if þe ston is in þe reynes hit is i-knowe by slepinge of þe fotc and in þe ioyntes of þe lift side, and if it is in þe bladder þe ache is in þe schare and þe twist bitwene þe genetras and þe hole at þe rigge bones ende."

<sup>2</sup> The translator omits the passage about the causes of stone in general, about the stone in the reins and its treatment. The following sentence, *þat I haue aforseid*, refers to this omitted part. The author says that he will speak about the causes and treatment of the stone in the reins, although it does not properly belong to surgery. Lat.: Ego vero, licet liber iste meus de cirurgia dicatur, et ad instrumentum cyrurgicum de lapide renum tractare non pertineat, tamen quoniam multum assimilatur in causis et curis, quamvis dissimiletur in signis et curis. Et quum ad curas lapidum renum multotiens sum vocatus, propter gratiam scholarium modum quo usus sum in utriusque lapidis curatione, causas, signa, et differentias ponere non postponam.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: a pane azymo. ἀζυμος, unleavened.

<sup>5</sup> Compare p. 272, note 6.



- his breed wole be þe<sup>1</sup> bettir for him if it be medlid wiþ poudre [<sup>1</sup> lf. 191, bk.]  
 maad of fenel-seed & persil, & he schal drinke sutil wijn & cleer, mild wine,  
 medlid wiþ fair cleer water / And if his reynes & his bowels weren  
 4 hote, þan he mai drinke coold water þat be fair & clene, & he mai  
 ete fleisch of capouns & hennes & chikenes, & partrichis, & of  
 alle opere maner of briddis þat mouen in feeldis, & of hem þat  
 woneþ in watir he schal not etc. & he mai ete pork & motoun &  
 8 principali of beestis þat ben gildid, & he mai ete fleisch of .iij.  
 daies poudringe,<sup>2</sup> & he mai ete feel,<sup>3</sup> & he mai ete eiren þat ben  
 neische soden; fisch þat haþ no schellis & þe substaunce of him be  
 greet & hard, he schal not ete þerof / Alle maner fisch þat haþ  
 12 manie schellis, is better þan he þat haþ no schellis / And of erbis:  
 he schal ete fenel, ache, persil, sperge, attriplicem,<sup>4</sup> spinochia &  
 boraginem, erucam, melones, cucumeris, & he schal be war þat he  
 ete no substaunce of caul, & he schal ete no mustard / And he mai  
 16 ete þese maner fruits: almaundis, auellanes, figis, notis, vuas bene  
 maturas. & he schal not<sup>5</sup> traueile to miche<sup>6</sup> aftir mete, & he schal  
 bere noon heuy birþuns, ne he schal not be girt to streite, & he  
 schal not slepe vpon his reynes. & if his reynes ben to hote, þan  
 20 he schal anoynte hem wiþ oile of rosīs, medlid wiþ vinegre, & he  
 schal anointe his reynes wiþ a lynnē cloop wet in iuys of colde  
 erbis, & he schal absteine him fro wommen, & he schal touche no  
 womman to make him haue appetit þerto / for greet medlynge wiþ  
 24 wymmen wiþ greet traueile achauit a mannes reynes & consumeþ  
 her natural moistnes / Who so euere vsiþ þis regimen, he schal haue  
 no drede of engendringe of þe stoon / Who so vsiþ þis regimen<sup>7</sup> &  
 is disposid for to haue þe stoon, with medicyns he schal do it awei  
 28 or it be confermed. He schal vse sirupis durentikis<sup>8</sup>: as oximel  
 diureticum & squilliticum,<sup>9</sup> or he schal vse a sirup þat auicen  
 made / R, aquæ li. x, aceti li. ſ, medle hem togidere & boile hem  
 wiþ ʒ. iij of rotis of ache, & rotis of fenel ʒ. iij, and fenel-seed &

meat of  
capons,  
chickens,

pork, mut-  
ton, gelded  
beasts and  
veal.

Fishes with  
scales are  
better than  
those with-  
out.

The herbs  
and the kind  
of fruit he  
may take.

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 192]

**Nota**

He shall  
anoint his  
loins and ab-  
stain from  
women.

If a stone be-  
gins to form,  
use a diuretic  
syrup.

**R**

<sup>2</sup> *fleisch of iii daies poudringe.* Lat.: porcos trium dierum salitos. Compare *Liber Cure Coc.*, p. 6. *To powder befe within a nyȝt.*

<sup>3</sup> *feel, vitulus.* O.Fr. veel.

<sup>4</sup> *Attriplex, Chenopodium vulvaria.* *Alphita*, p. 16. "Attriplex agrestis, crissolocanna idem ang. mieldē." O.E. *melde*, Leechd. III. Gloss. Compare *Germin. Molten, Milten*. Dessen.

<sup>5</sup> *not*, above line.

<sup>7</sup> Lat. Qui vero tali non utitur regimine.

<sup>8</sup> Traheron translation of Vigon's *Chirurgery*. Interpret.: "*Diuretiķe*. Diuretyķe prouokyngē vrine, or that hath vertue to prouoke vrine."

<sup>9</sup> Traheron, *ibid.* "*Squyllitike* vinaygre is made with the rootes of the greate oynion, called sqylla, or Scylla dryed, and with vynaygre."

ache ana ʒ. j, seþe hem alle togidere til þe .iiij. part be consumed  
 awei, & þan cole hem & do þerto li. x of sugre, & þan clarifie it &  
 [1 lf. 192, bk.] seþe it<sup>1</sup> & kepe it for þin vss // The vss of þis sirip wole suffice for  
 to do it awei; but if þe mater be þe more greet, & þan þou miȝt do 4  
 þerto if þou wolt oximel squilliticum, or þou miȝt ordeine þe sirip  
 wiþ modicis<sup>2</sup> erbis diureticis. ¶ þer is no þing so good for to  
 The best way  
 to purge the  
 kidneys is  
 vomiting.  
 R̄  
 Let the pa-  
 tient take  
 salted meats,  
 wine,  
 and first a  
 preparation  
 of radish with  
 syrup,  
 then put  
 compresses  
 on his eyes  
 [3 lf. 193]  
 and give an  
 emetic.  
 purgē mater of þe reines as is castynge / for whi castinge curiþ  
 vlcera of þe reynes / In þe somer þou schalt make him oonys in þe 8  
 moneþe sich a maner of vomet / Take þe seed of raphani & make  
 it clene & kutte it ouerþwert in rollis, & lete þis lie in þe forseid  
 sirup .ʒ. iiij. adai & anyȝt / & þan lete þe pacient ete diuers metis,  
 as chese, oynouns, salt fisch & þingis þat mai make him drinke 12  
 wel; & lete him drinke diuers wyne, saue the while he is fastinge,  
 lete him ete 3 notis of þe forseid rollis of raphani þat lay in þe  
 forseid sirup, & whanne he hath ete his saule & drunke, þan binde  
 vpon his iȝen neische lynet or flex, & streyne þou not it to harde 16  
 but meneli. & þan take watir in which has been soden anetum  
 til it bicomē reed, & take þerof li. j., & medle it wiþ þe sirup þat  
 radix raphani lay þerinne, & make him<sup>3</sup> drinke vp al togidere, &  
 þan he schal caste vp al his mete & al his drink, & manye wickede 20  
 humours þerwiþ. & þan make him gadere out þe foul mater of his  
 nose, & waische his mouþ & his teep; þis medicyn wole do awei þe  
 mater of þe stoon & purge wel his reynes, þis is þe best medicyn  
 þat mai be, for to kepe a man fro þe stoon. 24

¶ If þe man be not hool in þis maner, saue þe stoon is con-  
 fermed fast, þan þe cure þerof mai be in .ij. maners: þat oon is for  
 to aswage þe akyngē, & þat oþer is for to breke þe stoon & putte  
 him out // Whanne a man haþ greet akyngē in his reynes & in his 28  
 bladdre, & þou wotist wel it ben signes of þe stoon, first þou schalt  
 make him a clisterie wiþ a decoccioun of herbis þat ben mollificatif  
 & durentik: as malua, violae, bismalue, fenigreci, paritaria, apij,  
 fenicli, petrosilij scolopendrie, spergi, bruci,<sup>4</sup> saune, ebuli, sambuci. 32  
 & if it be in wiuter do þerto calamentum, pulegium, organum, se-  
 men fenicli, apij, petrosilij, carui, aneti, leuistici,<sup>5</sup> dauci, milij solis,<sup>6</sup>  
 [1 lf. 193, bk.] eruce, quatuor semina frigidorum, & impone mel, <sup>7</sup>sal, oleum camo-

<sup>2</sup> MS. *modi's*.

<sup>4</sup> *bruci*, *Ruscus aculeatus*, wild myrtle.

<sup>5</sup> *Alphita*, p. 98: "Leuisticus, keisim idem angl. loueache."

<sup>6</sup> MS. *solus*. *Alphita*, p. 117, "*Milium solis*, granum solis, cauda pecorina idem. g°. et a°. gromel." Phillips: "*Milium solis*, the Herb Gromwell."



- mille, & scharpe it wip benedicta,<sup>1</sup> and make perof a clisterie, & pe pacient schal holde it wipinne him longe tyme, & after pis clisterie do him in to a particular bap, & lete him sitte peron anon to pe
- 4 nauele, & in his bap schulen be soden leeuves of malue, peritorie, viole, senacion, scutella panici pistati & cortice mundati; pis maner bap as I haue ofte preued, it aswaged akinge / & whanne he goip out of his bap, make an enplastre of mele, oile & watir, as pou
- 8 schalt fynde in pe antidotarie in pe c<sup>o</sup>. of maturatiuis, & leie vpon pe place pere pe passioun is / If pou knowist wel pat pe stoon fallip adoun of pe reynes toward pe bladdre bi pe weie of pe vrine, sette þan vndir pe place pere it akip,<sup>2</sup> sichiam<sup>3</sup> wip fier wipout ony
- 12 kuttynge, for pis wole drawe adoun pe stoon. & as pe stoon discendip adoun to sichiam to sette it lower til he come anon to pe bladdre, & þan al pe akyng wole go awei. ¶ Tofore alle þingis fildonium<sup>4</sup> is good, pat pou schalt fynde in pe antidotarie of auicen,
- 16 for pat is a sure medicyn in pis caas. ¶ Anoþer medicyn pat auicen made, & I haue preued it, and it<sup>5</sup> doip awei akyng pat is in vlceribus renum. R̄, seminis iusquiami albi .3. ß, opij, grana .iiij, seminum citruli, lactuce, portulace, ana .3. j., medle al togidere
- 20 & zeue herof .3. ij. wip sugre. ¶ And pis pou muste wite pat pou schalt zeue pe pacient no þing for to make him pisse whan his akinge is strong, & whanne his vrine is stoppid; for pat wole make pe more akinge / It is perel of pis passioun, for pe akyng is so
- 24 greet sumtyme pat pe pacient hap pe spasme perwip & is deed perwip, saue pou schalt do awei his akyng wip bapinge & enplastris & anyntyngis, & þane aftirward pou schalt make him medicyns for to breke pe stoon & putte him out wip pe vryne / R̄, cretani
- 28 marini,<sup>6</sup> scolopendrie, capillis veneris, spice celtice, ana .3. ij., radix fenicli, apij, petrosilij, spergi, brusci, cicore, graminis, filipendule, genciane, saxifrage, squille, asse, ana .3. j., iiij<sup>or</sup> semina frigidorum, seminum fenicli, apij, coriandri, scarirole,<sup>7</sup> granorum iuniperi, nucleum

put the patient into a bath

and apply a plaster.

Draw the stone from the kidneys to the bladder by application of heat.

The best medicine is the Philonium.

Another medicine of Avicenna.

[5 If. 194]  
R̄

One must not give diuretic medicines to the patient.

A medicine to break the stone.  
R̄

<sup>1</sup> benedicta. Lat. cum benedicta Nicolai.

<sup>2</sup> MS. mahip. Lat. sub loco doloris.

<sup>3</sup> sichiam. Lat. scyam G. σίκυος, the common cucumber. "A figuræ vel formæ similitudine Cucurbitæ vel cucurbitulæ medicis dicuntur vascula illa, quæ cuti cum flamma affigi solent, cum vel sine scarificatione." Castelli, Lex. medicum.

<sup>4</sup> fildonium. Lat. philonium romanum. Matth. Sylv.: "Filonium i. nouus amicus & est confectio quedam sic uocata." Galen, ed. Kuehn, vol. xvii. B. 331, φάρμακον φιλώνιον. An electuary with Opium, so called from Philo of Tharsus.

<sup>6</sup> Crithmum maritimum, L.

<sup>7</sup> Sin. Barth.: "Scariola, lactucella, lactuca agrestis idem, an. sowethistel."

[<sup>1</sup> If. 194, bk.]

R̄  
A medicine  
made of  
Avicenna.

cerasorum, milij solis, ana .3. ℥. fiat sirupus cum duabus partibus  
ꝛucari, & terciā mellis squillitici, & it̄ schal be take wip a decoccioun  
of tribulorum & cicerum rubeorum, pis eletuarie is <sup>1</sup> of auicen  
makyng / R̄, cineris vitris, caulis, cineris leporis combusti, cineris 4  
scorpionis, cineris testi oui,<sup>2</sup> lapidis spongie, lapidis iudaici, sanguinis  
hiri siccī, gummi nucis acori, ana .3. j. seminis petrosilij, dauci,  
pulegij, gummi arabici, seminis albi piperis ana .3. j., auri .3. iiij.,  
balsami .3. ℥., muscati .3. j., make alle þese wip good hony þat̄ it̄ 8  
be whit̄ & clene, & þou schalt̄ ȝeue .3. iiij. þerof̄, & .iiij. tymes in  
þe woke. ¶ Also a good medicyn for þe stoon þat̄ is comen to a  
mannes reynes & in his bladdre / Take a litil hare þat̄ bledde  
neuere blood, & do him in an erþen vessel<sup>3</sup> wel glased wipinne wip a 12  
couerle of þe same mater, & stoppe it̄ faste, þat̄ þer mowe come out̄  
þerof̄ no fume, wip good lute or wip past̄, & sette þis vessel in a  
furneis til þe hare be bicomē al aischis, & þan grinde it̄ & kepe it̄,  
& ȝeue him þerof̄ .3. j. whanne he goiþ out̄ of his bapinge þat̄ is 16  
forseid, wip a decoccioun of tribulorum, & hony. I have preued  
þat̄ þis medicyn is good, & also þou miȝt̄ medle wip þis poudre,  
triale / And þis schal be þin entencioun for to ȝeue him medicyns  
þat̄ ben not̄ stronḡ for to breke þe stoon, as saxifrage & cantarides 20  
& opere stronḡ medicyns þat̄ pilij þe reynes. & if þe pacient̄  
haue drie reynes & he be leene of bodi, þan in þis caas .3. j. of  
Rasis makyng is good / R̄, semina melonum mundatorum .3. xxx,  
seminis citruli, seminis portulace, seminis cucurbite, seminis papau- 24  
eris albi ana .3. iiij, seminis iusquiami albe .3. ij., ꝛucari pondus  
omnium,<sup>5</sup> saue I do þerto þe double weȝte of sugre /

The medicine  
shall not be  
too strong,

[<sup>4</sup> If. 195]  
as it might  
hurt the  
kidneys.

A medicine  
of Rasis.

R̄

The patient  
suffers from  
strangury,  
if the stone  
is in the  
neck of the  
bladder.

Remove the  
stone with  
the finger as  
with a  
syringe.

If̄ þe stoon be in his bladdre, þan þou schalt̄ worche in þis  
maner / First̄ þou schalt̄ take kepe wher he haue stranguria. þat̄ 28  
þou miȝt̄ wite if̄ he makiþ watir droppynli & a litil at̄ oonys, &  
hap̄ greet penaunce in his bladdre. þan þe stoon is in þe necke of  
þe bladdre; þan þou schalt̄ make him a clisterie mollificatif̄ þat̄ þou  
mowe auoide his bowels, & þan þou schalt̄ frote his noseprillis with 32  
watir,<sup>6</sup> & þou schalt̄ presse litzly þe place of̄ his ars þereabout̄ þat̄  
þou supposit̄ þat̄ þe stoon sittip. & if̄ he remeue not̄ in þis maner,  
þan þou schalt̄ putte in siryngam litzli in þe condijt̄ of his ȝerde til  
he comē to þe stoon. & if̄ þou myȝt̄ not̄ putte it̄ aweī in þis maner, 36

<sup>2</sup> testi oui. Lat. testæ oui.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: pone ipsum vinum in olla terrea.

<sup>5</sup> Lat. ad pondus omnium.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: faciendo egrum leuare nates. The translator read: lauare nares.



- pan putte þi fyngir in <sup>1</sup>his ers, & þere þou schalt fele þe stoon, & [<sup>1</sup>lf. 195, bk.] helpe wiþ þi fyngir for to putte it away. Whanne þe stoon is remeued, þan þe pacient mai make watir, þan his akinge wole ceesse,
- 4 & þan þou schalt go to þe cure. First þou schalt make him a clisterie of duritikis / in which schulen be medicyns þat haue propriete for to breke þe stoon, & þan sette þe pacient in a baþ þat is forseid. & a litil tofore or he go out of his baþ, zeue him of þe
- 8 poudre of þe hare þat is forseid. & whanne he comeþ out of þe baþ, leie þis enplastre vpon þe place þat is clepid pectinis.<sup>2</sup> R7, foliorum nasturcij aquatici,<sup>3</sup> & foliorum apij .ana. M j, & grinde hem and a plaster. R7 wel wiþ grese. & whanne þei ben medlid togidere in þe mortar, þan
- 12 hete hem a litil ouer þe fier & leie it vpon, & eueri dai in þre daies contynuely þou schalt sette him in þe forseid baþ, & leie vpon þe forseid plastre, & zeue him of þe forseid poudre. þis cure is good & I haue preued it //
- 16 If alle þese medicyns availiþ not, þan þou muste drawe out þe stoon wiþ kuttinge or þe patient falle into etikis.<sup>4</sup> & if þou wolt drawe <sup>5</sup>out a stoon of þe bladdre wiþ kuttinge, þan þou muste appaile<sup>6</sup> alle þingis þat ben necessarie for þee : as sirupis & ligaturis,
- 20 & þan þou schalt binde his hipis & his leggis faste, þat he mowe not meue, for to lette þee whanne þou wolt kutte him. & þanne þou schalt anoynte þi longist fyngir of þi lift hond & þi pompe wiþ oile, & þou schalt putte hem in þe pacientis ers, saue first þou schalt
- 24 awoide him wiþ a clisterie mollificatif, & þou schalt sette<sup>7</sup> þi rizt hond vpon his ers, and grope softli, where þe stoon be, & putte him to þe hedis of þi fyngiris. & whanne þou myzt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngiris, þan þou schalt putte him to þe necke of þe bladdre
- 28 toward þe ballokis as myche as þou myzt. & þan þou schalt fele þe hardnes of þe stoon bitwixe his ers, & þe ballokis þat is in þe necke of þe bladdre. þan þou schalt wiþ þi rizt hond take a rasour, & kutte faste by þe preed þat goiþ bitwixe þe ers & þe ballokis ende-
- 32 longis, saue þou schalt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngiris þat þe stoon mowe come out. & þanne ioyne wel þe lippis of <sup>8</sup>þe wounde togidere, þan þou schalt sewe [not]<sup>9</sup> oonly þe skyn aboue, but þou

When the stone is removed into the bladder, try to break the stone with an internal treatment, a bath,

and a plaster. R7

If these medicines do not avail, operate.

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 196] Prepare the things necessary for the operation, and bind the patient fast.

First use a Clisterie,

feel for the stone, hold it between the fingers,

then cut out the stone with a razor.

[<sup>8</sup> lf. 196, bk.] and sew the wound.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. : supra locum pectinis. Os pectinis, the share-bone.

<sup>3</sup> Nasturtium aquaticum, watercress.

<sup>4</sup> etikis, Lat. : antequam æger incurrat hecticam. O.Fr. étique. Med. Lat. Ethica uel Ethica febris. Dufr.

<sup>6</sup> appaile. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. apparel, v. 1., to make ready, prepare.

<sup>7</sup> sette, above line.

<sup>9</sup> not, wanting. Lat. : et labia vulneris optime conjungas non solum in superficie.

schalt sewe al þe depnes of þe wounde togidere, & þan þou schalt  
springe þeron poudre þat is aforseid to woundis. & þan þou schalt  
binde it with boondis & lynt til þe wounde be perfitli hool / In þis  
caas þou muste take kepe of manye þingis / First þou muste take 4  
kepe of þe age of þe pacient, for children þat ben xiiij. wintir oold  
ben moost able for þis cure,<sup>1</sup> for her lymes ben tendir ynow<sup>3</sup>, & in  
þat elde þei ben strong ynow<sup>3</sup> for to be maad hool, & her com-  
plexioun is hoot & moist. Jonge children & olde men ben not able 8  
to be kutt, for in þe kutyng of hem enpostyms wolen engendre  
hastili, & þat wole lette þe vrine & make more akyng, & so þei  
miȝten falle in-to þe spasme, & so wiþ þe spasme þei miȝt be deed /  
Summen seien þat olde men ben able to be kutt, for her blood is 12  
miche laskid<sup>2</sup> & her hete, & þefore þei ben not able to take an  
enpostym; þefore þei ben moost able to be kutt of þe stoon /  
Summen seien þat her lymes ben to drie & her vertues ben to feble /  
<sup>[3 lf. 197]</sup> & þefore þei ben not able to be kutt, & herwiþ I acorde / þese .ij. 16  
þingis: engendryng of an enpostym, & if þe place þat is kutt  
wole not soude, þese .ij. bringiþ perel of deep / Also þou muste  
take kepe of þe schap of þe stoon, & what quantite þat he be, for  
if þe stoon be .ij. forkid<sup>4</sup> or cornerid, or so greet þat he may not 20  
be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no maner  
kutte him, but if þou miȝt first wiþ þin hond breke þe stoon. &  
þan if þou miȝt not bringe it out at oony, þan in diuers tymes  
þou schalt gadere him out.<sup>5</sup> ¶ And if þe stoon be so greet þat he 24  
mai not be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no  
maner kutte him, forwhi he mai not be brouȝt out, but if þou  
woldist kutte þe substaunce of þe bladdre & þat were mortal; but  
þou schalt put him to þe botme of þe bladdre wiþ instrumentis, & 28  
teche þe patient for to kepe him in þat maner þat þe stoon falle not  
into þe necke of þe bladdre / Also if he be so sutil þat he mai not  
be felid wiþ þin hond, þan þou schalt not kutte him neiþer. & if þe  
<sup>[3 lf. 197, bk.]</sup> patient mai be hool in ony<sup>6</sup> maner, [n]or kutt wiþouten passioun, it 32

**Nota**  
Children who  
are fourteen  
years old, are  
most fit for  
this treat-  
ment.

Younger  
children and  
old men are  
not fit,

although  
some people  
say the con-  
trary.

If the stone  
cannot be  
brought to  
the neck of  
the bladder,

you must  
first break  
it before  
cutting.

**Beware.**

Do not cut,  
if the stone  
is small.

<sup>1</sup> De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 96: " & somtyme pey schal be take to surgerye and namelich children and þan zongelinge. For in elde keruyng is perilous, for aftir fourty zere þis euil is incurable as it is i-said in amphor.:<sup>a</sup> aftir fourti zere he þat haþ þe ston is nouȝt i-saued."

<sup>2</sup> Celsus Lib. VII. Cap. 26, ed. Daremberg, p. 307: "As neque omni tem-pore, neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio id experiendum est: sed solo vere; in eo corpore, quod jam novem annos, nondum quatuordecim excessit."

<sup>4</sup> *ij forkid*, diffureatus.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: "pluribus vicibus educatur."

<sup>a</sup> Rhazes, Aphorismi.



- is better þat<sup>1</sup> he be nouzt<sup>t</sup> kutt<sup>t</sup> þan he be kutt<sup>t</sup>.<sup>2</sup> for men þat<sup>t</sup> ben so kutt<sup>t</sup> schulen neuere gete children, but if it be þe more hap<sup>3</sup>; & also it is perilous for to kutte / & þerfore I rede þee take þat<sup>t</sup> wyn-  
 4 nunge<sup>4</sup> to opere cirurgians. ¶ Ful ofte tyme men leie me to scorn, for I wolde not entermete me of sich curis, & seide þat<sup>t</sup> I leste sicke maner curis, for I coude not do it, & þe same þei seide of men þat<sup>t</sup> weren filme broke,<sup>5</sup> & of men þat<sup>t</sup> weren in þe dropesie. & I leste  
 8 þe curis þerof for perels þat<sup>t</sup> miȝte folowe / ffor if a kunnyng man entermetid him of sich a cure, & if þer fil ony yuele happis to þe patient, þan wolen vnkunnyng lechis seie þat<sup>t</sup> þei han do þat<sup>t</sup> cure ful ofte, & so he mai be brouzt into an yuel looss þerbi; for blame  
 12 & for perels I wolde not vse kuttingis / þese ben yuele happis þat falliþ to a man þat<sup>t</sup> is kutt<sup>t</sup>: as greet akyng vndir þe nauele, & hise lymes bicomith coold, & atach of þe feueie,<sup>6</sup> & greet akinge in þe place þat<sup>t</sup> was kutt<sup>t</sup>, alle þese signes ben signes of deef / Good signes  
 16 herof ben þese: strenkþe of vrine, & þat<sup>t</sup> he mowe go to priuy wel<sup>7</sup> & þat<sup>t</sup> he haue good appetit to mete. ¶ Sumtyme it falliþ bi strenkþe, þe stoon is putt into þe ȝerde. & þat<sup>t</sup> I say [in] a man, þat<sup>t</sup> his vryne was stoppid .v. daies in þe same maner, & I drowe  
 20 him out wip instrumentis wipouten ony kuttinge. & if þe stoon sitte in þe canel of þe ȝerde, & þou maist not bringe him out wip þi fyngris, þan þou schalt binde his ȝerde bihinde þe stoon, þat<sup>t</sup> þe stoon mowe not go into þe bladdre aȝen. & þan grope þe stoon softli  
 24 wip þi .ij. fyngris, & kutte endelongis, as it is aforseid, a litil hole, as miche as þou miȝt drawe out þe stoon, & þane cure þe wounde as it is aforseid /<sup>8</sup>

ffor to drawe out watir of men þat han þe dropesie /<sup>9</sup>

- 28 **T**Houȝ pis book be maad oonli of cirurgie, ȝitt it is myn entencion to speke of þe dropesie, & principaly þat ben wrouzt ¶ x. co.

<sup>1</sup> MS. þan.

<sup>2</sup> & if þe patient . . . þan he be kutt, an insertion.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: "Considera quoque quod sæpe per loci nominati incisionem generatio prohibetur."

<sup>4</sup> þat wynnyng, Lat.: sed aliis cupidis chirurgis dimitte illa lucrari. *Cath. Angl.*, p. 420, "Wynnyng. Emolumentum, lucrum."

<sup>5</sup> of men þat weren filme broke, Lat. de ruptorum incisura.

<sup>6</sup> atach of þe feueie, attack of fever. See later references in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. attach, sb.

<sup>8</sup> The translator has omitted one chapter: De clauso hermaphrodito & additione panniculi mulieris doctrinæ tertiæ, tractatus tertii, Cap. IX.

<sup>9</sup> The four kinds of dropsy are mentioned in *De propr. rerum*, Lib. VII., Cap. 52, Add. 27,944, fol. 94 b.: "Þe firste dropesye hatte leucostema, and

The dropsy is a compound disease, caused by superfluity of matter.

[I. lf. 198, bk.]

The men of Salerne distinguish four kinds of dropsy.

The Arabs only three:

**yposarca,**  
**Aschites,**

**Tympanites.**

There is cold matter in all these kinds of dropsy, the exciting cause may be heat or coldness.

When the liver is diseased, cold phlegmatic matter is produced.

[5 lf. 199]

The Salernitans say that dropsy is caused by a debility of the liver, the stomach, or other organs.

Some physicians say that the urine will be red if there is a hot cause,

wiþ mannes hond. ¶ I seie þat þe dropesie is a sjuknes compound in which superflue mater þat is coold swellip þe body / Men of salerne seiden þat þere weren .iiij. maner spicis of dropesie, & .iiij. maner dropesies. But auctours of arabie acorden alle at <sup>1</sup>oonys,<sup>2</sup> 4 & seien soþ þat þer ben but .iiij. maner dropesies,<sup>3</sup> & þat oon comeþ of rawe blood, of raw fleume medlid wiþ blood, & is bore into al þe bodi, & swellip al þe bodi, & is clepid yposarca. þat oper is of mater of 3elow3 water & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, 8 & is clepid aschites / þe .iiij. is engendrid of greet wynd resolved of coold mater, & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid tympanites / Of þis ydropesie summen iugiþ listli, & seien þat yposarca comeþ of coold alwei, & tympanites comeþ sumtyme of 12 wynd & of hete, but moost comounli of cooldnes / Aschites comith moost of hete, & ful selden of cooldnes / but for to seie þe soþe, alle þe spicis ben medlid with coold mater, & þerfore he seiþ soþ þat clepiþ eueri ydropesie coold mater,<sup>4</sup> for euery spice of þe dropesie 16 mai come of hete or of cooldnes goynge tofore. ¶ þer is no þing þat defendip, þat whanne þe lyuere is hoot out of hir propir hete, or if al þe bodi is distemp[er]id in hete, as in feueris, þe patient mai so miche þe feblid þerwiþ, þat it may engendre coold mater & fleu- 20 matik / Ful ofte I haue had þis caas / <sup>5</sup>þerfore auctours seien þat þe dropesie comith of þe febilnes of þe lyuere / þerfore men of salerne seien þat it comeþ of defeaute of digestioun of þe lyuere. & it comeþ of takinge of yuele metis & drinkis, & of febilnes of 24 opere lymes, as of þe stomak, & of þe reynes, & of þe maris, & of þe lungis, & of diafragma. & whanne þese lymes ben enfeblid, þan þe lyuere enfebliþ // Therefore it is necessarie for a leche to wite<sup>6</sup> wher it comeþ of causis goinge tofore hoot or coold / And summe 28 lechis halden hem paid for to haue a sizt of þe vrine, & iugiþ þe dropesie hoot & coold bi þe sizt of þe vryne / for if þe vrine be reed, þei wolen iuge þat þe cause is hoot, & in þis maner þei ben

*comeþ of distemperaunce of coldnesse and drinesse, & haþ þat name of white fleume for leucos is white. ¶ Þe secounde hatte yposarca opir anasarca, and comeþ of distemperaunce of coolde and of drynes. The þridde hatte aschites and comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & moisture. Þe ferþe hatte tympanytes & comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & drinesse."*

<sup>2</sup> acorden alle at oony, Lat. in una conveniunt. Comp. *Reliqu. Antiqu.* I. 233, *accorde in one.* (*N. E. Dict.*, s. v. accord v. 5.)

<sup>3</sup> Lanfranc follows *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 14, Tract. 4, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 238 b.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: omnem egritudinem ydropicam appellant materialem frigidam.

<sup>6</sup> to wite, above line.



- disseyued / ¶ Forwhi, in what maner so þe lyuere be enfeblid of  
 coold cause or of hoot, it wole make his vrine reed / For sumtyme  
 a man mai not zeue a discrecioun<sup>1</sup> of blood fro vrine, for a litil  
 blood colourid miche vrine, riȝt as a litil saffron colouriþ miche  
 water / þerfor of what cause so it be þat his lyuere be enfeblid,  
 his vrine mai schewe reed. ¶ Also þe signes of yposarcha & aschites  
 & tympanite ben open ynow<sup>3</sup>. <sup>2</sup>In þis maner þou schalt knowe hem / <sup>[2 lf. 199, bk.]</sup>
- 8 In yposarcha al þe bodi swellip, as his face, & his armis, & his rigge-  
 boon, & his necke, & alle his lymes, so þat in what partie of his  
 bodi þat þou pressist þi fyngir þere wole be a pitt. & whanne þe  
 fyngir is aweie it wole arise agen / & it is a greet maistrie for to  
 12 knowe wheþer yposarcha come of coold cause tofore goynge or of  
 hoot cause / If it comeþ of coold goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen  
 be discolourid as it were þe colour of askis, or pale<sup>3</sup> / If it come of  
 hete goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen be ȝelow<sup>3</sup> or sumwhat reed / <sup>If the cause  
is cold, the  
eyes will be  
pale;  
they are  
yellow or red,  
if there is a  
hot cause.</sup>
- 16 & þou muste wite, wheþer he had a feure tofore or haue þe feure  
 fortis þerwiþ / or if he hadde þere tofore an hoot enpostym þerwiþ,  
 ouþer he haue enpostym þerwiþ / þese ben þe propre signes of  
 aschites, þat his face, & his necke, & his brest, & his armis  
 20 bicomith smal, & his vois schal bicometh smal, & his wombe schal  
 conli swelle. & sumtyme in þe firste bigynnyng his feet & his  
 leggis wolen swelle in þe firste bigynnyng, for þe greet strekþe of  
 þe mater þat makip it falle adoun. & if þou <sup>4</sup>smite his<sup>5</sup> wombe, he  
 24 wole sowne as it were a touȝt leþer ful of wynd<sup>6</sup> / þese ben þe  
 propre signes of tympanites: his wombe & þe regioun of his stomac  
 schulen onoly be to-swolle, & alle his opere lymes, boþe his feet, &  
 his leggis, & his necke, & his armis wolen bicometh smal, & if þou  
 28 smitist him vpon his wombe, it wole sounne as it were a tympan /  
 & in þis passioun þer is lasse agreuance þan in aschite & more  
 swellynge. & if þou pressist his wombe, þou schalt fynde it streite  
 as it were a corde. & þou schal fele no meuyng of water, whanne  
 32 þe pacient turneþ him from o side to anoþer / Curis herof þou schalt  
 fynde ynowe in bokis of phisik / For I nyle telle but fewe medicyns  
 þerfore, I haue longe tyme vsid.

¶ Whanne þou wolt ordeine regimen on yposarcha, zeue him

<sup>1</sup> zeue a discrecioun, discernere.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: conjunctiva oculi est valde discolorata, cinericia vel pallida.

<sup>5</sup> MS. his, twice.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: auditur quasi sonus vtris de corio vino pleni.

Make the patient who suffers from Hyposaracha sweat, in summer in hot sand or on a sunny hill,  
[3 lf. 200, bk.]  
in winter in a hot-house.

R<sub>7</sub>

Prescription, how to make the decoction.

R<sub>7</sub>

How to make the troches.

R<sub>7</sub>

The Agaric-pills.  
Treatment of Ascites.

The disease is almost fatal, if the cause is hot.

[3 lf. 201]

If there is a cold cause, and if the patient is strong,

give him rub-barb-pills;

trociscus de lactea<sup>1</sup> cum apozimate<sup>2</sup> de radicibus fro þe firste dai to þe .iiij., & 3eue him pelottis de agarico. & whanne þe swellinge bigynneþ to go away, if it be in somer, þan þou schalt hele al his bodi in hoot gravel þere þe sunne mai 3eue greet hete, or lete him<sup>4</sup> sitte vpon an hiz hil þere þe<sup>3</sup> sunne schineþ hoot, þat he mai swete wel, & þat his bodi mai wexe hoot wipoute & wipinne. & if it be in winter, putte him in a drie stewe, so þat þe watir come not niz him. þus þou schalt make apozima of rotis / R<sub>7</sub>, corticis fenicli, 8 apij, [ana drac.]<sup>4</sup> .x., seminum [apii] squinantum, ameos, ana. 3 .v., rosarum rubiarum, spicenarde ana .3 .iiij, seþe hem in li .ij. of watir til þei come to li .j., cole hem & kepe þe colature. & if þou doist þerinne a litil hony it wole be þe better / Trocisci de lacte ben<sup>12</sup> maad in þis maner / R<sub>7</sub>, rubarbe, lacte, ana [drac iii.], seminis apij, spice, ameos, amigdalum amarum, masticis, squinante, seminis iuni-p[er]i, costi amari,<sup>5</sup> rubee succi, eupatorij,<sup>6</sup> aristologie rotundæ, gencian ana .3. ß, make herof gobetis, þe weizte of 3 .j., & he schal<sup>16</sup> take oon þerof wip .3 .iiij. of þe forseid pelottis de agarico / R<sub>7</sub>, agarici .3 .x., succi eupatorij, rubarbarum, aristologia rotundæ ana 3 .ij, zucare albe .3 .v, & make herof pelottis. & þou schalt 3eue herof .3 .ij.

20

If þou seest þat þe cause þat 3ede tofore þis passioun was hoot, & he make litil vrine & reed, & if his vertu be feble of þe hete, & þou hast dispeir of him,<sup>7</sup> & if he haue þe feuere þerwip, it is so<sup>8</sup> myche þe worse // If his vrine schewe þat þe cause is coold, & if<sup>24</sup> þe patient be strong ynow<sup>3</sup>, loke if his wombe be hard. & þan make him vse sirup acetose maad wip seedis & sugre, & 3eue him þe pelottis of rubarbe þat ben maad in þis maner / R<sub>7</sub>, rubarberi, succi eupatorij, seminis endiuie ana. 3. iiij, agarici 3. v., make þerof<sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *lactea*, Lat. *lacta*. "Lacca, a red transparent Substance made as some say, by winged Arts; as Hony by Bees, and gather'd from a Tree of that Name, in Bengala, Malabar &c. Also a kind of red Gum issuing from certain Trees in Arabia, of which the best Sealing hard Wax is made; often us'd in Painting and Varnishing." Phillips.

<sup>2</sup> *Apozima*. "Apozeme, a Physical Decoction, a Diet-Drink made of several Roots, Woods, Barks, Herbs, Drugs, Flowers, Seeds, &c., boild together." Phillips.

<sup>4</sup> MS. ß.

<sup>5</sup> Two kinds of *costus* are mentioned in *Alphita*, p. 46: c. indicus, and c. arabicus.

<sup>6</sup> *eupatorium*. Add. 15,236, fol. 3 b. (cc. 1300), "*Eupatorium. salvia agrestis idem. G. eupatorie. A. wyldeage. i. hyndehale.*"

<sup>7</sup> þou hast dispeir of him, Lat. de tali ægri salute desperes. Comp. þou schalt neuere þe lattere be in despeir of canteriiis. Lat. nec propter hoc desperes, p. 311, note 3.



pelettis wiþ þe iuys of endiue. þou schalt ȝeue him herof at  
oonys .3. ij., & euery wike þou schalt ȝeue it oonys / If it so be þat <sup>if the patient</sup>  
he be feble, & if he mai not take so miche, þan in þe place of þese <sup>is feeble,</sup>  
<sup>gobets,</sup>

4 pelottis he schal take gobetis þat ben maad in þis maner / R̄, *seminis* R̄  
endiue 3 .x., esule,<sup>1</sup> succi eupatorij, agarici, ana. 3 .ij., & .3 .j.,  
*rosarum, seminis citrulorum*, ana 3 .ij., & make herof .x. gobettis  
wiþ a decoccion of fenel in water: ȝeue him oon þerof wiþ sirupo

8 acetoso de seminibus. Enplastre<sup>2</sup> his wombe wiþ enplastre maad <sup>and apply a</sup>  
wiþ .ij. partis of oxis dounge, & oon part of gotis dounge, boli <sup>plaster on his</sup>  
<sup>belly.</sup>  
*armoniacy, sulphuris, & salis, & distempere hem wiþ strong vinegre /*

þis is þe cure of tympaniti þat is ful selde curid / & specialy <sup>Treatment of</sup>  
<sup>Tympanitis.</sup>

12 whanne it is entrid into diafragma & is conformed þere / first þou  
schalt make him *electuari* de baccis lauri, & þou schalt make him <sup>[3 lf. 201, bk.]</sup>

suppositorijs for to distrie<sup>4</sup> wynd, & he schal suffre hungir as  
miche as he mai, & he schal absteine him fro þingis þat engendriþ  
16 wijnd, & þou schalt frote his wombe ofte wiþ a scharp cloof / <sup>Give an</sup>  
*Electuari* de baccis lauri / R̄, *foliorum rute* .3 .x., *ameos, seminum*,<sup>5</sup> <sup>electuary</sup>  
*nigille*,<sup>6</sup> *leuistici*,<sup>7</sup> *petrocilij macedonici*,<sup>8</sup> *origani*,<sup>9</sup> *carui, amigdal-*  
*arum amarum, piperis longi, mentastri*,<sup>10</sup> *dauci, acori, baccarum lauri,*  
20 *castore* ana .3 .iiij., *serapini* .3 .iiij., *appoponac* .3 .iiij., make herof a  
lectuarie wiþ .iiij. so miche of hony, þis electuarie wiþ consumeþ.

¶ þus þou schalt make suppositorijs for to distrie wijnd / R̄, *cimi-*  
*num, foliorum rute viridis*<sup>11</sup> ana. ʒ .j., *radicis brionie, radicis mali*  
24 *terre, radicis rafani* ana .3 .ij., *sal nitri* .3 .j., & make herof supposi-  
torijs wiþ hony. ¶ Whanne þou knowist wel þat þe dropesie is of  
hoot cause, þan þou schalt not forgete to helpe þe side þat is hoot;  
& also if þe mater be coold, þou schalt helpe him wiþ hote þingis.

and supposi-  
tories.

R̄

Supposito-  
rijs.

<sup>1</sup> "*Esula*, quedam species est titimalli, gallice yesele." *Alphita*, p. 50.

<sup>2</sup> *enplastre*, Lat. *venter enplastretur*. O.Fr. *emplastrer*. Sl. 277, fol. 1:  
"be þe place emplastred wiþ a plastre maad þus." Comp. *plasteren*, Prompt.  
Parv.

<sup>4</sup> *distrie*, Lat. *dissoluere*, destroy.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: *cimini*.

<sup>6</sup> *nigilla*. Add. 15,236, fol. 10, "*Nigella i. lolium*. G. neel. A. cokel,"  
fennel flower.

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 4 b., "*Leuisticum*. G. *luache*," lovage. See *E. P. N.*, p. 43,  
*luvestiche, luvesche*.

<sup>8</sup> *Alphita*, p. 108, "*macedonia vel macedonicum, petrocillinum idem*,  
*g. alisandre, a. stamerche*."

<sup>9</sup> Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b., "*Origanum*. G. *Origane. i. pulegium. A. puliol*  
*reale*." See *Alphita*, p. 150. "*Pulegium. gallire puliol, a. Brotherwurt*."

<sup>10</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 7 b., "*Sisimbrium. mentastrum*. G. *mentastre. A. hors*  
*mint*."

<sup>11</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 7, "*Ruta bissara. puganum vel pucanum. hermola idem. G.*  
*Rue. A. smalrede*."

If the cause  
is hot,  
[1 lf. 202]  
give a decoction  
with  
chickens,  
and a syrup.

Ry  
Prescription  
for the syrup.

To be given  
twice a week.

A plaster is  
put on the  
region of the  
liver.

Finally use  
a bath.  
[3 lf. 202, bk.]

Take care in  
using drying  
medicines  
that the  
patient does  
not get con-  
sumption.



Operation  
should not  
be performed  
on all sorts  
of people;

patients  
who are not  
strong, and  
old men, are  
not fit.  
One cannot  
trust in the  
strength of  
an old man.

[4 lf. 203]

¶ *pis pingt* is necessarie for to zeue a man *pat* *hap* *pe* hote dropesie, a decoccion of *solatrum* & *endiue*; & in *pat* *watir* he <sup>1</sup>schal sepe chickenys for to ete, & first he schal drinke *sirupum acetosum* wip seedis / And I wole telle *pee* a cure, *pat* I curide in my tyme .ij. 4 men *pat* weren in *aschite* of hoot cause, *pat* it mowe be ensaumple to *pee* / I made hem a sirupe of *platearie*<sup>2</sup> in *pis* maner / R<sup>y</sup>, *succi scariole* li .ij., *succi apij* & *petrosilij*, ana. li .j., & boile hem wip .ḡ .iiij. of *esule*, *masticis*, *seminis fenicli*, *apij*, ana. ḡ .ss, sepe hem in 8 *watir* til *pei* come to .li .ij., & *pan* cole hem & do *perto* .li .j. *zucare*, & boile hem til *pei* be *perfit*. & whanne *pow* doist adoun fro *pe* fier, do *perto* *rubarbe* .ḡ .ss., & lete it boile a *litol*, & *pan* kepe it for *pin* vss. & *þou* schalt zeue it him in *pe* morowe wip a decoccion 12 of *fenel* seed, .ij. in *pe* wike. & *þou* schalt enplastre al his wombe, saue *pe* regioun of his *lyuere*, wip *pe* forseid *plastris* & *dounge* & *vinegre*. & vpon his *lyuere* leie an enplastre maad of .ḡ .ij. of *barli mele*, & *rosis*, & *sandalis albi* & *rubei* ana. ḡ .ss, *camphore* 16 .ḡ .ij., & distempere hem wip *water* of *rosis* & wip *vinegre*. & if he haue not *pe* feuere, *pan* zeue him *gotis* *milk* fasting. And whan *pe* patient bicomel smal in his wombe, *pan* sette him in a *þap*, *pat* be soden *þerinne* *sulphur*<sup>3</sup> & salt, & he schal be *þerinne* but a *litol* 20 while. ¶ *Herof* *þou* muste be war: whanne *water* is dried in a man wip *drijnge* wip *medicyns*, *þan* his *lymes* leeuþ swiþe drie; wherfore *pei* falliþ in *etik* & *dien*. þerfore *þou* muste in alle *þes* *þingis* be wel war / 24

*þe* cure *pat* is wip *iren* falliþ oonli in *aschite*, *pat* manie men doon *hardili*, & takiþ no kepe of *pe* *particularis* *þerof*, for *pei* knowen not *pe* science, for *pei* doon al oon maner to *zonge* & to olde, to stronge & to feble; *pei* kuttiþ *pe* skyn vnder *pe* nanel, & 28 alle men *pat* *pei* kutten ouþer *pe* mooste wereþ *perischid* / Saue *þou* schalt take kepe of *kunnyng*, & worche bi *resoun* / for *þow* schalt take kepe wher he be strong or no; & if he be not strong, *þou* schalt do no cure to him. ¶ Also *þou* schalt do no cure to olde 32 men *pat* ben to-broke, for *þou* schalt not leeuþ *pe* strenkþe of an oold man, for it is impossible for to fynde an oold man strong, whanne *pe* dropesie is confermed on him / If it so be *pat* he be *zong* & strong, *þan* *þow* schalt haue good trust for to helpe him. 36 ¶ Thanne *þou* muste enquire sotilly wher <sup>4</sup>*þe* principal vijs be of

<sup>2</sup> *Matthæus Platearius* belonged to the school of Salerno about the middle of the 12th century. He wrote: "*Liber de simplicibus medicinis*," commonly called "*Circa instans*."



be lyuere, for þan þou muste kutte him in þe splene side / And if it  
 so be þat þe splene be þe principal of þe dropsie, þan þe kuttinge  
 muste be in þe riztside. And if þe cause come of lymes aboue, as  
 4 of þe stomac or of diafragma, þan þou muste kutte him vpon  
 pecten. & if it be in a womman, & come of þe vijs of þe maris,  
 þan þou schalt kutte hir aboue þe nauele. Whanne þou knowist in  
 what place þou schalt kutte þe pacient, þan þou schalt opene þe  
 8 place of þe pacient, & þou schalt presse his wombe adounward as  
 miche as þou mizt, & make him ete a litil of breed tostid<sup>1</sup> vpon  
 coolis, & wet in wijn; & þan lete him sitte tofore þee bitwene a  
 strong mannes armys, þat mai holde him faste, þat he mowe not  
 12 meue in þe tyme whanne þou wolt worche. And þan þou schalt  
 take þe skyn þat is clepid mirac, wiþ þi lifthond in þe place þere þou  
 wolt make þi kuttinge, & þat skyn þou schalt peerse endelongis  
 wiþ an instrument þat is competent þerfore / And be wel war þat  
 16 þou touche not siphac in no maner; and <sup>2</sup>whanne þou hast kutt þe  
 skyn aboue & mirac, þan opene þe place þat þou mowe se siphac.  
 & þan þou schalt peerse a litil hole in siphac & sette þerto a canel,  
 & drawe out þerof as miche watir as þou seest good for to saue his  
 20 vertu / & þan drawe out þe canel, & lete þe skyn þat is clepid  
 mirac goon ouer þe openyng of siphac, for þat wole suffre no þing  
 to go out / In þe morowe opene þe same skyn azen þat was kutt  
 first, & putte in þe canel, & kepe his vertu as miche as þou mizt.  
 24 & þus þou schalt do til þou haue drawe out þe watir; saue þou  
 schalt not drawe out al, for þou schalt consume it afterward with  
 propre medicyns / Herof þou schalt take kepe in þe tyme, þe whilis  
 þou drawist out þe water, as it is forseid: þe pacient schal ete good  
 28 metis, & drinke good drinkis & swete, þat mowe engendre in him  
 good spirits & good blood: as good broþis maad of hennys & of  
 capouns. & diȝt wiþ swete þingis, for eueri avoidinge laskiþ miche  
 þe spiritis; & whanne þe spiritis falliþ, þan a mannes vertues  
 32 failen /

The place of  
 the incision  
 depends on  
 which organ  
 —the liver,  
 spleen, sto-  
 mach, or  
 uterus—is  
 affected.

Let the  
 patient be  
 held by a  
 strong man;

cut the skin,  
 called *Mirac*;

[2 lf. 203, bk.]  
 pierce the  
 siphac,  
 and draw out  
 the water by  
 a cannula at  
 repeated sit-  
 tings.

Strengthen  
 the patient  
 during this  
 treatment  
 with good  
 food.

<sup>4</sup>Of ficus, & cancre, & vlcer in mannes<sup>5</sup> 3erde / [4 ff. 204]

**F**leus is a maner wexynge þat' arisiþ vpon a mannes 3erde tofore. ¶ xj<sup>o</sup>.c.c. Fleus is a  
& sumtyme it' wole be neische, whanne it' is engendrid of growth on a  
36 fleume / & whanne it' is engendrid of malancolie, it' wole be hard ; man's yard ;  
it is either  
soft or hard.

<sup>1</sup> *breed tostid*, Lat. panem tostum. *Prompt. Parr.*

<sup>3</sup> *canal*, Lat. *cannula*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. *canal* 1.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *manner*.

and may become a cancer.  
Ulcers arise either from hot pustules

or from intercourse with diseased women.

The flics must be removed by a thread or with cutting,

with mollificatives;

[\* lf. 204, bk.] the surest way is the hot iron.

A cancer must be removed with all its roots.

**Nota.**  
If there are ulcers in the fore-skin, remove the growth.

Rj  
be gren  
water

[\* lf. 205]

& if it rotie, it wole turne into a cancre. ¶ A cancre comeþ in a mannes 3erde, rizt as in opere lymes of a man, & vlcera comeþ of hote pustulis þat comeþ peron, & aftirward þei brekeþ it.<sup>1</sup> Ouþer þei comeþ of scharpe humouris, þat makip vlcera in þe same place; 4 ouþir it mai come of a womman þat a man, þat hadde þe same passioun,<sup>2</sup> hadde leie by hir tofore<sup>3</sup> /

þis is þe cure of flics þat comith of fleume: þou schalt binde him wiþ a preed, ouþer kutte him al awei; & þan þou schalt soude 8 it as it is aforseid in opere placis / If it come of malancolie, it mai be curid or þat it rotie, wiþ tempere mollificatiuis, as it is forseid in þe cure of sclirosis in þe general chapitre of enpostyms: þat whanne he is maad neische, þan þou schalt take him awei wiþ 12 alle his rootis / saue it is more sure take awei it wiþ <sup>4</sup>an hoot iren, & þan leie þervpon butter, & 3itt þou muste touche him wiþ an hoot iren azen; & þan leie buttir þervpon. & þus þou schalt do oftetyme litil & litil til it be al wastid awei / If it be a cancre, it 16 wole not be curid but if it be kutt awei wiþ alle his rotis. And þer is no wei so sure to take him awei as fier / Alle þe rotis of him musten be brent awei, & þan leie þervpon a mundificatif of apium, & aftir þis þou muste leie þerto drijnge þingis / & in þis place þou schalt not forȝete to leie a defensif vpon þe place þat is hool, for þis defensif schal defende þe place þat is hool fro swellynge. ¶ Vlcea þat comeþ in a mannes 3erde: as whanne þe skyn þat is tofore in a mannes 3erde bicomith greet, & þis mai not be curid 24 but if þat greetnes be doon awei. & þis medicyn is good þerfore / Take whit wijn, & of verte grece .3. j., auripigment .3. ij; grinde þes .ij. sotilli, & leie hem in þe whit wijn, & meue hem ofte, & kepe hem for þin vss. & þe more cold<sup>5</sup> þat þis medicyn is, þe better it 28 wole be. & þan þou schalt wete a lynnyn cloop in þis medicyn, <sup>6</sup>& leie vpon þe 3erde / For þis þing<sup>7</sup> wole soude woundis & defende þat

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: que postea crepantur.

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts þat.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: Ulcera veniunt . . . ex commixtione cum feda muliere, que cum egro talem habente morbum de novo coierat. *Hæser*, III, p. 230, gives a list of references, showing the early knowledge of venereal diseases in the mediæval ages. The earliest quotation is from Richardus Anglicus, *Micrologus* MS., xiith cent.: "Ulcerantur utraque, virga scilicet et testiculi, tempore menstruorum, ex coitu ex salsis humoribus et acutis et incensis, quod satis ex colore cutis et pustularum vel saniei, et ex pruritu et punctura et ardore perpenditur." Richardus gives the same preventative, which is mentioned by Lanfranc: "Ablutio cum aqua frigida et continua abstersio — et maxime si post ablutioem cum frigida aqua fiat oratio loci abluti cum aceto."

<sup>5</sup> MS. cold. Lat.: quanto plus antiquatur tanto melius.



per mai wexe no cancre / If it so be þat a mannes ȝerde be skynned, In case of  
& be noon oþer passioun þeron saue þat, þan þou schalt leie þer- a simple  
vpon vnguentum album, ouþer leie þervpon a linnen cloof wet in excoriation,  
4 watir of rosis. Also poudre maad of cucurbita & aloes is good apply an  
þerfore / If a man wole saue þis lyme algate fro corrupcioun, ointment or  
whanne he haþ leien bi a womman, & he haue ony suspeciou of compresses.  
vncleennes, þan he schal waische his ȝerde wiþ coold water medlid  
8 with vinegre /

## Of Emeroidis &amp; fistule in þe ers /

- E**Moroides ben veines þat endiþ in a mannes ers & ben .v.<sup>1</sup> ¶ xijo. co.  
þese veines suntyme openeþ & suntyme þei ben enpostymed. There are five  
12 Whanne þe blood þat is in þe same veines falliþ adoun & mai not hæmor-  
out, þan it engendriþ apostym. & if þe blood is gret & fleumatik, rhoidal veins,  
þan it wole engendre ficus, & if þat blood be greet & colerik, þan they are  
it wole engendre moralem.<sup>2</sup> And if þe blood be greet & malan- sometimes they  
16 colius, þan it wole engen[dre] condilomata / Sumtyme þer comeþ form tu-  
þerto <sup>3</sup>so manie diuers humouris, & makिþ diuers enpostyms in þe [3 lf. 205, bk.]  
same maner as it falliþ in oþere lymes, & ofte tyme of þis enpostym  
comeþ a festre, but if it be þe bettir holpe; þe blood þat comeþ to  
20 a mannes ers bi veynes þat ben clepid emoroides is grettere blood The blood in  
þan ony blood of his bodi / & if it so be þat a man haue þe flux these veins is  
of blood of þe emoroidis, þou schalt not stoppe it, but it blede so the thickest  
myche þat it make þe pacient feble, saue þou schalt kepe him wiþ in the body.  
24 good regimen, & he schal vse no metis ne drinkis þat engendrith Nota  
scharp blood & greet // For bi þe flux of blood a mannes bodi mai Hæmor-  
be kept from malancolious blood, & it wole kepe a man fro lepre & rhoidal flux  
fro mania, & fro al sijknes þat comeþ of malancolie / Also if a shall not be  
28 man is woned to haue hem & þei be stoppid, þan þou muste ȝeue stopped,  
him medicyns for to bringe hem out / And if it so be þat a man as it keeps a  
haue so greet flux of hem þat his lyuere be enfeblid þerwiþ, þan man from  
he myȝte falle in a dropesi þer þoruȝ, for to miche flux of blood leprosy mania  
32 mai be cause of a dropesie / þerfore if þou <sup>4</sup>seest þat þe flux be to and other  
greet, þan þou schalt constreine blood wiþ medicyns þat ben con- diseases.  
strictif, & þou schalt fynde medicyns þerfore in þe ende of þis  
chapitre / Wexingis þat ben clepid emoroidis, summe þei falliþ Emeroides

<sup>1</sup> *De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII, cap. 54. Add. 27,944, fol. 95 b.: "*Emorydis ben fyve veynes þat streccheþ oute at þe ers, of þe whiche veynes comeþ diuers passiouns and euelis, as bolwyng & snellinge, witholdinge and flux.*"

<sup>2</sup> *moralis*, a mulberry form of tumour.

(piles) are  
internal or  
external.

**ficus**  
can be tied  
away.

**Moralis**  
consists of  
many small  
swellings,  
like a mul-  
berry.  
[<sup>3</sup> If. 206, bk.]  
Bleed from  
the Basilica  
and the  
Saphena,

relieve the  
pains with a  
medicine,

R̄y

apply an  
ointment,  
or tent.

R̄y  
An ointment  
to ripen an  
apostema.

[<sup>6</sup> If. 207]

R̄y

wipoute þe hole of a mannes ers, & summe wipinne / Also summe  
wexiþ in þe for side of þe ers, & summe in þe hyndir side. Sum-  
tyme it wexiþ in þe forside toward þe rote of þe ballokis, & þan þei  
makip greet akinge / for sumtyme þei letten þat a man mai not<sup>4</sup> 4  
make vrine. If it be **ficus**, þat þou miȝt knowe, for it wole be  
wipoute hete<sup>1</sup> & neische, & þe cure herof is but liȝt. þou schalt  
take a strong<sup>2</sup> þreed & knitte þere aboute, & euery dai þou schalt  
streine it more & more, til he falle awei, & þan wiþ drying<sup>3</sup> medi- 8  
cyns þou schalt drie it vp. ¶ **Moralis** makip greet akinge & haþ  
manie smalle swellingis as it were mora celsi, & þe colour þerof wole  
be reed & sumdel<sup>2</sup> purpur, & but þis haue help for to acese þe  
akinge, it wole engendre an enpostym. þe cure herof is to lete him 12  
blood in þe veyne þat is clepid <sup>3</sup>basilica & sophena al in oon dai,<sup>4</sup>  
& in þe same side þat þe passioun drawiþ mooste þerto. If he is  
wont to haue þe same passioun, þan make him haue þe same flux  
of blood. & if he is not wont to haue it, þan þou schalt zeue 16  
him no medicyns for to make him haue þat flux, & þan þou schalt  
acese þe akyngē wiþ þis medicyn, & is good for thenasmon<sup>5</sup> & for  
alle þe passiouns of þe ers / R̄y, thuris, mirre, licij, croci, ana partem  
.j, opij partes duas, grinde hem & medle hem with zelke of an eij 20  
& wiþ þe iuys of psillij, & ole of roses, & make þerof an oyme-  
ment / & if þe akyngē be wipinne in his ers, þanne anointe a tent  
& putte into his ers, & if it be wipoutforþ, þan leie vpon lynnē  
cloof & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also a medicyn of Haly þe 24  
abbot / R̄y, ceruse .3. v., litarge .3. iij., iusquiami albi .3. ij., mas-  
ticis, grynde hem & tempere hem wiþ þe zelke of an ey & oile of  
violet & make herof an oynement. & þis oynement is good  
whanne þe akinge is wiþ an enpostym, for þis wole resolue & make 28  
it maturatif, & doiþ away þe <sup>6</sup>akinge / R̄y, foliorum malue, florum  
camomille, Melliloti<sup>7</sup> ana .℥. j., fenigreci, seminis lini ana .3. iij.,  
lenticularum excorticarum .3. x., seþe alle þes in water til þei  
resolue & þe water consume awei, & þan putte hem in a mortar & 32  
grinde hem wel, & þan do þerto .ij. zelkis of eiren & oile of violet,

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : sine colore. The translator read "calore."

<sup>2</sup> *sumdel*, altered in a different coloured ink from *sumdei*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. : cura est flebotomia basilice lateris eiusdem in uno die, in alio de saphena eiusdem lateris.


<sup>5</sup> Vigo, Traheron Interpret. : "Tenesmos is whan a man hath the greates pro- uocation to the seege, but can do nothyng. It commeth of tissein, whych signifieth to stretche."

<sup>7</sup> Add. 15236, fol. 5: "*Mellilotum. Corona regia. idem. G. mellilote. A. hunisoke vel redelaure.*"



& make herof an oynement. ¶ If it so be *pat* in his place of *pe* When an aposterna begins to sup-  
 forseid *pingis* come an enpostym & gadere to quittance, *pou schalt* purate, open  
 not abide til it breke him-silf, for *pan* it wole make a greet hole it quickly.

4 ynward toward *pe guttis*. *perfore* *pou schalt* opene it hastili, or it  
 wexe to miche ynward / If *pe* place of *pe* emeroide make no greet **Nota**  
 akyngne ne noon enpostym, & if *pou wolt* drie hem & waste hem, To dry hæ-  
*pan* *pou mizt* worche in .ij. maners, do *perto* mel anacardi & morrhoids,  
 8 vnguentum ruptorium,<sup>1</sup> or touche hem wip an hoot iren *pat* is use a corro-  
 bettere / If he be a delicat man or a feble, drie hem with fume sive oint-  
 gaciouns maad of pulpa colocintida & seed of mirtillorum, & *pe* niment, the hot  
 leeuës & *pe* ryndis of capparis, mirra, nux cipressi, & gallis, & make iron,  
 12 him a decocoun of *pese pingis* in water <sup>2&3</sup> lete him sitte *peron*, and for a deli-  
 for alle *pese pingis* maketh *pe* emeroidis blak & makip hem falle cate patient a  
 away / I nolde neuere leie in *pat* place corosif medicyn / fumigation.

If *per* be greetnes of veynes ful of blood wipout ony enpostym,  **If the veins**  
 16 & *pe patient* haue gret akyngne *perwip*, & principaly if he was wont are replete,  
 to haue *pe flux* of emeroidis wip blood, & he hadde it not longe provoke flux  
 tyme tofore, *pan* *pou schalt* zeue him medicyns to haue *pe flux* of of blood.  
 blood, & *pat* *pou schalt* do in his maner anoon, wip *pe iuys* of a  
 20 strong oynoun, or wip ius of lekis, ouper if *pou makist* supposi-  
 torijs of hem & frotist *perwip* *pe* place, & his wole opene *pe* veynys  
 of *pe* emeroidis / Also *pe* rotis of maluis wet in *pe* gall of a bole /  
 Also take hony .ij. partis, & vert de grece oon part, & medle hem  
 24 togidere, & herwip anointe a suppositorie maad of lynnyn cloof &  
 putte it yn / If it so be *pat* *pe patient* blede to miche & he bicompe **If the patient**  
 feble *perwip*, *pan* helpe him with trociscus de carabe<sup>4</sup> *pat* ben gode loses too  
 for to restreine flux of blood of emeroides. & it is good for to much blood,  
 28 restreyne menstrues. R̄, carabe, gummi nucis, balaustie, lacte, succi stop the flux.  
 barbe yrcine<sup>5</sup> ana .3. v., thuris .3. ij., opij .3. iij., make herof **R̄**  
 gobettis wip muscillagine psillij, & make euery dai a gobet *pe* **[¶ If. 208]**  
 weizte of .3. ij., & *pou schalt* zeue oon *perof* wip sirupo stiptico,  
 32 & *pou schalt* make fumigaciouns of drynge *pingis*: as gallis, **Use a fumi-**  
 balaustie, psidiorum & opere mo *pat* ben forseid / R̄, nuces cipressi, **gation.**  
**R**

<sup>1</sup> vnguentum ruptorium. Vigo Interpret.: "Ruptorie: that, that hath strengthe to breake."

<sup>3</sup> At the bottom of the page, in later hand: *contra emeroides vell buho vell tenassmoun: R̄ mer 3 ij, olibani. ameos ana 3 j, oppij 3 lb, gosium gres et [?], fiat decoctio cum mell vell cum pestello ellido et nido, fformetur suppositorum.*

<sup>4</sup> Matth. Sylv.: "Caraba i. Karabe. Electrum." Fr. carabé Arab. Kahrabâ Devic Dict. Amber.

<sup>5</sup> Alphita, p. 20: "Barba yrsina . . . a buckestonge."

A wash.

cupularum glandulum, corticas granatorum, kutte hem a litil & sepe hem in good wijn. & wip pis wijn waische þe place an euen & a morowe / Also a fumigacioun maad of tapsi barbasti<sup>1</sup> is good þerfore /

4

The great bowel is often pierced by an apostema and a fistula is formed.

It falliþ ofte tyme þat after þe flux of þe emeroidis, ouþer if enpostym be to longe maturatif in þat same place vnopened, þan it falliþ ofte tyme þat þe grete bowel<sup>2</sup> is peersid. & sumtyme it makip a greet hole<sup>3</sup> in þe same place, & þoruþ þat hole comeþ out 8 wijnd & sumtyme egestioun,<sup>4</sup> & pis hole is cleped a festre of þe ers.<sup>5</sup> Of þis cure manye men ben hardi & knowen not þe perels þerof, & makip þe same medicyns in þis place for a festre as þei doon in opere placis / But þou schalt take good hede of þis maner 12 enfestre; þou schalt asaie if þe hole of þe festre go to hiþe þat it touche þe place of þe lacertis of þe ers, þan þe festre is incurable, & þan a man schal not holde his egestioun, þat it nyle go out alwei / Also þou muste loke wher þere go out miche quittance ouþir 16 litil of þe hole of þe festre, or wheþir þe quittance þerof be whit or reed / Also þou muste take kepe wher he haue greet penaunce þerof or no / And aftir alle þese diuers þingis, þou muste diuerseli worche. For as it is aforseid, first þou muste acese þe akyng & þe swell- 20 ynge, þan þou schalt asaie wher þe festre go to þe lacertis; þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner / Putte þi fyngir as fer as it wole go, into his ers, & þan putte a pliaunt tent in þe feestre. & loke in what place þe tent mette wip þi fyngir, & þan say þat þe patient streyne 24 his ers, & þan þou miȝt wite wheþer þe festre go aboue þe braun or no. If þe festre go aboue þe braun, þan þe patient schal lete go out wijnd & egestioun at þe hole of þe festre. 7 þan þou schalt in no maner touche þe festre wip no medicyn corosif ne wip noon 28 hoot iren; but þou schalt teche him for to vse a waisching wip water & hony & mirre, & wip sum mundificatif, and in þis maner he schal kepe him þat þe malice of þe festre waxe nomore. ¶ O mi briþeren, manye lewid lechis haue I seen þat coude on ruptorie, 32 & þei supposide þerbi for to cure cancris & festris, & al maner crepa-

and great pain.

Try with a probe and the finger, how far the fistula reaches.

If the fistula passes above the brawn,

[7 lf. 209]

apply no corrosive, but only a wash.

Many unlearned surgeons,

<sup>1</sup> *Alphita*, p. 182: "Tapsus barbatus—g<sup>e</sup>. molaïne, an. catesteyl, uel feldwrt."

<sup>2</sup> *intestinum*, inserted in later hand.

<sup>3</sup> *callid ffestula testium*, inserted in later hand.

<sup>4</sup> "*Egestion*, a casting forth, avoiding: In the Art of Physick, the discharging of Meat digested through the Pylorus, or lower Mouth of the Stomach, into the rest of the Entrails." Phillips.

<sup>5</sup> *ffestula*, inserted in later hand.



- turis, & þei supposiþ bi þis maner ruptorie<sup>1</sup> for to surmounte *Galien* knowing only  
 in worchinge / And men þat<sup>t</sup> han þis opinioun, in þe mo errouris one corrosive  
 þat<sup>t</sup> þei falliþ, þe more wrooþ þei wolen be, & þe more þei wollþ vse *Galien*. apply it in  
 every case.
- 4 her ruptorijs / And þerfore þis mai be ensaumple to þee : if<sup>t</sup> a man They do like  
 haue no drinke but<sup>t</sup> eyssel, and haþ indignacioun for to fecche ony a man who  
 oper but<sup>t</sup> halt him þerto, & zeueþ þerof<sup>t</sup> to men þat<sup>t</sup> ben apirst. & has no other  
 if<sup>t</sup> þe drinke agreue hem, & þei speke ony ping<sup>t</sup> þerof<sup>t</sup>, he wole be drink but  
 and gives it  
 to thirsty  
 people;
- 8 wrooþ þerfore, & he nyle noon oper drinke fecche, but algate zeueþ  
 hem of<sup>t</sup> þe same til her spirituals bicomme drie / And if<sup>t</sup> þe same <sup>2</sup>man  
 hadde wijn ynow<sup>3</sup> & knew wel þe vertu þerof<sup>t</sup>, he wolde zeue no  
 man eyssel for to drinke nomore / þerfore þou schalt vse medicyns
- 12 þat<sup>t</sup> ben appreued, & do awei al medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben false, & holde  
 þee apaid of<sup>t</sup> þe medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben aforseid / <sup>3</sup>

Of þe cancre<sup>4</sup> and þe mormole /

- 16 **C**Ancrene ben rounde vlcis þat<sup>t</sup> falliþ in a mannes leggis, & ¶ xiije. co /  
 malum mortuum also, & þei falliþ bope in oon place, þerfore I  
 wole make difference þerof<sup>t</sup> / ¶ Cancrene ben round vlcers & ben Gangrene is a  
 foule & cometh of dedinge of<sup>t</sup> þe skyn,<sup>5</sup> for þe natural spiritus comen mortification  
 of the skin.
- 20 not þerto, & þerfore þe place is corrupt / & if<sup>t</sup> þe corrupcioun go If the bone is  
 anoon to þe boon, þan it<sup>t</sup> schal not be clepid cancrenum, but<sup>t</sup> it affected it is  
 schal be clepid aschachiles.<sup>6</sup> & if<sup>t</sup> þe corrupcioun occupie al þe called  
 aschachiles  
 if the whole  
 limb is  
 affected  
 herpes es-  
 thionemus.
- 24 vlcers, & þe fleisch þerof<sup>t</sup> wole be foule & of ledi colour, & þe lippis The symp-  
 þerof<sup>t</sup> wolen be gret, & þe fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> is in þe middil <sup>7</sup>of vlcers wole toms of Gan-  
 be corrupt. & it<sup>t</sup> be miche lijk to a cancre þat<sup>t</sup> is vlcenatus, but<sup>t</sup> grene are  
 black vlcers  
 [7 lf. 210]  
 similar to an  
 ulcerated  
 cancer.
- þis is þe difference þerof<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> a cancre cometh of corrupcioun of

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ruptorie*.

<sup>3</sup> The translator omits a short passage about "Fissure of the Anus."

<sup>4</sup> *cancre*, a mistake. Lat. *De cancrenis*. Med. Lat. *cancrenum*, *cancrena*, is derived from Lat. *canceroma*, *cancroma*, *canchrema*, and has very early been confounded with Lat. *gangræna*, γάγγραινα. Vigo. Interpret. "Cancrena. Gangrena is when some parte of the body thorow great inflammation dieth, but is not yet perfittly dead; when it is perfectly dead, and wythout felyng: it is called sphacelos in greke, whyche they have turned to ascachillos, sideratio in latine. Some saye, that Gangrena is whan a membre is apte to putrefye. Ascachillos, when it is putrified, but hath not all partes of putrefaction. Esthiomenas, when a membre hath al degrees of putrefaction."

<sup>5</sup> of dedinge of þe skyn. Lat.: *de cutis mortificatione*.

<sup>6</sup> *aschachiles*, the Arab. corruption of σφάκελος. Fr. *sphacile*.

It is caused  
by general  
debility.

malancolie, & pis comeþ of lesynge of þe spiritis of lijf / Also þe lippis of þe cancre ben more reuersid and more grene, & a cancre fretiþ more / And þerfore þis passioun is clepid of *summen* a deed cancre /

4

Treatment of  
Gangrene:  
Purge the  
body from  
melancholic  
matter,

þe cure of þis passioun is in þis maner / first þou schalt auoide his bodi of malancolie, & þouȝ it be not his principal cause as it is of a cancre / zitt þe mater þat falliþ to þe place is greet / þerfore it is good for to clense his blood of malancolie; for it is good þing in 8 vlcera þat ben olde, & principali whanne þei ben in parties bineþerforþ / & whanne he is clensid, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat

bleed from a  
vein between  
the last two  
toes,  
use daffodil-  
powder.

is bitwixe þe leeste too of his foot & þe too next þerto, in þe same leg þat þe passioun is on. & vpon þe place þou schalt caste pouder 12 of affodillorum, ouþer remeue awei al þe deed fleisch / If þou wolt worche more surely & bettere, make him a cauterie, þat lit be

[1 lf. 210, bk.]

The best  
method is,  
to cauterize  
the place with  
the hot iron.

myche & long<sup>a</sup> as þe place is þat [is] corrupt, & wiþ an hoot iren make a cros vpon þe middil of þe passioun as depe as þe deed fleisch 16

Then apply a  
plaster,

is. & þan þou schalt leie þeron a plastre maad of whete mele & iuys of ache, & þan cure it vp as þou doist ouþer vlcera, as it is forseid / And in þis caas þou schalt not forȝete in no maner for to leie aboute þe place a defensif of bole & terra sigillata; for þat 20 wole suffre no wickide mater to renne to þe place, & it defendiþ þe hool place fro corrupcioun. ¶ *Malum mortuum* is a maner scabbe, & comeþ of grete humouris brent, & falliþ to þe place. & sum part þerof leueþ in a mannys flank, & engendriþ glandulas & 24

**Malum  
mortuum**  
is a kind of  
scab,

and is treated  
with purging,

swelliþ / þe cure herof is to auoide his bodi of greet humouris, þat ben brent; & lete him blood in basilica, in þe same side; & lete him blood in þe foot, as it is forseid / & þou muste dissolue glandulus, as it is forseid in þe chapitre of glandulus & scrophulis; 28

and an oint-  
ment.

[2 lf. 211]

& þan þou muste anointe þe place wiþ drijnge medicyns. þou schalt anointe al þe place with psilatro,<sup>3</sup> til al þe heeris falle awei wipouten any violence / Take þe grete titimalle & þe smale, & boile hem in vinegre & in oile, & do þerto a litil sope, & make þerof þe 32 maner of an oynement; & wiþ þis oynement þou schalt anointe þe place harde aȝen þe fier / Rȝ, olei aceti ana. 3 .ij., saponis mollis & saponis duri ana. 3 j.; medle hem togidere, & do þerto iuys mali terre ouþer brionie .3 .ij.; boile hem alle togidere, & anointe 36

Rȝ  
An ointment  
of tithymal.

Rȝ  
An ointment  
of soap.

þe place þerwiþ, & þou schalt fynde oynementis in þe antidotarie þat ben gode in þis caas //

<sup>3</sup> *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 35: "Psilotrum, depilatorium idem."



Of varices, *pat ben veynes*, and *elephancia*.<sup>1</sup>

- U**Arices ben clepid veynes, *pat ben grete*, & grene, & purpur, & ¶ xliij. c. /  
 sittip aboute a mannes leggis. and *pei comen of greet* Varices are enlarged  
 4 malancolious<sup>2</sup> blood, *pat fallip adoun*. & also it comeþ of greet fleume; & it veins in the  
 metis & of greet traueile, or it may come of greet fleume; & it leg.  
 wole make a mannes feet & his leggis al grete, & sumtyme his feet  
 also<sup>3</sup> // þe cure of varicium is in þis maner: þou schalt purge him Elephantia attacks the  
 8 wiþ gotis whey & wiþ epithimo, for þis purgacioun is propre in þis feet.  
 caas, or purge him wiþ pelottis of epithimi. & lete him blood in [¶ 1f. 211, bk.]  
 þe veyne *pat* is clepid basilica, of þe arme in þe same side, & also The general  
 in his foot. & he schal absteine him fro metis *pat engendriþ* treatment  
 12 malancolie / þis passioun þow myzt cure in þese maners<sup>5</sup> / þis is þe consists in  
 first maner: loke in his hamme, vnder his knee. þere þou schalt purging,  
 se a greet veine; & alle þe grete veynes, *pat ben bineþe* in his leg; and in bleed-  
 comeþ out þerof. þan þou schalt take vp þe same veyne wiþ a ing from the  
 16 nedele. & loke *pat* þou peerse not þe veyne, & knytte hir wiþ a Basilic vein.  
 þreed. & þe brede of þi fyngir aboute *pat* place, putte yn þi nedele Local treat-  
 azen, vndir þe veyne as þou hast do heretofore, & knitte in þe same ments:  
 maner wiþ a þreed; & þan þou schalt kutte þe skyn ouer þe veyne 1. Apply a  
 20 endelongis; & þan take vp þe veyne & kutte hir bitwixe þe .ij. double liga-  
 bindingis, & þan þe ende of þe veyne *pat* is aboute schal be brent ture on the  
 wiþ an hoot iren, & þe neþir side of þe veyne schalt be vnknit. popliteal  
 & presse out þe blood bineþerof of þe veyne, as myche as þou vein,  
 24 myzt. & þanne þe remenaunt þou schalt drawe wiþ medicyns *pat* cut the vein  
 ben consumynge. & þe fleisch þere þou madist þi wounde, þou between the  
 schalt touche wiþ an hoot iren also; & þan þou schalt leie to þe two ligatures,  
 place mundificatiuis, & þan soude as it is aforseid.<sup>7</sup> ¶ Also anoper [¶ 1f. 212]  
 28 maner cure: lete him blood ouli in þe same veyne, & take out of and press the  
 þe blood as miche as þou myzt, & purge him ofte, & make him blood out  
from the  
lower part of  
the vein:  
after removal  
of the liga-  
ture.  
2. Use blood-  
letting and  
purging.



<sup>1</sup> Lanfranc follows the description given by *Ariceenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 15, ed. Ven. 1527. Avicenna's list of the occupations that are predisposing to this illness reminds us of the fact that he was a courtier himself. *Ibid.*: "Et plurimum quidem accidunt cursoribus, & viatoribus, & onera portantibus & coram regibus astantibus."

<sup>2</sup> MS. *humour*, deleted.

<sup>3</sup> Incorrect translation. Lat.: "Elephantia dicitur quedam carnis augmentatio, in qua crus ultra mensuram debitam augmentatur cum pede toto, et fit ex grosso fleumate vel ex grossa melancolia non corrupta."

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: *Locus autem tribus curatur modis.*

<sup>7</sup> This mode of operation is the same as has been described by *Paulus Aegineta*, Lib. VI, 82, ed. Fr. Adams 1844, 2nd vol., p. 406, and by *Ariceenna* l. c., Cap. 18.

3. Do not try a perfect cure, but purge and bleed several times a year.

[1 If. 212, bk.]

Elephancia can be cured at the beginning of the disease.

Use purging, blood-letting,

keep the legs bandaged before an exertion, use an ointment.

enplastris aboute his leggis wip drijnge pingis, & diete him as it is aforseid. ¶ þe .iiij. maner is þis: þou schalt go to no perfit cure þerof, but þou schalt lete þat blood falle adoun, & þan a fewe tymes in þe zeer þou schalt purge him; & þou schalt laske his greet 4 blood wip blood-letyngis, þat ben forseid, & leie enplastris vpon þe place þat ben drijnge. & þus þou schalt do til al þe swellynge be goon away / & þis laste medicyn is þe beste for hem þat haue had þis passioun longe, & for hem þat ben olde / For if þou kutte a 8 veyne in hem, 1 þan þer wole engendre manie sijknnessis aboue, & make þe pacient deed þe rapere / For I siz men þat her veynes weren so kutt þat weren algate sijk aftirward, & wipinne a litil time aftir þat þei diede. ¶ Elephancia<sup>2</sup> is incurable whanne it is confermed; 12 but bfore þat it is confermed, it mai be curid for to purge þe humouris þat ben in þe cause wip blood-leting, þat ben aforseid. & he schal absteine him fro grete metis, þat engendriþ greet humouris; & þan he schal not go ne ride, but if his leg & his foot be bounden 16 wip a boond faste, & speciali in þe ioynct / But first þou schalt anoynte his leggis wip epithimo maad of acacia, mirra, aloe, ipoquistidos,<sup>3</sup> & alym with vinegre. & whanne þe swellynge bigynneþ to goon awei, þan make him a stuwe, & lete his leggis be þerinne 20 longe; & be it maad of askis of vines & caul-seed, sticados arabici, lupinorum, mirre, stercus caprini, fenigreci. Also anointe him, & binde him, as it is forseid. & in þis maner I haue curid men, þat ne weren not confermed þeron //

24

### Of wertis in handis and in feet /

[4 If. 213] ¶ xlv. c° /

<sup>4</sup> Porri<sup>5</sup> ben engendrid of fleume þat is greet, & ben white; veruce<sup>6</sup> comeþ of malancolie, & ben blake, & han mo rotis / Scissure<sup>7</sup> comeþ of malancolie brent, & makip as it were kuttyngis; 28

<sup>2</sup> The disease which Lanfranc describes is the Elephantiasis Arabum, commonly known as Barbadoes leg, quite different from the Elephantiasis of the Greeks, a general term for severe leprosy.

<sup>3</sup> *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 25: "Ipoquistidos est succus fungi qui nascitur ad pedem rosæ caninæ." ὑποκιστίς, ἰδος, ἡ, a parasitic plant which grows on the roots of the κιστός, *Cytinus hypocistis*. (= Holly Rose, *Gerard*, p. 1281.)

<sup>5</sup> "Porrus, a Leak, also a kind of Wart." Phillips.

<sup>6</sup> "Verruca, (Lat.) a Wart, a little hard brawny Swelling, which breaks out of the Skin, and breeds in any part of the Body." *Ibid.*

<sup>7</sup> "Scissure, a Cut or Cleft, a Rent or Chap." *Ibid.*



- & if þei comeþ of cooldnes, þan þei schulen be clepid muge.<sup>1</sup> ¶ þe  
 cure of *porrora* is for to cense his bodi wip trocisco de turbit, &  
 þan frote þe place wip medicyns þat ben consumptif; & frote hem  
 4 wip poudre maad of a gotis toord, & tempere wip þe iuys of mirti  
 & wip þe ryndis of capparis / Veruce schulen be curid wip a  
 purgacioun maad of epithimi & gotis whey, & wip summe opere  
 medicyn þat is propri for malancolie, & þan þou schalt vse stronge  
 8 oynementis / as *vnguentum ruptorium*, ouþer mel anacardi or sum  
 opir corrosif, ouþer in þis maner is better / garse it al aboutforþ &  
 binde it wip a stronge þreed, & streine wel þe þreed & drawe him  
 awei wip þe þreed, & þanne touche þe rotis of him wip a cauterie  
 12 punctual. ¶ Scissure. It is nede in þis passioun for to purge his  
 bodi of humouris þat ben brent, & make <sup>2</sup>him a baþ of swete  
 water. & þan þou schalt waische his lymes wip a decoccioun of  
 bismalue in watir, & a litil oile þerwip; & lete him vse metis þat  
 16 makip moist & engendrid good blood, & þan anoynte him wip þis  
 oynement / *R̄*, *olium rosarum*, *cere citrine*, *adipis anatis colatus*,  
*Isopi humide*,<sup>3</sup> *muscellagine seminis citoniorum*, *amilum*, *draganti*,  
*ana*, make herof an oynement / ¶ Muge schulen be curid wip oilis  
 20 & oynementis / first þou schalt aswage þe akinge wip oile, & þan  
 leie þerto a mundificatif þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & þan  
 soude it wip mirre / If þou seest it at þe first bigynnyng, þan  
 make an enplastre of armoniaco, for þat wole resolute þe enpostym.  
 24 & þou schalt make þat he vse [not]<sup>4</sup> streit schoon, & he schal  
 anoynte his feet, & principali hise heelis wip þis oynement / *R̄*,  
*olium de lilie* ̄.vj., *cere* ̄.ij., *resine* ̄.ij., *armoniaci* ̄.j., *farine*  
*fenigreci* ̄.ij., *thuris*, *masticis*, *ana* ̄.ij., & make herof an  
 28 oynement /<sup>5</sup>

Treatment of  
*porrora*.  
 Apply a caustic  
 medicine.

veruce.  
 Use purging  
 and a strong  
 ointment,

or tie the  
 growth.

Soissure.  
 Use purging,  
 [a lf. 213, bk.]  
 a bath,  
 a wash,

an ointment.

R̄

Muge.

Relieve the  
 pain;  
 apply a mun-  
 dificative,

a plaster,

and an oint-  
 ment.

R̄

<sup>1</sup> *Matth. Syluat.*: "Perniones vel rasulæ, sunt excoiaciones quæ fiunt in nimio frigore in calcaneis, quæ *Mugæ* vulgariter dicuntur," probably allied to *mucus*, *ungere*, *muſa*.

<sup>3</sup> *isopus humida*. Sloane 2463, fol. 159 bk.: "The fyfte, whiche is nother properly oynement nor enplastre, but atwize two, & is cleped ysopus humida. Take rolle that is bytwize the thyex and the iunes of schepe, as moche as þou wilt, and put as moche water therepon as may covere hit, and lete hit stonde so aday and anyzt, and þanne boile hit with a lente fyre, and lete hit rexe cold, and coile hit; and thanne boile hit eftesones in a tymed panne with a lyzt fyre, and thanne lete hit rexe cold, and coile hit: butt lke thou sterve hit evermore with a spatule of tre till þat it be thikke as oynement."

<sup>4</sup> not, wanting. Lat.: iube ne calciamenta portet stricta.

<sup>5</sup> Gulielm. de Saliceto, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I, Cap. 57. Sloane 277, fol. 19: "For cold in wynter þe leche may have two consideraciouns to þe heelynge

## Of blood-letyng //

¶ xvj

[1 fr. 213\*]

Blood-letting  
belongs to  
a surgeon's  
craft.

Nota.

Learned  
physicians  
leave it to  
unlearned  
men and  
women.

One ought  
to be both a  
physician and  
a surgeon.

Blood-letting  
is used to  
keep a man's  
health, and  
to remove  
sickness.

[\*1f. 213\*, bk.]

Bleed those  
who eat  
and drink  
much, and  
have little  
exercise.

Bleed in order  
to prevent a  
disease.

**B**lood-letyng<sup>1</sup> is a craft for to laske a mannes blood þat is in his  
veynes / <sup>1</sup> And þis þou schalt wel wite, þat it falliþ for oure  
craft, þouȝ we for pride take it to barbouris & to wommen; & 4  
blood-letyng falliþ principali for cirurgians / O lord, whi is it so  
greet difference bitwixe a cirurgian & a phisician, but for philoso-  
phoris bitoken þe craft into lewid mennes hondis / or as manie men  
haue dedignacioun for to worche wiþ her hondis / & ȝitt mani men 8  
wenep þat it is impossible þat oon man to kunne boþe þe craftis<sup>2</sup> /  
But þou schalt knowe wel þis, þat he is no good phisician þat can  
no þing in cirurgie / And also þe contrarie þerof: a man mai be no  
good cyrurgian, but if he knowe phisik. ¶ Blood-letyng is vsid 12  
bi cause for to kepe a mannes bodi hool, & to remeue awei sijknensis  
fro a mannes bodi / But þus manye þingis þou muste take kepe in  
blood-letyng: tyme, & hour, & eir, & disposicioun of þe sike man /  
& þou muste take kepe þat þou lete no man blood but if he mowe 16  
endure itt // ¶ First a man schal be lete blood for to kepe him-silf,<sup>3</sup>  
& principali hem þat etip good fleisch<sup>4</sup> & drinkiþ good wijn, & etip  
metis for to engendre myche blood, & traueiliþ but lilit, & princi-  
pali þe while a man is ȝong, & also in eelde if he be myche vsid 20  
þerto / Also þou schalt lete hem blood þat ben wont to haue  
akyng in her ioyntis, ouþer a feure þat is clepid sinocha<sup>5</sup> or þe  
squinacie, ouþer pleureses / Alle þese, tofore þe tyme þat þei ben  
woned to haue her passioun, þou schalt lete hem blood or her 24  
passioun come, þat it mowe go away þerwiþ: & þis maner is clepid  
preuisiuis. ¶ þe iij. maner: whanne a man haþ greet akyng in

*of swiche maner seknesses: oon of partie of defense þat it come not, &  
another of þe partie of remeyng of þe seknesse i-made. By þe reson of  
defence that it come not, leue þe patient wiþ all his witt streit schoynge, &  
haue he dowble schoos & large, & anoynte he every nyȝt þe heele with an  
oynement þus maad."*

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: "aut quum operari ut dicunt quidam cum manibus dedignantur,  
aut, quod magis credo, quum operationis modum quod apud scientiam est  
necessarium non nouerunt; et hæc abusio tantum valuit propter antiquam  
dissuetudinem, quod apud quosdam de vulgo credatur impossibile, quod unus  
hoc possit scire magisterium utriusque."

<sup>3</sup> Lat. pro sanitate conseruanda.

<sup>5</sup> Lanfranc, *Chirurgia Parua*, Cap. X, Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 25<sup>a</sup> (xvth  
cent.): "blood þerfore, ȝif it ouer haboundep vpon al þe body, & it is hett  
with hete enflammyng or brenmyng þe herte, & is corrupt, & neþeles it is  
not roten, þerof is maad a feure clepid synocha continua. And ȝif he  
is roten, þenne is maad þerof a feure clepid synochus continuus."



- his heed wipouten<sup>1</sup> a feure, or a squinantes plureses, periplumonia, apostema calida, & eueri sijknese þat comeþ of to miche blood. In alle þese causis þou schalt lete him blood; & þis maner is clepid
- 4 curantes.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Now I wole telle alle maners in what maner a man schal be leten blood / first, who schal lete þee blood / þe .ij, whanne it is necessarie for to be lete blood / þe .iiij, in whiche weynes a man schal be leten blood for diuers passiouns, & in what maner þe
- 8 weyne schal be kut. ¶ A man þat schal be letere blood schal be 3onge,<sup>3</sup> & he schal be no child, ne noon oold man, ne he schal not quake, & he schal haue a good scharp sight; & loke þat he kunne knowe weynes, & þat he kunne knowe hem from arterijs; & he schal haue
- 12 manie diuers tool<sup>4</sup> for to lete blood þerwip, & þei schulen be clene and cleer, & not rusti; & summe of his tool schulen be longe, & summe schorte, for to peerse aftir þat þe weyne is greet þerto / Also children schulen not be lete blood, but if it were greet nede, & he
- 16 were so replet of blood þat he schulde be achekid þerwip; þat þou mizt knowe bi þe streitnes of his breeþ & fulnes of his weynes, & bi reednes of his face. þan it is necessarie þat he be leten blood; but it is ful greet drede for to lete a child blood, þerfore I wyle
- 20 3eue no counseil þerto. & if it so be þat he be in perel of deef, þan lete him blood / Now þou art war of þis perel, do as þou seest þat it is to do; & þou schalt warne þe childis fadir & his modir of þe perels þat ben aforseid, & saue þee fro blame. ¶ Also olde men
- 24 schulen not be lete blood, & jitt summe olde men ben strengier of vertu þan summe 3onge men; & þan þou schalt take hede to þe rule in þis maner: þat þou schalt not lete hem blood whanne þei arisiþ out of her sijknese / ¶ Also wommen wip childe schulen not
- 28 be lete blood, & speciali not in þe .iiij. firste moneþis, ne in þe laste monþe / Also 3onge men þat ben white & pale, & haueþ fewe heeris in her browis, & haueþ smale weynes & priui, ne ben not couenable to be lete blood; ne men þat han manie humours & litil blood, for
- 32 blood þat is in hem is tresour. ¶ Ffrench men doon hem-silf miche harme in þis caas; whanne þei ben ful of coold humours & corrupt þei letiþ hem-silf blood, & þan þei seen her blood corrupt &

Bleed in those diseases which are caused by abundance of blood.

.1.  
.2.  
.3.

1. The operator must have  
[3 lf. 214]

the proper age, know the blood-vessels, and have good instruments.

2. Children ought not to be bled except in urgent cases;

it is always dangerous,

and the parents must be warned.

Do not bleed old men,  
[3 lf. 214, bk.]

nor pregnant women,

nor young men who are pale and have sparse hair and small veins.

Much harm is done in France by too much blood-letting.

<sup>1</sup> The Latin editions of Lanfranc read: "Tertio cum dolor fortis adest capitis siue febres fortes squinantes pleuresos," ed. Ven. 1498, fol. 201 bk., Ven. 1546, fol. 249, but Add. MS. 26,106 (xivth cent.), fol. 88, shows the correct reading, which corresponds with the translation: "Tercio cum dolor fortis adest capitis sine febre, cum fortes squinantes, pleureses."

<sup>2</sup> Lat. curatiuus.

<sup>4</sup> tool, a survival of the O.E. tōl, N.A. plur.

foul, & þan þei supposen þat þei han wel doon þat þei haue lete out þat blood, & þe barbour wole seie þat he mote hastili be lete blood aȝen / It were wel better to him þat he hadde kept his blood, & þat þe corrupt humours hadde be voidid awei in oþer maner / 4 ¶ Blood-letynge is not good for a man at þe firste bigynnyng of cataracta, ne noon ventuse is not good for him / but in causis as it is forseid, blood-letynge is good // And if a man etip miche fleisch & drinkip miche wijn, for þis wole engendre miche blood / And 8 þan but if a man lete him blood, þan þere wole engendre diuers sijknis þerof, & ofte tyme sodeyn deef / Also men þat haue þe goute of blood, he schal be lete blood tofore þe tyme þat he supposip to haue his passioun; for ofte tyme þis wole take away 12 his akyng. & in alle sijknissis þat comen principali of blood, it is good for hem to be lete blood / Also men þat haue synocham, blood-letynge is ful necessarie to hem, til þei swowne. & þis wole do awei þe feure, or it waastip so miche þe mater; & þan he muste 16 be holpen wiþ oþere medicyns, þat þou schalt fynde in bokis of phisik<sup>2</sup> / If he be not lete blood, þan þe blood þat is in him wole boile vpward to þe brest, & gadere togidere in the brest, þat þe pacient schal be ful nyȝ stoppid.<sup>3</sup> & sumtyme a veine wole breke 20 in þe piyse or in þe lungis, & þan þat veine mai not be streyned ne stoppid, & þan þe patient schal die þeron. ¶ In þis chapitre it is myn entencioun forto speke oonly of openynge of veines<sup>4</sup> þat ben in us,<sup>5</sup> & what vertu þer is þerinne. In boþe armis of a man þer 24 ben .iij. veines þat ben in us for to be lete blood þeron / þe .i. is clepid cephalica, & is þe hizeste veine of þe arme, & sitt next þe elbowe<sup>6</sup>; & þis veine mote be kut large, & not to depe / If þat veine be kut streit, þan ofte tyme it makip an enpostym / & also 28 þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no synewis / For þe same cause þou miȝt lete a man blood vpon þe hond, bitwixe his þombe & þe nexte fyngir þerto // Basilica sittip adoun aforzens þe elbowe, vnder þe arme, & þis veine sittip ful nyȝ þe gret arterie: & þerfore 32 a man mote be wel war þat he touche not þe arterie veyne. & for þe perel of þe arterie it is good for to lete him blood bitwixe þe litil fyngir & þe fynger next þerto. & þis blood-letynge is good for

**Nota**  
Do not bleed at the beginning of cataract.

[1. f. 215]  
Blood-letting shall be used, if a man eats and drinks too much, in case of gout—before the illness is quite developed—

in case of synocha,

else the blood may boil into the breast,

and a vein may break.

**Nota**

[4. f. 215, bk.]

The veins on which phlebotomy is practised are 1. *Cephalica*.

which is cut either near the elbow, or between the thumb and the first finger.

2. *Basilica*, is cut either in the fold of the arm,

or between the little finger and the ring finger.

<sup>2</sup> & þan he muste be holpen—bokis of phisik, inserted. Lat.: “aut omnino phlebotomia febrem tollit, aut adeo materiam minuit, quod in putridam de cetero non mutatur.”

<sup>3</sup> Lat. quod patiens suffocatur.

<sup>5</sup> Lat. quæ sunt in usu.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. prima cefalica que in duobus minuitur locis prope cubiti plicaturam aliquantulum supra.



- alle þe placis vndir þe brest, & for þe lyuere. ¶ Of þis veine þat is clepid Basilica, & of þe veine þat is c[l]epid Cephalica, comeþ a veine þat is clepid Mediana / And whanne a man is lete blood in  
 4 þis veyne, it is perel of ij. grete synewis þat liggiþ in bope sidis 1 of þe veyne. And whanne þou pinkist to avoide al a mannes bodi, þan þou schalt lete him blood in þis veine, & principali for þe herte & for þe brest. ¶ In Basilica, in þe riȝt hond, þou schalt lete a  
 8 man blood for passioun of þe lyuere, & in þe lift hond for passioun of þe splene,<sup>2</sup> & in þe liftside of þe forheed<sup>3</sup> it is good to lete blood for akyng of þe heed,<sup>4</sup> & principali whanne sijknes is con-  
 formed in a mannes heed. & þis I apreuede misilf / for sumtyme  
 12 it doiþ awei þe frenesi. & I siz a womman þat hadde akyng in hir heed, þat it miȝte not be take awei, & I lete hir blood in hir hond as it is forseid & purgide hir, & þe veine in hir forheed þat was gretter þan ony oþer veine in hir bodi; & I openede þat veine,  
 16 & anon riȝt sche was hool / But whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in þat place, þou schalt streyne þe necke & kutte þe veine endelongis; & þis blood-letyng is good for tynea, þat is in a mannes heed, & for Saphati,<sup>5</sup> & for demigrania þou schalt lete  
 20 blood in þe templis of his heed. & þe same blood-letyng is good for passion<sup>6</sup> of a mannes iȝen / I hadde a ȝong<sup>7</sup> man in my kepinge þat hadde demigrayn<sup>7</sup> of hoot cause, & I purgide him ofte & lete him blood, and I knytte þe arterie þat was in þe same side of his  
 24 heed, & þo he was cured for euermore / Also letyng blood in þe veynes bihinde hise eeris is good for þe dimigrayn & for tineam / Also letyng blood in þe tunge is good for þe squinacie, & for enpostyms, þat ben as it were almaundis, & for brancis;<sup>8</sup> but he

3. Mediana.  
is selected  
for general  
bleeding.  
[1 f. 216]

A vein in the  
forehead is  
cut against  
headache and  
frenzy;

as the author  
did in the  
case of a  
woman.

Blood-let-  
ting on the  
temples is  
good against  
megrin,  
[2 f. 216, bk.]  
and an eye  
disease.

Cut the veins  
behind the  
ear against  
megrin:  
bleed the  
tongue  
against  
squincy.

<sup>2</sup> *Regimen sanitatis Salerni*, transl. by T. Paynell (1530), fol. h. iiii.: "*Saluatella* is þat veyne betwene þe myddell fynger and the ryng fynger, more declynyng to the myddell fynger. Hit begynneth of *Basilica*. This veyne is opened in the ryghte hande for opilation of þe lyuer, and in the lefte hande for opilation of the splene. There is no reason why it shuld be so, as Auicenn saythe, but experyence: whiche Galen founde by a dreame, as he saythe. He had one in cure, whose lyuer and splene were stoppe, and he dreamed that he dyd let him blud of this veine, and so he dyd, and cured the pacient."

<sup>3</sup> MS. inserts *for*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. in capite flebotomatur vena frontis propter capitis egritudines.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *sanaci*. The editions of Lanfranc read *saphati*, Add. MS. 26,106, fol. 89: *saffira*. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Saphiros, Sephiros idest apostema durum cui non associatur sensus." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Sephiros is an arabike word, and it is called in Greke scirros, in latyne durities, that is hardenes."

<sup>7</sup> *demigrayn*, Lat. emigranea. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. megrim.

<sup>8</sup> *brancus*, med. Lat. Dufr., a throat-disease. *Isid.*, Lib. 4, Cap. 7: "branchos est præfocatio faucium a frigido humore." The editions of Lanfr. read: brachiis.

Bleed from the jugular vein against suffocation, from a vein in the lower lip,

from the 3 veins in the leg,

1. a vein under the knee,

[<sup>4</sup> If. 217]

2. a vein in the hollow of the foot called Sophena.

3. the sciatic vein.

If you intend to let blood more than once from the same place,

make a larger incision.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 217, bk.]

If by blood-letting, you wish to draw the matter to the opposite part of the body, bleed repeatedly.

schal be lete blood tofore in þe heed-veyne. & it is good for þe izer, & it is good for icching & for pustulis in þe nose, & for scotomia þat cometh of blood / Sumtyme a man is lete blood in veynes in þe necke, þat ben clepid gwide,<sup>1</sup> for drede of suffocacioun<sup>2</sup> 4 of blood; & sumtyme in leprous men, þat schulen be lete blood in her lippis bineþe.<sup>3</sup> & þis is good for hote enpostyms in þe mouþ, & for hote passiouns of þe gommys. ¶ In a mannes foot ben .iiij., þat ben profitable to be lete blood for manie passiouns / And þer is oon 8 veyne in a mannes hamme vnder his knee, þat is good to be lete 4 blood for passiouns of þe maris, & for to bringe out menstrue: & it avoidith al þe bodi. ¶ Also þer is anoper veine, þat sittith bitwixe þe holowe of þe foot wipinneforþ, & is clepid Sophena; & in þis. 12 veyne wommen ben leten blood for passiouns of þe maris, & men ben lete blood in þe veine of þe same place for enpostyms of þe ballokis. ¶ Þe veine þat serueþ for þe scie, is wipoute bitwixe þe heele & þe holowe of þe foot wipoutforþ, & blood-letynge in þis 16 veine is good for scia[ti]cam passionem, as it is aforseid in þe cure of sciatica. ¶ Herof þou schalt take kepe. If þou pinkist for to lete a man blood in .ij. diuers times, & not al at oonys, þan þou schalt do in þis maner; & in þis caas, whanne þou wolt lete a man 20 miche blood, and ne darist not do it al at oonys; þan whanne þou letist him blood, þou schalt make þe inscicioun of þe veine þe more long; þat it soude not hastili; & þan þou schalt binde his arme, & smite þe place þere þou wolt lete him blood wip þi fyngir, & make 24 him blede more, as myche as þou seest þat good is / ¶ Also whanne þou wolt wip blood-letynge make þe mater go to þe place aforzens; whanne þou hast lete out þe .iiij. part off blood þat he schal blede, þan þou schalt sette þi fingir vpon þe wounde, & make 28 him stonde vp & remeue<sup>6</sup> him-silf, & lete him sitte adoun, & do awei þi fyngir & lete him blede more. & þus þou schalt do .iiij.

<sup>1</sup> Lat. vene guidegi.

<sup>2</sup> Phillips: "*Suffocation*, a suffocating, stifling, etc., a Stoppage."

<sup>3</sup> This statement is due to a wrong interpunctuation in the Latin original. Add. 26,106: "Aliquando flebotomantur uene guidegi colli cum suffocatio ex sanguinis timetur multitudine. & aliquando in quibusdam leprosis uene quæ sunt in labiis inferioribus interioribus minuuntur propter acola calidum in ore —." A full stop ought to be between leprosis and uene. Compare *Liber Rasis ad Almans*, Tract. VII, Cap. 21, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 32 bk.: "Sed due vene que dicuntur guidegi sunt flebotomande, cum anhelitus in lepre principio maxime angustatur." "Vene itidem, que in labiis sunt inciduntur cum in aliquo multiplicantur alcola et ulcera in ore et gingivis."

<sup>6</sup> *remeue him-silf* has the sense of M.E. *remuen*, O.F. *remuer*, to move, stir.



- sipis or .iiij., for in þis maner þe blood drawiþ more to þe partie  
 aforzens, & þe vertu of þe pacient schal þe better be kept. ¶ Also  
 if a man is wont to swowne in blood-letyng eouper falle down, þan  
 4 lete him lie & be lete blood / Also or he be lete blood, lete him ete  
 a schiuer of breed toostid & leid in wijn of *granatorum*. ¶ Alle  
 maner veynes in blood-letyng schulen be kutt endelongis / And  
 whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in þe partijs aboue þe necke, þan  
 8 þou muste binde þe veine,<sup>1</sup> til þe veyne arise þat þou wolt lete him  
 blood on / And whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in his arme, þan  
 þou muste binde his arme þe brede of foure fyngris aboue þe place;  
 & þou muste <sup>2</sup>be wel war þat þou streyne not to faste, as manie  
 12 men doon / Manie men binden so faste a mannes arm, þat he mai  
 not fele his arm / Veynes of a mannes feet & in his houndis, if þou  
 wolt lete a man blood þeron, þan þou muste sette hem in hoot  
 water, & lete hem achaufe þeron an hour; & þan þou muste binde  
 16 his foot oupir his hond aboue þe ioinet wiþ a boond, & algate his  
 foot or his hond mote be in þe watir as longe as he schal blede /

Give the  
 patient a slice  
 of bread and  
 wine before  
 the operation.

Before oper-  
 ating cause  
 the vein to  
 swell, by  
 bandaging  
 the limb,

[<sup>2</sup> If. 218]

and by a  
 warm foot-  
 bath.

### Of kuttyngis and bledyngis //

- Siccia is sett sumtyme for kuttyng & sumtime wiþoute kuttyng, ¶ *xviij. co.*  
 20 and sumtyme wiþ kuttinge.<sup>3</sup> Wiþout kutting as vpon a mannes  
 wombe or wommans / ffor akyng þat comeþ of wijnd, & it is good  
 for to waste wijnd / Also it is sett vpon þe wei of þe stoon þat  
 falliþ adoun of þe reynes, & þan it schal be sett a litil bineþe þe  
 24 akyng þat it mowe drawe þe stoon lower & lower til it come to þe  
 hole of þe bladdre / Also it is sett vndir a wommans tetis for to  
 restreyne þe blood of þe nose & of þe maris / Also it is sett vpon  
 þe region <sup>4</sup>of þe wombe for fallinge of þe maris, þat is clepid dislo-  
 28 cacioun of þe maris: as if the maris falle adoun in þe riȝt side, þan  
 it schal be sett in þe lifside / And if þe maris falle in þe lifside,  
 þan it schal be sett in þe riȝt side / Also it is sett vndir a mannes  
 eere for to drawe out a greyne or a stoon of þe eere þat is falle yn /  
 32 Also it is sett vndir a mannes ers to drawe out þe emeroidis þat  
 sittip hid fer yn / And it schal be sett in euery place þere þou wolt  
 make a greet attraccioun / Also it is good for to be sett vpon þe  
 bityng of a wood hound, & vpon þe biting of a venymous beest.

The Sycla is  
 used against  
 flatulence,

to draw the  
 stone from  
 the kidneyes  
 towards the  
 bladder,

to restrain  
 flux of blood  
 in case of  
 falling of the  
 womb,

[<sup>4</sup> If. 218, bk.]

to draw a  
 stone out of  
 the ear,

to draw out  
 internal piles,

on the bite of  
 a mad dog.



<sup>1</sup> Lat. opus collum stringi donec appareant.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "Siccia aliquando ponitur sine incisione aliquando cum incisione." The printed editions omit this passage.

Cupping with  
previous  
scarification  
is used  
instead of  
blood-  
letting,  
if the patients  
are either  
very old or  
very young.  
[<sup>2</sup> lf. 219]

Scarify on  
the head, for  
eye-disease,  
skin-diseases,  
and tooth-  
ache.

Scarify be-  
tween the  
shoulders for  
swooning.

watir lechis

Bad leeches  
have big  
heads and  
live in foul  
water.

Good leeches  
have red  
wombs,  
small heads,  
live in pure  
water.

Keep them  
fasting before  
use.

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 219, bk.]

It schal be sett<sup>t</sup> peron wiþ scarificacioun, also in causis þere þou lettist<sup>t</sup> for to drawe blood for febilnes, or for elde, or in children; & hem after .iiij. 3eer oold we moun garchie, whanne blood leting<sup>t</sup> is forboden hem, & speciali whanne we purposen for to drawe awei mater 4 þat<sup>t</sup> is vndir þe skyn / Also we moun garse a man bihinde in þe nol of þe heed — —<sup>1</sup> & for greuance of þe ȝen, & vpon þe .ij. corneris of þe heed for tinea & for pustules þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þe heed vnder <sup>2</sup>a mannes chyn, for wennys of þe face & for vlcera þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þe 8 mouþ & in þe lippis & for akyng<sup>e</sup> of þe teep / Also if it be sett<sup>t</sup> bytwixe þe .ij. schuldris for swownyng<sup>e</sup> & for quaking<sup>e</sup> of þe herte, & for hem þat<sup>t</sup> han to miche blood in þat<sup>t</sup> place. þis maner letynge blood avoidid a mannes bodi miche & makip him feble<sup>3</sup> / 12

Also watir lechis<sup>4</sup> drawip more blood þan þese / In þis maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe whiche ben gode watir lechis & whiche ben nouȝt. þei þat<sup>t</sup> han blac colour medlid wiþ diuers colouris, & þei þat<sup>t</sup> haueþ grete hedis & ben in foule styngyng<sup>e</sup> watris & han miche spume on 16 hem ben nouȝt / And in þis maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe whiche ben gode: þei þat<sup>t</sup> han reed wombis & litil reed rewis in þe rigge medlid wiþ grene, & whanne þei haueþ litil hedis & smale tailis, & whanne þei ben in good watir þat<sup>t</sup> ben manie froggis yn. & or þou sette 20 hem vpon a man, þei schulenz be kept<sup>t</sup> al adai fastyng<sup>e</sup>. & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> 3eue him a litil scharp blood for to ete, & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> waische hem wiþ cleer water; & þan vpon þe <sup>5</sup>place þat<sup>t</sup> he schal be

<sup>1</sup> Some words are wanting. Lat.: propter grauedinem capitis.

<sup>3</sup> The sentence to which this statement refers is omitted. Lat.: "Que vero in poplitis plicatura valent ad egritudines renum, et matricis, testiculorum et omnium membrorum nutritiuorum ex sanguine."

<sup>4</sup> Rhasis, Continens, Lib. XV. Cap. 6, ed. Brix, 1486, fol. CC. 3, bk., gives an interesting description of different kinds of leeches: "Sanguisugarum vna est venenosa, que est nigra vehementer ad modum antimonii, habens caput magnum & squamas ad modum piscium quorundam & habens medium viride, etiam alia, super quam sunt pili, habet magnum caput et colorem diuersum ad modum iris, in cuius colore sunt linee ad modum lazuli: que quotiens mordet, inde accidet apostema cum sincopi, febre, ebrietate, et laxitudine articulorum; tamen bona ipsarum est, que assimilatur colori aque in qua erit viriditas, habent super se duas lineas ad modum arsenici; sed blonde rotunde & ad colores epatis apte, que veloces sunt ad attrahendum sanguinem subtilem & que assimilantur caude muris, habentes odorem horribilem & similes locuste parvule et tenui & habentes ventrem ruffum cum nigrore & dorsum viride, sunt meliores; sed peiores erunt in aqua mala valde stabili, in qua sunt ranule multe, tamen bone sunt in aqua bona & optima." This account is copied by Avicenna, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 22, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 62, bk. He differs in one point: "illas elige, que in aquis colliguntur, in quibus morantur rane. Neque attendas illud quod quidam dicunt, quod si sunt in aquis vbi morantur rane, sunt male."



- sett, þe place schal be wel frotid tofore, þat it bi come reed, & þan sette þervpon a ventuse for to drawe þerto blood. & þan anynte þe same place wiþ blood, & þan sette þervpon þe watir leche. & 4 whanne he is ful & þou wolt do him awei, blowe vpon þe place baurac, ouþer askis maad of paper. & whanne he is falle awei, þan sette þervpon a ventuse azen to drawe more blood to þe plase. & þan sette þervpon anoþer watir leche, if þere gaderiþ þerto miche 8 mater. & þis maner is good for al maner blood þat is rotid, for it draweth it out /

Draw the blood to the place with cupping, before the leech is set on,

and use again cupping, when the leech has dropped.

### Of cauterium or brennyng of large & streite.<sup>1</sup>

- Cauterium is seid in ij. maners, þat is to seie large & streit. & ¶ xvij eo  
12 Cauterium is seid propurli a brennyng wiþ gold or wiþ sum A Cautery is any substance used for burning.  
ouþer instrument þat is hoot, ouþer wiþ watir or wiþ oile, ouþer wiþ medicyn caustica, ouþer wiþ herbis / And þer ben manie medicyns for to make cauterijs, whiche þou schalt fynde pleynlier in þe anti-  
16 dotarie / A cauterie is clepid streit,<sup>2</sup> whanne it is maad wiþ an hoot yren, wiþ gold, or wiþ siluir // Cauterijs þat<sup>3</sup> ben maad wiþ medicyns þat han vertu for to brenne / þer is seid a cauterie po[tential]e whanne it is not hoot in felinge / & þat cauterie preuailiþ wiþouten  
20 brennyng as herbis / þer is anoþer maner cauterie : actual, for so miche as it brenneth in dede / Of þis cauterie auicen<sup>4</sup> spekiþ & seiþ, þat it is a medicyn, miche helpinge for to defende, þat mater schal not departe into al þe lyme ; & it wole comforte þe lyme, & bringe  
24 it into good complexioun azen, & it wole dissolue mater þat is corrupt, & it wole streyne flux of blood. & auicen seiþ, þat a cauterie is oon of þe beste pointis of cirurgie / for pingis þat mowe not be fulfillid in long tyme, wiþ cauterie þei ben fulfillid / As it is seid  
28 phisicians leueþ þis craft to cirurgians. & þerfore it is greet wondir if þer be ony good cirurgian founde, for þei ben alle lewid men. & if a lewid man schal worche with cauterijs, þan he knowiþ not þe difference bitwixe a cauterie þat is clepid actual & potencial. & also  
32 þei knowe not in what place of a mannes bodi þei schulen make hem. & þis is so repreued þat it is almoost out<sup>5</sup> of vss / Also summen maken cauterijs in vnclene bodies þat ben ful replet of

In a narrower sense it is the hot iron, gold or silver.

[3 lf. 220]

A caustic medicine is called potential cautery.

The actual cautery is really burning.

The effects of cauterization.

Auicen praises the cautery.

The physicians leave its use in the hands of surgeons, who are all unlearned, and cannot distinguish the

Cauterium actuale [3 lf. 220, bk.] and

Cauterium potenciale.

<sup>1</sup> The translator misunderstood the meaning of the Latin, "large et stricte," in the following passage : Cauterium dicitur duobus modis, large & stricte.

<sup>2</sup> See the preceding note.

<sup>4</sup> Lanfranc mentions Avicenna, who has a short chapter about cauterization, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 29 ; yet he chiefly follows Gulielmus de Salic., Lib. V., Cap. I., but with many additions and alterations.

Some cauterize a patient, who is full of bad humours, wherof a cancer may ensue.

Some use Cantarides.

Auicen says, the cantery is the best consuming medicine, if properly applied, and if there is not too much matter.

[1 If. 221] As a little fire has no effect on a large quantity of wet wood, so the cauterie is inefficient, if the patient is too full of humours.

The patient shall not bear the cautery longer than three months.

Particulars about cauteries, [1 If. 221, bk.] and the shape of the instruments:

1. *Nodulum*, an iron plate with a hole,

through which the red-hot iron is applied.

yuele humours, & þan cauterijs wolen do litil profit to passiouns þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid, but<sup>t</sup> þer wole falle þerto so manie humouris, & make þe place of<sup>t</sup> þe cauterie to swelle, & litzly engendre a cancre. & þan men þat<sup>t</sup> ben vnkunynge ben agast herof & ben not hardi for to 4 make no mo cauterijs. & if<sup>t</sup> þe patient hadde be purgid of grete humours tofore, þan it<sup>t</sup> wolde not haue fare so. ¶ And summen vsen cantarides for to make cauterijs þerwip, & leggen it<sup>t</sup> vpon men þat<sup>t</sup> han hote complexioun & drie; & þis is contrarious & fallip 8 greet agreuance þerof, & þan þei seien þat<sup>t</sup> cauterijs ne ben nouzt<sup>t</sup> worp / But auicen seiþ, þat<sup>t</sup> a cauterie is good tofore alle medicyns for to waaste & consume mater / if þe cauterie be sett in place þere it<sup>t</sup> schulde be, but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> the mater be so miche þat<sup>t</sup> þe cauterie mai not 12 consume it<sup>t</sup>, as þou mizt<sup>t</sup> se an ensample herof: þat<sup>t</sup> fier ouercomeþ alle þingis / but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> þou doist<sup>t</sup> a litil fier among<sup>t</sup> miche wet wode, þer wole come smoke þerof. & the fier<sup>1</sup> mai not ouercome to waaste þe wode, for water þat<sup>t</sup> is in þe wode is more þan þe fier / In þe same 16 maner it<sup>t</sup> fariþ of<sup>t</sup> a cauterie þat<sup>t</sup> is in a mannes bodi, if he be ful of humouris, þanne þe cauterie mai not worche. & þerfor þou schalt purge him wip laxatiuis tofore þe cauterie as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid / Also þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make no cauterijs in a man þat<sup>t</sup> is ful of gode humours 20 as of<sup>t</sup> blood, for þan oonli blood-letyng<sup>t</sup> suffisip / but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> þe patient be strong<sup>t</sup> & þe mater on him be coold & moist, þan a cauterie is good for to driue awei þe mater. & a man schal not bere a cauterie, but<sup>t</sup> .ij. moneþis ouþer .iij. at<sup>t</sup> þe mooste. ¶ Now I wole telle þee 24 a good rule / If þou fyndist in a mannes body a lyme in wei of corrupcioun<sup>2</sup>: as herisipula, or herpes estiomenus, ouþer formica, or in yuel disposicioun of<sup>t</sup> a wounde þat<sup>t</sup> bigynneþ to encancre,<sup>3</sup> & for al oþer corrupcioun, þan sette a cauterie in þe nexte welle to þe place, 28 for þe cauterie wole defende þe place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Now speke we of<sup>t</sup> particlis of<sup>t</sup> cauterijs þat<sup>t</sup> fallip in diuers placis of<sup>t</sup> a mannes bodi, & wip diuers instrumentis þei schulen<sup>4</sup> be maad, whiche þou schalt<sup>t</sup> se portraied<sup>5</sup> tofore þe, & her signis forþwip. ¶ þe .i. instru- 32 ment<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is comoun & moost<sup>t</sup> in vss, is clepid *nodulum*,<sup>6</sup> & is an instrument<sup>t</sup> maad in þis maner / Take a brood plate of<sup>t</sup> iren & make þeron an hole, & leie þat<sup>t</sup> plate þere þou wolt<sup>t</sup> make þi cauterie. & þan þou muste haue an iren maad long<sup>t</sup> & smal & maad hoot, & 36 putte it<sup>t</sup> in þat<sup>t</sup> hole of<sup>t</sup> þe plate / þis plate wole saue þe place þat<sup>t</sup> þe

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: si membrum inuenis in via corruptionis.

<sup>3</sup> *encancre*, med. Lat. *incancre*; Dufr., Ital. *incancharare*.

<sup>5</sup> The figures are omitted.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. *anodulum*, *adnodulum*.



- cauterie schal be nomore but<sup>t</sup> as þou wolt / & þat<sup>t</sup> iren þat<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make þi cauterie þerwip, schal haue a litil round knap tofore. & þat<sup>t</sup> iren schal be maad hoot<sup>t</sup> til it<sup>t</sup> bicome reed / & þerwip þou
- 4 schalt<sup>t</sup> make þi cauterie, & whanne þou doist<sup>t</sup> awei þin iren, þere wole be vlcus. & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> leie þeron butter or oold grese, or grese stampid wip caul-leues, & þat<sup>t</sup> is þe best<sup>t</sup> of alle, & leie it<sup>t</sup> þerto, til þe cruste falle awei þat<sup>t</sup> þe hoot<sup>t</sup> iren made. & þan þou
- 8 schalt<sup>t</sup> do þerto a litil pelot<sup>t</sup> maad of linnen cloof round & hard. & þat<sup>t</sup> pelot<sup>t</sup> schal be anoyntid wip oile, & vpon þe place leie a caul-leef, or an yue-leef, or a vine-leef, & in þis<sup>1</sup> maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> holde it<sup>t</sup> open as longe as þou wolt. ¶ The .ij. cauterie is clepid **round**, &
- 12 haþ no knap at<sup>t</sup> þe ende, but<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> is schape long, & whanne þou makist<sup>t</sup> þi cauterie, þou muste be war þat<sup>t</sup> þou touche no nerues ne veynes. & þis instrument<sup>t</sup> schal be maad in þis maner, þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> make a cauterie in boþe endis, after þat<sup>t</sup> þou desirist, greet<sup>t</sup> or smal. ¶ The
- 16 .iij. cauterie is clepid **punctuale**, & is ful necessarie whanne þou wolt make a streit<sup>t</sup> cauterie. & is maad in þis maner. ¶ The .iiij. is clepid **radiale**, & is smal & scharp, & is good for children, & is maad in þis maner<sup>2</sup> / ¶ The .v. cauterie is maad in þis maner, & is swiþe
- 20 comoun & is clepid **calcellare**.<sup>3</sup> & þis wole make a long<sup>t</sup> brennyng<sup>t</sup> as ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> þe heed, & whanne þou wolt<sup>t</sup> make vlcera long<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> ben rounde, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> worche wip þis cauterie. ¶ The .vj. is clepid **subtile**, & is good for festr<sup>t</sup>is þat<sup>t</sup> sittip in þe corner of a mannes iþe,
- 24 & it<sup>t</sup> is good for yuel fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> growip in a mannes iþe, & is maad in þis maner / þis sotille<sup>4</sup> cauterie schal be maad hoot<sup>t</sup> & putt in a canel in þis maner // The .vj.<sup>5</sup> is clepid **dactilare**, for it<sup>t</sup> is schape as it<sup>t</sup> were þe stoon of a date. & herwip þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make cauterijs in þe
- 28 haunche. & þere schal be an instrument<sup>t</sup> schape as a table, & schal be leid to þe haunche in þis maner, & haþ .vj. arisyngs þeron as haþ a stoon of a date.<sup>6</sup> & oon þerof is in þe myddil, & .ij. aboue, & .j. bineþe, & oon in boþe sidis in þis maner / Whanne þis instrument<sup>t</sup>
- 32 is hoot<sup>t</sup>, it<sup>t</sup> schal be putt vpon a mannes haunche, & a table bitwixe maad of iren. & þis table schal be coold, & þer schulen be .vj. holis

After this operation an ulcer is left, on which cabbage-leaves are applied.

[1 ff. 222]

2. The round cautery can be used at both ends.

3. punctuale.

Radiale is used for children.

4. Calcellare makes long burns.

5. Subtile, used for a fistula in the corner of the eye.

[5 ff. 222, bk.]

6. Dactilare, used to cauterize the haunch, is an iron instrument of two parts, one a table with five holes, the other with five eminences fitting into the holes.

<sup>2</sup> The description of the *Cauterium radiale* is an insertion of the translator. Lat.: "tertium cauterium punctuale, seu radiale, & est necessarium ubi valde strictum uolueris facere cauterium, & est sic factum." Gulielm. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 45, bk.: "þe fifþe is clepyd *cauterium minutum*, or *radiale* or *viduale* þat is a comoun instrument to children."

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26106, fol. 98, bk.: "cutellare," printed ed. "cultellare."

<sup>5</sup> The translator, forgetting that he counted the "radiale" as a separate cautery, follows again the numbers of the original.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: et habet v. eminentias sicut ossa dactilorum factas.

## 7. Triangulare.

8. Actuale  
is like a  
needle, and  
[<sup>2</sup> If. 223]  
used for the  
eye-brows.  
linguale.  
Ceton.

The skin is  
lifted up with  
pincers, a  
hole is burnt  
through, and  
some threads  
of wool put  
in.

[<sup>6</sup> If. 223, bk.]  
When all  
other medi-  
cines are  
inefficient to  
remove a  
chronic head-  
ache and  
other diseases  
arising from  
the head,

use the  
Cauterium  
Cultellare.

peron, schape after þe cauterie þat haþ .v. arisingis out as it is afor-  
seid. And þou schalt make .v. cauterijs vpon a mannes haunche,  
& .ij. þerof schulen be aboue þe ioynct, & .ij. bi þe sidis, & oon  
vpon þe ioynct, & .j. tofore þe ioynct. ¶ Þe vij. is clepid triangulare, & þerwiþ þer mai be maad .iiij. atoonys. & þis cauterie is good  
for þe haunche also, & is maad in þis maner / ¶ The .viij. cauterie  
is clepid actuale,<sup>1</sup> for sumtyme it is maad wiþ a nedle, & it is good  
<sup>2</sup>for to make cauterijs þerwiþ in þe browis, & is maad sutil as a  
nede. ¶ The .ix. cauterie is clepid linguale, & it is schape as it  
were a tunge of a litil brid in þis maner. & it is good for to make  
cauterijs vpon a mannes browis / ¶ The .x. cauterie is clepid ceton,<sup>3</sup>  
& is maad triangulis holowid.<sup>4</sup> & in þe hole þerof þere may entre a  
scharp instrument þat haþ a fenestre<sup>5</sup> as it were a nede, & it  
schal be holde with coold tenaculis, also þe place þat þou wolt  
make þi cauterie on. þou schalt take vp þe skyn wiþ tenaculis, &  
putt in þin hoot iren þoruþ þe hole of þe tenaculis, & breue þe skyn.  
þan þou schalt make a corde of wollen zerne & wete it in blood, &  
drawe it þoruþ þe holis, & þan þou schalt knytte þe .ij. endis to-  
gidere, & in þis maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt.  
þis is a comoun cauterie, & þis cauterie mai be maad in þe mouþ of  
þe stomach, & vpon þe lyuere & þe splene, & vpon þe ballocke-leþeris /  
Now þou knowist alle þin instrumentis, for to make cauterijs with, &  
her names / Now telle we in what maner & in what place þou schalt  
make hem / In oold heed-akyng, <sup>6</sup>whanne purgaciouns & laxatiuis  
& gargarismis & snesyngis<sup>7</sup> & clisterijs & opere maner of avoid-  
yng, & wiþ enplastis & wiþ anyntyng,<sup>8</sup> whanne þe akyng of a  
mannes heed wole not go awei wiþ alle þese, ne þe epilencie,<sup>8</sup> ne  
noon passioun þat comeþ of þe heed, ne passiouns of þe izen, &  
passiouns of þe eeren, & of þe noseþrillis, & oold couze, & flux of  
þe wombe þat comeþ of þe reume. ¶ For alle þese passiouns þou  
schalt make cauterie þat is clepid cultellare in þe welle of þe heed<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *actuale*, a mistake for *acuale*.

<sup>3</sup> *ceton*, med. Lat. seto, sedo; Fr. *séton*; Ital. *settone*, "seton." Add. 26,106, and the printed ed. read: *dicatur ad sectionem*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: *fit cum tenaculis perforatis*.

<sup>5</sup> *fenestre*, Lat. *fenestra*; "la fenestre de la cannule," Paré; see *Littre Dict.*

<sup>7</sup> *snesyngis*, Lat. *sternutationes*.

<sup>8</sup> *epilencie*, O.Fr. *epilence*. Plinius: *epilenticus*. See Dufr. Matth. Sylv.: *Epilensia .i. morbus caducus*.

<sup>9</sup> Lat. in *capitis fontinella*. Phillips: "Fontanella, or Fonticulus, a little Well, or Spring: In Surgery, an Issue, or little Ulcer, made in sound parts of the Body, to let out bad Humours, and to Cure, or prevent Diseases. In



- bihinde. & first schaue awei þe heeris, þere þou wolt make þi cauterie as it is aforseid *with* an hoot iren, & herof þou schalt be ware þat þou lete not þat iren be þere to longe, but þou schalt hastili make it, & hastily do awei þe iren, & þan þou schalt do
- 4 awei þe cruste þerof wip butter, or wip oold grese, or wip leeuës of caul, as it is aforseid. ¶ Þis cauterie schal be holde open wip litil pelottis as it is forseid as longe as þou wolt, til þe patient be hool / But or þou make þi cauterie, þou muste be wel ware, as it is afor-
- 8 seid, þat þin iren lie not to longe, <sup>1</sup>but hastili take it awei, for if it were þere longe his brayn myȝte be harmed þerbi. ¶ Wip þis cauterie I helide a womman þat hadde passiouns in hir heed manie diuers, & I miȝte not make hir hool *with* no purgaciouns, ne wip
- 12 noon anoyntingis, & wip þis cauterie I made hir al hool. ¶ Also þou muste make a round cauterie & touche oonly þe skyn þerwip, & do þerto seto. Þis cauterie is good for passiouns of þe izen, & for epilenciam, & for opere sijknessis of þe heed; but þis cauterie is
- 16 not so good as þat oper tofore. ¶ Also þou miȝt make a cauterie in a mannes necke bytwixe þe boonys & þe skyn aboueforþ<sup>2</sup>; þis cauterie is good for þe spasme. ¶ Also whanne a man is woundid in þe heed, þis cauterie is good for drede of þe spasme; for herwip
- 20 þe mater schal be consumed, þat nerues ben redi for to take.<sup>3</sup> ¶ Also in þe welle vnder þe eeris & bihinde þe eeris þou schalt make cauterijs for passiouns of izen and for akyng of þe teef. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is vpon a mannes browis, þou schalt do
- 24 awei wip a cauterie þat is clepid lingual, <sup>4</sup>schape as it were a tunge of a brid. & þou schalt make þerwip cauterijs vpon his browis, but þou muste be war þat þou touche not þe natural substaunce of þe browis. & þou schalt make cauterijs þerwip *with*
- 28 cauterium punctuale, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch þat is in þe corner of a mannes ize. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is in a mannes nose, it mai be remeued awei wip cauterium acutum ouper punctuale, for to touche þerwip þe fleisch a litil & a litil til al þe
- 32 superfluite be take awei. & if þis superfluite be fast þeron & be fer yn, þan þou muste vse a sutil cauterie, & putte it in þe nose-þril

The iron must not be too long on the head.

[1 lf. 224]

The round cauterie is good for passiouns of þe izen.

A cauterie applied on the neck is good for spasm.

The cauterium linguale is used to remove a growth on the eye-brows.

A growth in the nose is removed with the Cauterium acutum.

Anatomy, the mould or root of the Nose." It was further a name for the place where these ulcers were produced, especially for a place between the sutures of the skull. Compare *Sord. of Babyl.* 2951: [*he smote hir*] *ouer the founte throughout the brayn.*

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: cutem superficialiter tangendo.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: nam materia per hoc consumitur, per quam neruorum inhibitio expectatur.

The round  
cautery is  
applied  
beneath the  
chin for skin-  
disease.

A cautery  
applied on  
[2 lf. 225]  
the arms is  
used against  
lethargy.

A cautery on  
the fingers is  
used for  
chiragra.

Cauteries  
are used for  
asthma,

empyema,

for diseases  
of the rig-  
bone,

the stomach,

[8 lf. 225, bk.]

the liver, and  
the spleen,

they are best  
made with a  
Seton.

poruþ þe canel, þat þe hete ne mowe not harme þe substantance of  
þe nose, but onoly brenne þe superfluite of þe fleisch. ¶ Also þou  
schalt make a round cauterie vndir a mannes chyn. & þis cauterie  
is good for weynys þat ben in þe skyn of his face, & for þe place,<sup>1</sup> 4  
& for þe palet, & for sijknys in a mannes mouþ, & in þe gomys, &  
in þe teep. ¶ Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in boþe a mannes  
armys, wiþoutforþ þe arme, in þe welle þat is vpon þe grete braun a  
litol<sup>2</sup> bineþe þe schuldre. & þis cauterie is good for sijknys þat ben 8  
in þe partie bihinde of a mannes brayn as for þe litarge,<sup>3</sup> & also it  
purgiþ wel þe nerues of þe necke / Also þou miȝt make anoþer in þe  
welle vndir þe grete braun, and is good for þe brayn wiþinneforþ as  
for scotomia & vertigine, & for water þat falliþ adoun fro a mannes 12  
heed to hise izen, & it is good for al passiouns of a mannes izen /  
Also þou schalt make a cauterie cultellaria<sup>4</sup> bitwene a mannes  
fyngris / And þese cauterijs ben gode for passiouns ciragra / Also  
þou schalt make cauterijs in þe brest wiþ a round cauterie, and is 16  
good for asma<sup>5</sup> / Also þou miȝt make a cauterie toward þe forke of  
þe brest aboue for disma<sup>6</sup> / Also þou miȝt sumtyme make cauterijs  
in þe brest, þat ben clepid cultellaria, bitwixe þe ribbis, & þese  
cauterijs been good for empima,<sup>7</sup> id est apostyme wiþinne / Also þou 20  
miȝt make cauterijs punctualia in þe rigboon for gret akinge þat a  
man haþ in þat place / Also þou miȝt make cauterijs wiþ a round  
instrument vpon þe regioun of þe stomak, for long febilnes þat a  
man haþ had in his stomak / Also þou miȝt<sup>8</sup> make cauterijs vnder 24  
þe nauele & vpon þe lyuere & vpon þe splene, ffor colicam passi-  
onem & for þe sijknys of þe lyuere & vpon þe splene & for dropesie.  
And alle þese cauterijs wolen be maad best wiþ seton / Also þou  
miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in þe haunchis as it is aforseid / Also þou 28

<sup>1</sup> place for plague? Lat.: saphati et pustulas.

<sup>2</sup> litarge, lethargy. Compare *Leechd. l.*, p. 200: "wiþ þa adle &e man litargum hateð, þat ys on ure geþeode ofergytulnys cwenen."

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: "Fiunt cauteria cutellaria superficialia inter digitum et digitum in cyraga. De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 29, Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a: "Difficulte & hardnesse of breþinge hat asma & comþ of double cause of drynes þat streynþe þe lungen."

<sup>5</sup> asma, med. Lat. asma, ἀσθμα.

<sup>6</sup> disma, Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "propter disimiam." Dufur, "dyspnia, δύσπνοια." Simon. Barth., p. 18: "Disma est species asmatis, sed disma fit ex siccitate, asma ex humiditate."

<sup>7</sup> empima, Lat. empimia. Simon. Barth., p. 19: "Empima, i. sputum saniosum ex pulmonis infectione proveniens." De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 30, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a: "empima is a passioun, whan me spetiþ quittir."



- miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe knee, for þe akynge of þe knees & of þe ballokis & of þe maris. Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe kne, wiþoutforþ for remedie of al þe bodi, for it awoideþ  
 4 wel alle partijs of a mannes bodi / & I haue seen manie men þat han maad cauterijs in þat place, or his bodi were purgid, & humouris fel so myche þerto þat his leggis & his hipis to-swollen al greet. & if he hadde be purgid tofore, he schulde not haue fare  
 8 so. & aboue þe ancle ben maad cauterijs for sijknes of þe ballokis. & also it is good for wommen / Also bitwixe þe toos ben maad cauterijs for þe potagre<sup>1</sup> / Also if þou purgist a man or a womman wiþ medicyns laxatiuis, & þan makist a cauterie as it is aforseid.  
 12 & if þe passioun go not awei at þis oon doinge, þan þou schalt neuere þe lattere [not]<sup>2</sup> be in dispeir of cauterijs,<sup>3</sup> but þou schalt bigynne to purge <sup>4</sup>him aȝen & make him a cauterie aȝen. & if it so be þat he be miche feblid herwiþ, þan þou schalt restore aȝen wiþ  
 16 gode metis & drinkis þat engendriþ good humours. & whanne he is restorid aȝen, þan þou schalt bigynne & purge him aȝen, & þan make hise cauterijs aȝen, & in þis maner þou schalt worche wiþ þi cauterijs. ¶ ffor manie men makip oon cauterie or .ij, & if þei seen  
 20 þat it profitip not, þan þei leueþ of & worchip nomore. & manie men contynuede þeron til þe pacient be brouȝt al down & listli deed / & in þis maner ne schulde not a leche worche / ffor G. seiþ : it is a feble leche, þat can not helpe þat is able to be holpen. &  
 24 defaute herof is þis : þat manie lechis ȝeueþ medicyns, & ne makip no space to bringe þe patient into good staat aȝen<sup>5</sup> / Alle þese rulis þat G. seiþ þou schalt attende in þis maner : if þe patient be maad feble wiþ medicyns laxatiuis & wiþ cauterijs, þan þou cesse of þi  
 28 medicyns & ȝeue him comfortatif metis & drinkis for to releue him aȝen, & þan þou miȝt worche wiþ þi medicyns aȝen. & þus þou miȝt do perfitly þe cure / And heron manie men errip þat ben holden ful kunnyng<sup>6</sup> / & þefore I haue sett it in þis place þat it mowe be  
 32 ensaumple to þee / Also þou schalt make a cauterie vpon rotid fleisch, til þou haue take awei al þe corrupecioun þerof. & in þis caas we mowen vse hoot feruent oile for to springe vpon þe corrupecioun,

Cauteries on the knee are used for the genital organs of men and women.

The patient must be purged before being cauterized.

If the disease is not cured at once,  
 [\* If. 226]  
 repeat the purging and cauterizing.

Many surgeons use the cauteries wrongly.

Galien.  
 Allow the medicine time to work.

Galien.

[\* If. 226, bk.]  
 Cauterize corrupt flesh with hot oil.

<sup>1</sup> *potagre*, Lat. *podagra*. *Hamp.* 2984 : "for slenthe als þe potagre and þe gout." De propr. rer., Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 96, bk. : "Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swellinge & sore ache, and whanne hit is in þe fyngres hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra."

<sup>2</sup> not, omitted. Lat. : nec propter hoc desperes.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 284, note 7.

<sup>5</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 93 : si plus dant, non interponunt spacium nutriendi.

so þat it ne touche noon hool<sup>1</sup> place, & þis maner is ful good to take awei corrupecioun of fleisch, & it is bettir þan medicina caustica / Whanne þou wolt worche with medicyns caustica, þan do as it schal be seid in þe antidotarie of þis book /

4

Of þe cure of brennyng wiþ fier ouþer with hoot watir or with oile.

¶ xix.º.º /  
Burns and  
scalds are  
treated with  
cold medi-  
cines,  
before blisters  
are formed,

with styptics  
in case of  
ulceration.

[3 lf. 227]  
Simple medi-  
cines applied  
in the first  
case.

Medicines ap-  
plied in the  
second case.

Rz

**A** Mannes lymes ben brent wiþ fier, watir, ouþir wiþ oile / In þis caas þis is þe firste entencioun : or þe place bigynne to 8  
bladdre,<sup>2</sup> þou muste haue medicyns þat ben colde / And if it so be þat þe place be vlcera<sup>3</sup>tus, & þou were not at þe firste bigynnyng, or if þe brennyng be so miche þat þou miȝt not defende, þat vlcera ne come not þeron, & þan þou must haue medicyns þat ben 12  
lasse coold, & medicyns þat ben clepid stiptica not fretynge / þese ben symple medicyns<sup>3</sup> in þe firste caas / Take marbil stoon & grinden smal, & alle þe sandalis,<sup>4</sup> & solatrum, & watir of rosis, & watir of cucurbita, & water of virga pastoris, & of alle þese þingis make 16  
a þing for to leie þeron / Also oile of rosis, & þe zelke of an ey ben good þefore / Also bole armoniac temperid wiþ vinegre is good þefore. And it muste ofte be remeued & ofte leid to aȝen, for þe cooldnes of ofte remeuyng schal defende it fro bladdingt / 20  
Naturel medicyns þat ben gode in þe secunde caas : / But vnguentum de calx maad in þis maner / Rz, calcis viue bene cocte þat ben maad of an hard stoon, and waische it wiþ coold watir til it lete al his scharpnes, & þan wiþ oile of rosis & wex make an oynement / 24  
Also vnguentum album Rasis þat is maad in þe antidotarie is good þefore / I nyle for þis cure sette no mo medycyns. þoruȝ þe grace of god almiȝty þe þridde tretis is fulfilled //

Here endiþ þe þridde book, and bigynneþ þe fourþe 28  
book // Of brekyng of boonis,<sup>5</sup> & sumtyme of brusyng of boonys, and a general techyng for alle //

<sup>1</sup> MS. *hoot*, Lat.: quod loca sana ulterius non attingat.

<sup>2</sup> *bladdre*, vesicari.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. omnes sandali.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *bookis*.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. heading: "Explicit tractatus tertius huius libri. Incipit quartus, qui est de algebra, et continet duas summas. Summa prima tractatus quarti septem continet capitula. Capitulum primum summæ primæ tractatus quarti, de fractura ossium sermo generalis." The translator has kept the heading of the first chapter, but left out the chapter itself. His first chapter,



- 1 **A** Mannes nose is sumtyme to-broken,<sup>2</sup> & sumtyme pressid adoun. & if he be hastili holpen his nose mai be restorid azen, & if it be longe or he haue ony help, þanne he schal be maymed for euermore<sup>3</sup> / If þou comest at þe firste bigynnyng þou schalt do in þis maner / putte yn þe fingir of þe lifthand anoon to þe brekyng, þi leeste fyngir or what fyngir wole best yn, & wip þi riȝthond presse vpon þe brekyng, & arere
- 4 vpward wip þi fyngir *withinneforþ*, & presse wip þin hond wipoutforþ & bringe it as it schulde be. þan make a strong tent & so longe þat he mowe passe aboue þe brekyng, & þan þis tent schal be diȝt wip a litil wex hoot & a litil sotil poudre of mastik &
- 12 sandal, & schape þerof in þe maner of a candel, & þan putte it into his nose, wipoutforþ leie of consolidatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, & abouteforþ þou schalt leie a defensif, & þou schalt binde his nose wip boondis,<sup>4</sup> & leie sutil linnen cloof in boþe sidis
- 16 of his nose as it is aforseid in þe chapter of woundis in a mannes face / If þou miȝt not putte yn þi fyngir in his noseþrel, þan make a tent of tre & hile it wip linnen cloof þat it be oold & neissche, & þan anointe þis tent wip oile of rosis, & putte þis in his noseþrel
- 20 in stide of þi fyngir, & þerwip arere vp his nose wipinneforþ,<sup>5</sup> & wip þin hond wipoutforþ make his nose euene til þe boon be brouȝt in his propre place þat is to-broke. ¶ Of his dietyng, & bloodletyng, & ventusis, & clisterijs, ouþer suppositorijs, do as þou seest
- 24 þat it is to do, & as it is aforseid.

[1 ff. 227, bk.]

¶ i. e. of  
A broken  
nose, unless  
soon re-  
adjusted,  
remains de-  
formed.Restore the  
nose by mani-  
pulation.Plug the nos-  
trils with a  
strong tent.

[3 ff. 223]

Take care of  
the general  
treatment.¶ If a manes cheke-boon<sup>7</sup> in þe liftside be to-broke, þan putteIf the cheek-  
bone is  
broken,

which has no heading, is Lanfranc's second one: *Capitulum secundum summe prime de fractura ossium faciei.*

<sup>2</sup> Compare : *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI., Sect. xci., ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 443, and *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. v., Tract 3, Cap. 3, ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 365 b.

<sup>3</sup> *Gul. de Sal.*, Sloane 277, fol. 34 : "Thow schalt wite þat þe boon of þe nose is operwhile depressyd & operwhile broken, & ȝif soþely it be depressyd, þat is to sey born down or broken withoute wounde, anoon in þe firste visitacion, be þe seknesse restoryd, whil it is newe, for ȝif it were hard, ouþer þer schal dwelle euermore fnattyðnesse or euel schapp." *fnattyðness*, translates med. Lat. *simitas* αἰσχροτης, snubbiness.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *broondis*.

<sup>5</sup> *Gul. de Sal.*, Sloane 277, fol. 34 : "And ȝif þou may not do þat wip þi fynger, putte in þe hole of þe nose on þe hurt syde a softe rownd sticke maad euene & semely, & anoynted with oyle of rosis . . . and þou maist also lappe þilke sticke in a clene linnen clout & anoynte þe clout wip þe same oile, & þanne þe sticke schal be þe more trettable."

<sup>7</sup> *Avic.* Lib. IV., Fen. v. Tr. 3, Cap. 2, *ibid.* : "Si frangitur mandibula dextra, tunc intronitte indicem, et medium manus sinistre in os infirmi, et cet." *Gul. de Sal.* Lib. III., Cap. 2. *Sl.* 277. fol. 34 b : "ȝif soþely þe boon of þe vppere chavel or of þe neþere were maad withoute wounde, putte þi ryȝt hond in þe mowþ of þe seeke."

a *Sl.* 6. fol. 115 b, broken.

re-adjust it by manipulation, and hold it in position by tying the teeth together,

[1f. 228, bk.]

and by applying a bandage.

The patient shall only take meat fit to be sipped.

yn þi strongist<sup>t</sup> fyngris of þi lifthond tweyne & bringe þe boon in-  
to his propre place aȝen, & presse wiþ þi riȝthond wiþoutforþ; & if þe  
cheke-boon be to-broke in þe riȝtside, þanne putte yn .ij. fyngris of  
þi riȝthond, and bringe þe boon to his propre place aȝen, as it is afor- 4  
seid. & whanne þe boon is brouȝt<sup>t</sup> as it schulde be, þat þou miȝt<sup>t</sup>  
knowe if his teep sittip euene as þei schulde do, & þan binde hise  
teep wiþ a strong<sup>t</sup> þreed wexid<sup>1</sup> & bounden bitwixe his teep, & leie  
þervpon oon of þe consolidatiuis & binde him in þe same maner, þat<sup>t</sup> 8  
þe boond be maad fast<sup>t</sup> bihindeforþ in his necke. & þan it schal be  
turned aȝen to his forheed, & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> binde him wiþ þi boond  
manyfoold, þat<sup>t</sup> þe boon þat<sup>t</sup> is to-broke mowe be holde in his propre  
place / And þe patient schal ete no metis but þingis þat<sup>t</sup> he may 12  
soupe / For if he chewide, it wolde make þe boon falle out of his  
place aȝen, & in .xx. daies þis boon mai be restorid aȝen //

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest //

¶ ij. o. co.  
The upper  
jaw-bone is  
immovable,  
for three  
reasons.

[3 1f. 229]

The lower  
jaw-bone con-  
sists of 2  
bones;  
joins with the  
upper jaw-  
bone by  
ligaments.  
Nerves con-  
vey the motor  
phenomena  
from the  
brain and  
spine.

**T**He cheke-boon aboue meueþ not, & þat<sup>t</sup> is for .iiij. causis : oon 16  
is þat<sup>t</sup> þe cheke-boon bineþe is more liȝt & more able þerfore,  
þe .ij. cause is þis : þe cheke-boon is niȝ noble lymes, & if þe cheke-  
boon aboue meuede, þe noble lymes miȝten be enpeirid þerbi. þe .iiij.  
cause is þis : if þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þere nolde be noon 20  
strong<sup>t</sup> coniunccioun bitwene hem / þerfore þe cheke-boon aboue is  
fast<sup>t</sup> maad to þe boonys of þe heed, as it is aforseid in anothomiam.  
¶ The cheke-boon bineþe is maad of .ij. boonys ioyned<sup>3</sup> togidere 24  
in þe chyn. & þis boon is maad fast<sup>t</sup> with þe cheke-boon aboue wiþ 24  
ligaturis þat<sup>t</sup> ben stronge & recching<sup>t</sup> & wiþ lacertis, & maketh þe  
cheke-boon meue whanne a man wole, for summe þerof<sup>t</sup> comeþ  
adoun fro þe boonys of þe heed, & ben ioyned wiþ partijs of nerues  
of þe heed, & of nuche, & closip togidere þe cheke-boon. [Summe 28  
comeþ<sup>4</sup>] bineþe aforzens þe brest<sup>t</sup>, and ben medlid wiþ nerues of  
nuche & openeþ þe cheke-boon, & summe comeþ fro þe sidis, &

<sup>2</sup> Lanfranc divides the fourth book into two "doctrines," the one dealing with fractures, the other with dislocations. The scribe of the present translation omits this division and the first chapter of each doctrine. He also puts the chapter on dislocation of the jaw-bone, which was originally the 2nd chapter of the 2nd doctrine immediately after the chapter on fracture of the jaw-bone, still retaining the heading of the 3rd chapter of the first doctrine : "ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest." The two tables of contents show the same order as the original.

<sup>4</sup> Summe comeþ, wanting. Lat. Add. 26106, fol. 96 bk. : "alii veniunt ab inferius versus pectus." The prints differ.



- meueþ þe cheke-boon round, whanne a man couwid.<sup>1</sup> & þis cheke-  
 boon bineþe mai be brouzt of þe ioynct fro þe cheke-boon aboute in  
 .ij. maners : ouþer it goiþ of þe ioynct bihindeward, & þan þe teef  
 4 þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ wiþinne þe teef of þe cheke-  
 boon aboute. & þan he may not opene his moup, & it goiþ out of þe  
 ioynct forward, & þan þe teef þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ  
 forþere out þan þe teef aboute. & he mai not close his moup  
 8 togidere<sup>2</sup> / These signys ben certeyn whanne þe boon is out of his  
 ioynct / It is greet nede for to helpe a man hastily in þis caas ; for  
 if þe <sup>3</sup>cheke-boon be out of ioincte longe, þere ben manie nerues &  
 lacertis & arterijs & veines aboute þat place, & for þis cause it  
 12 wexiþ hard anon. & þis place wole soone take enpostym for  
 divers humours þat wolen falle þerto. & if þer falle an enpostym  
 in þis place, þan, for þe brayn is so niȝ, þer comeþ a frenesie þerof  
 & ofte tyme dieþ / & þerfore if he be hastili holpen, þe boon wole  
 16 liȝtly into þe ioinct aȝen. & þerfore þat ioinct haþ liȝt meuyng /  
 ffor eueri ioinct þat haþ hard meuyng, & he be out of þe ioinct,  
 it wole be hard for to bringe yn aȝen / If it so be þat þe cheke-  
 boon be out of ioinct hindeward, þan þou schalt take þe boon  
 20 first wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & lete a man holde his heed & drawe þe  
 boon forþward.<sup>4</sup> & if it so be þat his moup be closid togidere, þan  
 þou schalt opene his moup wiþ þin hond or with sum oþer instru-  
 ment, & þan take faste þe boon & drawe it to his place aȝen. & in  
 24 þis maner þou schalt knowe whanne it is in his propre place aȝen,  
 if his teef sitten euene, & if he may opene his moup / ¶ If þou  
 miȝt not bringe þe boon to his propre place in þis maner, þan þou  
 muste take a strong boond, & sette it vnder his chyn, þere þou  
 28 <sup>5</sup>settist þi fyngris, & an oþer man mote drawe þe boond strongly &  
 euene, & wiþ a wagge þou muste opene his moup. In þis maner

The disloca-  
 tion of the  
 lower jaw is  
 either back-  
 wards

or forwards.

Help must  
 come soon,  
 [3 lf. 229, bk.]  
 or the place  
 gets indur-  
 ated,  
 and an apos-  
 tema may be  
 formed.

If the disloca-  
 tion is back-  
 wards, draw  
 the bone  
 forwards,

if necessary  
 by means of  
 a strong  
 bandage.  
 [3 lf. 230]

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : in masticando.

<sup>2</sup> Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 18. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b : "The tokenes of þe dislocation inward ben þat þe moup leueþ opene, & þat þe tef of þe neþere chawel goon tofore þe tef of þe vppere chawel. ¶ The tokenes of þe dislocation outward ben þat þe mouth is schut & in no manere may be openyd, & þe seeke may not chewe & þe tef drawe vp toward þe palett, & þer schewiþ in þe vttre party in þe place of þe dislocation an opene outberyng out of mesure, & þe speche is bynomen hym."

<sup>4</sup> Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b : "The dislocation knowe, wheþer it be to þe innere party or þe vttre, a wyse leche oweþ to putte his þumbes wiþinne þe moup of þe seeke, & festene hem vpon þe range-tef of þe neþere iowe of þe seeke, & wiþ þe oþere four fyngres he schal take þe iowe dislocate fro þe vttre, & þat tyme he schal haue a mynystre, which schal holde fast þe heuyd of þe seeke."

pou openynge his mouþ, & he drawing<sup>t</sup> wiþ þe boond as it is afor-  
seid, al at oony<sup>s</sup> wiþouten drede þe boon wole come into his ioynct.<sup>1</sup>

If the disloca-  
tion is for-  
wards,  
let an assist-  
ant draw the  
bone back-  
wards,

and open the  
mouth by a  
wedge.

¶ If it be out of þe ioinct forward, þan pou schalt sette a strong<sup>t</sup>  
boond vpon his chin, þat it hile al þe chin, & lete a man stonde 4  
bihinde him & halde þe boond in hise hondis, & he schal sette his  
knees vpon his schuldris, & he schal drawe þe boon to him wel &  
euenly. & pou schalt putte a wegge in his mouþ, & whanne he  
drawiþ þe boon pou schalt opene his mouþ wiþ þe wegge al at oon 8  
tyme, & in þis maner þe boon schal falle into his ioinct. Whanne  
þe boon is ynne, þan binde it faste wiþ a ligature & with enplastre,  
& lete him haue souping<sup>t</sup> metis, & he schal chewe no mete til þe  
place be al fast / ¶ If it so be þat pou were not at þe first bigyn- 12  
nyng<sup>t</sup>, & þe place is enpostymed, & he haue þe feuere & akyng<sup>e</sup> of  
his heed, þan schau<sup>e</sup> his heed & anynte it wiþ oile of *rosis* & a

In case of  
apostema use  
ointments

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 230, bk.]

to remove the  
apostema and  
the fever,

and then  
reduce the  
dislocated  
bone.

litil vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & pou schalt <sup>2</sup>anynte his heed with  
sum mollificatif, or wiþ dokis grese or wiþ hennys. & pou schalt 16  
worche as miche as pou miȝt for to acesse þe enpostym, & for to  
cure þe feuere, & for to comforte his heed, þat þe frenesie ne come  
not to him / Whanne þe feuere & þe frenesie & þe enpostym be  
remeued awei, þan cure him as it is aforseid //

20

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe prote and of þe brest //

¶ iij. Co.

The cure is  
easy if no  
part of the  
broken bone  
is pressed in.

**T**He forke of þe prote is clepid of *summen* patena, & of *sum-*  
*men* cathena.<sup>4</sup> Sumtyme it is to-broke & nouþer part of þe  
boon ne is not ypressid yn, & þan þe cure þerof is liȝt yn<sup>ow</sup>. 24  
But if þat oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun vndir þat oper,  
þan it is ful hard for to bringe it yn aȝen. Whanne nouþer partie  
is pressid adoun, þan it is noon oper nede for to haue no medicyn  
but stupis wet in white of eiren; & leie it vpon þe brekyng<sup>e</sup> of þe 28  
boon, & binde wel þe place wiþ ligaturis; & his arme of þe same  
side mote be hongid to his necke, & in his arme-pitt pou schalt leie  
a bal of lynnen cloop. & pou muste binde his arme þat he mowe not  
meue his arm <sup>5</sup>toward þe forke of þe brest, & in þis maner he mote 32

Apply band-  
ages and tie  
the arm on  
the injured  
side to the  
neck.

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 231]

<sup>1</sup> Add. 26106, fol. 97: ita quod tu aperiendo et minister trahendo vna hora locum suum intrat, quia sic sine dubio restaurabis.

<sup>3</sup> *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 93, ed. Adams, vol. ii. p. 447. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 3, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, p. 365 b.

<sup>4</sup> *patena*, *cathena*, names for the *furcula*, as it seems peculiar to Lanfranc. The *furcula*, taken to be one bone, comprises the sternal bone and the clavicles. "Catena," chain, is synonymous with "clavicula;" and *patena*, med. Lat. = plate, is a proper denomination of the sternal bone.



be kept til þe boon be al hool. ¶ If it so be þat' oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun, þan a man mote drawe his oon arme, & anoper man his opere arme, & þou schalt wip þin hondis drawe þe boon to his propre place. þan þou muste haue a medicyne consolidatif, & wete þerinne a lynnyn cloop, & hile al þe brekyng' of þe boon þerwip, & leie þervpon faldellas<sup>1</sup> wip white of an ey, & þan binde him as it is aforseid, and his arme to his necke, & in þis maner he schal be kept til he be hool.

If one end of the bone is pressed in, replace it, and apply a medicine.

### ¶ Of brekyng of rigboonys /<sup>2</sup>

**R**igge boonys for her schortnes & for her strongnes ne ben not to-broke, but' if it be wip greet smytyng', & sumtyme þei ben brusid, & þat' makip greet akyng. Also þer fallip manie perels of þe boonys of þe necke if þei ben hurt, lest' nucha be hirt also, & þan it is perel of þe brayn as it is aforseid / If þou seest yuel signes in þat' caas, go awei þerfro. & if þou seest noon yuele signys, þan anointe þe place wip oile of *rosis* hoot' & leie þervpon wolfe, and þanne <sup>3</sup>terbentine medlid wip a litil mastic, & þis medicyne þou schalt vse til þe place be al hool /

¶ iiii. co. If the rig-bone is broken, there is danger that the spine be hurt.

Flee in case of evil symptoms, else apply an ointment. [3 lf. 231, bk.]

¶ The noubre of a mannes ribbis is aforseid in þe anothamie / A mannes ribbis ben to-broke sumtyme wip smytyng' or wip fallyng' / Also þei moun be plied inward & not to-broke. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt knowe wheþir a mannes rib be to-broke or no / Sette þi fyngris vpon þe place & grope softli & presse a litil vp & doun, & if his rib be to-broke, þou schalt heere hym sownie,<sup>4</sup> & he schal haue couzinge & akinge in his side. ¶ It is ful hard for to restore a rib þat' is to-broke, for sumtyme þat' oon parti pliep inward, & þan it is hard for to bringe him into his propre place azen / And summen seien þat' þe pacient' schulde ete metis to swelle him þat' engendriþ wijnd, & wole make þe rib goon into his propre place azen. & summen seien þat' me schulde sette a ventuse, & wip

One knows that a rib is broken by the sound which is heard on pressure.

Some men propose that the patient should take food which produces wind,

<sup>1</sup> *faldella*, med. Lat., diminutive of *falda*, thread.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. de fractura spondilium et costarum.

<sup>4</sup> Gul. de Sal. lib. III., Cap. 5. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "zif it happe þe rybbis to be broken in oo place or in two þat þou schalt wite by touchyng, for þei þat of pristyng down of þe hond vpon þe place or places, þou schalt heere a sown & with þat þe seeke schal suffre penaunce or lettyng of brep, & principally þe tyme of draryng of wynd." The sound, "crepitus," produced by pressure of the hand on the injured place, as a test whether a rib is fractured, is already mentioned in *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 96, ed. Adams, vol. ii., p. 452.

others propose cupping.  
Both are wrong.

[1f. 232]

.1.  
Bleed the patient from the Basilic vein,

readjust the broken rib,

let the patient cough.

Apply a bandage.

If there is strong fever, readjust the rib by operation.

þe drawing<sup>1</sup> þerof<sup>1</sup> þe rib wole rise vp *azen* into his *propre* place /  
But I suppose þis wole more make agreuauunce þan helpe þe *patient* /  
ffor þe .j. wole engendre an hoot en<sup>1</sup>postyme / The .ij. it<sup>1</sup> wole  
drawe to þe place manie humours / If<sup>1</sup> þou wolt<sup>1</sup> take þis cure, þou 4  
schalt<sup>1</sup> do in þis maner : / ffir<sup>1</sup>t þou schalt<sup>1</sup> lete him blood in þe side  
aforzens in þe veyne þat<sup>1</sup> is clepid basilica, & þan in þe same, & þan  
anoynte þin hond wiþ terbentine. & loke if<sup>1</sup> þou miȝt<sup>1</sup> take vp þe rib  
þat<sup>1</sup> is pressid adoun. & þin oper hond þou schalt<sup>1</sup> sette vpon þe 8  
place þat<sup>1</sup> is not<sup>1</sup> pressid adoun. & wiþ þin hond þat<sup>1</sup> is anoyntid  
arere vp his rib. & loke þat<sup>1</sup> þe .ij. endis of þe ribbis þat<sup>1</sup> is to-broke  
come euene togidere, & þan make þe *patient* to couze, for þis þe  
beste maner for to bringe him yn<sup>2</sup> / If<sup>1</sup> þou dredist nouȝt greet 12  
replecioun of his bodi, þou miȝt<sup>1</sup> opene a ventuse whanne þe rib is  
ioyned. & þan þou schalt<sup>1</sup> binde wiþ a boond, & vndir þe boond þou  
schalt<sup>1</sup> leie lynnet or sum oper neische ping<sup>1</sup>. & þou schalt<sup>1</sup> binde  
him in sich a maner þat<sup>1</sup> þe rib þat<sup>1</sup> is to-broke ne mowe not<sup>1</sup> remoue 16  
ne falle adoun *azen*. & þe *patient* schal vse lizt<sup>1</sup> mete as pultes de  
caudarasio,<sup>3</sup> de amido, de tritico, wiþ penides, & he schal drinke  
[4f. 132, bk.] swete wijn temperatli, & þou muste defende<sup>4</sup> him fro wrappe & fro  
crijnge, & fro alle pingis þat<sup>1</sup> wolen make a man to couze. ¶ If it<sup>1</sup> 20  
so be þat<sup>1</sup> þe akynge acese not<sup>1</sup>, & þou ne miȝt<sup>1</sup> not<sup>1</sup> bringe his rib  
as he schulde be, & if<sup>1</sup> he haȝ greet cowȝynge & acces of þe feuere,<sup>5</sup>  
whanne þou hast<sup>1</sup> lete him blood, þan þou muste kutte þe skyn  
aforzens þe rib þat<sup>1</sup> is to-broke, & vnfile þe same rib of al his 24  
fleisch, & þan wiþ instrumentis & wiþ þin hond þou muste drawe  
vp þe rib, & bringe him in his place as he schulde be. & þan þou  
schalt<sup>1</sup> cure þe wounde as it<sup>1</sup> is aforseid / // His dietynge schal be  
as of pluretics til þe feuere & al þe passious ben goon awei // 28

### Of brekyng of þe helpers of þe rigboon.

¶ v. o.  
Fracture of the arm bone near the joint is dangerous.

**A** Diutorium is to-broken ful ofte ouerþwert<sup>1</sup> wiþ breking<sup>1</sup> / þe  
nere þat<sup>1</sup> it<sup>1</sup> be þe ioynct<sup>1</sup>, þe more perilous it<sup>1</sup> is, & þe worse  
for to cure / In þis place I wole telle þee in what<sup>1</sup> maner þou schalt<sup>1</sup> 32  
knowe a brekyng<sup>1</sup>, & in what<sup>1</sup> maner þou schalt<sup>1</sup> restore it<sup>1</sup> *azen*, þat<sup>1</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "make hym eft comze sadly, & vpon þe place þrist down or broken, þou schalt putte a gret ventuse wiþout cuttynge."

<sup>3</sup> Sim. de Janua: "Caudarusium, Spelta, genus frumenti, quod quidam allicam dicunt, quidam Caudarusium."

<sup>5</sup> acces of þe feuere, Lat. si febris accideret.



- it<sup>e</sup> mowe be an ensample to þee in þe breking,<sup>1</sup> if a mannes arme  
 & his leggis & his hiþe-boon ben broken / In þis maner þou schalt<sup>e</sup> Symptoms :  
 knowe : / Lete a man holde his arme <sup>2</sup>wiþ .ij. hondis faste bi þe [<sup>2</sup> If. 233]  
 4 schuldre, & he mot<sup>e</sup> holde him in þat<sup>e</sup> maner þat<sup>e</sup> he mowe nott<sup>e</sup>  
 meue him-silf<sup>e</sup>; & þou schalt<sup>e</sup> stonde tofore him, & take his arme  
 faste bi þe elbowe, & meue his arme hidir & þidir liztli til þou heere The sound heard on moving the arm.  
 8 to-broke.<sup>3</sup> & þis maner asaiyng<sup>e</sup> is good whanne þe brekyng<sup>e</sup> is so  
 priuy þat<sup>e</sup> no partie of þe boon goiþ in no side out / Whanne þou  
 knowist<sup>e</sup> where þe breking<sup>e</sup> is, or þou bigynne ony þing<sup>e</sup> for to worche First prepare all that you require:  
 þeron, make redi alle þi necessarijs þat<sup>e</sup> ben gode for þe bindyng<sup>e</sup>.  
 12 ¶ First<sup>e</sup> þou schalt<sup>e</sup> make stupis þat<sup>e</sup> ben euene, & wete hem in hoot<sup>e</sup> the dressing,  
 water in winter, & in coold water in somer, & þan wrynge out<sup>e</sup> þi  
 stupis þerof<sup>e</sup> & dizte oile of rosis & a defensif<sup>e</sup> of bole, & .ij. longe the oil,  
 boondis þat<sup>e</sup> þei be .iiij. fyngris brood, & lynnen clooþ þat<sup>e</sup> mowe go the bandages,  
 16 aboute al his arme, & a strong<sup>e</sup> corde; & þe corde wole be þe better a strong cord,  
 if it<sup>e</sup> be playn, & not<sup>e</sup> round. & þou muste dizte smale 3erdis of and splints.  
 drie tree, þat<sup>e</sup> be strong<sup>e</sup> & sotil. & whanne þou hast<sup>e</sup> dizt<sup>e</sup> alle þese  
 þingis redi, þan sette þe boon in his place as liztli — — —<sup>4</sup> with Reduce the fracture,  
 20 þin hond wiþouten greuance. & þan take <sup>5</sup>oold soft<sup>e</sup> lynnen clooþ, [<sup>5</sup> If. 233, bk.]  
 & wete it<sup>e</sup> in oile of rosis, and wijnde it<sup>e</sup> aboute his arme. & vpon  
 þis leie a clooþ wiþ medicyns consolidatif, þat<sup>e</sup> schal be seid in þe  
 antidotarie for brekyng<sup>e</sup> of boonys; & þerfore þese .ij. lynnen  
 24 cloþis moten be large for to hile al þe brekyng<sup>e</sup> / And þou muste  
 haue cloutis in .ij. sidis of þe place þat<sup>e</sup> is to-broke, & þervpon two clouts and wadding,  
 þou muste leie faldellam in boþe sidis euene, & wet<sup>e</sup> in gleire of  
 an ey. & alle þese þingis þou schalt<sup>e</sup> binde wiþ þi boond, þat<sup>e</sup> tie a bandage round the limb,  
 28 schal be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris, & long<sup>e</sup> þat<sup>e</sup> he mowe goon  
 aboute manifoold. & sewe þe foldyng<sup>e</sup> of þe boond þat<sup>e</sup> he mowe  
 not<sup>e</sup> vndo / Vpon þis ligature þou schalt<sup>e</sup> leie faldellam maad of  
 stupis, & he schal oonly be wet<sup>e</sup> in water & leid vpon. & hervpon

<sup>1</sup> MS. has a full-stop between *breking* and *if*. Lat.: ut sit tibi exemplum in ruptura brachii, crurium et coxarum.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: et cum tactu locum fracture cognoueris manifeste. Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 37: "When þe adiutorie, or þe boon fro þe elbowe to þe schuldre is broken, it schal be knowe to þe touchyng<sup>e</sup> in þis: The leche schal drawe þe hurt place wiþ boþe his hondes, & putte þat oon hond vpon þe place hurt, & þat oper wiþinne. ¶ And haue he a mynystre, whiche schal bere vp togidere þe elbowe wiþ þe arm. And þanne þe leche, meuyng<sup>e</sup> softly his handis, schal heere þe soun of þe broken boon, or he schal feele þe disseuerynge of þe parties of þe broken boon."

<sup>4</sup> Some words are wanting. Lat.: quantumcumque potes leuius operando.

and splints  
secured by  
a cord,  
which shall  
be strained  
but moder-  
ately.

[3 lf. 234]

A tight ban-  
dage may  
cause spasm,  
and prove  
fatal.

**Nota.**  
Keep the limb  
so bandaged  
for 10 days;  
then look if  
the bone is  
adjusted,  
and bandage  
it again.

[5 lf. 234, bk.]

Sometimes  
one or both  
the bones of  
the fore-arm  
are broken,

or the bones  
of the fingers.

pou schalt leie þi splentis<sup>1</sup>; & wiþ a corde þat be brood, & not round, þei schulen be bounden þervpon. & pou schalt streyne middilly,<sup>2</sup> & not to faste / Herof pou muste be war, þat streynynge þat is in þis place & in opere placis ne schulen not be so harde þat 4 þe place bicomme blak, ne þat he mowe fele his lyme / Ther ben summen þat streynen so faste a manys lyme, þat þe spirit of me<sup>3</sup>uynge, ne þe spirit of lijf mai not come þerto. & þan þei seþ þat þe place is to-swolle, & askip of þe patient wher he haue miche akyng. 8 & þei supposen to do awei þe akyng wiþ þe greet binding, & in þis maner þe lyme wole rotie, & in þis maner þe patient mai falle into a feuer & þe spasme, & manye men dieþ þeron / But pou schalt worche in þis maner / Whanne pou seest þis caas, vbinde þe lyme, 12 & as miche as pou miht do awei þe swelling & þe akyng. Aboue þe brekyng towardis the schuldre leie a defensif of bole // If þer come noon akyng ne swellinge, þan pou schalt lete it sitte so boounde .x. daies in winter, & .vij. daies in somer / & þan vbinde 16 it softly þat þe lyme ne meue not / & loke þat þe boon sitte wel; & þan binde it al togidere azen as þow didist first. Whanne þe boon is wel soudid, þan pou schalt take stupis & wete hem in good wijn hoot,<sup>4</sup> & leie þervpon. ¶ Whanne it is soudid, if þer leue 20 ony þing of hardnes in þe same place, þan do it awei aftir þe teching þat pou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie /

Sumtyme þe boonys of a mannys arme ben to-broke <sup>5</sup>boþe, & sumtyme þat oper. & whanne þei ben boþe broken, it is þe more 24 worse / If it so be þat þer be to-broke but oon boon, þan it is no nede for to do but astellas,<sup>6</sup> for þe boon þat is hool wole saue þe ligature wel ynow; / The boonys of a mannes fyngris ben sumtyme to-broke, þan pou schalt sette euene þe boon, & binde him wiþ 28 astelles þat ben wel maad þerfore. & þou; þe fyngr ne be but a litil lyme, 3itt pou muste haue good kunnyng & good witt for to digte it wel / Dietyng in alle brekyng of boonys schal be first sotil, & aftirward more greet, as it is aforseid //

32

### Of breking of þe boon of þe coxe.

vjo. eo /  
In case of  
fracture of  
the hip-bone  
or any bone  
of the leg,

**W**Hanne þe boon of þe coxe is to-broke or ony boon of þe foot, þan pou schalt worche in al maner þingis as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of adiutorie & of þe fyngris / But þis pou

<sup>1</sup> MS. *spletis*.

<sup>2</sup> *middilly*, mediocriter.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: in bono vino calido.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: non est tibi necessarium astellas ponere.



muste adde more *perto*, þat whanne þou hast brouȝt yn þe boon of  
 þe leg<sup>1</sup>, þan þou muste make an instrument, þat is clepid *albiolum* apply a splint  
 ouþer coutelle; & it schal be schape in þe maner of a *crois*.<sup>1</sup> & formed to the  
 shape of the  
 leg.  
 4 þerof his leg<sup>1</sup> mote be sett, so þat his leg<sup>1</sup> mowe <sup>2</sup>bowe to no side / [<sup>2</sup> lf. 235]  
 Also it is necessarie þat þe patient ligge also stille as he mai  
 wiþouten remeuynȝ, til þe boon be fast // But þou muste be wel  
 war herof whanne þat a mannes leg<sup>1</sup> is to-broke, ouþer his hipe, Take care  
 that the leg  
 does not get  
 shortened.  
 8 þou muste be war in þe soudyng<sup>1</sup>, þat oon leg<sup>1</sup> be not schorter þan  
 þe oþer / But þou schalt mesure hem algate boþe lich long<sup>1</sup>, & in þe  
 same mesure kepe hem /

Of þe cure whanne a man is smiten in þe rigbon  
 12 or ribbis.

**I**T bifallip sumtyme þat a man is smyten or a man fallip, &  
 þan tendre boonys as þe cheke-boon & ribbis, & [in] children ¶ vij. c. /  
 Tender bones,  
 especially  
 those of chil-  
 dren, become  
 bent instead  
 of breaking.  
 16 boonys of her arme & of her leggis, for þe tendirnes of þes  
 lymes, þei wolen folde & not breke / In þis maner þou schalt  
 bringe hem aȝen / In þis maner anynte þin hond wiþ  
 terbentyne, & take þat boon & presse it as it is forseid in þe Straighten  
 them by pres-  
 sure,  
 20 brekyng<sup>1</sup> of a boon.<sup>3</sup> & if it be a rib, þan þou schalt presse  
 him vpward, as it is foreseid. & if it be in þe arme ouþer  
 þe leg<sup>1</sup>, þan þou muste make *ligaturis perfore* & instrument<sup>1</sup> by bandaging  
 the limb to  
 a wooden  
 splint,  
 of tree, þat be euene, & *perto* his arme ouþer his leg<sup>1</sup> schal be  
 bounden & pressid, for to make him euene. & or þou do þus, þou  
 24 schalt make a <sup>4</sup>vomentacioun of camomille, malue, & bismalue, [<sup>4</sup> lf. 235, bk.]  
*fenigreci*, *seminis lini* soden in water; & þan anynte him wiþ oile  
 of lilie, or wiþ gandris grese, or hen-grese, & þan presse his arme  
 as it is aforseid. Also þou miȝt vse þis medicyn, þat is aproued  
 28 ofte tyme / leie a plate of yuer<sup>5</sup> in þat side þat þe boon is aplyed, & or lay a plate  
 of ivory on  
 the limb,

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: in albiolo seu coutella que sit ad modum cruris formata. The translator read "crucis."

*albiola*, (alueolus) *um*. "ventre, panier, benne, flancs d'un navire."—Dufr.

*coutella*. *κοτύλη*, anything hollow, the cup of a joint, especially of the hip-joint. It.: *cotila*. Tomm.

*Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI, Sect. 106, ed. Adams, vol. 2, p. 470, describes the way of arranging a fractured leg by means of "a canal either of wood or earthenware." Adams l. c. gives references from Hippocrates, Celsus and Galen, for the use of these machines.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: Si maxilla fuerit, manum seu digitos in os pone, premens ad extra sicut diximus in fractura, manum aliam termentina uel pice illinitam suauiter ab extra preme et citius eleua.

<sup>5</sup> O.Fr. *yvoyre*.

by whose  
attraction  
it becomes  
straight,

þe vertu of þe yuer wole drawe þe boon as it schulde be, & bringe  
þe boon into his propre plite /

Of þe greuounes of þe rigboon whanne he is out  
of ioyncte /

4

¶ iij.º. /  
vij

The liga-  
ments on the  
neck are  
weak,

and the bones  
are easily  
dislocated.

Dislocation  
of the 1st  
vertebra—  
decollation—

[2 lf. 236]  
causes death  
by want of  
breath.

If the 7th and  
8th vertebrae  
are out of  
joint, the  
ways of food  
and breath  
are stopped.

The bone  
must be  
replaced im-  
mediately  
after the  
accident.

Nota

Treatment:  
Press down  
the shoulders,  
and draw up  
the head.

The displace-  
ment may be  
inwards

[3 lf. 236, bk.]

or outwards,

**D**Islocacioun of þe rigboonys is a greuouus sijknes. It is aforseid  
in anathomia how manie boonys ben in þe necke & in þe rigt.  
& it is aforseid in what maner / The firste boon in a mannes necke  
is bounden with manye feble ligaturis, & þe ligaturis þerof ben 8  
recching<sup>1</sup> & feble, þat þei ne schulde lette þe meuyng of þe heed /  
þe boonys þat ben in a mannes necke beþ more feble þan ony oþer  
rigboonys, & þerfore þei goiþ listly out of þe ioyncte, & it is ful  
greet drede þerof / If þe hizeste boon of þe necke be oute of þe 12  
ioynct, it is clepid decollacio, & it sleep a man anoon; for þat oþer  
boon þerof pressiþ yn & stoppiþ a man<sup>2</sup>nes breeþ anoon, & in þis  
maner it sleep a man anoon / And if þe ioynct þat is bitwixe þe  
vij. boon & þe .viij. be out of ioyncte, þan it wole stoppe þe weie 16  
of his mete, and it wole lette þe weie of a mannes breeþ also / And  
if ony boon of þe rigboon þat is bineþe þe .viij. boon be out of  
ioyncte, but if he be þe rapere holpen, he schal lese his meuyng  
for euermore<sup>3</sup> / And þerfore it is necessarie as faste þat a mannes 20  
rigboon is out of þe ioynct, þat it be brouzt yn azen anoon, &  
principali þe firste boon of þe necke, for disiunccioun of þat boon  
wole sle a man anoon, as it is forseid / If þou be in þe place, take  
þe patient bi þe heeris, & sette þi feet vpon his schuldris, & so þou 24  
schalt drawe vpward wiþ þin hondis, & presse adoun wiþ þi feet, &  
bringe þe boon into his ioynct azen / Whanne þe .vij. rigboon<sup>4</sup> is  
out of his ioynct fro þe .viij. rigboon, itt mai ful litil tyme lenger  
abide. & if it so be þat þis boon be pressid swiþe ynward, itt wole 28  
sle a man hastily, & it wole ful late be curid / If it so be þat it  
mai be curid, þer is noon oþer cure þeron, but presse adoun his  
schuldris<sup>5</sup> & drawe vp þe heed, as it is aforseid / If it so be þat  
ony of þese boonys be out of þe ioynct outward, þat falliþ ful 32

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: hec ligatura fuit magis alius laxa.

<sup>3</sup> Gul. de Sal., cap. 19. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b.: "And of þe spondiles of þe  
brest, for lettynge brouzt in in þe lacertis & muscules kyndely & wilfully  
menynge þe brest, þe lunge is lettid in his meuyng, & þer falliþ hasty wynd  
& litel, & rterlyche dep. Of þe dislocacion of þe oþere spondiles, þat ben 4,  
þer falleþ an oþer greuauance in þe reynes & þe bladdre, & akþe in þoo  
membris, & peyne of pyssynge or lettynge of þe weyes of þe vryne, & aposteme  
in þe place, & feure, & dep."

<sup>4</sup> rig, in margin.



- seelde, þan sette þe boonys euene, & drawe his heed & presse adoun  
hise schuldris / If it so be þat ony rigboon bineþe þe .viij. boon of  
þe necke be out of ioyncte, if þe boon go ynward, it nile take no  
4 cure til it sle him / And if it ne be not al out of þe ioyncte, but  
it pressip nucha, alle þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng / If  
it so be þat þe boon be out of þe ioyncte & go outward, it is in-  
curable, for he schal be euermore gibbosis, *id est* broken-riggid. his  
8 is þe cure þerof, if it mai be curid / Arere vp þe boon & presse it  
als so miche as þou miȝt, wiþ þin hond, ouþer presse it yu with a  
playn tree, & studie þou in þi witt as miche as þou miȝt for to  
presse it in aȝen; & leie þervpon oon of þe consolidatiuis, & binde  
12 it faste / If it so be þat þere leue ony hardnes after þe tyme þat  
þe place is soudid, þan make an enplastre of mollificatiuis þerto, þat  
þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie; & anoynte him wiþ oynementis,  
þat þou schalt fynde <sup>2</sup>in þe same place in þe chapter of molli-  
16 ficatiuis /

An inward displacement below the 8th vertebra causes either death or loss of motion.

In case of outward displacement, the patient remains hump-backed.

Try to reduce the bone by manipulation.

If some hardness is left, apply a plaster and an ointment.

[¶ If. 237]

### Of þe schuldre out of his place.<sup>3</sup>

- A Mannes schuldre mai go out of þe ioynct in .iiij. maners /  
Oon maner is þis, whanne þe heed of þe boon of adiutorie,  
20 þat is þe poynt of þe schuldre, falliþ adoun vnder þe arme-pitt; &  
sumtyme he goiþ of þe ioynct forþward, but þat falliþ ful selden /  
The .iiij.: he goiþ out of þe ioynct vpward; & bakward he ne mai  
not out of þe ioynct, for þe schuldre boon holdiþ itt faste in.<sup>4</sup>  
24 ¶ The .j. maner þou miȝt liztliche knowe bi touching & bi siȝt, &  
þou schalt fele þe boon in his arme-pitt, & þan þere wole be a greet  
pitt aboue. ¶ If he be out of the ioynct forþward, þan his arme  
wole sitte backward, & tofore þou schalt se a greet pitt / ¶ If he be  
28 out of þe ioynct vpward, þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: his  
elbowe ne mai not be drawe along fro his body. & if þou wolt  
drawe him along, þou schalt fynde an obstacle / The .j. maner if it  
be a child, þan þou schalt take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þi  
32 riȝthond vnder his <sup>5</sup>arme-pitt, & drawe his arme wiþ þi lifthond, &  
presse þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi riȝthond; & in þis maner þou  
schalt bringe in þe boon of a child wel ynow. ¶ If it be a miche

<sup>ix</sup>  
¶ iij. c° / The head of the humerus is dislocated, 1. downwards into the armpit; 2. forwards; 3. upwards.

The signs are an outward depression,

and an inability to use the arm.

Treatment: 1. Reduction is effected by extension of [¶ If. 237, bk.] the arm and pressure on the shoulder.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *pressid*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI, Sect. 114, ed. Adams, vol. II, p. 485.

<sup>4</sup> *Gul. de Sal.*, Sl. 277, fol. 43 b.: "For þe ofteste þe heued of þe adiutorie is dislocate in þe schuldre toward þe place þat is called titillicum to þe for-party, & to þe hynder party anentis þe sparde-boon, it is dislocate in no maner."

Reduction  
in a grown-  
up man is  
effected by  
means of a  
wooden ball.

Another way  
of reduction.

2. The  
shoulder is  
drawn up-  
wards with  
[1 ff. 238]  
a towel, and  
the arm is  
drawn down-  
wards.

3. Reduction  
is effected in  
a similar way.

When the  
bone is  
reduced,

leave the arm  
bandaged  
through 10  
daies.

[2 ff. 238, bk.]  
If you come  
some time  
after the ac-  
cident, the  
patient must  
take a bath  
before reduc-  
tion is tried.

man, lete him ligge adoun streit, & take a round bal of tree, & folde him wip a cloop, & leie it vnder his arme-pitt, & binde him pere faste, & take his hond & drawe it adounward, ouper lete anoper man drawe it adounward, & helpe þou wip þin hond for to 4 bringe yn þe boon, so þat þou schalt presse, & þe man drawe al in oon tyme / If it ne mai not be doon in þis maner, þan ordeine a long perche, & make it fast in .ij. wallis of þe hous, ouper .ij. postis of þe hous; & in þe middil of þe perche make a pitt, & in þe same 8 pitt leie þe forseid bal, & þe hiznes of þis perche schal be hizer þan a man is long, & þan sette vnder his feet a stool. & loke þat þe same bal sitte vnder his arme, & lete a strong man holde doun his arme and his hond, & take awei þe stool vnder his feet, & in þis 12 maner þe boon wole come into his ioynct / ¶ If it be out of þe ioynct forþward, þan take a strong towail, & leie him vnder his arme, & lete þe oon ende go forþ bihinde his rigge, <sup>1</sup> & þat oper ende forþ bi his brest, & lete a strong man holde þe .ij. endis of þe 16 towail, & þan binde his arme wip anoper boond aboue þe elbowe; & take it anoper strong man, & lete þese .ij. men holde & drawe al at onys; þan þou schalt with þi .ij. hondis, whanne þei drawip, presse þe boon into his ioynct / Whanne þe boon is in his ioynct, 20 þan þei schulen leue her drawyng softly. ¶ In þe same maner, whanne he is oute of ioyncte vpward, he schal be bounden, & oon man schal drawe him abacward wip þe towal, & þat oper man schal drawe his arme adounward, & þou schalt helpe for to presse yn þe 24 boon wip þin hondis. & whanne þe boon is in his ioynct, þan wete a pece of linnen cloop in oile of rosis, & þan perypon leie a medicyne consolidatif, & þan leie perypon faldellas wet in gleire of eiren, & binde him faste with boondis þat his arme ne mowe not 28 out of þe ioynct azen, & so he schal be bounden .x. daies. And if þer come ony enpostym or icching, þan þou muste vnbinde him azen, & do awei þe icching ouper þe enpostym, and binde it azen as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat <sup>2</sup>þou ne were not at þe firste 32 bigynnyng, þan þou muste make þe patient a bap of malue & bismalue, fenigrec, lynseed. & whanne he is wel bapid in þis bap, þan anynte him wip an oynement laxatif. & in þis maner he muste be bapid manie daies til þe place be wel moistid; & þan 36 bringe þe boon into his ioynct, as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat þou come at þe firste bigynnyng, whanne a boon is out of þe ioynct, þan þou schalt not bape þe lyme in hoot water in no maner.



- ¶ A mannes arme wole out of þe ioynct litzlich at þe elbowe,<sup>1</sup> Nota.  
 & litzly it wole be brouzt into his ioynct azen / But he mai be out of þe ioynct in .ij. maners, as forþward & hindeward, & boþe haueþ Dislocation of the elbow may be forwards or backwards.  
 4 diuers cure / In þis maner þou schalt do whanne he is out of þe ioynct forþward: sette stupis in þe folding of his arme,<sup>2</sup> & þan binde a boond þervpon, & lete a man drawe þat boond bakward Treatment, of a dislocation forwards,  
 — —,<sup>3</sup> & þan lete a strong man holde adiutorium, lest his schuldre of a dislocation backwards.  
 8 go out of þe ioynct. & þan anynte þin hond wip oile of rosis, & lete þe .ij. men drawe al at oon tyme, & þan presse yn þe boon into his ioynct wip þi .ij. <sup>[4 ff. 239]</sup> hondis, & þan hange an heuy peis at his hond. & if þer leueþ any greet ping, lete it be til anoper tyme.  
 12 & þan anynte þin hond & presse it in azen, & þan þou schalt binde him with boondis & faldellis, & oile of rosis & consolidatiuis, as it is aforseid / But of þis caas þou muste be war: but if his arme be brouzt into þe ioynct hastili, þere wole engendre in þe place If the arm is not soon reduced, an apostema will be formed.  
 16 an hoot enpostym, & þan aftirward it wole be ful hard to bringe it into his ioynct azen.

- ¶ Rasceta, þat is þe ioynct of þe hand / as it is forseid in anathamia, is conteyned of manie boonys & of manie recching 20 ligaturis,<sup>5</sup> as it was necessarie for þe grete meuyng of þe hond. þis place wole litzly out of þe ioynct, & litzli it wole come yn azen. Rasceta has many bones and ligaments.  
 ¶ But if a mannes hond be out of þe ioyncte longe, þe place wole enpostym, & þan it wole be hard for to bringe it in azen. ¶ In þe The wrist-joint is frequently dislocated.  
 24 firste bigynnyng take his arme wip þi lifthond, & sette þe boon into þe ioynct as it is aforseid, & binde it in al maners as it is aforseid in opere ioinctis. ¶ Also if a mannes fyngir be out of ioyncte, Dislocated fingers are easily reduced.  
 it is but lizt for to putte it <sup>[6 ff. 239, bk.]</sup> in azen / In þe same maner þou schalt  
 28 binde a mannes fyngir as it is aforseid in opere placis / Ther ben

<sup>1</sup> The Original says just the contrary: *difficile dislocatur, et ita difficile restauratur*. The translator further leaves out a passage similar to the following one, quoted from the Engl. translation of Gul. de Salic.: "*The dislocacioun or restorynge of þis place is ryzt dredeful, for þe makynge of it. For nht, þer ben smale boones & harynge schapp of a rolle or polyne, to drave with water of wellis, whiche sumtyme, ouper wip difficulte, or in no manere ben restoriad.*"

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: in curvatura ubi brachium plicari solebat.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 98: " & fac quod minister trahat stupham seu bindam ad posteriora firmiter et suaviter: et tu manum quam errexeras, plica violenter: vt oppositum tangat pluries humerum: quoniam tunc sine dubio est reducta. Si vero fuerit ad posteriora, fac quod fortis minister teneat adiutorium. et. cet."

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: multis ossibus composita et ligamentis pluribus tamen laxis coniuncta.

Do not put  
the limb in  
hot water  
at the first  
beginning.

manie men þat whanne a mannis lyme is out of ioynt, þei wolen sette þe lyme in hoot water, & seien þat it wole þe better come into his ioint azen / But þou schalt wite þis, þat hoot watir in þe firste bigynnyng makip þe lyme recche, & febliþ it & drawip þerto 4 manye humours / & þefore þou ne schalt do in þis maner, but þou schalt comforte þe lyme wiþ oile of *rosis*, & sette him into his ioint anoon, & defende as miche as þou mizt, þat þere come noon enpos- tym þerto / But if it so be, þat þou ne come not at þe firste 8 bigynnyng, & þe place bicometh hard, þan make him a fomentacioun wiþ a decoccioun of þingis þat makip moist & resolueþ as it is aforseid /

### Of the haunche out of his place.<sup>1</sup> - 12

¶ v. c.

The hip-joint is subject to four dislocations, arising from internal or external causes.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 240]

1. Internal causes.

When too much fluid gathers in the box of the haunch, the thigh-bone is easily dislocated.

The acetabulum is more or less concave, the concavity prevents dislocation.

2. External causes.

Symptoms of dislocation inwards,

[<sup>3</sup> If. 240, bk.]

of dislocation forwards,

**A**L þe coniunccioun of þe haunche is tofore seid in þe chapitre of anathamia. And þis place mai go out of þe ioint in .iiij. maners: as ynward & outward, forþward & backward; & sumtyme it cometh of causis wiþinneforþ, & sumtyme of causis without- 16 forþ / <sup>2</sup>Of causis wiþinneforþ: as humours of longe tyme haue falle þerto, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of dolour of iointis / Ther is in þis place a greet box, & conteneþ a greet place, þat berip al þe bodi, & it is a place þat takith miche moisture & greet superfluite 20 of humouris, & whanne þer fallip manie superfluitees to þat place, & þe pacient is not purgid þerof, & trauailip, þan humours rotip in þat place, & þe ligaturis recchip along, & in þis maner vertebrium goip out of his ioint / And þis caas in diuers men hap diuers 24 causis / ffor summen haueþ a box in her haunche swiþe holowe, & þat wole not fulliztliche out of þe ioint / And summen ne haueþ not so holowe boxis, & þan if þe place be ful of yuele humours, þan þe boon wole liztliche out of þe iointe, & it wole liztli into þe 28 ioint azen, & þan it wole liztly out azen. ¶ Of causis wiþoutforþ, as of wrastyng or of smityng or of sum oper þing þat makip vertebrium goon out of þe ioynt wiþ violence. ¶ This is þe signe whanne it is out of ioynte ynward: whanne þou myzt fele þe 32 poynt of þe boon in his flank, & his feet <sup>3</sup> & his knee turned outward, & þe pacient schal not opene his leg ne his hipe // If it goip out of þe ioynt forþward, þan his leg wole waxe miche shorter, & he schal not bringe his hele to grounde, but oonly his toos. ¶ If 36

<sup>1</sup> Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. 118, l. c., p. 498. *Aricenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 1, Cap. 24.



it be out of þe ioynct<sup>e</sup> baeward, þan his hele wole wexe long<sup>e</sup>, & his  
toos schorte, & he schal bringe no þing<sup>e</sup> of his foot to grou[n]de,  
but his hele //

and back-  
wards.

- 4 Ther ben manie maners of diuers menys for to bringe boоны  
into her ioynct<sup>e</sup> azen, but among<sup>e</sup> alle I holde þis maner þe beste for  
þis place: take a long<sup>e</sup> schete þat be not brood, & do bitwixe þe  
patient leggis, & lete þat oon ende go bifore his brest, & þat oþer  
8 bihinde his rig<sup>e</sup>, & make þe .ij. endis fast to a post, & þe patient  
schal ligge vpon a plain place, & þou schalt binde al his hiþe aboue  
his knee, & þan þe leg<sup>e</sup> softly adounward, & to alle þese boondis  
make faste a corde, & lete þe moost fastenyng<sup>e</sup> be in þe hiþe aboue  
12 þe knee, & þan lete oon strong<sup>e</sup> man or ij. drawe þe corde euenlich  
& harde withoute ony pluching<sup>e</sup>.<sup>1</sup> & þan þou schalt wiþ þin hondis  
putte þe boon into his ioyncte. & whanne þe <sup>2</sup>boon is ynne, þan  
bidde hem lete go þe corde softli azen, & leie hise feet euene togidere.  
16 for if hise feet wollen ligge euene togidere, it is a certein signe þat  
þe boon is in his ioynct<sup>e</sup>. & if hise feet wolen not sitte euene in þe  
ioynct<sup>e</sup>, it is a signe þat þe boon is not in his ioynct<sup>e</sup> / whanne þe  
boon is in his ioynct<sup>e</sup>, binde faste his hiþe, & lete þe patient ligge  
20 stille til he be al restorid / In alle curis of dislocacioun þou hast  
pleiner teching<sup>e</sup>.<sup>3</sup>

The best way  
of reduction.  
A towel put  
under the  
thigh is fixed  
to the wall  
(to effect  
counter-ex-  
tension),  
whilst exten-  
sion of the  
leg is made.

[¶ If. 241]

- ¶ Dislocacioun of þis place þat comþ of causis wiþinneforþ, it  
is ful hard for to bringe it in azen. & þou þe boon be brouzt in  
24 azen, wiþ a litil cause it wole goon out azen. & þerfore þer is no  
cure þerof, but awoide his bodi, & make him cauterijs as it is afor-  
seid in þe chapitre of cauterijs.

There is no  
radical cure  
for a disloca-  
tion arising  
from internal  
causes.

- ¶ A mannys knee is sumtyme out of ioyncte, & sumtyme þe  
28 round boon þat is þervpon goiþ out of his place / Signys whanne  
a mannes knee is out of ioyncte ben open ynow<sup>3</sup>. & if þe round  
boon be out of his place, þou miȝte liȝtlich knowe it. ¶ In þis  
maner þou schalt bringe a mannes knee into his ioynct<sup>e</sup> azen / Lete  
32 a strong<sup>e</sup> man holde faste his hiþe, and <sup>4</sup>anoþer man his leg<sup>e</sup>. & þou  
schalt wiþ þin hondis presse faste þe boon into his propre place. &  
if þe place be enpostymed, first þou muste do awei þe enpostym, &  
þan bringe þe knee into his place azen. ¶ If þe round boon be out  
36 of his place, sette þe boon into his place, & þan binde faste wiþ  
boondis, & þan binde his leg<sup>e</sup> faste vp to his hiþe bi an hour, & þan

Sometimes  
occurs a  
Dislocation  
of the knee-  
joint, and a  
Dislocation  
of the Patella.  
Reduction  
is accom-  
plished by  
[¶ If. 241, bk.]  
pressing the  
boon into its  
place.

In the same  
way reduce a  
dislocated  
patella.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: non ductu violenti nec tractu.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 99: In omnibus aliis curam consequentibus est in precedentibus bene doctus.

vnbinde his leg<sup>r</sup> fro his hipe, & þan binde faste þe round boon þat it ne moue not fro his propre place, & in þat maner lete it sitte, for it wole bicomme fast anon.

Reduction of Dislocation of the Ankle-Joint.

¶ If þe ioynct<sup>r</sup> of a mannes foot be out of ioyncte or his toos, 4  
þou schalt do þe cure in þe same maner as it is aforseid in þe hond & in þe fyngris.<sup>1</sup> ¶ þoruȝ þe help of god wiþout which is no þing fulfillid, þe .iiij. tretis is fulfillid. ¶ Now I wole bigynne þe .v. tretis þat schal be clepid þe antidotarie of this book. // 8

[<sup>2</sup> If. 242.]

No man could enumerate all the medicines, only God knows them.

**I**N þe fifte tretis clepid þe antidotarie of þis book, I þinke to 12  
putte medicyns boþe symple & compound / þat falliþ for cirurgie & beþ necessarie þerfore / But I ne mai not sette alle, for þer is no man þat can telle alle þe noumbre of medicyns but oonli 12  
god / Neþeles I wole sette medicyns in þis antidotarie þat I haue longe vsid, & I lernede hem of wise doctouris & of philosophis, & alle þei ben aproued /

Here bigynneþ þe tretise of repercussiuis // 16

¶ eo jo  
Repercussives are used for hot apostemes, especially if they are in a noble limb.

Repercussives are understood in a wider or stricter sense. [<sup>4</sup> If. 242, bk.]

Some are very cold, and are called Stupefactiua.

Some are less cold but dry:

Stiptica.

**R**Epercussiuis bifalliþ for hoot apostymes, & principal whanne it bigynneþ in a noble lyme: as in þe herte, oupir in þe brayn, oupir in þe heed, oupir in þe lyuere, þe splen & þe stomac, reynes, ballokis, & in þe bladdre // It schal alwei be pin 20  
entencioun for to putte awei greuous mater fro a noble lyme into anoper place. ¶ Whanne þou wolt worche wiþ repercussiuis, þou muste take hede to .x. condiciouns þat ben sett in þe .iiij. tretis in þe general chapitre of enpostyms / ¶ Repercussif is seid in .ij. maners: 24  
as large & streit<sup>3</sup> / large is seid: as eueri medicyne maad of coold herbis for to aquenche hoot<sup>4</sup> causis. Streit is seid, whanne it putt awei þe mater & is not swipe coold // Of repercussiuis þere ben 28  
manie degrees of cooldnes / Ther ben summe so coold, þat a man mai not fele his lyme, & þan it is clepid stupefactiua<sup>5</sup> / & þis þou schalt vse whanne þer is þing þat greueþ more þan þe mater. ¶ Whanne þou ne dredist not hoot qualite oonli, but þou dredist 32  
þe mater, þan þou schalt vse medicyns þat ben coold & drie, þat þei mowe tempere þe complexioun of þe lyme, & wiþ þe vertu of 32  
stiptica þei wolen comforte þe lyme,<sup>6</sup> & þese ben propirli clepid repercussiuis / Whanne þou hast entencioun oonli for to make

<sup>1</sup> MS. repeats this sentence.

<sup>3</sup> large & streit. See p. 305, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> Vigon transl. Traheron Interpr.: "Stupefactiue. That, that hathe strengthe to astonie, and take awaye felynge."

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: et sua stipticitate uirtutem membri confortant.



- coold, þan it is no force þouȝ þi medicyn be not<sup>t</sup> stiptica / But  
 whanne þou wolt<sup>t</sup> make ony repercussiuus, it is necessarie þat<sup>t</sup> þei  
 be coold & drie. ¶ Medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben coold & repercussiuus, summe  
 4 ben simple & summe ben compound / Of simple medicyns, summe  
 ben of herbis, & summe ben of trees, & summe ben leeuës, &  
 summe ben rotis, & summe ben seedis, & summe ben flouris, &  
 summe ben greynes<sup>1</sup> of minerals, & summe ben watris, & summe  
 8 ben oilis. And summe þerof I wole sette in þese bokis þat<sup>t</sup> ben  
<sup>2</sup>greetli in vss toward us / And þere ben medicyns coold & moist<sup>t</sup> [<sup>2</sup> lf. 243]  
 þat<sup>t</sup> þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> vse for to atempere þe complexioun of lymes þat<sup>t</sup> ben  
 distemp[er]id in hete & drienes. ¶ Malua, capillus<sup>3</sup> veneris, psil-  
 12 lium, portulaca, atriplex. Mercurialis,<sup>4</sup> Rapa, cucurbita, Melones,  
 Citruli,<sup>5</sup> Semen malue, seminis iiij<sup>or</sup>. frigidorum, Semper via, lactuca  
 ortulana<sup>6</sup> ¶ Iusquiamus, Mandragora, Papauere, argentum viuum,  
 f. & h. in iiij.<sup>7</sup> ¶ Oilis coold & moist<sup>t</sup>: Oleum violacium, Oleum  
 16 nenupharinum,<sup>8</sup> Oleum de lilijs albis, Oleum mirtinum. Istis<sup>9</sup>  
 medicinis potest vti quum intendis infrigidare sine expulsiōe ut  
 dictum est // þese medicyns þou miȝtist<sup>t</sup> vse whanne þou entendist<sup>t</sup>  
 for to make coold wiþouten expulsioun of þe mater as it is forseid.  
 20 ¶ Medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben symple coold & drie, þat<sup>t</sup> ben clepid verry  
 repercussiuus ben þese / Solatrum, crassula maior & minor,<sup>10</sup> virga  
 pastoris / vmbilicus veneris, cicorea, Endiua, Gramen, Epatica,<sup>11</sup>  
 Ipoquistidos, veruene, Semper via, Corigiola,<sup>12</sup> Sanguinaria, Edera,  
 24 Acetosa, Scariola, plantago maior & minor, Nenuphar. De granis

Repercussive  
medicines are  
either simple  
or compound.  
The simple  
medicines.

Herba.

Oilis.

Medicines  
that are cold  
and dry, or  
Repercus-  
sives in a  
strict sense.

<sup>1</sup> The translator misunderstood the Lat. genera mineralium.

<sup>3</sup> MS. capillis.

<sup>4</sup> Add. 15,236, fol. 4 b.: "*Linochites, mercurialis, idem. G. mercuria, A. smerewourth.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 116: "*linozostis g<sup>a</sup>. mercurie, a<sup>a</sup>. scandany.*"

<sup>5</sup> Phillips, "*Citrull*, a sort of Cucumber or Pumpkin of a Citron-Colour."

<sup>6</sup> Halle, *Table*, p. 57: "*Lactuca sativa, or Hortensis, þat is gardin letuce.*"

<sup>7</sup> frigidum et humidum in quarto gradu.

<sup>8</sup> *nenupharinum*, Arab. Pers. nūtufar, ninūfar (Littré). *Nymphæa alba*. Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b.: "*Nenufar i. flos vagule, caballine aquatice A. waterlilye.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 124; *Barth. Sinon.*, p. 31.

<sup>9</sup> MS. istius.

<sup>10</sup> Add. 15,236, lf. 11: "*Crassula maior G. crassegeline vel orpine. Crassula minor .G. terce de soris .A. stoncrop.*"

<sup>11</sup> Add. 15,236. Cf. 3 b.: "*Epatica .G. coper .A. liuerwort.*" Ibid. lf. 11: "*Epatica .G. epatik vel coper .A. liuerwort.*"

<sup>12</sup> Add. 15,236, lf. 3 b.: "*Corigiola. Centinodia. lingua passerina. G. Corigirole.*" Halle, *Table*, p. 29: "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common Knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas."

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 243, bk.] **seminibus, fructibus.** Ordeum, Silligo<sup>1</sup>; auena. <sup>2</sup>Spica, Lollium, ffabe, Mirtilli, Berberis, Sumac, Pira, Poma, Sorbe, mespila, Castanea, Glandes, Galle, Maiorana, Mora matura, vua acerba, Capreoli, vitis.<sup>3</sup> ¶ **De floribus folijs & corticibus** / Balaustie cortices, <sup>4</sup>Cortices mali granata, Cortices arborum stipticorum<sup>4</sup>; Rosa, Nenufar, fflos spine, ffolia pirorum, pomorum, sorborum, rubij, & spine. ¶ **ffolia** / Salicis, Populi, Tremuli, Papiri, Canne.<sup>5</sup> ¶ **De linis.** omnes sandali. ¶ **De mineralibus & lutis** / Saphirus, Bolus arme-<sup>8</sup>nicus, Marmor, Alabastrum,<sup>6</sup> Cathinia, Litargirum, munda<sup>7</sup> ferri, Ematistes, Corallus, antimonium. ¶ **De lutis.** Terra sigillata, Argilla, lutum<sup>8</sup> omne, cimolea,<sup>9</sup> Camfora, Cerusa. **De gummis.** Gumma pruni,<sup>10</sup> cerase, amigdale, Acacia, opium. **De olijs.** Oleum <sup>12</sup>rosarum, & eueri oile þat' is maad of coold þingis & drie, of flouris, leeues, & ryndis þerof / Also watir of rosis, & water þat' is maad of alle þingis þat' ben coold & drie, and distillid<sup>11</sup> / If þou be sent' after into a cuntre, þere ben noon apotecarijs, þan if þou canst <sup>16</sup>make þese medicyns þat' ben forseid & medicyns þat' schulen be seid heraftir, þan þou miȝt fulfille þi purpos<sup>12</sup> & do þi cure. þou miȝt make <sup>13</sup>of þese þingis: oynementis, epithima, cathaplasmata, emplastra, enbrocaciouns, pultes, encatismata. Of þese names manie <sup>20</sup>men takith oon for anoper, & þerfore I wole telle þe diuersite of vnguentum. alle. ¶ **vnguentum** is maad of .iiij. 3 of oile & 3 ß. of wex in winter, & 3 j. in somer, & 3 j. of þingis þat' þin oynement' schal **Epithima.** serue þerfore.<sup>14</sup> and oynementis schulen be algatis colid. ¶ **Epithima** <sup>24</sup>is þis, whanne þingis ben sotilli poudrid & temperid wiþ water of roses, ouþer wiþ vinegre, ouþer iuys of ony herbe, so þat' it' be temperid in þe þiknes of hony & leid vpon þe place, & hilid wiþ **Cataplasma.** lynnyn cloþ, ouþer wiþ leþer, þis is clepid epithimum. ¶ **Cata-** <sup>28</sup>**plasma** is, whanne herbis ben grounde & soden ouþer raw, & al þe substaunce of þe herbe þerwiþ & medlid wiþ mele & grese, & it' ne schal not' be hard ne neische, but' in þe meene, & it' schal be leid

A physician  
is sometimes  
obliged to  
prepare him-  
self his  
medicines.

[<sup>13</sup> lf. 244]

<sup>1</sup> Silligo, a kind of very white wheat.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Spata, Spleta. Lat.: Add. 26,106, fol. 109, "spaca"; ed. 1498, fol. 207, "spica." The preceding words show that spica is the correct reading.

<sup>3</sup> Capreoli vitis, the tendrils of vine. <sup>4</sup> MS. stipticoris.

<sup>5</sup> MS. panne.

<sup>6</sup> med. Lat. alabastrum.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: murga uel merda.

<sup>8</sup> MS. litum.

<sup>9</sup> cimolea, a kind of earth, so called after Cimolus, an island in the Cretan sea, where it is found.

<sup>10</sup> MS. Summa pruna.

<sup>11</sup> Lat.: omnis aqua ex rebus siccis et frigidis distillata.

<sup>12</sup> Lat.: de quo tuum poteris propositum adimplere.

<sup>14</sup> et 3 .i. pulueris rerum puluerizandarum, que ponuntur in unguento.

flasch hoot vpon þe lyme. ¶ **Emplastrum** is seide, whanne manie **Emplastrum.**  
 diuers þingis, as poudris and gummis & fatnessis, wex, talow, &  
 oile ben soden togidere til þei bicomē hard, & maad in gobetis &  
 4 kept. & þan it schal be maad abroad vpon leþir, & leid vpon þe  
 place þat þou wolt<sup>1</sup> haue it: as diaculon, apostolicon,<sup>2</sup> oxirocroce- ¶ If. 244, bk.]  
 um,<sup>3</sup> & opere manie. ¶ **Pultes**<sup>4</sup> & cathaplasma ben al oon, but<sup>5</sup> pro- **Pultes.**  
 pirli pultes ben clepid, whanne þer is mele, watir, & oile wiþouten  
 8 herbis, & it schal be clepid cataplasma, whanne herbis ben medlid **Cataplasma.**  
 þerwiþ. ¶ **Embroca[tio]** is seid, whanne a mannes lyme is putt in **Embroca.**  
 hoot watir, wiþouten ony decoccioun of herbis þeron, & þat hoot  
 watir schal be cast vpon þe lyme from an hiz, & so it schal be do  
 12 longe, & þis is clepid embrocure.<sup>5</sup> ¶ **Encatisma** is seid in .ij. **Encatisma.**  
 maners: sumtyme it is seid for a clisterie, & sumtyme for a par-  
 ticuler [baþ],<sup>6</sup> anoon to þe nauele & non aboue þe nauel /

¶ **Medicyns** þat ben compound togidere: Whanne þou entendist<sup>2</sup> **2. Compound**  
 16 for to make a lyme coold, & not putte awei þe mater, þou schalt **Medicines.**  
 take iuys of herbis þat ben coold þre partis, olei rosis oon part,  
 of vinegre half a part, & medle hem togidere. If þat þou wolt  
 þat it worche more strongely, þan do þerto argillam rubeam / til it  
 20 be as picke as it were epithima, & leie it to þe place. & herof þou  
 must take kepe, þou schalt vse þingis þat ben able for a mannes **Choose the**  
 complexioun / In þis maner if þou leist coold þingis to a place, <sup>6</sup> & **medicines**  
 ne hast not þi purpos þerof, þan þou schalt leue þe coold medicyns, **[6 leaf 245]**  
 24 & make medicyns þat ben competent to þe same complexioun / for **according to**  
 sum medicyne is for peter þat is not good for poul, for þe diuersite **the patient's**  
 of complexioun. & al þis teching þou miȝt fynde generalich in þe **constitution.**  
 tretis of enpostyms. / ffor if peter be of complexioun hoot & moist,  
 28 & poulis complexioun be coold & drie, oon repercussiou wole not  
 serue hem boþe in oon point. & for þis cause þou muste diuerse þi  
 medicyns; for þis is al dai preued bi experiment as þou miȝt se  
 ofte tyme, þat crassula maior is a good repercussif for coold mater,

<sup>2</sup> See p. 125, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> *oxirocroceum*. Lat. *oxiracroeum*. Matth. Sylv.: "oxirocroceum, i. emplastrum compositum ex aceto et croco."

<sup>4</sup> *pultes*, Lat. plur. of *puls*, *tis*. This plur. form used as sing.: Add. 10,440, fol. 23: "be þer soþen a þinne pultes or gruel of barley." Compare the plur. form *pultesses*, Gasc. Steel Glas 997 (Skeat, *Et. Dict.*). For *poultice*, see Ital. *pultaceo*.

<sup>5</sup> *embroche*, Traheron Vigo Interpret.: "Embroche commeth of embrocho, whyche signifyeth to raine. And it is an embrocation, when we drop downe liquour from a hyer place, vpon some parte of the bodye, and vpon the head." See p. 339, note 1.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: *dicatur enim clistere, aliquando dicatur particularis balneatio*.

Some medi-  
cine is good  
for Peter and  
bad for Paul.  
**Nota.**



& vmbilicus veneris is coold in þe same degre, & 3itt it is not so good repercussif for þe same mater /

A medicine if there is a hot discrasia.

.Ry.

.Ry.

.Ry.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 245, bk.]

If after the use of repercussives, the place becomes livid, apply a cold resolving medicine.

An example how to use repercussives.

Cold matter must be removed with [<sup>3</sup> If. 246] hot and dry medicine.

This is a good medicyn repercussif þere þat þer is miche discracia hoot & litil mater / Ry, sandali albi, spodij, acacie, ana .3. ij, 4 camphore .3. j., opij .3. f, distempere hem wiþ þe iuys of a coold herbe, & oile of violet, & a litil vinegre / Item anoþer. Ry, ossa sicca & combusta, cerusam,<sup>1</sup> amidum, ana .3. ij., tempere hem as it is forseid / Item anoþer þat is comoun þat is recordid in manie 8 placis. Ry, boli armenici .3. j., olei ros. 3. ij., aceti .3. j., þat is þat defensif þat is aforeseid in manie placis for to kepe a lyme fro corruption. ¶ Also enplastris & epithima, þat ben forseid in doloribus iuncturarum of hoot cause ben good. þerfore ioyne hem wiþ þese. 12 ¶ Herof þou muste be war, þat whanne þou leist repercussiuus to a place, þere þat þer is miche mater, & if þe place bicomme ledi, þan þou schalt contynue nomore wiþ pure coold þingis; but do þerto iuys of coriandre grene & barli mele, for þis makij coold & resolueþ. 16 ¶ If þer be no ledi colour but þe mater is greet, & nyle not be doon awei wiþ repercussiuus, whanne þe flux of humours is acesid, þan biginne for to medle þerwiþ resolutiuus; zitt þou schalt contynue wiþ repercussiuus þere þat þer is greet akyng / an ensaumple 20 hereof / If þe akinge be in a mannes knee, þan þou schalt first leie medicyns vpon þe knee, & þan aftirward þou schalt not leie it rízt vpon his knee, but a litil aboue his knee, þat þe ende of þe medicyn mowe touche þe firste parti of þe akyng. 24

¶ Coold mater as it is aforeseid, ne schal not be putt awei wiþ repercussiuus, but wiþ medicyns þat ben hoot and <sup>3</sup>drie in tempere, þat þei mowe wiþ her heete chaunge þe coold complexioun, & wiþ her dreines comforte þe vertu of þe lyme, & defende þat þer 28 come no more mater to þe lyme, & if þe mater be litil, putte it awei, & if þou ne wolt not putte it awei, defende þe place þat þer falle nomore mater þerto<sup>4</sup> / And alle þese ben hote wiþ a maner bittirnes: as absinthium, squinantum, abrotanum, polium, sticados, 32 centaurea maior & minor,<sup>5</sup> aristologia longa & rotunda, mauribium,<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ceresaris*. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cerusa. flos plumbi id. G. blonc plome A. wyt lede.*"

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: "*materia ne ad membrum veniat prohibetur et etiam plerumque repellitur si sit pauca, sed etsi non omnino repellitur tamen locum ita defendit, quod tanta non potest in ipso materia congregari.*"

<sup>5</sup> Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Centaurea. fol terre idem G. centore A. cristes laddir.*" ? In Britten and Holland's English Plant-names *Centaury* is at p. 96. *E. P. N.*, p. 37: "eorð-gealle." These names refer to *Centaurea minor*, see *Alphita*, p. 37. *Centaurea maior* = *narcea vel gentiana*. *Ibid.*

<sup>6</sup> *mauribium*, Corp. Gl. M. 43: "*Marubium. bionvryt vel hune.*" Wr.

- mirta, mastix, lupini, oleum de masticis, & de absinthio / Herof þou shalt take kepe: manie men seien, & it wole liztly be leeued of lewid men, & þat is yuel þing for to leie a repercussif to ony mater for to driue it awei, but it is bettir to drawe out þe mater wiþ enplastris, & if þer comeþ out þerof miche quittance, þei seien þat a mannes bodi is wel purgid þerwiþ, & schal be longe þe holer þerfore / And if þe mater be doon awei wiþ repercussiuis & þe enpostym be defendid, þan if þe same man be sijk aftirward, þan men wolen seie þat it was defeaute in þe leche, for if þe enpostym hadde be maad maturatif<sup>1</sup> & þe quittance drawe out, þan þe man hadde be hool, & alle þese opiniouns ben false / And þou schalt wite þis certeynli: if þou takist kepe of þe .x. consideraciouns þat ben forseid in enpostyms, & principali whanne his body is maad clene wiþ laxatiuis þat ben competent þerfore / It is bettir to putte awei þe mater wiþ comfortyng of þe lyme, þan lete þe mater conferme / for if þou kepist wel þe condiciouns þat ben aforseid, the mater mai be putt awei, & þe man schal not be peirid //

Many men say, one ought not to remove bad matter by a repercussive, as suppuration purges the body;

Nota

[1 It. 246, bk.]

but they are wrong,

for it is better to strengthen the limb by removing the matter, than to allow the matter to gather.

### Of þe maner of resolutiuis.

- Wanne oon strong, or<sup>2</sup> manye feble of .x. causis lettif repercussiuis, oupir whanne þou hast a repercussif, & þou ne miȝt not putte awei þe mater, þan þou muste leie þerto resolutiuis. & as it is aforseid of repercussiuis, in þe same maner I seie of resolutiuis: whanne a man haþ akyng eoupir greet swell- ynge, þou schalt leie þerto no resolutiuis, or þou haue maad him a competent purgacioun. ¶ fforwhi, as it is aforseid, enpostym ouper greet akyng comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, þan it mote nedis come of repleccioun of þe bodi. & þan if þou leist þerto resolutiuis, þat wolde drawe to þe place more mater / for þer is no resolutif, þat ne it is hoot / & eueri þing þat is hoot, is attractif / What schal we do in þis caas? ¶ first þou schalt lete him blood, oupir make him a medicyn laxatif, oupir boþe two, as þou seest þat it wole spede / And þan þou schalt bigynne for to resolue wiþ medicyns resolutiuis þat been hoot & sotil<sup>5</sup> // This is þe difference bitwixe resolutiuis & maturatiuis: ¶ Resolutiuis haueþ tempere hete wiþ sotilnes & open-

¶ co ijo<sup>3</sup>  
If you cannot use Repercussives, use resolvent medicines.

First give a purgacioun.

[\* It. 247]

Every resolvent medicine is hot and attractive, therefore use first blood-letting or purging.

Nota bene.

Wü. 136, 12 (XII. cent.), "harhune." Add. 15,236, lf. 5: *Marubium prasi-um idem. G. marole. A. horehune. vel horehound.*"

<sup>2</sup> MS. of.

<sup>3</sup> MS. omits.

<sup>5</sup> Some passages are omitted, in which Lanfranc quotes from his "Chirurgia parva."

Difference between resolving and maturing medicines.

ynge.<sup>1</sup> ¶ Maturatiuis haueþ *tempere* hete wiþ viscosite / þerfore it falliþ ofte tyme, þat whanne þou leist resolutiuis vpon miche mater & greet, it makij þe mater sotil & hoot, & þan þe kindly hete wiþinne is comfortid wiþ þe hete wiþoutforþ, & it bifalliþ ofte tyme, 4 þat medicyns resolutiuis in þis caas makij þe mater maturatif / Also if þou leist medicyn maturatif vpon litil mater & sotil it hetij þe mater, & þe natural hete wiþinne is comfortid þerwiþ, & so [8 lf. 247, bk.] þe heete multipliþ, & in þis maner þe heete <sup>2</sup>mai be resolved. 8 ¶ The maner of resolving: Make a decoccioun of herbis of whiche þow wolt make þi medicyn, & kepe þe watir þat þe herbis ben soden yn, & wiþ þe same watir þou schalt waische þe lyme, til it bicomē reed, & þan leie þer vpon þe medicyn resolutif. ¶ Herof 12 þou muste be war, þat ofte tyme a medycyn resolutif resolueþ þe sotil mater, & þat þat is greet, bicomē hard, & þan þe more þat þou art aboute to resolue, þe more it wole bicomē hard / þerfore þou muste be bisi in þis caas & leie þerto mollificatiuis, & þan þou 16 schalt go to resolutiuis, & in þis maner þou schalt worche it til it be al resolved. ¶ Of medicyns resolutiuis, summe ben simple: as, camomilla, Mellilotum, paritaria, malua siluestris & alia,<sup>3</sup> volibilis,<sup>4</sup> fumus terre, caulis, anetum, vrtica, enula, borago, sambucus, kebulus, valeriana, & alle herbis þat ben hoot in *tempere*,<sup>5</sup> wiþ sotilnes. ¶ De seminibus / Semina caulium, aneti, vrtice, malue. Semina diuretica: cantabrum,<sup>6</sup> omne,<sup>7</sup> farina ordeï, orobi, & fabe / Pinguede [8 lf. 248] porci & anseri, anatis, galline, aquile. ¶ De gummis / <sup>8</sup>Mastix, 24 olibanum, opoponac, asa fetida, mirra, serapinum, armonicum, bdellium, galbanum, & alle maner sotil gummis: lapdanum, ysopus humida, terbentina, cera, swetyngē of bestis, & buttir. ¶ Medicyns resolutif & compound of þe forseid, simple þou schalt fynde in þe 28 nexte chapitre here tofore / þis is an oile resoluinge / & makij hoot & accessij akyngē / R̄, florum camomille recencium, fenigreci seminis ana .ḡ ij., leie hem in xx .ḡ j. of oile of oliue in a glasen vessel, & lete it stonde to þe sume .xl. daies in somer, & þan kepe it for 32

Use the decoction, made to prepare the resolvent medicine, first as a wash.

Simple resolvent medicines.

Compound resolvent medicines.

A resolving oil.

R̄

<sup>1</sup> Lat. cum subtilitate aperitiua.

<sup>3</sup> The Prints read "siue alba." Add. 26,106, siue *alba* corrected to *alia*. The correct reading is either *alta* or *alteia*. Add. 15,236, lf. 5: "*Malua viscus. bismalua. Altea idem. G. Wymauve A. mersmauve.*" *Alphita*, p. 110: "*Malva silvestris, malva viscus, altea . . . alta malva idem.*"

<sup>4</sup> MS. volibilis. *Alphita*, p. 192: "*Volubilis, corrigiola idem, arbores parvas et herbas ligat. gall. [corrige] ole, angl. berebinde.*"

<sup>5</sup> Lat. temperate calida.

<sup>6</sup> *cantabrum*, bran. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cantabrum .i. grossum furfur tritici vel frumenti .G. la grose brene.*" <sup>7</sup> Lat.: omne amilum de ordeo.



- pin vss. If þou haddist nede herof & if it<sup>1</sup> were in winter, þan take þe flouris of camomille dried & fenigree & oile, as it is aforseid, & sette þis glasen vessel in a caudroun ful of watir, & make fier
- 4 vndir, & loke þat þe water ne boile not, & so it schal stonde al a dai in hoot water / & whanne it is coold cole it, & kepe þe oile for pin vss / And in þis maner þou miȝt make oile of *rosis*, if þou hast
- 8 nede of // **Anoper oile** þat is resolutif / Rȝ, olei antiqui .li. j., Another resolving oil. Rȝ *seminis aneti nouiter in vmbra siccati* .ȝ j., putte him in a viol fourti daies to þe suzne, ouþer sette it in hoot water<sup>2</sup> as it is aforseid. [<sup>2</sup> If. 248, bk.]
- ¶ Anoper oile þat is resolyng<sup>3</sup> and makip hoot & accessip akyng, Oil of lilles.
- 12 & is good for to achause a mannys reynes & a wommans maris, & it is clepid *olium de lilio compositum* / Rȝ, olij antiqui .ȝ. xx., *florum liliorum alborum*, & kutte awei þerof al þat is ȝelowe, cassilaginis,<sup>3</sup>
- 16 pese in a glasen vessel, & lete hem stonde in þe schadowe al a moneþe, & þan do away þe lillie flouris of þe oile, & kepe þe oile for pin vss. ¶ Anoper oile þat is clepid *olium mastice*, & is swiþe Nota resolutif, & is good for febilnes of þe stomac, & it is good for
- 20 akyng of a mannes stomac / Rȝ, *olium oliuarum mediocriter maturarum* .li. ij., *masticis* .ȝ. vj., boile hem togidere in a double vessel, til þe mastix & þe oile be dissolued, & kepe it for pin vss. ¶ This þou muste knowe, þat whanne þou wolt make þat, þat schal be
- 24 *repercussif* & coold & comforyng<sup>4</sup> for þe lyme, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is not to ripe, as for to make *olium rosis*, *olium mirtinum*, & opere mo. If þou wolt make oile þat schal be resolyng<sup>5</sup>, ouþer persyng<sup>6</sup>, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is ripe / And in þis maner
- 28 þou schalt<sup>5</sup> knowe, wheþer þe oile be ripe or no. Oile þat is not ripe, wole be grene, & þat is ripe wole be whit, & þat þat is in þe [<sup>3</sup> If. 249] How to distinguish ripe and unripe olive-oil. meene, wole be meene colour bitwixe þe two. ¶ Oynementis þat ben resolutif ben maad in þis maner : of iiij .ȝ. of<sup>6</sup> oile of camo-
- 32 mille ouþer of sum oper oile & ȝ j. of wex in somer, & ȝ fl. in winter, & ȝ j. of poudre of seedis of aneti, caulium, flouris of camomille. ¶ Ysopus humida is a good oynement<sup>7</sup> resolutif, & is maad in þis maner : / Take of þe smal wolfe þat is bitwixe þe
- 36 schepis leggis, & take þerof a good quantite, & take as miche water,

<sup>1</sup> if it, above line.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cassilago, Iusquiamus idem G. geliner A. henebel. vel heneban.*" The Lat. has *Cassio lignea*, see *Alphita*, p. 35.

<sup>4</sup> *carpobalsamum*, "balsames bloed." Wr. Wü., 199, 41 (X cent.).

<sup>6</sup> MS. of twice.

A resolving  
plaster.

R<sub>7</sub>

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 249, bk.]

Iohannes  
Mesue

R<sub>7</sub>

Another  
resolving  
plaster.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 250]

& lete þe wolle ligge in þe watir adai & anyzt, & þan boile hem a litil wiþ lent fier, & þan cole hem, & whanne þei ben coold, wrynge hem þoruȝ a cloof, & do þe water þerof into a leden vessel, & boile it wiþ lent fier, & algate meene it wiþ a spatire til it bicomē picke 4  
as it were an oynement. ¶ Of enplastiris þe beste þat is diaculon Rasis þat resolueþ scrophulas & glandulas, & makip carbunculis maturatifi & is swiþe comoun / R<sub>7</sub>, olij antiqui de oliuis maturis vncias quinque, litargiri .ḡ j., & þou schalt poudre þe litarge in a morter & 8  
do þerto <sup>1</sup>þin oile & medle hem togidere, & þan do hem in a vessel & boile hem togidere, & meene hem algatis wiþ a spatire, & do þerto de muscillagine seminis lini, fenigreci, ana .ḡ ij, & muscillaginmem malue visci .ḡ j, & þan boile hem til þei bicomē picke, & make þerof 12  
gobetis & kepe hem to þin vss, & if þou wolt worche þerwiþ, take þerof as miche as þou wolt, & plane it vpon leþer or vpon linnen cloof, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ Diaculon Iohannis Mesue is better þan þis / & worchip more strongli. þat þou schalt finde in paruo 16  
compendio. ¶ Also anoþer plastre þat is resolutifi / R<sub>7</sub>, maluarum siluestrum, paritarie, flouris of camomille, Melliloti ana M. j., boile hem in watir til þei be wel soden, & þan stampe hem, & take of þe same watir .iiij. partis, & of sum oile þat is resolutifi oon 20  
parti, seminis caulium, aneti partem ſ., furfuris, farine ordeï, ana partem j., boile hem alle togidere & make þerof as it were pultes, & þan do þerto of þe herbis þat ben soden as miche as of al þe remenaunt, & leie it vpon þe place þat þou wolt, sumdel hoot as 24  
it is aforseid, & seke medicins resolutiuis <sup>2</sup>þat ben in paruo compendio, & do it to, & þan þou miȝt haue medicyns resolutiuis ynowe /

Of þe tretis of þe foure maturatiuis.

28

co ijjo<sup>3</sup>  
If resolving  
and repercus-  
sive medi-  
cines have  
no effect,  
then bring  
the matter to  
maturation.

Maturing  
Simples:

W Hanne þou hast resolued mani daies ouþer leid þerto repercussiuus, & ne is nouȝt worth, saue þe mater wole bicomē maturatifi, þan if his bodi be avoidid as it is aforseid, þan [begynne]<sup>4</sup> for to leie þerto maturatiuis / Eueri medicyn þat is maturatifi is 32  
hoot in tempere wiþ a maner viscosite þat wole not suffre þe vapour to goon out, but it holdip him wiþinne til it be maturid; & ben þese: Malua viscus, branca vrcina, radix brionie, radix lappacii

<sup>3</sup> MS. om.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: "Quando pluribus resoluisti diebus aut forte repercussisti, nec valet, sed materia desiderat maturari, tunc premissis evacuationibus necessariis vel possibilibus, incipe maturare."

- acuti,<sup>1</sup> baucie<sup>2</sup> Radix, farine frumenti, semen lini, fenigreci, ficus sicce, & alle þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid in þe nexte chapitre tofore, if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þei beþ medlid herwip. ¶ This is a good maturatif<sup>t</sup> compound of<sup>t</sup> A compound  
maturing  
medicine.  
R̄
- 4 manie pingis þat<sup>t</sup> makip hoot<sup>t</sup> mater maturatif<sup>t</sup>. R̄, foliorum malue nigre, *id est* comoun malue pinguis seu ortolane, brance vrcine, radix brioni, radices malue visci ana. ℥ .j., seþe hem alle in watir & stampe hem, & þan do þerto malua visci, & þan take of<sup>t</sup> þe same
- 8 watir a pound<sup>3</sup> & freisch grese .ṽ ij., & sotil mele of<sup>t</sup> whete .ṽ iij., [<sup>3</sup> lf. 250, bk.] & sotil mele of<sup>t</sup> lynseed & of<sup>t</sup> fenigrec ana .ṽ j. & ß., medle hem togidere & boile hem perfiztli, & make þerof<sup>t</sup> cataplasma, & þan do þerto of<sup>t</sup> þe foreseid herbis & rootis wel grounde, & medle hem
- 12 togidere, & loke þat<sup>t</sup> þei be not<sup>t</sup> to picke / for it<sup>t</sup> schal be algate þin entencioun, þat<sup>t</sup> cataplasma, þat<sup>t</sup> schal be resolutif<sup>t</sup> or maturatif<sup>t</sup> or mundificatif<sup>t</sup>, ne schal not<sup>t</sup> be hard ; for if<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> be hard, it<sup>t</sup> wole make akyng to þe lyme, & þan it<sup>t</sup> wole anoie more þan profite. ¶ Item,
- 16 if<sup>t</sup> þou dredist<sup>t</sup> woodnes of<sup>t</sup> mater, þan þou ne schalt<sup>t</sup> do þerto no fenigrec ; for it<sup>t</sup> is swiþe hoot<sup>t</sup>, & þerwip þe mater wole be as it<sup>t</sup> were a feuere.<sup>4</sup> & þerfore I counseile þee þat<sup>t</sup> þou do no fenigrec þerto / If<sup>t</sup> þou dredist<sup>t</sup>, þat<sup>t</sup> þe mater is swiþe hoot<sup>t</sup> / if<sup>t</sup> þer be wip þat<sup>t</sup> Nota.  
Caution  
against  
Fennil, if  
there is any  
danger, that  
the matter  
may get  
inflamed.
- 20 mater ony gretnes or ony coold mater, þan make of<sup>t</sup> þe forseid cataplasma .ij. partis, fermenti de frumento<sup>5</sup> partem j., & medle hem togidere. & Isaac seip : þat<sup>t</sup> þis is good for mater þat<sup>t</sup> is medlid wip hoot<sup>t</sup> cause & coold cause togidere. ¶ Also a good maturatif<sup>t</sup> / Take Isaac.  
R̄
- 24 hony & butter ana, & medle hem with mele til þei be as picke as it<sup>t</sup> were pultes. ¶ Item embrocaciouns in resoluciouns & maturacioun, & is good for akyng of<sup>t</sup> woundis of<sup>t</sup> concussioun in þe heed / concussioun is as miche to seie as smiten wip a staf<sup>t</sup> / R̄, olij ṽ ij., [<sup>6</sup> lf. 251]
- 28 cere albe ṽ j., cimini, rute, arthemesie ana. ṽ ß., absinthi, paritarie, brance vrcine, ana ṽ ij., grinde wel þe herbis & þe grese togidere in a morter, & þan do þerto poudre of<sup>t</sup> comyn, & oile, & medle hem wel togidere. ¶ Also pultes þat<sup>t</sup> wole make an enpostym
- 32 maturatif<sup>t</sup> : R̄, foliorum malue, bismalue, paritorie, volubilis maioris, iusquiami ana ṽ ij., seþe hem in a litil watir, & þan presse hem & stampe hem wel, & þan medle hem wip ṽ iij of<sup>t</sup> þe same watir þat<sup>t</sup> þei weren soden ynne, & medle þerwip ṽ j. of<sup>t</sup> grese, þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> be cold, R̄
- 36 & barli mele þat<sup>t</sup> suffisip / In þis maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make a coold

<sup>1</sup> MS. *lappa acuta*.<sup>2</sup> *baucia*. *Alphita*, p. 21 : "pastinaca, angl. widleskirwit."<sup>4</sup> Lat. : et cito per illum inflammat<sup>ur</sup> materia.<sup>5</sup> MS. *fermento*.



- R̄ mater maturatif / R̄, cepe unum<sup>1</sup> album, item de capitibus allij, & sette hem vndir askis, & distempere hem wip þe .iij. part of buttir, & do þerto mele of fenigrek, & of lynseed, & make þerof an enplastre. & do þerto .ij. zelkis of eiren soden hard, & 3 j. of malui visci preparati, & 3 ij. of fermenti. ¶ Also a maturatif of
- R̄ greet mater & coold & hard. R̄, bdellij, serapini ana 3 j. & fs, & [2 lf. 251, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre / <sup>2</sup> & stampe hem wel, & do þerto .3 j. of terbentyne, & dissolue hem to þe fier / But loke þat it ne boile S not, & do þerto oile of lilie .3 ij., & make it picke wip sutil mele of lupinis, & of fenigrec / Item 3 f. of olibani, & fenigrec maad to poudre sotili poudrid, & medle hem wip .li. f of hony; þis wole be a good maturatif for coold causis. ¶ Also vnguentum tetrafarm- 12
- Basilicum maius. Auiacen. acum,<sup>3</sup> & it is clepid of Auiценne basilicon,<sup>4</sup> & þus manie men preisiþ þis medicyn. Galen, Auiцен, Serapion, Iohannes Mesue, & Haly þe abbot; & it makij enpostyms maturatif, & it is good for woundis, & for vlcera þat ben bicomе hard / R̄, cere, resine, picis, 16 cepi vaccini,<sup>5</sup> ana, & olij quod suffisiþ / Summen in stide of cepum, þei putten buttir, & summen in winter þei doon þerto oon parti of bdellium, & summen taken oonli ceram, picem, & rasinam ana, & olium; & þis is basilicon minus. ¶ Also a good maturatif for 20
- Basilicum minus. A maturing medicine for anthrax and malignant apostemas. R̄ antracem / & is good for to make a wickid enpostym maturatif, as I haue aforseid in his place / R̄, ficus siccas bene pingues, numero .vj., vue passe<sup>6</sup> de corinthio .3 j., duas spicas allij mundatas, piperis grana .xij., salis nitri .3 .ij., stampe alle þese & do þerto oold oile 24
- [7 lf. 252] 3 ij., aceti 7 3 j., fermenti acerimi as miche as is þe half of alle togidere. ¶ Also a maturatif for antracem / but if he be swiþe hard & malicious, an enplastre maad of hony is good þerfore & of oile of violet. ¶ Also for to make antracem & carbunculum 28
- R̄ maturatif / R̄, fermenti acris, lactis mulieris, mellis, vitellorum ouorum ana, medle hem togidere. If þou wolt worche more strongeli, do þerto galbanum dissolued as myche as þe haluendel of oon. & if þou wolt make it more strongi, for to make it maturatif, 32 & for to make it breke, þan do þerto culueris dounge & of hennis ana, as miche as wole be .iiij. part of oon, as it is aforseid / baurac,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *vinum*. Add. 26,106, fol. 103 b.: "cepe unum album."

<sup>3</sup> MS. *cetrafarozatum*.

<sup>4</sup> Phillips: "*Basilicon*, a Royal Ointment or Plaister, otherwise called Tetrapharmacoon, because it is made up of four Ingredients, viz., Pitch, Rosin, Wax, and Oil."

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: *sepi vaccini*.

<sup>6</sup> *vue passe*, dried grapes, i. e. raisins.

vj. part<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> oon & ß.; þese .iij. maturatiuis sufficiþ þee / ¶ Also þis is a rule þat<sup>t</sup> is ful profitable for þee / whanne þou wolt leie ony maturatif<sup>t</sup> to a place: first<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make embrocam<sup>1</sup> to þe lyme  
 4 wip a decoccioun of herbis maturatiuis, soden in watir, & wip þat<sup>t</sup> hoot<sup>t</sup> watir þou schalt<sup>t</sup> baþe þe lyme til þe lyme bicomē reed, & þan leie þeron a plastre of maturatiuis þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid oon þerof, for þou hast<sup>t</sup> sufficiēntly ynowe, & loke þat<sup>t</sup> þe enplastre be not<sup>t</sup> to hard, <sup>2</sup>& [2 lf. 252, bk.]  
 8 as hoot<sup>t</sup> as he mai suffre it<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> leie it<sup>t</sup> þerto / ¶ Thou hast<sup>t</sup> herd sufficiēntli of maturatiuis, ynow it<sup>t</sup> is nede to speke of mundificatiuis. For whanne an hard matir is maad maturatif<sup>t</sup>, it<sup>t</sup> is nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it<sup>t</sup> is forseid in þe worchingē of  
 12 enpostyms /

### ¶ Of þe tretis of mundificatiuis /

**M**undificatum is as miche to seie as clensyng<sup>t</sup>, & doþ awei hore. & eueri þing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> doþ awei hore in woundis & super-  
 16 fluite, may be seid a mundificatif<sup>t</sup> / A mundificatif<sup>t</sup> may be seid in .iij. maners / As a medicyn þat<sup>t</sup> is taken bi þe mouþ, ouþer þat<sup>t</sup> is putt<sup>t</sup> in bineþe wip a clisterie, ouþer wip a pessarie<sup>3</sup> for to make clene a mannes lymes wipinne. & of þis kinde ben sirupis maad of  
 20 seedis þat<sup>t</sup> makþ clene a mannes lymes, & weies of þe vrine / And þer ben summe medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> makþ clene a mannes blood as cassia fistula, manna,<sup>4</sup> tamarindi; & al medicyns laxatiuis mowen be clepid mundificatiuis, & herof is not<sup>t</sup> entencioun in þis caas /  
 24 ¶ Anopir. I wole speke of medicyns mundificatif<sup>t</sup> in cirurgie.<sup>5</sup> & þat<sup>t</sup> is propirli seid a medicyn, þat<sup>t</sup> doþ awei greet<sup>t</sup> superfluite ouþer gret<sup>t</sup> greuance <sup>6</sup>of quittance, ouþer remeueþ<sup>7</sup> awei harde crustis in woundis, ouþir in vlceribus, & makþ clene woundis & vlcera of  
 28 þat<sup>t</sup> superfluite / ffor as it<sup>t</sup> is seid in anopir place: In eueri wounde þat<sup>t</sup> is holow, þat<sup>t</sup> is as miche to seie as whanne it<sup>t</sup> hap lost<sup>t</sup> substaunce of fleisch þeron, þan bi skille<sup>8</sup> þer schulde be engendrid þeron .iij. superfluites, þat<sup>t</sup> oon schal be greet<sup>t</sup>, & þat<sup>t</sup> ouþer schal be  
 32 sotil. & þese wollen lette þe souding<sup>t</sup> of a wounde, & þei wolen

A mundificative medicine,

may either be taken inwardly or applied by a clyster or pessary.

[2 lf. 252]

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: prius locum embrocas. Matth. Sylv.: "Embroma id est infusio quam nos dicimus fomentum & embrocatio id est infusio sed quando ab alto infunditur." See p. 331, note 5.

<sup>3</sup> Traheron, Vigo. Interpret.: "Pessarie. Pessus is woll tossed, and made rounde after the fassyon of a fynger wherewith medicines are receyued and conueyed into the matrice."

<sup>4</sup> MS. manei.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: Alio modo loquimur de medicina mundificatiua in cyrurgia.

<sup>7</sup> MS. remeued.

<sup>8</sup> Lat. necessario.

lette þat þe fleisch mai not wexe. ¶ þan medicyn mundificatif remeueþ greet superfluite. Of drynge medicyns, we wolen speke in þe chapitre next / This maner medicyn schal go bifore regeneracioun & consolidacioun, of whiche we wollip speke herafter; 4 þouȝ aggregatiua or conglutinatiua come sumtyme for to soude wiþouten þat, þat þis medicyns ne goiþ not tofore, as whanne woundis ben sewid & ben maad hool wiþouten regeneracioun of quittance. þis medicyn makip clene, & drieþ sumwhat, as water & hony 8 whanne vlcera virulenta beþ waischen þerwiþ, oupir woundis in which agendriþ miche quittance; & sumtyme it is more strong, as whanne þer beþ medlid þerwiþ poudris corosiuis þat han litil <sup>1</sup>vertu of corosiuis, & helpiþ for to make clene, & whanne corosiuis ben 12 seid for to take away yuel fleisch þat ne mai not be taken awei with medicyns /

If a wound is fresh and not complicated with any contusion, apply only a consolidative medicine. In any other case apply first a maturing and then a "mundificative" medicine.

Therefore I wole sette medicyns bi rule, & first I wole speke of medicyns þat ben simple / ffor as me seiþ .x. sipis rehersed liketh a 16 man.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Thou schalt wite þis þat woundis þat ben freisch, þer it is no nede for to engendre quittance whanne þer is noon concussiou, neiper of nerues, ne of boon, ne prickynge, ne þer is noon akyngne þerwiþ / þan it is no nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis, but oonli 20 consolidatiuis / But whanne a wou[n]de is chaungid wiþ þe eir or enpostymed, or greet akyngne, þan þou muste leie þerto maturatiuis; & whanne þe akyngne & þe opere accidentis ben awei, þan þou schalt bigynne for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it is aforseid in his 24 chapitre / This is a cöld mundificatif for to make clene woundis þat ben freisch in which is good quittance. Rȝ, mellis rosati colati .ȝ. iij., farine subtileissime ordeī .ȝ. j., & do þerto a litil water, & seþe hem softli þat þei ne brenne not, & algate þou schalt <sup>3</sup>meue it 28 wiþ a spatule, & þan make it abrood vpon a clooþ, & leie it vpon þe wounde / This makip clene & comfortiþ / If it so be þat a wounde be in nerues placis, þan it is good for to do þerto a litil terbentyn waischen, whanne it is doon adoun fro þe fier / for ter- 32 bentyn schal not boile, whanne itt schal be putt into enplastris, for it wole lese his worching in þe boilyng. ¶ Anopir mundificatif þat makip clene duram matrem whanne a man is hurt in þe heed, & whanne dura mater is bicome blac / Rȝ, mellis rosati 36 colati ȝ. j., oliȝ ȝ. ſ., medle hem togidere. ¶ Anoper mundificatif

<sup>2</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 104: "et quum medicine simplices raro ponuntur ad mundificandum, ideo ponam medicamina composita per ordinem, denumerando medicinas simplices, non curando, quoniam decies repetita placebunt."



- pat makij woundis maturatif pat ben to-swolle & ben not to bren-  
nyng<sup>t</sup> hoot, but sumwhat toward cooldnes / R<sup>7</sup>, mellis rosati colati R<sup>7</sup>  
.li. ſ., farine fenigreci .3 ij., farine ordeī .3 j. ¶ **Ano<sup>per</sup> mundifi-**  
4 **catif for vlcera** pat bep newe in enpostyms / Take zelkis of eiren R<sup>7</sup>  
rawe, & medle perwip whete mele as miche as wole suffise; pis wole  
make clene & do aweī þe akyngē, & make þe place coold / ¶ **Also**  
ano<sup>per</sup> mundificatif pat wole make maturatif perwip, & is good  
8 whanne a man wole <sup>1</sup>kutte an enpostym tofore his tyme. & it is [<sup>2</sup> 1f. 254, bk.]  
a propre medicyn for to make clene antrasem & carbunculo & alle  
maner pustulis pat ben venymous aftir þe tyme pat þei ben opened,  
& it is good for to make clene, vlcera pat ben oold / R<sup>7</sup> mellis albi R<sup>7</sup>  
12 boni .li. ſ., farine subtilissime tritici .3 iij, medle hem togidere in  
a panne. & whanne þei ben wel medlid, þan do þerto iuys of  
apium .3 vij., & þan medle hem wel togidere vpon lent fier, & boile  
hem til þei bicome as it were pultes. & þan do hem adoun of þe  
16 fier & stire hem wel, & kepe hem for þin vss / If it so be pat þou  
dredist of a cancre or of a festre in vlceribus pat ben oold, & if  
þou wolt make a mundificatif þerfore, þan in þe stide of apium do  
absinthium, & it wole be good. ¶ **Ano<sup>per</sup> mundificatif in vlceribus**  
20 pat ben rotid, & whanne þer engendrij þervpon greet rotyng / R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>  
mellis li .j., farine siliginis .3 iij., farine fenigreci, orobi, lupinorum,  
mirre, ana 3 j., succi absinthij li .j., medle hem alle togidere, &  
poudre þingis pat schulen be poudrid, & boile hem sotilli til þei be  
24 perfitli boild; & whanne þou doist hem adoun of þe fier, þan do  
þerto of terbentyn .3 iij., <sup>2</sup>& medle hem wel togidere / Alle þese [2 1f. 255]  
mundificatiuis schulen be maad abrood vpon a cloof of linnen, &  
leid vpon vleus for to make it clene aftir þe tyme pat þei bep  
28 waische, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus / ¶ **A poudre**  
pat is mundificatif of crustis & greet fleisch pat is engendrid in  
oold vlceribus, & wipoute greet violence of fretyng / R<sup>7</sup>, succi affo- R<sup>7</sup>  
dillorum .3 vj., calcis viue .3 ij., auripigmenti .3 j., medle hem  
32 togidere, & sette hem in þe sunne in þe moneþe of august, & on  
nyztis do it out of þe eir, & in þis maner þou schalt do til it be  
drie, & make herof gobetis, & þan drie hem in þe shadowe. &  
þou schalt kepe hem in a vessel of tree in a place pat be not to  
36 drie, ne to moist. & whanne þou hast nede þerto, grinde oon þerof,  
& leie it vpon þe place. ¶ **Also a good mundificatif for vlcera** is  
vnguentum viride, pat is maad of oon part of vert de grece, & .ij.  
partis of hony, medlid wel togidere. ¶ **Also a good oynement for**  
40 to make clene, vlcera pat ben hori, & festri, & polipum, & wickid

vng<sup>m</sup>  
viride

vlcera, & is clepid vnguentum veneris, ouþer vnguentum apostolorum. & it' is good for to remeue awei fleisch in vlceris / <sup>[1 lf. 255, bk.]</sup> R7, cere albe, rasine albe, armoniaci ana .3. xiiij., bdellij, astrologie, olibani gummosi ana .3. vj., galbani, mirre ana .3. iiij., litargiri .3. viij., opoponac, floris eris ana. 3. iij.; þe gummys schulen be maad neische in vinegre, & dissolued wip fier þat' be lent, & þan do þerto wex dissolued wip li. ij. of oile in somer, & iiij. in winter. & whanne þei ben molten, do þerto þi poudris, & make þerof an oynement. 8

¶ Anoþer oynement clensip wel nerues & drawip out þe quittance, & it' is clepid mundificatium rasina<sup>2</sup> / R7, rasine, mellis, terbentyn ana .li. fl., mirre, sarcocolle, farine fenigreci, seminis lini ana 3 j., dissolue þe rosyn, hony & wex togidere, & þan do þerto þi poudris, 12 & make þerof pultes. ¶ Also we moten vse medicyns þat' ben more strong, & ben clepid medicine cauterizantes, for to make clene vlcera þat' ben yuel in neruous place. & þe teching' herof þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre de medicinis facientibus opus cauterij. 16

Mundifica-  
tium de  
rasina.

### Of medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis.

Restorative  
Medicines

[3 lf. 256]

are differ-  
ently named  
by different  
authors.

Auicen.

Auicen.

**I**T pinkip bi þe maner of speche þat' þe medicyns þat' ben seid in þis chapitre ben al oon, but þer is niche difference bitwixe / ffor <sup>3</sup>of summen alle þei ben clepid consolidatiuis. 20 But aggregatiue & consolidatiue ben al oon / And regeneratiue, & incarnatiue, & facientes carnem nasci, ben oon to seie; & þer is greet difference bitwixe hem þat' ben forseid & þese / And sigillatiuis, & cicatrizatiuis, & consolidatiuis ben al oon; neþeles 24 alle þese names ben not propirli take of alle auctouris / But oon herof is taken for anoþer ofte tyme / But for to seie þe soþe, a medicyn þat' is clepid aggregatum or conglutinatum, & A. in diuers placis taketh diuersli þese names of medicyns: & I suppose þat' it' 28 were for defaute of men þat' translatid þe science / But for to seie þe soþe, aggregatiua or consolidatiua is a drie medicyne, & hap gummosite in him; & whanne it' is leid to þe lyme, it' wole resolute wip his drienes. It drieþ vp superfluite of moistnes þat' is bitwixe 32 þe lippis of a wounde, wip a litil ligature or sewing' it' soudip togidere.<sup>4</sup> & A. clepip þis incarnatiuam, & summen clepen it' consolidatiuam, & ben þese / Sanguis draconis, calx, thus masculinum

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: mundificatium de rasina.

<sup>4</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 105: "superfluum siccatur humiditatem que inter duo vulneris labia, per medicum ligatura sola vel sutura conducta, reperitur."

- folia pirorum, pomorum, porri, lilij cortices, palme,<sup>1</sup> arnaglossa, Consolidative  
caulis, folia cipressi, folia vitis <sup>2</sup>albe, nux recens, folia acetose, [<sup>2</sup> lf. 256, bk.]  
pulis molendini, ordeum vstum, flos sorbe, lac acetosum, & opere Simples.
- 4 manie þat ben vnknewen for us / Sumtyme men maden grete Compound  
woundis & leiden þervpon manie herbis, & weren hool in þe same Consolidative.  
dai; & þei camen for to take of þe same herbis, & ne miȝten noon  
fynde þat wolde do so more / **A good medicyn for þis entencioun :**
- 8 Rȝ, frankencense partem vnam, sanguis draconis partes duas, calcis Rȝ  
viue partes tres, & make herof poudre; & leie ynowȝ vpon þe .ij.  
lippis of þe wounde þat is sewid togidere, as it is aforseid in þe  
chapitre of woundis. ¶ Anoper poudre þat is good for þis enten-
- 12 cioun; but in placis þat is myche fleisch aweie, it is nede for to  
leie þerto þingis to regendre fleisch, þat we wollip speke þerof soone  
heraftir. Rȝ, olibani lucidi, aloes, sanguis draconis ana, make þerof Rȝ  
poudre. ¶ Anoper comoun for to streyne blood, & for to soude
- 16 woundis: Rȝ, sarcocolle partes duas, sanguis draconis, balaustie ana Rȝ  
partem vnum,<sup>3</sup> olibani lucidi partem β, & make herof poudre.
- ¶ Medicyns forto regendre fleisch haueþ propriete forto conglie  
blood, þat comeþ to þe place wiþ tempere drienes, & makip þerof
- 20 fleisch, & makip clene superfluete þat wexip þeron. & þis is in  
diuers maner / for whi, if a lyme be woundid in þat maner þat it  
be nede for to regendre fleisch þeron, & þe place is drie, & þer is  
miche quittance in þe wounde, þan it is nede þat þou haue swipe  
Simple  
incarnative  
medicines,
- 24 drijng<sup>4</sup> medicyns. ¶ If þat he haue litil quittance & his bodi be  
moist, — — alle þese techingis þou hast had tofore.<sup>5</sup> ¶ Medicyns  
þat ben liȝt þat þou schalt vse þere, þat þer is litil quittance yn  
moist bodies: Rȝ, thus minutum, mastix, farina ordeī, fenigreci. Rȝ
- 28 And þese beþ sumwhat more drier: aristologie, yreos, & orobum,  
aloes, mirra, pix greca, farina fabarum; & more strong<sup>6</sup> þat þou  
schalt vse in bodies: astrologia, yreos, farina lupinorum, dragantum  
adustum, vitriolum adustum; for if it be brent it wole be þe lasse  
strong medi-  
cines.
- 32 bityng<sup>7</sup>, & his drienes ne schal not be alaskid. ¶ For .vij. causis  
diuers þingis ben brent: Summe ben brent, for sum vertu in hem  
schulde wexe / And summe þat þe malice þerof schulde goon awei:  
as mirabolani, þat haueþ vertu of laxatif, & virtutem stipticam, for  
36 whanne it is brent his vertu laxatif is maad lasse; & his vertu þat  
is clepid stiptica, is neuer þe lasse, but it is þe more. In þe same
- Nota  
Substances  
are burnt for  
medical use  
for several  
reasons.  
1.

<sup>1</sup> MS. pullme.<sup>3</sup> sic.<sup>5</sup> Lat.: si vero pauca fuerit sanies, & membrum & corpus fuerint humida, medicina tunc indiges minus sicca, sicut superius habuisti.



- [† If. 257, bk.] maner<sup>1</sup> vitriolum lesip his scharpnes, & his drienes is not lost /
- .2. The .ij. is pis, pat<sup>t</sup> his greet<sup>t</sup> substaunce mowe be maad sutil, as
- .3. cancri *id est* crabbis pat<sup>t</sup> ben brent<sup>t</sup> / The .iiij. cause is pis, pat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> mowe
- .4. gadere scharpnes, as stoonys, oistris, & schellis of eiren, pat<sup>t</sup> ben 4  
brent<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> me mai make lyme of hem / The .iiij. is, pat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> mowe be  
aparailid for to be grounden, as seta sericum<sup>2</sup> / & among<sup>t</sup> alle  
medicyns pat<sup>t</sup> ben for pe herte pat<sup>t</sup> mowe be grounde, ben pe beste  
as gold & siluir<sup>3</sup> / In pis maner pou schalt dizte hem for to grinde / 8  
Sepe hem in sulfur in leed, pat<sup>t</sup> pei mowe pe bettir be grounde /
- .5. The .v. cause is pis, pat<sup>t</sup> pe wickidnes perof<sup>t</sup> mowe be take awei :  
as of scorpiouns pat<sup>t</sup> ben brent<sup>t</sup>, pat<sup>t</sup> we mowe vse hem in medicyns,
- .6. pat<sup>t</sup> ben for pe stoon. The .vj. cause is pis, pat<sup>t</sup> his vertu mowe be 12  
maad pe more, as squillis whanne pei ben brent<sup>t</sup>, her vertu wole be  
pe more / The .vij. cause is pis, pat<sup>t</sup> his vertu mowe be take fro
- .7. him : as psillium, whanne it<sup>t</sup> is brent<sup>t</sup> / his vertu wole be pe lasse //  
In what<sup>t</sup> maner pou schalt go fro medicyn to medicyn, pou hast it<sup>t</sup> 16
- [† If. 255] pleynerli ynow<sup>3</sup> in pe first<sup>t</sup> tretis, <sup>4</sup>bope simple medicyns & also  
compound / pe whiche pou miȝt vse as pou seest best<sup>t</sup> to done / If<sup>t</sup>  
pou wolt regendre fleisch in a deep put<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> vlcus is, take poudre  
of thuris, whanne vlcus is<sup>5</sup> maad clene, & fille ful pe hole perof<sup>t</sup>, for 20  
it<sup>t</sup> wole engendre fleisch wel. ¶ In pes vertues, & it<sup>t</sup> is moost<sup>t</sup>  
competent<sup>t</sup> to consolidatif<sup>t</sup> medicyns.<sup>6</sup> & his gummosite pat<sup>t</sup> is clepid  
thus masculinum ouper olibanum, & pat<sup>t</sup> is best<sup>t</sup> for medicyns pat<sup>t</sup> is  
conglutinatif<sup>t</sup>, pat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid in pe bigynnyng<sup>t</sup> of pis chapitre. & 24  
pe poudre of him, whanne it<sup>t</sup> is maad smal & fallip adoun of a  
sarce, is clepid minutum thuris, & pat<sup>t</sup> is best<sup>t</sup> to regendre fleisch.
- Bi pis maner distinceioun pou schalt gadere pe difference of pre  
medicyns pat<sup>t</sup> ben in pis chapitre, & of summen pei ben clepid alle 28  
[consolidatiues]. ¶ The .j. perof<sup>t</sup> pat<sup>t</sup> is seid conglutinatif<sup>t</sup>, pat<sup>t</sup>  
makip pe lippis of a wounde soude togidere / The .ij. it<sup>t</sup> driep &  
makip clene, & helpip blood for to turne into fleisch / The .iiij. it<sup>t</sup>  
driep wip vertu pat<sup>t</sup> is clepid stiptica, pat<sup>t</sup> makip hard fleisch to 32  
arise in pe stide of skyn. ¶ This is a good medicyn for to regendre  
[† If. 258, bk.] fleisch, pat<sup>t</sup> is clepid litargirum nutritum, pat<sup>t</sup> is norischid <sup>7</sup>as it<sup>t</sup> is

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: sicut seta aut sericum.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 105, bk.: quod inter medicinas cordiales fit, quod assatur ut teri possit, et aurum & argentum, que decoquantur cum sulphure . . .

<sup>5</sup> is, above line.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.; Et nota quod de thure tria sunt, sive cortex, & illud est siccus omnibus, & convenit plus in consolidatiuis medicinis facientibus pellem & cicatrizantibus, quas ita habebis.

The best  
incarnative  
medicine  
is thus.

One uses its  
bark,  
its gum;


it is further  
used as a  
powder,  
Minutum  
thuris

Three kinds  
of consoli-  
dating medi-  
cines.

1. Conglutina-  
tives,

2. Incarnatives,

3. remedies pro-  
ducing cica-  
trization.

- aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat engen-**  
**driþ fleisch** / Take thuris minute, masticis, fenigreci ana, fiat <sup>An incarnative powder and ointment.</sup>  
 puluis. þis poudre regendriþ fleisch wel & drawiþ, & nyle not  
 4 suffre þat vleus schal stynke, but it makip for to haue a good  
 sauour. ¶ **Also an oynement þat is good for to regendre fleisch** /  
 R̄, litargiri nutriti ʒ .ij, puluis thuris, sarcocolle, galbani, colofonie,<sup>1</sup> R̄  
 ana ʒ .j, medle hem alle togidere, & make þerof an oynement.   
 8 ¶ **Anoþer poudre**, R̄, radicem malui visci, þat summen clepen<sup>2</sup>  
 sanaticlam,<sup>3</sup> & sumen clepiþ it vngaria; & waische it & drie it in a  
 furneis in sich maner þat þou ne brenne it not. & þan grinde it &  
 make þerof poudre, & leie þerof a good quantite in vlceribus þat  
 12 ben holow / for off his owne propriete it engendriþ fleisch, boþe  
 bi him-silf & also whanne it is medlid wiþ oþere þingis / **Also** R̄  
 take of þe forseid poudre ʒ .j, of thus þat be smal ʒ ʒ, vernicis,<sup>4</sup>  
 aloes, sarcocolle, masticis, fenigreci ana ʒ .ij, medle hem wiþ þe  
 16 þingis aforseid, & þou miȝt make þerof an oynement wiþ oile &  
 wex; & do ʒ .j. of þe poudre in ʒ .iiij. of oile, & ʒ ʒ. of wex. R̄  
<sup>5</sup>And þis þou schalt knowe, þat þere þou puttist poudris, þou <sup>[<sup>3</sup> 17. 239]</sup>  
 schalt putte none oynementis for to regendre fleisch / But whanne  
 20 poudre ne mai not come þerto to þe botme þerof, þan þou muste  
 leie þeron oynementis, for þe moisture of þe oile makip þe poudre  
 peerse to þe botme. ¶ **Also þis oynement is good, for it drawiþ**  
**out quittance** / R̄, olij li. ʒ, resine ʒ .j, cere ʒ .ʒ, minute thuris, R̄  
 24 fenigreci ana ʒ .ʒ, make herof an oynement & cole it. ¶ **Also**  
**anoþer oynement þat is good for þis entencioun.** R̄, consolide R̄  
 maioris & minoris, cinoglosse, pilocelle,<sup>6</sup> plantaginis maioris & mi-  
 noris, ana. ʒ, vermes terrestres longos, qui dicuntur lumbrici,  
 28 li. ʒ; kutte alle þes smale,<sup>7</sup> & leie hem in li. j & ʒ. of oile of oliue,  
 & lete hem ligge þere .viij. daies, & þan boile hem a litil & þan cole  
 hem, & do þerto schepis talow maad elene id est molten & colid,  
 picis naualis li. ʒ, picis grece ʒ .iiij, armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci,  
 32 terbentine, masticis communis minuti, ana ʒ. ʒ. In þis maner

<sup>1</sup> colofonie, see *Alphita*, p. 42.<sup>2</sup> clepen, above line.<sup>3</sup> *sanaticla*. See Wr. Wül., 554, 8: "Saniculum, i. sanicle, i. wude-  
 merch." *Minsheu* quotes the following proverb: "Celuy qui sanicle a. de  
 Mire affaire il n'a. Et qui a du bugle & du sanicle, fait au chirurgien la  
 nique. He that hath Sanicle, respects not the Poticarie, and he that hath  
 Sanicle and Cumfrie, makes a jest of the Surgeon."<sup>4</sup> Halle, *Table*, p. 134: "Out of the Iuniper tree sweateth certeine teares,  
 in the spring tyme chiefly and therefore called *Vernix*, quasi Vernus ros."<sup>6</sup> Lat. pilosella. See Wr. Wül., p. 556, 18.<sup>7</sup> MS. *þesmale*.

R<sup>7</sup> pou schalt' make hem : Take armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci, & [1<sup>st</sup> 1f. 259, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre, & aftirward dis<sup>1</sup>solue hem in caziola.<sup>2</sup> & whanne þei ben dissolued, do þerto oile, wex & pich, & þan do þerto alle þe oþere þat' ben maad to poudre, & þan cole hem & kepe 4 hem for þin vs. ¶ If pou leist' þis oynement' in þe botme of a wounde, it' wole drawe out' þe quittance & aswage þe akyng, & it' wole make clene & regendre fleisch in vlcera. ¶ This pou muste knowe, þat' þou; I sette proporcioun of poudris, & oile, & wex, 8 neþeles pou schalt' proporcioun þi þingis more or lasse as þou seest' þat' pou hast' nede þerto. ¶ If a wounde haue miche quittance, & be in a drie place, þan pou schalt' do þerto þe more poudre, & þe lasse oile & wex / If it' so be þat' a wounde be in a moist' place, 12 þan pou schalt' do þerto þe lasse of þe poudre, & more of þe oile & of þe wex, as it' is aforseid. ¶ Medicina consolidatiua, cicatrizatiua, & sigillatiua ben al oon ; & þat' ben medicyns þat' drieþ þe moisture of a wounde, & makip a rynde aboue vpon þe fleisch, & makip a 16 strong' keueryng' for<sup>3</sup> to defende þe fleisch fro harm / And A. seiþ, þat' in vlcera þat' is holow, þat' þere <sup>4</sup>ne schal neuere be no skyn engendrid þeron, for þe skyn in a man is engendrid of þe spermis of þe fadir & of þe modir / And alle þe partijs of a man þat' ben 20 engendrid oonli of sperme, & þei be kutt' awei, þei schulen neuere wexe agen / And alle þese þingis in a man ben engendrid oonli of sperme, as a mannes skyn, & boony & senewis ; & þerfor & þer be ony gobet' kutt' awei of þese, þei ne mowe neuere be regendrid 24 agen, as .A. seiþ, & it' is soop / But in þis caas medicynes mowe helpe for to engendre hard fleisch aboue, & schal be in þe place of skyn, vpon which place nyle neuer wexe here afterward<sup>5</sup> / ¶ Simple medicyns þat' ben in þis caas makyng' skyn vpon a soor þat' is 28 clene / **Cortices** arboris, pini, cortices thuris, centaurea combusta, ossa combusta, abrotanum combustum, balaustie, galle, cipressi, psidie, cucurma, rubea maioris combusta, lumbrici terrestres adusti, cathinia argenti & auri, alumen sissum, folia fici, stercus canis 32 comedentis ossa siccata,<sup>6</sup> aristologia longa & rotunda combusta, es [3<sup>rd</sup> 1f. 260, bk.] vstum lauatum, & ius medicina<sup>7</sup> / <sup>8</sup> Sumtyme we medlide medicyns

The physician has to use his own discretion as to the doses.

Remedies which produce cicatrization.

Skin which has been destroyed cannot be reproduced.

It may be replaced by a hard substance.

Simple medicines.

<sup>2</sup> Matth. Sylv. : "Cazola est quoddam vas." See Ital. cazzuola. *Tomm. Dict.* <sup>3</sup> MS. *fro*.

<sup>5</sup> Lat. : "medicina ista namque adiuvat, vt nascatur caro calosa dura, que est loco cutis, super quam non nascitur pilus."

<sup>6</sup> MS. *sucatum*.

<sup>7</sup> Lat. : "et omnis (abbr. *ois*) medicina, que fit in duabus actiuis propter temperamentum."



- conglutinas wiþ a fewe corrosiuus, þat<sup>1</sup> schulen be<sup>1</sup> seid in þe nexte chapitre here aftir / But<sup>1</sup> for to medle medicyns in þis maner, þer mote be miche kunnyng for to proporcioune hem, & summe þerof<sup>2</sup> Compound medicines.
- 4 þou muste haue bi experience, & summe of þe knowynge of þe mannes complexioun, boþe of his bodi & also of his lyme / Of þe forseid simple medicyns þou miȝt vse hem in powdre, & if þou wolt þou miȝt make oynementis of hem, as it is aforseid / But þe oile
- 8 þat þou wolt make þese oynementis wiþ, schal algate be stipticum, as oleum rosaceum & mirtinum. ¶ A good composicioun þat þou schalt vse in somer in woundis & in vlcibus þat ben hote, & in euery place þere þe skyn is aweie in a mannes bodi, of riding, eȝir An ointment to be used in hot countries and in summer.
- 12 of pustulis, or of fier, or of hoot watir, & it is clepid vnguentum Rasis, þat is maad in þis maner: Rȝ, oliȝ ro. ȝ iiij, cere ȝ ß, in þese regions þat ben hoot & <sup>1</sup> in somer ȝ .ij, & aftir þe region þou schalt do þerto dyuers quantite of wex, ceruse ȝ .j, camphore 3 .j, vng<sup>m</sup> Rasis Rȝ
- 16 þe whitis of ij. eggis. þou schalt make it in þis maner / first þou schalt grinde .ij. almaun<sup>2</sup>dis blaunchid & stampid in a morter, & þan do out þe almaundis þat ben to-broke of þe morter, & make clene þe morter; & þan leie þeron camphore, & grinde it smal; & Direction how to make it. [2 lf. 261]
- 20 þan do þerto ceruse, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto oile, & grinde hem wel togidere wiþ þe pestel. & whanne it is almoost coold, þan do þerto .ij. whitis of eiren, & meue hem wiþ a selise longe, for þe more þat þei ben stirid togidere þe bettir it wole be /
- 24 Summen doon þerto ceruse wiþ þe forseid quantite of oile & wex, and camphore & whitis of eiren 3 .v, litargiri 3 .iiij. & þis is a good consolidatif, but it makȝ coold. & if þou wolt do þerto litarge, do more or lasse as þou seest þat it is to done // ¶ This is a Two powders.
- 28 good poudre for þis entencioun / Rȝ, aloes, balaustiarum, cathinie argenti, eris vsti triti,<sup>3</sup> & lauati partes equales; make herof sutil poudre, & herof leie vpon þe place þere þou wolt haue þe skyn. ¶ Anoper poudre þat is more stronge þan þis / Rȝ, aloes, Rȝ
- 32 cucurmie, vermium terrestrium combustorum, balaustiarum, mirre, gallarum. ¶ A good oynement / Rȝ, fecem argenti 3 .xxx, merdam ferri, cymolie ana 3 .vij <sup>4</sup>& ß, cathinie argenti, ceruse, Rȝ [4 lf. 261, bk.]
- 36 wiþ oile of ro., & make an oynement, & it is clepid vnguentum de palma. ¶ Also anoper þat G. made, þat wole soude vlcera þat ben coold & yuel for to hele / Rȝ, adipis porci antiqui sine sale id est freisch swynys grese molten, & colid þoruȝ a cloop / oliȝ li. j & ß, Consolidating ointment prescribed by Galien. Rȝ

<sup>1</sup> MS. om. þ.<sup>3</sup> MS. certis.

litargiri li. ſs, calamenti<sup>1</sup> ʒ .iiij; make it in þis maner: grinde  
 Rʒ litargirum & calamentum in a morter, & do þerto a litil & a litil of  
 oile & grese, molten togidere / ¶ Also: Rʒ, spatulam id est quæ fit de  
 palma viridi, & þe middil þerof aboue kutt smal to gobetis, & do it 4  
 in þi medicyn, & wiþ þe half of þe opere medicyns medle þis  
 medicyn; þis is good for to regendre & soude togidere. ¶ Anopir  
 medicyn þat is good for to regendre fleisch & make clene &  
 soude, & is clepid medicamen Iohannis Mesue, þat is maad in 8  
 Rʒ þis maner / Rʒ, pistatiue & resine,<sup>2</sup> panni albi vetusti ʒ .j, opopo-  
 nacum ʒ .ij, vini, mellis, olij ro. vel mirtini ʒ .x, litargiri, aloes,  
 sarcocolle, mirre, ana ʒ .ſs, make herof an oynement; þis wole  
 [3 lf. 262] regendre & hele woundis þat ben <sup>3</sup>wickid & yuel for to hele, & þis 12  
 medicyn is as good as þat, þat is sett in þe chapitre de vlceribus  
 virulentis; þis makij clene, & driep & regendrij fleisch, þerfore  
 ioyne þat & þis togidere. ¶ Also an oynement þat Maister  
 Rʒ william someris<sup>4</sup> made / Rʒ, rasinam albam & liquefactam in vino 16  
 Ointment of  
 resin, acerimo, & cole þe wijn & þe rosyn togidere into coold watir, &  
 anoynte þin hondis, & tempere it wel in þin hondis, & kepe it, &  
 if it be in somer do þerto half so miche of whit wex; make þis  
 abrood vpon a lynnen cloof, & leie it vpon þe wounde, & þis wole 20  
 Rʒ drie wel. ¶ Item: Rʒ, olij ro. ʒ .iiij, rasine ʒ .ij, cere ʒ .j, nucis  
 cipseissi, cucurmie ana ʒ .j, make herof a gobet & kepe it; þis  
 is more worþ þan apostolicon Nicholai. ¶ The maner of worching  
 of þese medicyns, þat of summen ben clepid consolidatiuis, schal 24  
 be do in þis maner / The firste dai þat a wounde is maad, & þou  
 hast brouzt þe lippis of þe wounde togidere with sewinge ouþir wiþ  
 sum oper maner, þan leie þerto of þe firste medicyn, þat is clepid  
 conglutinatif, vpon þe place þat is sewid, & leie þerof ynow; & 28  
 [3 lf. 262, bk.] þan þervpon leie a lynnen cloof <sup>5</sup>wet in whitis of eiren, & þan leie  
 þerto defensiuis & opere necessarijs til þe lippis of þe wounde be  
 soudid togidere faste. ¶ The .ij. medicyn, þat is clepid regenera-  
 tium, þat schal be leid in vlceribus & in depe woundis, for to 32  
 regendre fleisch. ¶ At þe laste þou schalt leie consolidatiuis, or þe  
 fleisch wexe to hiþe; & but if þou do þus, þou muste leie corosiuis  
 for to frete awei þat fleisch þat is woxe to hiþe, & þat is double  
 traueile & also vnkunnyng of þe leche. ¶ Thou muste knowe wel 36

<sup>1</sup> *calamentum*, a mistake for *calcantum*. Phillips: "Calcanth a Chymical word, being the same as Vitriol."

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: rasure vel pistature.

<sup>4</sup> I cannot find a physician of this name. Perhaps it is *Gulielmo Corvi*, author of the *Tractica*, who was a friend of Lanfranc. *Hæser* I., p. 710.

where & whanne þou schalt vse þese medicyns, & in þis maner þou schalt folowe þe riȝt rule of medicyns, & þan þi medicyns wolip worche as þei schulde /

4 ¶ Of medicyns cauteratiuis & corrosiuis /

COROSIUIS & cauterizatiuis we vsip in cirurgie in manie causis, Simple caustics.  
 & of corosiuis summe ben feble, & summe ben strong, & summe beþ more stronger / These ben feble, hermodactilis, aris- Mild caustics.  
 8 tologia, brionia, gencina,<sup>1</sup> vitriolum adustum, & þese haueþ moost vertu in moist bodies. ¶ More strong ben þes: vitriolum not com- Strong caustics.  
 bustum, tapsia, pees milui,<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>apium rampnum,<sup>4</sup> cortex viticelle<sup>5</sup> / And [3 lf. 263]  
 þese ben more strong: flos eris, viride eris, es vstum, arsenicum,  
 12 sulphur. ¶ Also þese ben more strong: calx viua maad of stoonis, & of schellis of eiren & oistris, & strong lye, & arsenicum sub-  
 limatum, & watir maad of þese þingis; & of þese medicyns þou miȝt make medicyns boþe simple & compound, whiche þou miȝt vse  
 16 whanne þou wolt take awei deed fleisch, more strong & lasse strong as þou seest þat it is nede þerto. ¶ Of medicis þat ben com- Compound caustics.  
 pound I wole telle þee a fewe, for of simple medicyns þou miȝt compound manie. ¶ A poudre þat wiþouten ony greuance &  
 20 liȝtli fretiþ awei deed fleisch / R̄, viride eris, hermodactulorum, R̄  
 aristologia rotunda, make þerof poudre & kepe it in a drie place, & whanne þou wolt do awei deed fleisch / Take lynet eiper lynnen cloþ, & wete it with þi spotil & leie it in þe poudre, & turne it vp  
 24 & down, & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Thou schalt attende superfluite of fleisch<sup>6</sup> in .ij. maners / In oon maner superfluite of fleisch as of  
 elene fleisch þat wexiþ tofore aboue a wounde, & þis is <sup>7</sup>clepid super- Innocent ex-  
 fluite of good fleisch / In an oper maner we clepiþ superfluite of crecences.  
 28 fleisch þat is medlid wiþ quittance, & is liquide, & þis comeþ in defaute of þe leche, whanne he leiþ regeneratiuis to a wounde ouþir  
 to ony þing til it be perfitli elene, so þat þe newe fleisch & þe quittance wexiþ forþwiþ / In þe firste cause is noon nede of oper Malignant excrescences.  
 32 medicyn, but a simple corosif<sup>8</sup> þat fretiþ wiþouten violence awei þe fleisch þat is woxen to hiȝ aboue þe wounde. ¶ In þe .ij. cause  
 it is necessarie for to haue a medicyn corosif & clensynge as it is

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: gentiana.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *vulpi*. Pes milui "crow-foot."

<sup>4</sup> *Alphita*, p. 11: "*Apium ranarum* siue *apium rampnum* crescit in pratis . . ." See *rampinus*. uncus.—Dufr.

<sup>6</sup> Wr. Wül., 138, 28: "Viticella, wiþwinde."

<sup>6</sup> *fleisch* in margin.

<sup>8</sup> MS. *corosip*.



A corrosive  
powder of  
caustic lime  
and arsenic.

R̄

aforseid in þe chapitre off mundificatinis. ¶ Anopir good poudre þat<sup>t</sup> remeueþ awei *superfluite* of fleisch & rotid fleisch & crustons<sup>1</sup> / R̄, calcis viue ʒ. ij., arsenici ʒ. ij., succi affodillorum radice ʒ. vj., medle hem togidere & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem & drie hem in schadowe & kepe hem in a drie place, for in a moist place it wole rotie anoon. & whanne þou hast nede for to vse ony herof, þan make þerof poudre & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also an oynement þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid *vnguentum viride* & is a lizt corrosif, & makij *superfluite* of rotid fleisch & is maad in þis maner. R̄, mellis partes .ij., viride eris partem vnam, & medle hem togidere.

vng<sup>m</sup> viride  
[<sup>2</sup> lf. 264]

R̄

An ointment  
to cleanse  
ulcers.

R̄

¶ Also anoper *vnguentum viride* þat<sup>t</sup> makij clene & regendrij good fleisch in vlceribus þat<sup>t</sup> ben olde, & fretij awei wickid fleisch wipouten violence / R̄, celidoyne radice, alleluia,<sup>3</sup> folia centrum<sup>4</sup> galli, leuistici agrestis, scabiose, ana ʒ. j., grynde wel alle þese herbis togidere wip .li. j. of schepis talowe & .li. j. of oile, medle hem togidere, & lete hem ligge .x. daies & rotie, & þan do 16 hem to seþing on þe fier til þe herbis falle to þe botme, & þan cole hem, & do þerto wex, terbentyne, ana ʒ. ij., colofonie ʒ. j., masticis, olibani, ana ʒ. ʒ., viridis eris ʒ. j. þat<sup>t</sup> schal be do in in þe ende of þe hoilyngt, & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof an oynement. 20

An ointment  
to be applied

R̄

on fistulous  
and cancer-  
ous sores.

¶ If þou wolt make a stronger medicyn for to slee a festre & a cancre / R̄, vitri albi combusti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris, galle, attramenti, vitriole viridis, ana ʒ. ʒ., auripigmenti foliati ʒ. ij., make herof poudre, & distempere hem wip strong vinegre & lacte 24 anabulle<sup>5</sup> til it be as picke as it were hony, & sette it to þe sunne

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 264, bk.]

in somer, & lete it drie. & if it be in wintir þou miȝt drie it wip lent fier, and whanne it is drie poudre it aȝen, & tempere wip þe forseid licour, & þan drie it aȝen, & þus þou schalt do .iiij. siþis ouþir 28 .iiij. & þan make poudre þerof & kepe it in a drie place.

A corrosive  
powder.

R̄

¶ Anoper poudre þat<sup>t</sup> drieþ a cancre & a festre, & remeueþ *superfluite* of fleisch / R̄, radices brionie ʒ. v., tapcie, laureole, esule, ana ʒ. ij., ciclaminis, yreos, aristolochie, longe & rotunde, hermodactulorum, 32 affodillorum radice ʒ. j., & herbarum celidonie, leuistice agrestis, buglosse, summitatis oliuarum, & mirte ana ʒ. j., tempere þe herbis & þe rotis in vinegre bi .iiij. daies, & þan seþe hem & cole hem, & take þat<sup>t</sup> licour þat<sup>t</sup> comeþ þerof, & seþe it & caste þeron quik lyme 36

<sup>1</sup> crustons, O.Fr. *crouston*.

<sup>3</sup> *Sin. Bart.*, p. 10: "Alleluia, i. *nodesour*."

<sup>4</sup> *Alphita*, p. 38: "*Centrum galli gallitricum* . . . *nux muscata*." Wild Sage, Cancerweed.

<sup>5</sup> *Matth. Sylv.*: "Anabulla est species titimalli." Compare *Alphita*, p. 9.

- poudrid sotilli lī. j., & medle hem wel togidere, & at̃ þe laste do  
 þerto auripigmenti ʒ. iij., & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof  
 gobetis & kepe hem in a drie place, & whanne þou hast nede þerto,  
 4 grynde oon þerof, & leie þe poudre þerof vpon þe place þat þou  
 wolt haue frete. ¶ **Anopir poudre of þe same kynde.** R̃y, arsenici  
 rubri & citrini, calcis viue, aluminis<sup>1</sup> de pluma, gallarum nouarum  
 ana, grynde hem with vinegre<sup>2</sup> & medle hem, & kepe hem R̃y  
 8 as it is aforseid / ¶ A strong<sup>3</sup> medicyn þat is as strong<sup>4</sup> as oni fier, &  
 vnquenta ruptoria þat mortifieþ quyk fleisch & etip it, & oon herof is  
 riȝtt strong<sup>4</sup> & is a poudre maad bi sublimacioun. R̃y, limature ferri,  
 vitrioli viridis, alumen iamini, antymonij ana ʒ. ij. salis armoniaci,  
 12 arsenici citrini, sulphuris viui<sup>3</sup> extincti cum salua, & tempere hem  
 wiþ vinegre, oupir wiþ watir, oupir wiþ strong<sup>4</sup> lye, & þe lie wole be  
 þe bettir if it be maad wiþ bene scelis, & þan drie it & putte it in  
 alutel<sup>4</sup> & sublime it / This is þe maner of sublimacioun / loke þou  
 16 haue a strong<sup>4</sup> vessel maad of glas þat it mowe dure in þe fier,  
 oupir a vessel of erpe wel glased wiþinne, & loke þat þe couerle  
 þerof & þe bodi be wel closyng, & do þerin þi poudre, & lute it wiþ  
 good lute, & sette it in a furneis & make lizt fier half adai, & þan  
 20 do out thi fier, & whanne it is coold opene it, & þat, þat leeuþ in  
 þe botme of þe vessel caste it out, & þat, þat cleueþ faste to þe  
 couerle aboue, take it & kepe it, & if þou wolt worche þerwiþ þou  
 muste worche ful quentliche, for it wole<sup>5</sup> brenne as strongli as fier, [<sup>3</sup> li. 265, bk.]  
 24 & wole make impressioun in depnes þan fier. þis poudre wole cor-  
 rumpe & brenne þe place þat it is leid vpon, & þe same doiþ realgar  
 sublimed, & if þow wolt ouercome þe wickidnes of it, make poudre  
 of it & distempere it wiþ þe iuys of lactuce & plaunteyn til it be  
 28 in pickenesse of hony, & þan drie it, & þus þou schalt do manye  
 tymes / & in þis maner þou schalt take awei greet malice, & it wole  
 worche neuer þe worse. ¶ Also an oynement ruptorie for to breke  
 fleisch þat is hool & maketh blak & brenneþ it, & wole make it  
 32 falle awei, & þan þer wole leue þere vleus. Manie men vsiþ þis in  
 diuers maner, for to opene an enpostym, & for to do awei superfluite  
 of fleisch. R̃y, quik lyme as miche as þou wolt, & resolue it in R̃y

<sup>1</sup> Halle Table, p. 9. *Alumen de pluma* = *Alumen Liquidum*.

<sup>3</sup> a caret is placed here and this added later, but does not follow on:—

filos eris ana ʒ j ʒ

calcis viue G ʒ

argenti vii. ʒ j. [in margin.]

<sup>4</sup> Castelli: "*Aludel* vel *Alutel* vocatur Vitrum sublimatorium." Arab.  
 al-outhal (*Devic. Dict.*). A vessel used in sublimation.

*Nota bene.*  
 Escharotics,  
 medicines as  
 strong as fire.

*R̃y*  
 A corrosive  
 sublimate.

*Nota*  
 The process  
 of sublima-  
 tion.



A burning  
 ointment  
 made of  
 quick-lime.

strong<sup>1</sup> lie þat<sup>1</sup> is aforseid, and make þerof<sup>1</sup> þe maner of an oyne-  
ment, & whanne it is maad, al freisch leie it<sup>1</sup> þerto, for þe more  
freisch þat<sup>1</sup> it is þe bettir it is / In þis maner þou schalt<sup>1</sup> make þe  
lie / ffile a vessel ful of askis of bene scelis, & þe .iij. part<sup>1</sup> of quik 4  
[<sup>1</sup> lf. 266] lyme, & poudre hem alle togidere & leie hem in <sup>1</sup>a vessel & presse  
hem þat<sup>1</sup> þei bicome fast<sup>1</sup> togidere, & make a put<sup>1</sup> in þe middil aboue,  
in þe same put<sup>1</sup> caste hoot<sup>1</sup> watir seþing<sup>1</sup>, & þis vessel schal be  
holowe þat<sup>1</sup> þe lie mowe passe þoru<sup>3</sup>. & vndir þis vessel sette anopir 8  
vessel for to resseyue þe lie. ¶ Also anopir good ruptorie / R<sup>7</sup>,  
calcis viue, partem vnam, arsenici, partem ſ., poudre hem & medle  
hem wiþ sope & hony, & summen doiþ þerto li .ſ. of tartre / Also  
mel anacardi is swiþe strong<sup>1</sup> for to make vlcera. & if<sup>1</sup> it be do to 12  
opere medicyns it<sup>1</sup> worchip þe more strongli / In þis maner þou  
schalt<sup>1</sup> do / whanne þou ne miȝt<sup>1</sup> fynde mel anacardi, þan grinde  
anacardos greet<sup>1</sup> & leie hem in vinegre adai & anyȝt<sup>1</sup>, & þan boile  
hem wel, & þan presse out<sup>1</sup> þe licour þerof<sup>1</sup>, & þat<sup>1</sup>, þat<sup>1</sup> goiþ out<sup>1</sup> 16  
þerof<sup>1</sup> is a medicyn þat<sup>1</sup> wole make vlcera. / Oupir take anacardos &  
seþe hem in hoot<sup>1</sup> tenacelis þat<sup>1</sup> smiþis vsen, & streyne hem, & þer  
wole distille þerof<sup>1</sup> hony. ¶ Also take þe wombis of cantarides &  
grinde hem wiþ leueyne & leie hem in what<sup>1</sup> place þou wolt<sup>1</sup> & it<sup>1</sup> 20  
wole make vlcera / But<sup>1</sup> herof<sup>1</sup> þou muste be war þat<sup>1</sup> in what<sup>1</sup> place  
þou settist<sup>1</sup> cantarides þer <sup>2</sup>wole come greet<sup>1</sup> brennyng<sup>1</sup> of vrine, &  
sumtyme it<sup>1</sup> makip so greet<sup>1</sup> brennyng<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> a mannes vrine is stoppid  
þerwiþ. & þe cure þerof<sup>1</sup> is þis / Seþe malue, paritorie, violet<sup>1</sup>, watir- 24  
cressen in watir, & lete þe patient sitte þeron anoon to þe nauele, &  
herwiþ þe akyng<sup>1</sup> schal be taken awei, & also he schal make vrine  
liȝtlich / & herof<sup>1</sup> þou schalt<sup>1</sup> take hede, þat<sup>1</sup> in what<sup>1</sup> place of  
a mannes bodi þou makist<sup>1</sup> a cauterie, anoon þeraftir þou schalt<sup>1</sup> leie 28  
a mitigatif<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>1</sup> schal make þe cruste falle awei þat<sup>1</sup> was brent<sup>1</sup>, & þou  
ne schalt<sup>1</sup> in no maner take awei þe cruste wiþ violence, but<sup>1</sup> þou  
schalt<sup>1</sup> leie þerto a mitigatif<sup>1</sup>, & lete þe cruste falle awei liȝtli.  
¶ Medicyns þat<sup>1</sup> wolen make þe cruste falle awei, & do awei þe 32  
aking<sup>1</sup>, ben þese: zelkis of eiren wiþ oile of rosis, þat<sup>1</sup> is þe beste  
of alle medicyns / Also, take þe leeuës & grinde wiþ grese, ouper  
wiþ buttir & leie þervpon / Also grese oupir buttir is good þer- 36  
fore. ¶ Also pultes maad of mele, oile & watir, ben good þer-  
fore & aceessip wel þe akyng<sup>1</sup> & makip þe crustis falle. ¶ Also  
wiþ þe cauterie of an hoot<sup>1</sup> iren þou miȝt<sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup>do awei deed fleisch,  
oupir wiþ oon of þe medicyns þat<sup>1</sup> ben forseid. ¶ Also if<sup>1</sup> þou wolt<sup>1</sup>

R<sup>7</sup>  
A caustic  
ointment  
made of  
quick-lime  
and arsenic.

Cantarides.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 266, bk.]  
The applica-  
tion of can-  
tharides  
excites  
strangury.  
dubium  
Treatment.

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 267]

<sup>3</sup> MS. *do awei*, twice, the second one marked for erasure.



vse medicyns for to make cauterijs, þou muste take kepe of þis  
 caas / In feble men & in a litil cause þou muste vse feble medicyns,  
 & þou muste be war þat þou brenne no nerue ne no greet veyne ne  
 4 noon arterie wip þi cauterie, ne wip þi medicyns þat makip cauterijs.  
 ¶ Also in a strong man & in a boistous man, þou miȝt worche at  
 oonys þat þou muste worche at manye tymes in a feble man / for  
 in every medicyns þat a leche doiþ he schal take kepe of the  
 8 strenkþe & of þe vertu of þe pacient //

Nerves and  
 great blood-  
 vessels  
 must not be  
 cauterized.  
 Use caustics  
 according to  
 the patient's  
 strength.

### Of mollificatif medicyns or softenynge.

**W**E vsip þese medicyns þat ben .iiij. in eueri cause.<sup>1</sup> Oon cause  
 is þis, whanne þe mater þat þou wolt resolue is swipe hard,  
 12 for þan oonli wip resolutiuis as it is aforseid þe sotil mater wole  
 resolue, & þat opir part wole bicombe hard, & þan þou muste make  
 mollificatiuis. ¶ The .ij. cause is þis, whanne ony lyme is to-broke  
 ouþir out of þe ioyncte, þouȝ it be broȝt<sup>2</sup> yn aȝen, þe place wole be  
 16 hard, & þe patient mai not meue þerwip, þan þou muste do<sup>3</sup> þerto  
 mollificatiuis til þe lyme be bettere as it is aforseid. ¶ The .iiij.  
 cause is þis, whanne ony lyme þat hap ben out of ioynct longe  
 tyme, þan þou muste make þingis forto make þe place moist aȝen,  
 20 þat þe boon mowe come into his ioynt aȝen. ¶ The .iiij. cause is,  
 whanne a lyme is corrupt & is yuel ioyned, & makip al þe lyme foul,  
 as whanne a boon is to-broken & is not ioyned, þan þou muste breke  
 þe boon aȝen, & bringe it into his propre place as it schulde be /  
 24 In alle þese causis we mote vse medicyns þat ben mollificatiuis, as  
 ben þese: camomille, mellilotum, fenigreci, semen lini, & almaner  
 fatnes, & marowe, & manie gummis, & every medicyn þat is hoot  
 & moist wole make a lyme mollificatif / **A good composicioun for**  
 28 **þe firste cause** / Take oold oile .iiij. partis, wex partem .j., & make  
 þerof an oynement, and anoynte þerwip a lyme þat þou wolt resolue  
 þe mater þat is þeron / for it wole make þe mater mollificatif, &  
 make þe poris<sup>4</sup> open to resolucioun // **Anoper þat is more strong** /  
 32 R̄, radicis malua visci ̄ .j., & kutte it to smale gobetis, & putte  
 hem in a mortar wip ̄ .iiij. of oile of lilie. & þou schalt sett þis  
 vessel of glas in hoot boilyng watir, & þere it schal stonde til þe  
 iuyes of þe herbe be consumed. Wip þis oile þou schalt anoynte þe  
 36 place, & leie þervpon lanam succidam id est wolle vnwaischen. & þis

1.  
 Emollients  
 are used  
 If other medi-  
 cines prove  
 insufficient,  
 to relieve ten-  
 sion ensuing  
 2.  
 the fracture  
 [2 lf. 267, bk.]

3.  
 or dislocation  
 of a limb,

4.  
 and if re-  
 breaking  
 becomes  
 necessary.

An ointment  
 of oil and  
 wax.

R̄

[4 lf. 268]

A stronger  
 emollient.

R̄

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : Mollificatiuis vtuntur medicinis in quatuor casibus.

<sup>3</sup> do, above line.

Directions  
for fomenta-  
tion.

pou schalt<sup>t</sup> wite, þat<sup>t</sup> whanne pou wolt<sup>t</sup> make þese oynementis, first pou shalt<sup>t</sup> make a fomentacioun wiþ hoot<sup>t</sup> watir til þe place bicomē reed. & if<sup>t</sup> þe place be swithe hard, þan take a stoon þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid lapis molaris, & make him hoot<sup>t</sup> in þe fier, ouþir a greet gobet<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> 4 iren, & do it<sup>t</sup> in strong<sup>t</sup> vinegre. & þe place of<sup>t</sup> a mannes lyme þat<sup>t</sup> is hard, holde ouer þe fume þat<sup>t</sup> comē out<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe vinegre, & þan anoynte him aftirward / þis is þe maner for to make a lyme mollificatif, & þer ben .iiij. maners.<sup>1</sup> þe .j. maner is þis : pou schalt<sup>t</sup> make 8

[<sup>2</sup> If. 268, bk.]

& rootis of<sup>t</sup> malua visci, soden in water. & pou schalt<sup>t</sup> <sup>2</sup>make a fomentacioun to þe lyme in þis watir longe tyme, & frote þe lyme softli. & þan anoynte þe lyme wiþ oon of<sup>t</sup> þese oynementis / R<sup>y</sup>, 12 auxungie porci antique s<sup>i</sup>ne sale 3 .iiij, pinguedinis anseris, anatis & galline ana 3 .j., melte hem alle togidere & cole hem, & do þerto 3 .j. of<sup>t</sup> wex. þis wole make mollificatif, & restore moistnes. & if<sup>t</sup> pou wolt<sup>t</sup> make it<sup>t</sup> for to be good for drienes of<sup>t</sup> a mannes brest, & 16 good for men þat<sup>t</sup> ben etik, do þerto 3 .j. of<sup>t</sup> elene dragaganti, & þan it<sup>t</sup> wole be a good oynement<sup>t</sup> restoratif. ¶ Anopir oynement<sup>t</sup>.

An ointment  
to be applied  
on consump-  
tive people.

R<sup>y</sup> adipis porci antique s<sup>i</sup>ne sale 3 .iiij, fecis olij de semine lini, bdellij ana 3 .ij., storacis, calamite, galbani, oppopanacis, armoniaci, 20 ana 3 .j. putte þe gummys in wijn for to tempere, & whanne þei ben temperid, putte hem in a morter, & stampe hem wel, melte þe remenaunt, & do hem togidere, & medle hem togidere. ¶ Also an

R<sup>y</sup> oynement<sup>t</sup> mollificatif & comfortiþ / R<sup>y</sup>, auxungie porci 3 .iiij, 24 pinguedinis anseris, anatis, galline, ana 3 .j. olis communis antiqui 3 .iiij. farine fenigreci, seminis lini, ana 3 .j., bdellij, oppoconacis, masticis, thuris 3 .fi., tempere þe gummis <sup>3</sup>in wijn, & þan aftirward

[<sup>3</sup> If. 269]

medle hem wiþ grese, wex, & oile, & melte hem alle togidere & cole 28 hem. & of<sup>t</sup> þese þingis þat<sup>t</sup> schulen be grounde make poudre þerof, & medle it<sup>t</sup> þerwiþ & kepe it<sup>t</sup> for þin vss. & whanne pou hast<sup>t</sup> maad a stuwe as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid ouþir a fomentacioun, þan anoynte him bi þe fier, & þis is clepid vnguentum Rasis. & I it<sup>t</sup> haue ofte preued euer- 32 more goddis grace goinge tofore wiþout<sup>t</sup> which grace is no þing<sup>t</sup> fulendid ne no sijknes do awei / But<sup>t</sup> eueri good ende & eueri good dede al it<sup>t</sup> comē of<sup>t</sup> þe miȝt<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> god / And þe help of<sup>t</sup> god I bad in þe firste bigymyng<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe book / ffor of<sup>t</sup> goddis grace I am þat<sup>t</sup> I am, 36 & goddis grace was neuere voide in me / And þe ende of<sup>t</sup> þis book was fulfillid þe noumbre of 3eeris from goddis beyng<sup>t</sup> .M.CC. nonagesimo sexto. & god of<sup>t</sup> his swete grace ne wernede me not<sup>t</sup> to make

vng<sup>m</sup>  
Ras<sup>is</sup>

God has  
helped me  
throughout  
my work,  
and this book  
has been  
finished in  
1296.

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : modus autem mollificandi membra in 2°, 3° & 4° casu est unus.

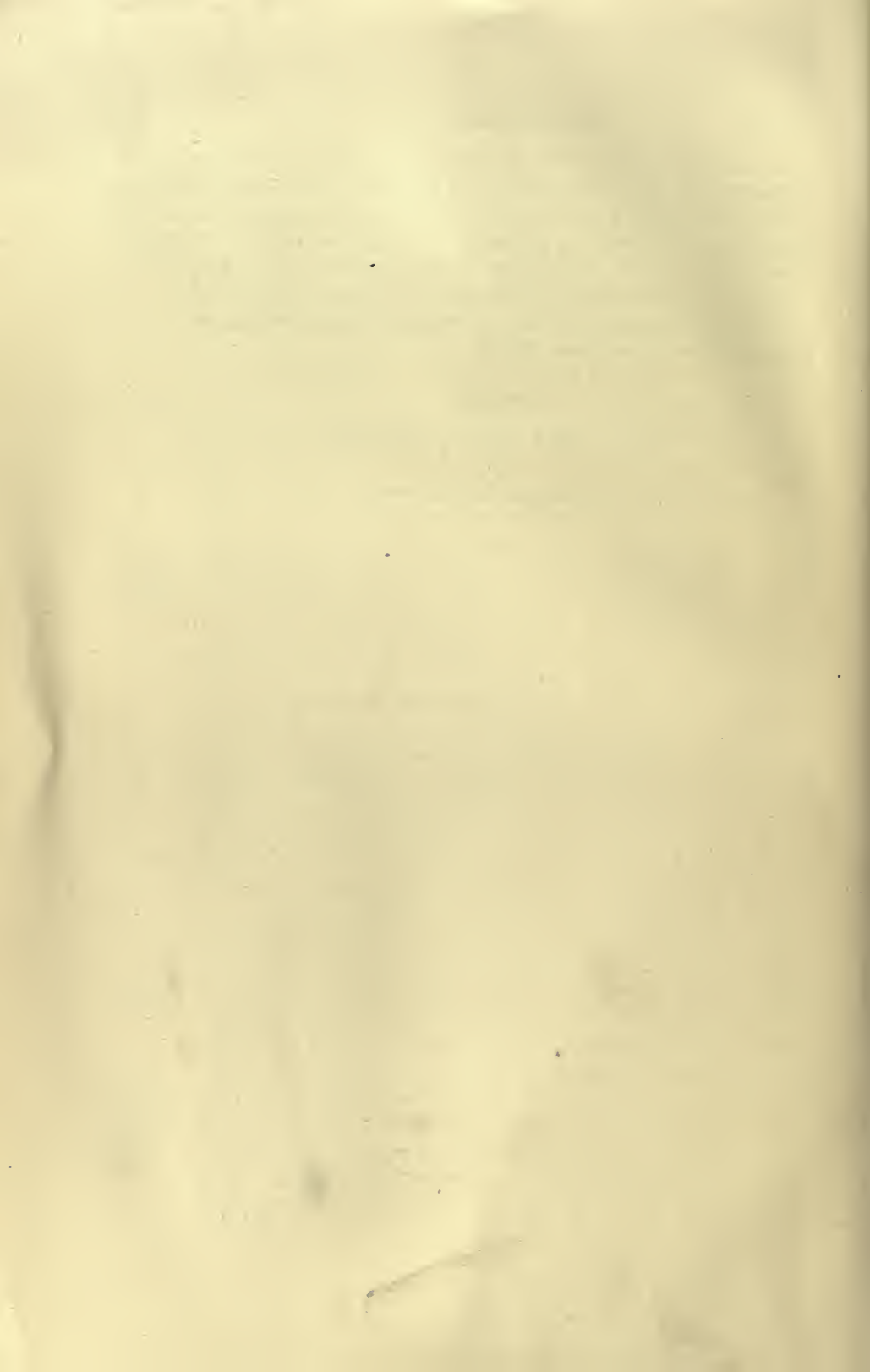
an ende of þis book. & ful ofte I haue bede goddis grace þerto /  
 wherfore god haþ grauntid, & god for his blessid name blesse þis God may  
bless this  
 book & alle werkis þat ben wrouȝt in his name / <sup>1</sup>And god for his [1 lf. 269, bk.]  
 4 miche grace lete hem wel worche þat takip þis werk on honde, & book and  
those who  
use it.  
 bringe errouris out of her herte, & bringe hem & us to a good  
 ende / To þe worschip of his blessid name & profit of his ser-  
 uauntis, & me to forȝeuenes of my synnes, god it graunte et imperat  
 8 per omnia secula seculorum AmeN.

Explicit.

Here endip þe book of lankfrank.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> In red ink, but nearly erased.





Here bigynneþ a table of þe chapitris of þe book of  
lankfrank //

[leaf 270]

The firste book conteyneþ .xv. chapitris /

- 4 The .i. c°. is maad of alle vniuersal woundis & vlcers [p. 31]  
 The .ij. c°. is of woundis maad in þe fleisch / [p. 33]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in senewis / [p. 39]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in boonys / [p. 47]  
 8 The .v. c°. is of woundis maad with strokis or kuttinge / [p. 50]  
 The .vj. c°. is of woundis with postyms, & yuel diserasiam / [p. 54]  
 The .vij. c°. of woundis maad of arauyschyng<sup>e</sup> hound, or opir  
 venymous beest / [p. 59]  
 12 The .viij. c°. is of curis of woundis which folowip brekyng<sup>e</sup> of  
 boonys / [p. 62]  
 The .ix. c°. is of flux of blood of woundis / [p. 64]  
 The .x. c°. is of dietyng<sup>e</sup> of woundid men / [p. 72]  
 16 The .xj. c°. is of vlceris / [p. 77]  
 The .xij. c°. is of fistulis / [p. 89]  
 The .xiiij. c°. is of cancris / [p. 92]  
 The .xiiij. c°. is of causis & lettyngis of sowdyng<sup>e</sup> of woundis &  
 20 vlceris / [p. 97]  
 The .xv. c°. is of spasmus aboue comynge on woundis // [p. 99]

The .ij. book conteyneþ vnder o summe .x. c°.

- The .i. c°. is of woundis of þe heed, & his anothamia / [p. 106]  
 24 The .ij. c°. of curis of woundis in þe face & of membris þat ben [leaf 270, bk.]  
 conteyned in hem / [p. 141]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis in þe necke, and of anothamia [p. 145]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis of þe splet boonys of þe arme & of þe  
 28 hondis, & anothami / [p. 155]  
 The .v. c°. is of woundis in thoracis & membris conteyned in  
 hem / [p. 161]

The .vj. c°. is of curis of woundis of þe spine ouþir spondilium.

[p. 166]

The .viij. c°. is of woundis of þe stomac & entrailis & wombe, & anothamia /

[p. 167] 4

The .viij. c°. is of woundis of þe lyuere, splen, reynes, & þe bladdre & anothamie /

[p. 171]

The .ix. c°. is of woundis of þe 3erde and placis aboute it

[p. 173]

The .x. c°. is of woundis of þe haunche & grynde & feet, & 8 anothamie /

[p. 176]

The .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris /

The .i. c°. is of makyng<sup>t</sup> of fair heer /

[p. 178]

The .ij. c°. is of lesyng of heer, or calowznes or allopucie

[p. 180] 12

The .iiij. c°. is of smale puschis and scalis and crustis /

[p. 188]

[leaf 271] The .iiij. c°. is of clooþ and fraclis, & gowte roset & 3olowisch /

[p. 189]

The .v. c°. is of smirtyng<sup>t</sup>, scabbe, & icche /

[p. 191] 16

The .vj. c°. is of þe morphu & impetigine /

[p. 193]

The .viij. c°. is of lepre & of domys of lepre /

[p. 196]

The .viij. c°. is of smelnes of membris & leene /

[p. 199]

The .iiij. bok þe ij doctryn<sup>is</sup>, þat is of enpostyms, & conteyneþ 20 .xviij. chapitris.

The .i. c°. is of generacioun of humours and her kyndis /

[p. 201]

The .ij. c°. is of enpostyms & of sermons þerof /

[p. 204]

The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms in þe heed, & of gaderynge in þe 24 bedis of children /

[p. 214]

The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms of rotis of þe eeris

[p. 216]

The .v. c°. is of enpostyms of þe necke, and of þe þrote /

[p. 217]

The .vj. c°. is of enpostym subtilico /

[p. 222] 28

The .viij. c°. is of enpostym of þe helpers aboute þe spondilia /

[p. 223]

The .viij. c°. folowip of þe same tofore /

[p. 224]

The .ix. c°. of enpostym appering in þe mouþ of þe stomak /

[p. 226] 32

The .x. c°. is of an enpostym in i[n]guine .i.<sup>1</sup> grindis.

[p. 226]

The .xj. c°. is of enpostyme of þe haunche &

¶ of þe core /

[p. 227] 36

The .xij. c°. is of enpostym of þe 3erde & ballok /

[p. 228]

[leaf 271, bk.] The .xiiij. c°. is of scrophulis & glandulis /

[p. 229]



- The .xiiij. c°. is of þe cure of þe cancre non vlcera<sup>t</sup> / [p. 231]  
 The .xv. c°. is of Boos / [p. 232]  
 The .xvj. c°. is of akyng<sup>t</sup> of ioynetis. [p. 233]  
 4 The .xvij. c°. is of akyng<sup>e</sup> of haunchis / [p. 238]  
 The .xviij. c°. is of dicting<sup>t</sup> of men þatt<sup>t</sup> han ache in ioynetis / [p. 240]  
 The .iij. boke and the .iij. doctrin, and conteyneþ xix.  
 8 chapitris //  
 The .i. c°. is of egrenes of yzen / [p. 240]  
 The .ii. c°. is of egrenes of eeris / [p. 254]  
 The .iij. is of dise of þe nose / [p. 258]  
 12 The .iiij. c°. is of dise of þe mouþ / [p. 260]  
 The .v. c°. is of dise of þe brest, and off swellyng<sup>t</sup> and greetnes /  
<sup>1</sup>and coagulacion off milke.<sup>1</sup> [p. 265]  
 The .vj. c°. is of ruptorie of þe siphac, and releuyng<sup>e</sup> azen /  
 16 [p. 268]  
 The .vij. c°. is of hernia of þe ballokis / [p. 269]  
 The .viij. c°. is of þe stoon in þe bladdre / [p. 273]  
 The .ix. c°. is of an yuel þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid hermofrodito<sup>2</sup>  
 20 [p. 281]  
 The .x. c°. is of watri dropesies. [p. 287]  
 The .xj. c°. is of cancer & vlcers in þe 3erde / [p. 289]  
 The .xij. c°. is of emoroidis & fistula in ano. [p. 293]  
 The .xiiij. c°. is of canerene & mormals / [p. 295]  
 24 The .xiiij. c°. is of vngribus and stykyng<sup>e</sup> in handis and feet. [leaf 272]  
 ¶ Elephancia / [p. 296]  
 The .xv. c°. is of wertis in handis & feet / [p. 298]  
 The .xvj. c°. is of blood letyng<sup>t</sup> / [p. 303]  
 28 The .xvij. is of kutting<sup>t</sup> & bleding<sup>t</sup>, & water lechis [p. 305]  
 The .xviij. is of cauterie large & of streite / [p. 312]  
 The .iiij. book schal be algebra, & conteyneþ ij. doctrines /  
 The firste doctrine of þe .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris //  
 32 The .i. c°. is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of boonis, or o. word ¶ for al / [p. 314]  
 The .ij. c°. is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of þe face / [p. 316]  
 The .iij. c°. is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of þe forkid boon of þe brest / [p. 317]  
 36 The .iiij. c°. is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of boonys off þe spaudis // [p. 318]  
 The .v. c°. is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of þe adiutorie /

<sup>1-1</sup> added in different hand.

<sup>2</sup> This chapter is omitted; see note 8 on p. 281.

**The .vj. c°.** is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of boonys þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid coxe // [p. 320]

**The .vii. c°.** is of brusing<sup>t</sup> or brekyng<sup>t</sup> of tendir boonys wiþ þe  
.viij. chapitre / [p. 321 & 322]

**The secunde doctrine of þe fourþe book, & conteyneþ .v. 4  
chapitris //**

[leaf 272, bk.] **The first<sup>t</sup> c°.** is of failyng<sup>t</sup> of place, word for al /

**The .ij. c°.** is of failyng<sup>t</sup> of place of þe chekeboon /

**Tho .iiij. c°.** is of lacking<sup>t</sup> of place of þe spaude /<sup>1</sup> 8

**The .iiij. c°.** is of goyng<sup>t</sup> out of þe ioynct<sup>t</sup> of þe schuldre / [p. 323]

**The .v. c°.** is of þe coniunccioun of þe goyng<sup>t</sup> out of þe haunche /  
[p. 326]

**The antidotarie is þe .v. book, and conteyneþ seuene 12  
chapitris //**

**The .i. c°.** is of repercussiu<sup>s</sup> & þe maner þerof<sup>t</sup> / [p. 328]

**The .ij. c°.** is of þe maner of resolutif<sup>t</sup> medicins / [p. 333]

**The .iiij. c°.** is of þe .iiij. maturatiu<sup>s</sup> & þe maner þerof<sup>t</sup> / [p. 336] 16

**The .iiij. c°.** is of mundificatiu<sup>s</sup> & þe maner þerof<sup>t</sup> // [p. 339]

**The .v. c°.** is of regeneratiu<sup>s</sup> & consolidatiu<sup>s</sup> // [p. 342]

**The .vj. c°.** is of corrosiu<sup>s</sup> & cauterisatiu<sup>s</sup> // [p. 349]

**The .vij. c°.** is of mollificatiu<sup>s</sup> or softenyng<sup>t</sup> medicyns // [p. 353] 20

<sup>1</sup> These three chapters are left out.

Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-editing, are :—

### ORIGINAL SERIES.

English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).  
Maumetrie, from Lord Tollemache's MS.  
The Romance of Troy. Harl. 525.  
Biblical MS., Corpus Cambr. 434 (ab. 1375).  
Purvey's Ecclesie Regimen, Cot. Titus D 1.  
Hampole's unprinted Works.  
þe Clowde of Unknowyng, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959, Bibl. Reg. 17 C 26, &c. Univ. Coll. Oxf. 14.  
A Lanterne of Liȝt, from Harl. MS. 2324.  
Soule-hele, from the Vernon MS.  
Lydgate's unprinted Works.  
Boethius, A.D. 1410, &c.; Pilgrim, 1426, &c. &c.  
Vegetius on the Art of War. (Magd. Oxf. 30, &c.)  
Early Treatises on Music: Descant, the Gamme, &c.  
Skelton's englishing of Diodorus Siculus.  
The Nightingale and other Poems, from MS. Cot. Calig. A 2, Addit. MS. 10,036, &c.  
Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.  
Penitential Psalms, by Rd. Maydenstoon, Brampton, &c. (Rawlinson, A. 389, Douce 232, &c.).  
Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.  
Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.  
Chronicles of the Brute.  
T. Breus's Passion of Christ, 1422. Harl. 2333.  
Jn. Crophill or Crephill's Tracts, Harl. 1735.  
Burgh's Cato.

Memoriale Credencium, &c., Harl. 2398.  
Book for Recluses, Harl. 2372.  
Lollard Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2330, &c.  
H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2388, art. 20.  
Hilton's Ladder of Perfection, Cott. Faust. B 6, &c.  
Supplementary Early English Lives of Saints.  
The Early and Later Festivals, ab. 1400 and 1440 A.D.  
Cotton, Claud. A 2; Univ. Coll. Oxf. 102, &c.  
Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.  
Jn. Hyde's MS. of Romances and Ballads, Balliol 354.  
Metrical Homilies, Edinburgh MS.  
Lyrical Poems from the Fairfax MS. 16, &c.  
Prose Life of St. Audry, A.D. 1595, Corp. Oxf. 120.  
English Miscellanies from MSS., Corp. Oxford.  
Miscellanies from Oxford College MSS.  
Disce Mori, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Bodl. Laud 99.  
Alain Chartier's Quadrilogue, &c., Univ. Coll. Oxf. 85.  
Mirror of the blessed liȝt of Ihesu Crist, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 123, &c.  
Pilgrimage of the Soul, A.D. 1400, prose, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 181, &c.  
Poem on Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2260.  
Maundevyle's Legend of Gwydo, Queen's, Oxf. 383.  
Book of Warrants of Edw. VI., &c., New Coll. Oxf. 328.  
Adam Loutfut's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.  
Rules for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6815.  
John Watton's englisht Speculum Christiani, Corpus Oxf. 155, Laud G.12, Thoresby 530, Harl. 2250, art. 20.

### EXTRA SERIES.

Erle of Tolous. Ypotis.  
Sir Eglamoure. Emare.  
Lyrical Poems, from the Harl. MS. 2253.  
Le Morte Arthur, from the unique Harl. 2252.  
Sir Tristrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS.  
Miscellaneous Miracle Plays.  
Sir Gowther.  
Dame Siriz, &c.  
Orfeo (Digby, 86).  
Dialogues between the Soul and Body.  
Barlaam and Josaphat.  
Amis and Amiloun.  
Ipomedon.  
Sir Generides, from Lord Tollemache's MS.  
The Troy-Book fragments once cald Barbour's in the Cambr. Univ. Library and Douce MSS.  
Gower's Confessio Amantis.  
Poems of Charles, Duke of Orleans.  
Carols and Songs.  
Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 43.

The Siege of Rouen, from Harl. MSS. 2256, 753, Egerton 1995, Bodl. 3562, E. Museo 124, &c.  
Jn. Hart's Methode to read English, 1570.  
Octavian.  
Ywain and Gawain.  
Libeaus Desconus.  
Avnturs of Arther.  
Avowyng of King Arther.  
Sir Perceval of Gallas.  
Sir Isumbras.  
Partonope of Blois, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 188, &c.  
Pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Queen's, Oxf. 357.  
Other Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Harl. 2333, &c.  
Hore, Penitential Psalms, &c., Queen's, Oxf. 207.  
St. Brandon's Confession, Queen's, Oxf. 210.  
Scotch Heraldry Tracts, copy of Caxton's Book of Chivalry, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxford 161.  
Stevyn Scrope's Doctryne and Wysedome of the Auncyent Philosophers, A.D. 1450, Harl. 2266.

The Founder and Director of the E. E. T. Soc. is Dr. F. J. Furnivall, 3, St. George's Sq., Primrose Hill, London, N.W. Its Hon. Sec. is W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. The Subscription to the Society is 21s. a year for the *Original Series*, and 21s. for the *Extra Series* of re-editions.



# Early English Text Society.

The Subscription, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year [and £1 1s. additional for the EXTRA SERIES], due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid either to the Society's Account at the Head Office of the Union Bank of London, Princes Street, London, E.C., or by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N., and crost 'Union Bank of London.' (United-States Subscribers must pay for postage 1s. 4d. a year extra for the Original Series, and 1s. a year for the Extra Series.) The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists.

## ORIGINAL SERIES.

*The Publications for 1893 (one guinea) are:—*

100. Capgrave's *Life of St. Katharine*, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s.  
101. *Cursor Mundi*. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s.

*The Publications for 1894 (one guinea) are:—*

102. Lanfrank's *Science of Chirurgie*, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. from the 2 MSS. by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part I. 20s.  
103. *The Prymer, or Lay-Folk's Prayer-book*, from MS., ab. 1420, ed. A. R. Clark and Hy. Littlehales. 10s. [At Press.]

*The Publications for 1895 (one guinea) are:—*

104. *The Exeter-Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems)*, re-edited from the unique MS., by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s.  
105. *The Legend of the Cross*, from a 12th century MS., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. [At Press.]

*The Publications for 1896 (to be ready in 1893) will be chosen from:—*

- Richard Misyng's *Fire of Love*, 1531, & *Mending of Life*, 1535 (from Hampole), ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. [Text set.  
Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part II., ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [At Press.  
Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen, Part II. [At Press.  
An Anglo-Saxon Martyrology, edited from the 4 MSS. by Dr. G. Herzfeld. [At Press.  
The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS., by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part II.  
Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch, &c., ed. Miss Pemberton. [At Press.  
Giraldi Cambrensis *Expugnatio Hibernica*, englished, MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram, Ll.D. [At Press.  
George Ashby's *Active Policy of a Prince*, A.D. 1463, ed. Miss Mary Bateson. [At Press.  
Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq. [Copied.  
Sir David Lyndesay's Works. Part VI. and last, ed. W. H. S. Uteley. [At Press.  
The Lay Folks' Catechism, by Archbp. Thoresby, ed. Canon Simmons and Rev. — Littlehales. [Text set.

## EXTRA SERIES.

*The Publications for 1893 are:—*

- I. XIII. Thomas a Kempis's *De Imitatione Christi*, englished ab. 1440, and 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram, Ll.D. 15s.  
I. XIV. Caxton's *Godeffroy of Boloyne, or Siege & Conqueste of Jerusalem*, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s.

*The Publications for 1894 (one guinea) are:—*

- I. XV. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, Part III., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. 15s.  
I. XVI. *Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philisoffres*, ab. 1445-50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s.

*The Publications for 1895 and 1896 (to be ready in 1893) will be chosen from:—*

- I. XVII. *Melusine*, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. [Text done.  
The Towneley Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by G. England, Esq. and A. W. Pollard, M.A. [At Press.  
The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by George England, Esq. [At Press.  
Hoccleve's *Regement of Princes*, 1411-12, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [At Press.  
Lichfield Gilds, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall; Introduction by Prof. E. C. K. Gonner. [Text done.  
Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq. [At Press.  
The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sykes, Esq. [At Press.  
The Three Kings' Sons, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. L. Kellner. [At Press.  
Deguillville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, 3 prose Versions, 2 English, 1 French, ed. G. N. Currie, M.A.  
Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Synne* (1303), and its French original, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall.  
The Coventry Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by George England, Esq.  
Hoccleve's *Minor Poems*, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A. [Copied.

⚠ The Large-Paper Issue of the Extra Series is stopt, save for unfinisht Works of it.

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.  
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.



11 APR 1984

PRAT VICTORIA UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY  
MAY 7 1982  
OCT 1 1985



106831  
W. H.  
13-3-62

